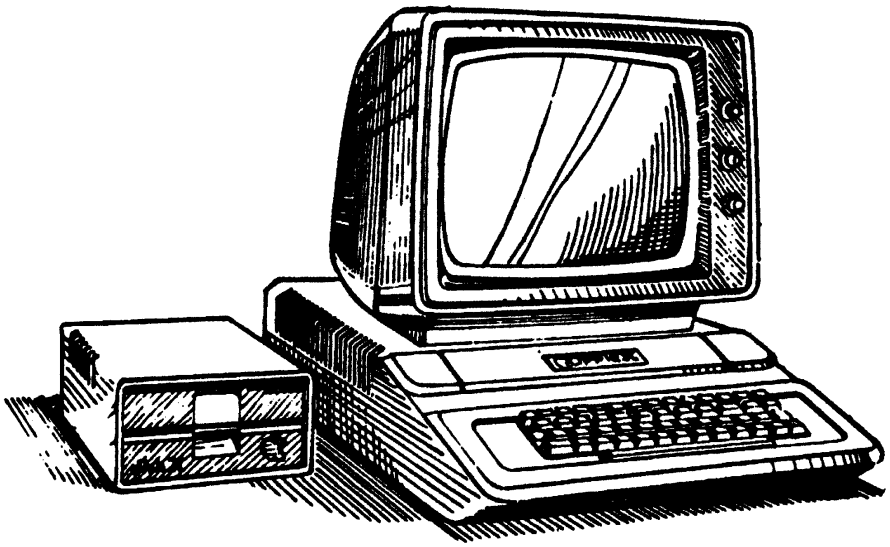


Apple II and Apple II-Plus Level II Service Reference Manual

Pre-Release Version

A compendium of notes, diagrams and instructions for diagnosing and repairing the Apple II and Apple II-Plus computer systems.

AUTHOR
Apple Computer Inc.

DOCUMENT DATES OF RECORD
1981

(This page is not part of the original document)

INTRODUCTION

What is this manual?

The Apple II / Apple II-Plus Level II Service Reference Manual is a compendium of notes, diagrams and instructions for diagnosing and repairing the Apple II and Apple II-Plus computer systems. This is an internal document written by Apple Computer's service department for use by Apple's internal Level II service personel.

Facts about this manual

Author:

Apple Computer Inc

Document dates of record:

1981

Owner:

Organization:	DigiBarn Computer Museum	(www.digibarn.com)
Curator:	Bruce Damer	(http://www.damer.com/)

(This page is not part of the original document)

PROPERTY STATEMENT

Disclaimer

The Commons Deed is not a license. It is simply a handy reference for understanding the Legal Code (the full license) — it is a human-readable expression of some of its key terms. Think of it as the user-friendly interface to the Legal Code beneath. This Deed itself has no legal value, and its contents do not appear in the actual license.

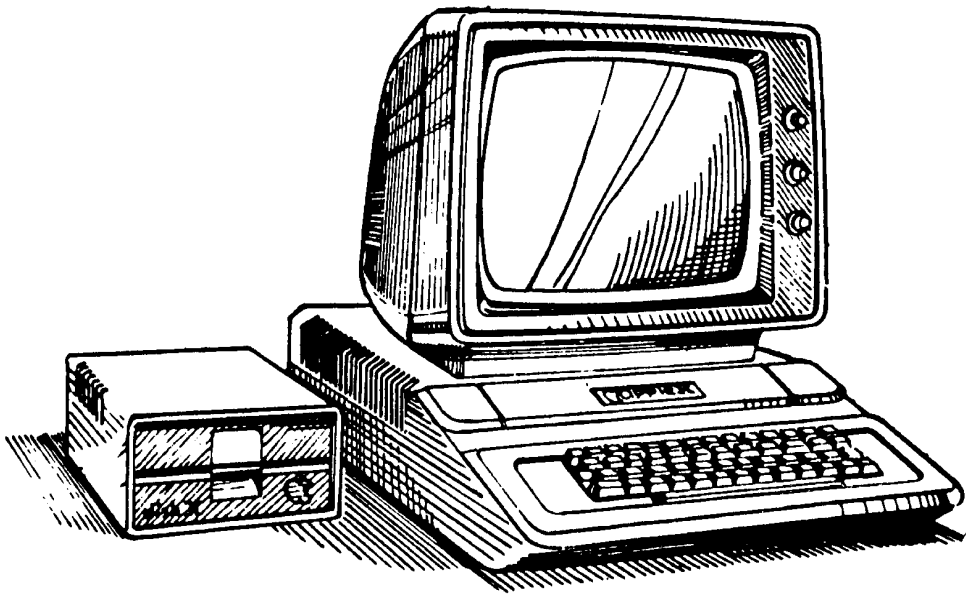
Creative Commons is not a law firm and does not provide legal services. Distributing of, displaying of, or linking to this Commons Deed does not create an attorney-client relationship.

(This page is not part of the original document)

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center

1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

APPLE II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

This is a Service Reference Manual which describes the Apple II and Apple II Plus Computers, manufactured by Apple Computer Inc. This manual contains a general description of the Apple II followed by theory of operation, troubleshooting guides and spare parts information which will enable the technician at a Level II Service Center to repair these computers. This Manual is aim at component level maintenance.

This Manual only covers the Computers. It does not include videos, disk drives, peripheral devices, or interface cards. At the end of this manual is an appendix containing IC maps and specifications, ROM listings, spare part information, and removal and replacement procedures. There are sections on the System Monitor, the input/output devices and their operation, the internal organization of memory and input/output devices, and the actual electronic design of the Apple itself.

The real secret to this manual is using a scope, as signals are described they can be observed as well, thus speeding up learning. It is suggested that an "open Apple II" be created using a logic board, keyboard, power supply and monitor. I hope you will enjoy and learn from this manual as I have.

THE IS A ROUGH DRAFT PRE-RELEASE VERSION OF THE MANUAL. WE FELT THAT THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS MANUAL WAS VITAL TO THE LEVEL II SERVICE CENTERS. THAT IS THE REASON FOR THE EARLY RELEASE. I AM WORKING ON IMPROVEMENTS TO THE MANUAL, MORE FIGURES, BLOCK DIAGRAMS, AND UP-TO-DATE INFORMATION INCLUDING A RFI SECTION. I WOULD LIKE TO ENCOURAGE COMMENTS, OR IF YOU HAVE INFORMATION WHICH YOU FEEL WOULD BE VITAL TO THIS MANUAL PLEASE SEND THEM TO CAROL JINKS 10260 BANDLEY DR. MAIL STOP 4I CUPERTINO, CALIFORNIA OR PHONE 408-973-2850.

THANK YOU IN ADVANCE FOR YOUR COOPERATION.

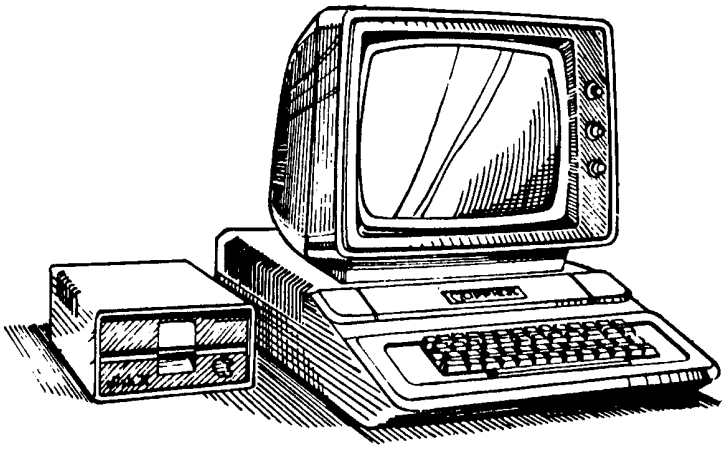
TABLE OF CONTENTS

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 1
GENERAL DESCRIPTION



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

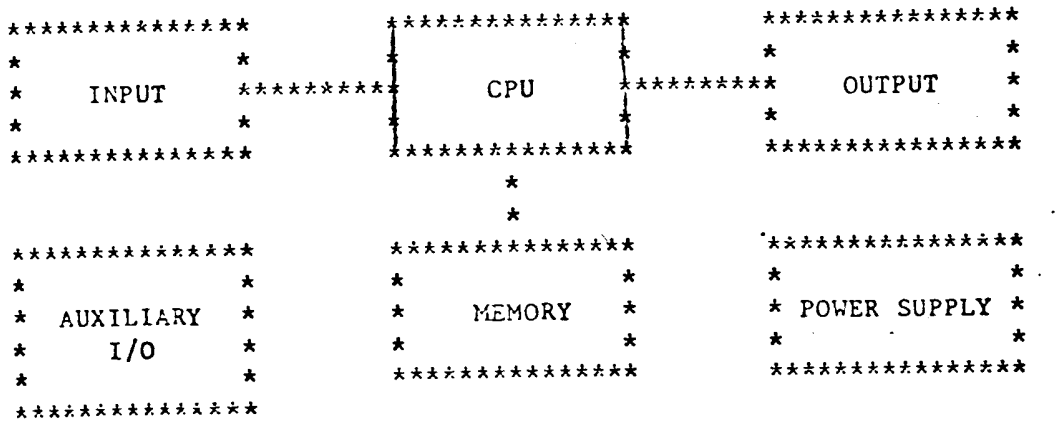
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

APPLE II (PLUS)

PERSONAL COMPUTER SYSTEMS

General Description:

The Apple II and Apple II Plus systems, are composed of a CPU or central processing unit, RAM or random access memory, power supply, keyboard, video display and auxiliary I/O (input/output). This last category is made up of the game I/O, with the game paddles, buttons and annunciators. Sound output is generated by a built-in speaker. Programs and data may be saved and retrieved by means of the disk and cassette interface. Here a standard audio cassette tape recorder or Apple Disk II can be used. The Apple communicates with the outside world through 8 (50 pin) plugs or slots located along the rear edge of the system. This forms the nucleus of a Microcomputer system.



The Apple CPU or central processing unit is the 6502 Microprocessor. This LSI (Large-Scale Integration) Circuit gives the system control and processing ability. It moves character and numberic data around within the system and performs mathematic computations at microsecond speeds.

The instructions or software that controls the 6502 are located in the system memory. This memory is actually made up of small ICs of two distinct types, ROM and RAM. The RAM or random access memory contains the variable instructions and information. These memory locations can be changed at will by the 6502 and may be constantly updated. Another form of memory contained in the Apple is ROM. This memory is permanently recorded and may not be altered. It is read only memory, thus the designation ROM. When we are dealing with the Apple II or Apple II Plus, we can tell the two models apart by checking to see if the Integer Basic ROMs are present (making it an Apple II) or the Applesoft II Basic ROMs are present (making it an Apple II Plus).

The whole system is powered by a Switching Power Supply. This module supplies the 4 voltages necessary to run the Apple. They are:

Input
107 to 132 VAC or
214 to 264 VAC

Line frequency is not important.

Output

+5 Volts at 2.5 amps
-5 Volts at 500 ma
+12 Volts at 1.5 amps (~2.5 amps intermittent)
-12 Volts at 500 ma

In order to get information into the Apple we need the keyboard. This device is composed of 52 keys (switches) that generate all of the ASCII Characters. ASCII is the character code that the Apple understands. It stands for American Standard Code for Information Interchange. Any device that might be attached to the Apple must use this code. The Keyboard allows the user to talk to the Apple and issue commands to it. There are other forms of Input devices, that will be covered later.

Now that we have a means of getting information into the Apple, we need a way to get information and responses out. This output is generally in the form of video information sent to a video monitor or TV set. In the video mode we can present data in three different formats:

A. Text (40 characters by 24 lines)

B. Low Resolution Graphics (40 by 40 or 40 by 48 cell matrix)

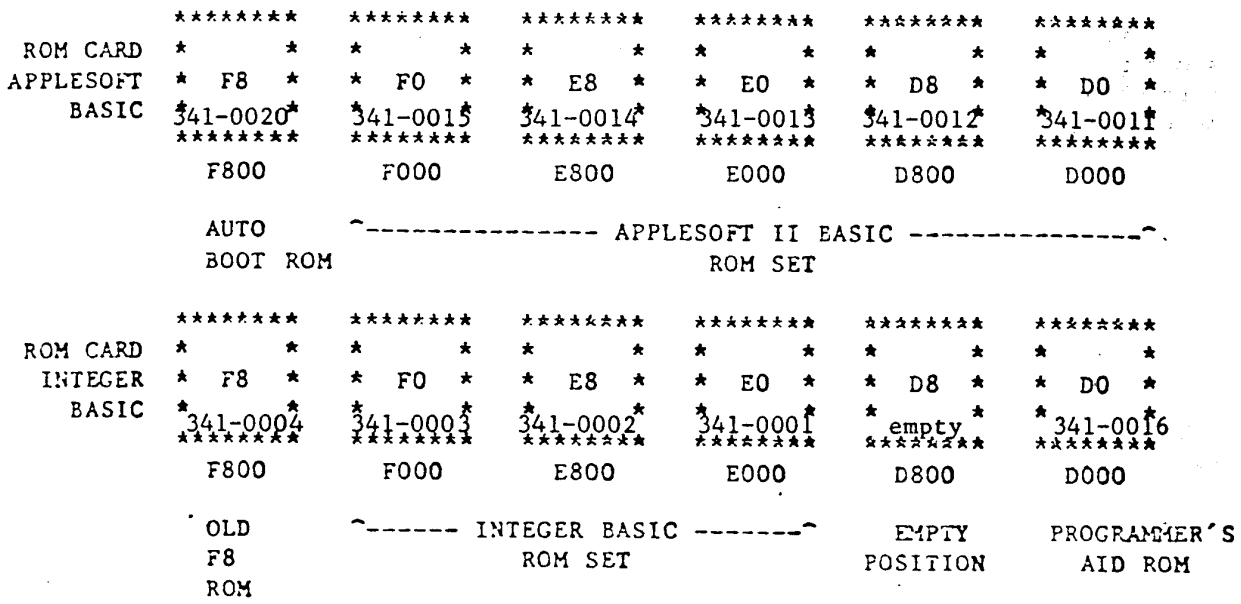
C. High Resolution Graphics (280 by 162 or 280 by 192 cell matrix)

When the Apple wishes to output data to the user, it presents that data in a video format. The video signal generated by the Apple is similar, but not quite the same as NTSC. It has a horizontal scan rate of 15 KHZ with 262 horizontal scan lines. It is non-interlaced with 1 field per frame and 192 active horizontal scan lines verticle. The total screen time is 65 microseconds horizontal time with 40 miicroseconds active. It will work with almost every NTSC type video monitor or TV set.

The Apple has some additional I/O devices, such as the Game Paddles, Annunciators, Speaker, and Tape Cassette Jacks. The Game Paddles allow the user to provide a form of analog input to programs running on the Apple. Buttons are provided on the paddles for momentary contact switches that can be read by the Apple. The Apple may indicate to the user electrically that a condition is on or off, by turning the Annunciators on or off. If the Apple wishes to signal or interact audibly with the user, it can use it's built in miniature speaker. Music and voice can be generated here. Lastly programs and data may be recorded and played back, by means of the Tape Cassette Ports. Data in a binary form is recorded on the tape using audio tones to represent 1s and 0s.

All of these are built in and included with the Apple II or Apple II Plus systems. The user need only add a video monitor and cassette recorder or disk drive to have a complete basic system. Other flexabilities are available by adding additional modules to the 8 (50 pin) plugs or slots on the rear edge of the Apple II system.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE APPLE VIDEO DISPLAY

The Apple Video Display

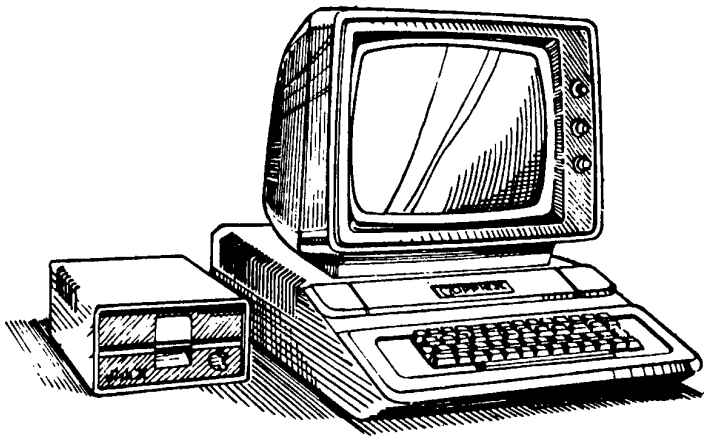
Display type:	Memory mapped into system RAM
Display modes:	Text, Low-Resolution Graphics, High-Resolution Graphics
Text capacity:	960 characters (24 lines, 40 columns)
Character type:	5 × 7 dot matrix
Character set:	Upper case ASCII, 64 characters
Character modes:	Normal, Inverse, Flashing
Graphics capacity:	1,920 blocks (Low-Resolution) in a 40 by 48 array 53,760 dots (High-Resolution) in a 280 by 192 array
Number of colors:	16 (Low-Resolution Graphics) 6 (High-Resolution Graphics)

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 2
VIDEO DISPLAY



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

SCREEN FORMAT

Three different kinds of information can be shown on the video display to which your Apple is connected:

1). Text. The Apple can display 24 lines of numbers, special symbols, and upper case letters with 40 of these characters on each line. These characters are formed in a dot matrix 7 dots high and 5 dots wide. There is a one-dot wide space on either side of the character and a one-dot high space above each line.

2). Low-Resolution Graphics. The Apple can present 1,920 colored squares in an array 40 blocks wide and 48 blocks high. The color of each block can be selected from a set of sixteen different colors. There is no space between blocks, so that any two adjacent blocks of the same color look like a single, larger block.

3). High-Resolution Graphics. The Apple can also display colored dots on a matric 280 dots wide and 192 dots high. The dots are the same size as the dots which make up the Text characters. There are six colors available in the High-Resolution Graphics mode: black, white, red, blue, green, and violet. For Apples with Revision 0 boards, there are four colors: black, white, green and violet. Each dot on the screen can be either black, white, or a color, although not all colors are available for every dot.

When the Apple is displaying a particular type of information on the screen, it is said to be in that paricular "mode". Thus, if you see words and numbers on the screen, you can reasonably be assured that your Apple is in Text mode. Similarly, if you see a screen full of multicolored blocks, your computer is probably in Low-Resolution Graphics mode. You can also have a fourline "caption" of text at the bottom of either type of graphics screen. These four lines replace the lower 8 rows of blocks in Low-Resolution Graphics, leaving a 40 by 40 array. In High-Resolution Graphics, they replace the bottom 32 rows of dots, leaving a 280 by 160 matrix. You can use these "mixed modes" to display text and graphics simultaneously, but there is no way to display both graphics modes at the same time.

SCREEN MEMORY

The video display uses information in the system's RAM memory to generate its display. The value of a single memory location controls the appearence of a certain, fixed object on the screen. This object can be a character, two stacked colored blocks or a line of seven dots. In Text and Low-Resolution Graphics mode, an area of memory containing 1,024 locations is used as the source of the screen information. Test and Low-Resolution Graphics share this memory area. High-Resolution Graphics mode, a seperate, larger area (8,192 locations) is needed because of the greater amount of information which is being displayed. These areas of memory are usually called "pages". The area reserved for High-Resolution Graphics is sometimes called the "picture buffer" because it is commonly used to store a picture or drawing.

SCREEN PAGES

There are actually two areas from which each mode can draw its information. The first area is called the "primary pages" or "Page 1". The second area is called the "secondary page" or "page 2" and is an area of the same size immediately following the first area. The secondary page is useful for storing pictures or text which you want to be able to display instantly. A program can use the two pages too perform animation by drawing on one page while displaying the other and suddenly flipping pages.

Text and Low-Resolution Graphics share the same memory range for the secondary page, just as they share the same range for the primary page. Both mixed modes which were described above are also available on the secondary page, but there is no way to mix the two pages on the same screen.

SCREEN SWITCHES

The devices which decide between the various modes, pages, and mixes are called "soft switches". They are switches because they have two positions (for example: on or off, text or graphics) and they are called "soft" because they are controlled by the software of the computer. A program can "throw" a switch by referencing the special memory location for that switch. The data which are read from or written to the location are irrelevant; it is the reference to the address of the location which throws the switch.

There are eight special memory locations which control the setting of the soft switches for the screen. They are set up in pairs; when you reference one location of the pair you turn its corresponding mode "on" and its companion mode "off". The pairs are:

Table 5: Screen Soft Switches

Location: Hex	Decimal		Description:
$C050	49232	-16304	Display a GRAPHICS mode.
$C051	49233	-16303	Display TEXT mode.
$C052	49234	-16302	Display all TEXT or GRAPHICS.
$C053	49235	-16301	Mix TEXT and a GRAPHICS mode.*
$C054	49236	-16300	Display the Primary page (Page 1).
$C055	49237	-16299	Display the Secondary page (Page 2).
$C056	49238	-16298	Display LO-RES GRAPHICS mode.*
$C057	49239	-16297	Display HI-RES GRAPHICS mode.*

There are ten distinct combinations of these switches:

Table 6: Screen Mode Combinations

Primary Page			Secondary Page		
Screen	Switches		Screen	Switches	
All Text	$C054	$C051	All Text	$C055	$C051
All Lo-Res Graphics	$C054 $C052	$C056 $C050	All Lo-Res Graphics	$C055 $C052	$C056 $C050
All Hi-Res Graphics	$C054 $C052	$C057 $C050	All Hi-Res Graphics	$C055 $C052	$C057 $C050
Mixed Text and Lo-Res	$C054 $C053	$C056 $C050	Mixed Text and Lo-Res	$C055 $C053	$C056 $C050
Mixed Text and Hi-Res	$C054 $C053	$C057 $C050	Mixed Text and Hi-Res	$C055 $C053	$C057 $C050

TEXT MODE

In the Text mode, the Apple can display 24 lines of characters with up to 40 characters on each line. Each character on the screen represents the contents of one memory location from the memory range of the page being displayed. The character set includes the 26 upper-case letters, the 10 digits, and 28 special characters for a total of 64 characters. The characters are formed on a dot matrix 5 dots wide and 7 dots high. There is a one-dot wide space on both sides of each character to seperate adjacent lines. The characters are normally formed with white dots on a dark background; however, each character on the screen can also be displayed using dark dots on a white background or alternating between the two to produce a flashing character. When the Video Display is in Text mode, the video circuitry in the Apple turns off the color burst signal to the television monitor, giving you a clearer black-and-white display. (This feature is not present on the Revision 0 board).

The area of memory which is used for the primary text page starts at location number 1024 and extends to location number 2047. The secondary screen begins at location number 2048 and extends up to location 3071. In machine language, the primary page is from hexadecimal address $400 to address $7FF; the secondary page is from $800 to $BFF. Each of these pages is 1,024 bytes long. Those of you intrepid enough to do the multiplication will realize that there are only 960 characters displayed on the screen. The remaining 64 bytes in each page which are not displaced on the screen are used as temporary storage locations by programs stored on PROM on Apple Intelligent Interface peripheral boards.

Photo 6 shows the sixty-four characters available on the Apple's screen.

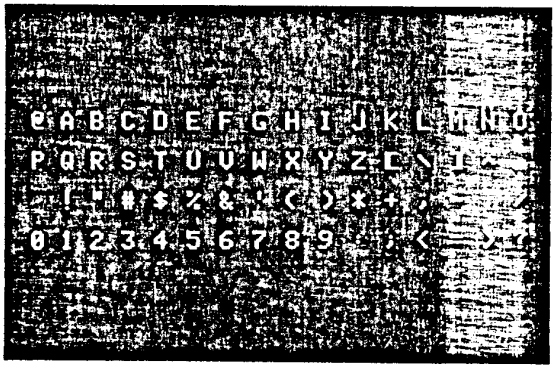


Photo 6. The Apple Character Set.

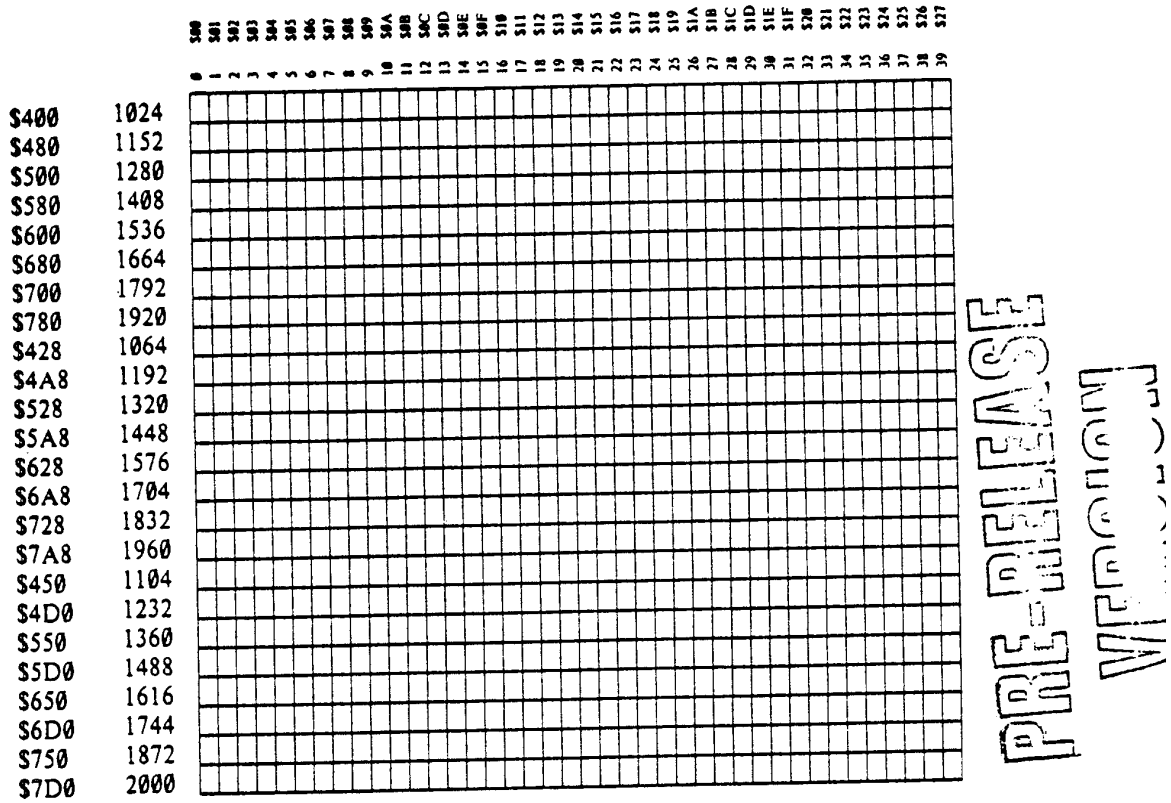


Figure 1. Map of the Text Screen

Table 7: ASCII Screen Characters

	Inverse				Flashing				Normal (Control)						(Lowercase)	
Decimal	0	16	32	48	64	80	96	112	128	144	160	176	192	208	224	240
Hex	$00	$10	$20	$30	$40	$50	$60	$70	$80	$90	$A0	$B0	$C0	$D0	$E0	$F0
0 $0	@	P		0	@	P		0	@	P		0	@	P		0
1 $1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1	A	Q	!	1
2 $2	B	R	"	2	B	R	"	2	B	R	"	2	B	R	"	2
3 $3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3	C	S	#	3
4 $4	D	T	$	4	D	T	$	4	D	T	$	4	D	T	$	4
5 $5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5	E	U	%	5
6 $6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6	F	V	&	6
7 $7	G	W	'	7	G	W	'	7	G	W	'	7	G	W	'	7
8 $8	H	X	(	8	H	X	(	8	H	X	(	8	H	X	(	8
9 $9	I	Y	)	9	I	Y	)	9	I	Y	)	9	I	Y	)	9
10 $A	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:	J	Z	*	:
11 $B	K	[	+	;	K	[	+	;	K	[	+	;	K	[	+	;
12 $C	L	\	,	<	L	\	,	<	L	\	,	<	L	\	,	<
13 $D	M	]	-	=	M	]	-	=	M	]	-	=	M	]	-	=
14 $E	N	^	.	>	N	^	.	>	N	^	.	>	N	^	.	>
15 $F	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?	O	_	/	?

Table 7. ASCII Screen Character Set

THE LOW-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (LO-RES) MODE

In the Low-Resolution Graphics mode, the Apple presents the contents of the same 1,024 locations of memory as is on the Text mode, but in a different format. In this mode, each byte of memory is displayed not as an ASCII character, but as two colored blocks, stacked one atop the other. The screen can show an array of blocks 40 wide and 48 high. Each block can be any of sixteen colors. On a black-and-white television set, The colors appear as patterns of grey and white dots.

Since each byte in the page of memory for Low-Resolution Graphics represents two blocks on the screen, stacked vertically, each byte is divided into two equal sections, called (appropriately enough) "nybbles". Each nybble can hold a value from zero to 15. The value which is in the lower nybble of the byte determines the color for the upper block of that byte on the screen, and the value which is in the upper nybble determines the color for the lower block on the screen, and the value which is in the upper nybble determines the color for the lower block on the screen. The colors are numbered zero to 15, see table 8.

Colors may vary from television to television, particularly on those without hue controls. You can adjust the tint of the colors by adjusting the COLOR TRIM control on the right edge of the apple board.

So, a byte containing the hexadecimal value $D8 would appear on the screen as a brown block on top of a yellow block. Using decimal arithmetic, the color of the lower block is determined by the remainder.

Figure 2 is a map of the Apple's display in Low-Resolution Graphics mode, with the memory location addresses for each block on the screen.

Since the Low-Resolution Graphics screen displays the same area in memory as is used for the Text screen, interesting things happen if you switch between the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics modes. For example, if the screen is in the Low-Resolution Graphics mode and is full of colored blocks, and then the TEXT/GRAPHICS screen switch is thrown to the Text mode, the screen will be filled with seemingly random text characters, sometimes inverse or flashing. Similarly, a screen full of test when viewed in Low-Resolution Graphics mode appears as long horizontal grey, pink, green or yellow bars separated by randomly colored blocks.

Table 8: Low-Resolution Graphics Colors

Decimal	Hex	Color	Decimal	Hex	Color
0	$0	Black	8	$8	Brown
1	$1	Magenta	9	$9	Orange
2	$2	Dark Blue	10	$A	Grey 2
3	$3	Purple	11	$B	Pink
4	$4	Dark Green	12	$C	Light Green
5	$5	Grey 1	13	$D	Yellow
6	$6	Medium Blue	14	$E	Aquamarine
7	$7	Light Blue	15	$F	White

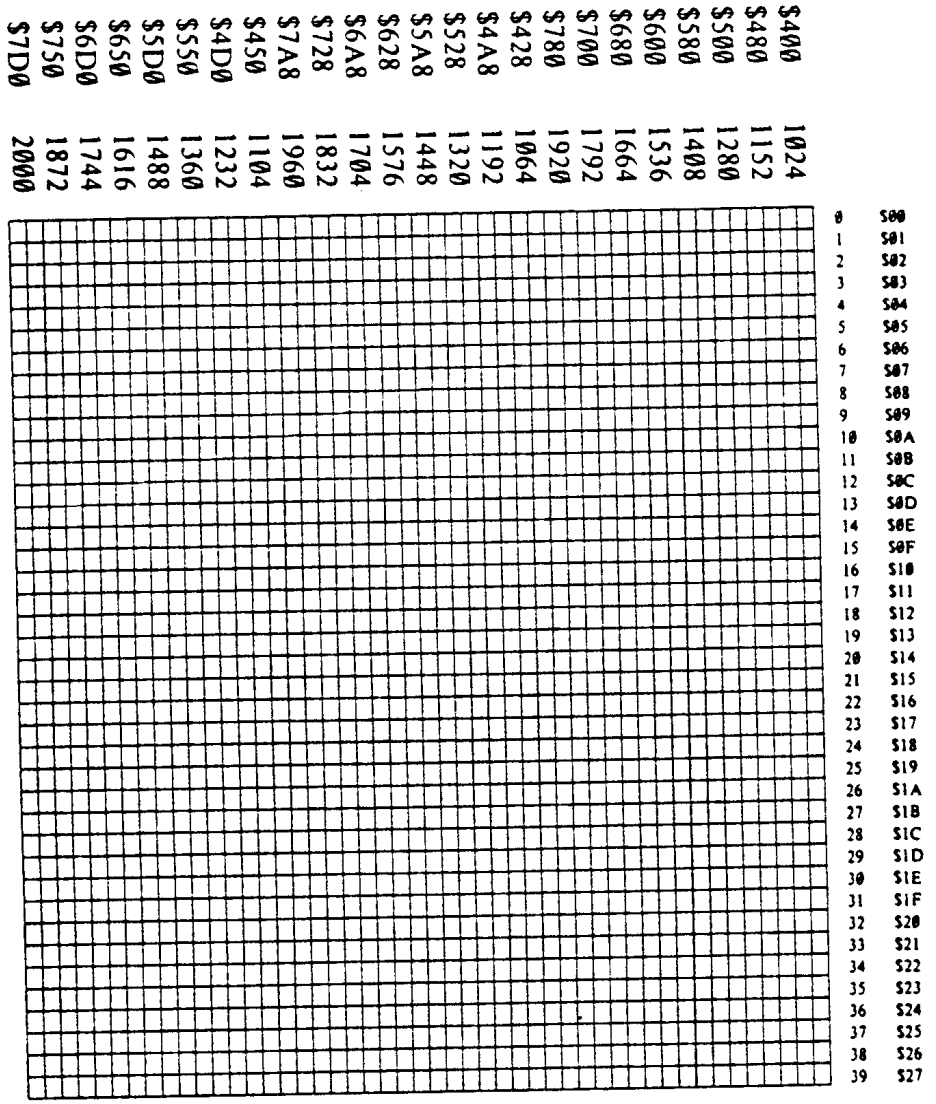


Figure 2. Map of the Low-Resolution Graphics Mode

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

THE HIGH-RESOLUTION GRAPHICS (HI-RES) MODE

The Apple has a second type of graphics display, called High-Resolution Graphics ("HIRES"). When your Apple is in the High-Resolution Graphics mode, it can display 53,760 dots in a matrix 280 dots wide and 192 dots high. The screen can display black, white, violet, green, red, and blue dots, although there are some limitations concerning the color of individual dots.

The High-Resolution Graphics mode takes its data from an 8,192-byte area of memory , usually called a "picture buffer". There are two separate picture buffers: one for the primary page and one for the secondary page. Both of these buffers are independent of and separate from the memory areas used for Text and Low-Resolution Graphics. The primary page picture buffer for the High-Resolution Graphics mode begins at memory location number 8192 and extends up to location number 16383; the secondary page picture buffer follows on the heels of the first at memory location number 16384, extending up to location number 24575. For those of you with sixteen fingers, the primary page resides from $2000 to $3FFF and the secondary page follows in succession at $4000 to $5FFF. If your Apple is equipped with 16k (16,384 bytes) or less of memory, then the secondary page is inaccessible to you; if its memory size is less than 16k, then the entire High-Resolution Graphics mode is unavailable to you.

Each dot on the screen represents one bit from the picture buffer. Seven of the eight bits in each byte are displayed on the screen, with the remaining bit used to select the colors of the dots in that byte. Forty bytes are displayed on each line of the screen. The least significant bit (first bit) of the first byte in the line is displayed on the left edge of the screen, followed by the second bit, then the third, etc. The most significant (eight) bit is not displayed. Then follows the first bit of the next byte, and so on. A total of 280 dots are displayed on each of the 192 lines of the screen.

On a blank-and white-monitor or TV set, the dots whose corresponding bits are "On" (or equal to 1) appear white; the dots whose corresponding bits are "off" or (equal to 0) appear black. On a color monitor or TV, it is not so simple. If a bit is "OFF", its corresponding dot will always be black. If a bit is "ON" however, its color will depend upon the position of that dot on the screen. If the dot is in the leftmost column on the screen, called "column 0", or in any even-numbered column, then it will appear violet. If the dot is in the rightmost column (column 279) or any odd-numbered column then it will appear green. If two dots are placed side-by-side, they will both appear white. If the undisplayed bit of a byte is turned on, then the colors blue and red are substituted for violet and green, respectively. Thus, there are six colors available in the High-Resoltion Graphics mode, subject to the following limitations:

1) Dots in even columns must be black, violet, or blue.

2) Dots in odd columns must be black, green, or red.

3) Each byte must be either a violet/green byte or a blue/red byte. It is not possible to mix green and blue, violet and blue, or violet and red in the

same byte.

4) Two colored dots side by side always appear white, even if they are different bytes.

5) On European-modified Apples, these rules apply but the colors generated in the High-Resolution Graphics mode may differ.

Figure 3 shows the Apple's display screen in High-Resolution Graphics mode with the memory addresses of each line on the screen.

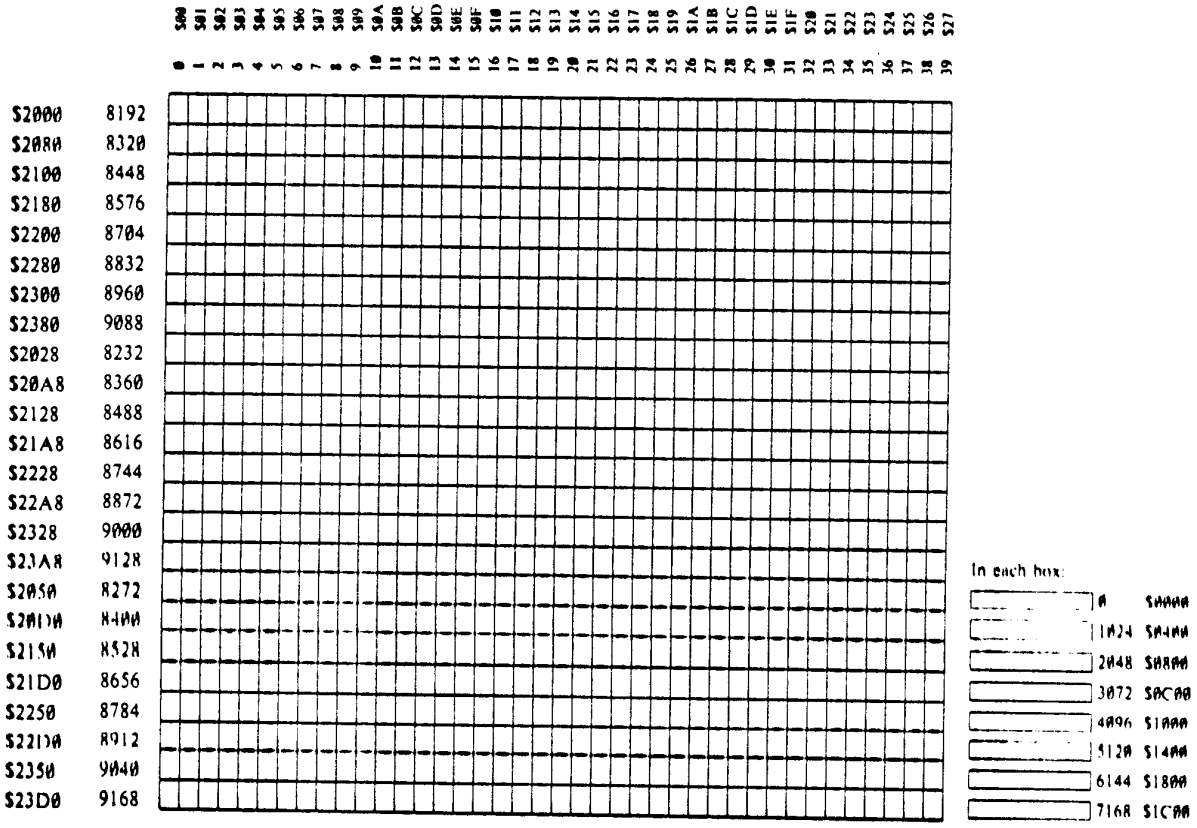


Figure 3. Map of the High-Resolution Graphics Screen

EURAPPLE (50 HZ) MODIFICATION

APPLE 11's can be modified to generate a video signal compatible with the CCIR standard used in many European countries. To make this modification, just cut the two X-shaped pads on the right edge of the board about nine inches from the back of the board, and solder together the three O-shaped pads in the same locations(See photo 5). You can then connect the video connector of your Apple to a European standard closed-circuit black-and-white or color video monitor. If you wish, you can obtain a "Eurocolor" encoder to convert the video signal into a PAL or SECAM standard color television signal suitable for use with any European television receiver. The encoder is a small printed circuit board which plugs into the rightmost peripheral slot (slot 7) in the Apple and connects to the single video output pin.

THE EUROPEAN MODIFICATION IS NOT COMPLETE AND WE DO NOT SUPPORT OR RECOMMEND MODIFICATION OF APPLES FOR EUROPEAN TELEVISION SIGNALS.

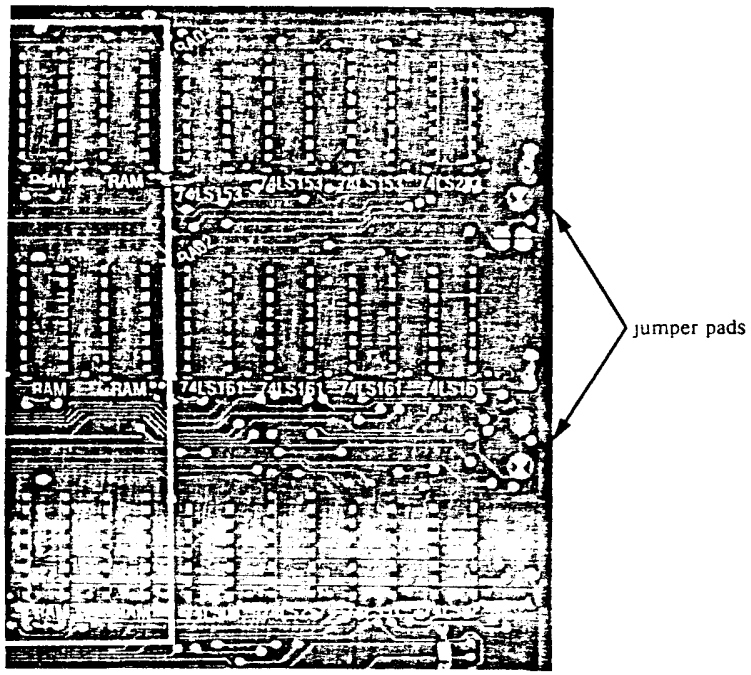


Photo 5. Eurapple (50 hz) Jumper Pads.

THE KEYBOARD

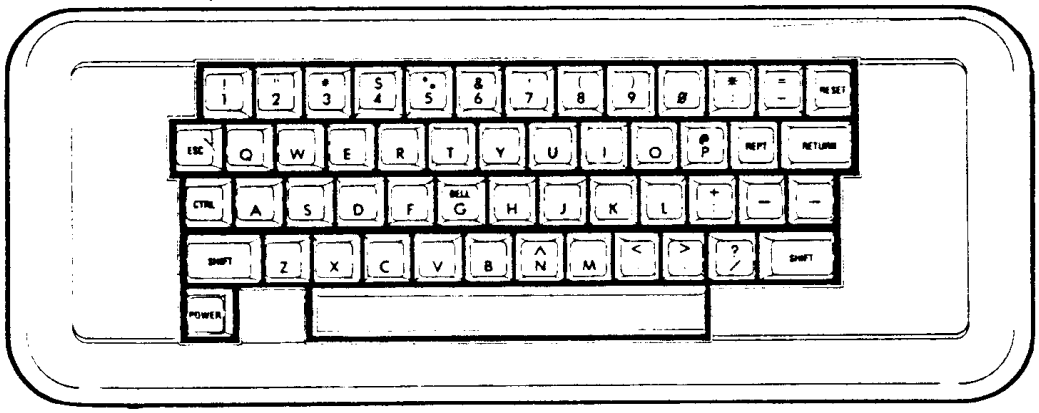
The Apple Keyboard

Number of Keys:	52
Coding:	Upper Case ASCII
Number of codes:	91
Output:	Seven bits, plus strobe
Power requirements:	+5v at 120mA −12v at 50mA
Rollover:	2 key
Special keys:	CTRL ESC RESET REPT ← →

Memory mapped locations:

	Hex	Decimal	
Data	$C000	49152	-16384
Clear	$C010	49168	-16368

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



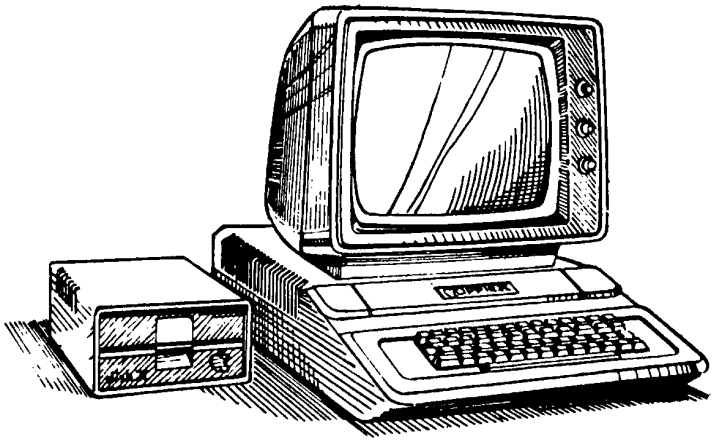
"Photo" 3. The Apple Keyboard.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 3
KEYBOARD



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

KEYBOARD

Theory of Operation

The APPLE 11 has a built-in 52-key typewriter-like which communications using the American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII)*. Ninety-one of the 96 upper-case ASCII characters can be generated directly by the keyboard. Table 2 shows the keys on the keyboard and their associated ASCII codes. Photo 3 is a diagram of the keyboard.

The keyboard is electrically connected to the main circuit board by a 16-conductor cable with plugs at each end that plug into standard integated circuit sockets. One end of this cable is connected to the keyboard, the other end plugs into the APPLE board's keyboard connector, near the very front edge of the board, under the keyboard itself. The electrical specifications for this connector are given in Chapter 2.

The keyboard sends seven bits of information which together form one character. These seven bits, along with another signal which indicates when a key has been pressed, are available to most programs as the contents of a memory location. Programs can read the current state of the keyboard by reading the contents of this location. When you press a key on the keyboard, the value in the location becomes 128 or greater, and the particular value it assumes is the numeric code for the character which was typed. Table 3 shows the ASCII characters and their associated numeric codes. The location will hold this one value until you press another key, or until your program tells the memory location to forget the character it's holding.

Once your program has accepted and understood a keypress, it should tell the keyboard's memory location to "release" the character it is holding and prepare to receive a new one. Your program can do this by referencing another memory location. When you reference this other location, the value contained in the first location will drop below 128. This value will stay low until you press another key. This action is called "clearing the keyboard strobe". Your program can either read or write to the special memory location; the data which are written to or read from that location are irrelevant. It is the mere reference to the location which clears the keyboard strobe. Once you have cleared the keyboard strobe, you can still recover the code for the key which was last pressed by adding 128 (hexadecimal $80) to the value in the keyboard location.

Table 11 shows the special memory locations used by the keyboard:

The RESET key at the upper right-hand corner does not generate an ASCII code, but instead is directly connected to the microprocessor. When this key is pressed, all processing stops. When the key is released, the computer starts a reset cycle.

When you turn your APPLE'S power switch ON or press and release the RESET key, the APPLE'S 6502 microprocessor initiates a RESET cycle. It begins by jumping into a subroutine in the APPLE'S Monitor ROM. In the two different versions of the ROM, the Monitor ROM and the Autostart ROM, the RESET cycle does very different things.

The CTRL and SHIFT keys generate no codes by themselves, but only alter the codes produced by other keys.

The REPT key, if pressed alone, produces a duplicate of the last code that was generated. If you press and hold down the REPT key while you are holding down a character key, it will act as if you were pressing that key repeatedly at a rate of 10 presses each second. This repetition will cease when you release either the character key or REPT.

The ESC key, when pressed causes the APPLE'S input subroutines to go into an escape mode. In this mode, eleven keys have separate meanings, called "escape codes". When you press one of these eleven keys, the APPLE will perform the function associated with that key. After it has performed the function, The APPLE will either continue or terminate escape mode, depending upon which escape code was performed. If you press any key in escape mode which is not an escape code, then that keypress will be ignored and escape mode will be terminated. The APPLE recognizes eleven escape codes, eight of which are pure cursor moves, which simply move the cursor without altering the screen or the input line, and three of which are screen clear codes, which simply blank part or all of the screen.

The backspace key <---- when pressed moves the cursor over the printed text and deletes unwanted chars. This is extremely useful when correcting a typographical error.

The RETYPE key ----> when pressed has the same effect as typing the character which is under the cursor. This is extremely useful for re-entering the remainder of a line which you have backspaced over to correct a typographical error.

Table 2: Keys and Their Associated ASCII Codes

Key	Alone	CTRL	SHIFT	Both	Key	Alone	CTRL	SHIFT	Both
space	$A0	$A0	$A0	$A0	RETURN	$8D	$8D	$8D	$8D
0	$B0	$B0	$B0	$B0	G	$C7	$87	$C7	$87
1!	$B1	$B1	$A1	$A1	H	$C8	$88	$C8	$88
2"	$B2	$B2	$A2	$A2	I	$C9	$89	$C9	$89
3#	$B3	$B3	$A3	$A3	J	$CA	$8A	$CA	$8A
4$	$B4	$B4	$A4	$A4	K	$CB	$8B	$CB	$8B
5%	$B5	$B5	$A5	$A5	L	$CC	$8C	$CC	$8C
6&	$B6	$B6	$A6	$A6	M	$CD	$8D	$DD	$9D
7'	$B7	$B7	$A7	$A7	N^	$CE	$8E	$DE	$9E
8(	$B8	$B8	$A8	$A8	O	$CF	$8F	$CF	$8F
9)	$B9	$B9	$A9	$A9	P@	$D0	$90	$C0	$80
:*	$BA	$BA	$AA	$AA	Q	$D1	$91	$D1	$91
;+	$BB	$BB	$AB	$AB	R	$D2	$92	$D2	$92
,<	$AC	$AC	$BC	$BC	S	$D3	$93	$D3	$93
-=	$AD	$AD	$BD	$BD	T	$D4	$94	$D4	$94
.>	$AE	$AE	$BE	$BE	U	$D5	$95	$D5	$95
/?	$AF	$AF	$BF	$BF	V	$D6	$96	$D6	$96
A	$C1	$81	$C1	$81	W	$D7	$97	$D7	$97
B	$C2	$82	$C2	$82	X	$D8	$98	$D8	$98
C	$C3	$83	$C3	$83	Y	$D9	$99	$D9	$99
D	$C4	$84	$C4	$84	Z	$DA	$9A	$DA	$9A
E	$C5	$85	$C5	$85	→	$88	$88	$88	$88
F	$C6	$86	$C6	$86	←	$95	$95	$95	$95
					ESC	$9B	$9B	$9B	$9B

All codes are given in hexadecimal. To find the decimal equivalents, use Table 3.

Table 3: The ASCII Character Set

Decimal:	Hex:	128 $80	144 $90	160 $A0	176 $B0	192 $C0	208 $D0	224 $E0	240 $F0
0	$0	nul	dle		0	@	P		p
1	$1	soh	dc1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
2	$2	stx	dc2	"	2	B	R	b	r
3	$3	etx	dc3	#	3	C	S	c	s
4	$4	eot	dc4	$	4	D	T	d	t
5	$5	enq	nak	%	5	E	U	e	u
6	$6	ack	syn	&	6	F	V	f	v
7	$7	bel	etb	'	7	G	W	g	w
8	$8	bs	can	(	8	H	X	h	x
9	$9	ht	em	)	9	I	Y	i	y
10	$A	lf	sub	*	:	J	Z	j	z
11	$B	vt	esc	+	;	K	[	k	{
12	$C	ff	fs	,	<	L	\	l	|
13	$D	cr	gs	-	=	M	]	m	}
14	$E	so	rs	.	>	N	^	n	~
15	$F	si	us	/	?	O	_	o	rub

Table 1: Keyboard Special Locations

Location: Hex	Decimal		Description
$C000	49152	-16384	Keyboard Data
$C010	49168	-16368	Clear Keyboard Strobe

1C

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

KEYBOARD VARITIES

The first Apple keyboard was built by Datanetics, assembly number 01-0425. The built-in keyboard was built around a MM5740 monolithic keyboard decoder ROM. The inputs to this Rom, on pins 4 through 12 and 22 through 31, are connected to the matrix of keyswitches on the keyboard. The outputs of this Rom are buffered by a 7404 and are connected to the Apple's Keyboard Connector.

The keyboard decoder rapidly scans through the array of keys on the keyboard, looking for one which is pressed. This scanning action is controlled by the free-running oscillator made up of three sections of a 7400 at keyboard location U4. The speed of this oscillation is controlled by C6, R6, and R7 on the keyboard's printed -circuit board. This keyboard is non-serivable.

The second Apple keyboard was also built by Datanetics, assembly number 01-0551-0. The keyboard comes with a redesigned keyboard made up of two parts, mechanical assembly (power light and 52 key switch matrix), and encoder board (contains all electronic components). This style uses the same key switch that was used on the old style keyboard (Assembly #01-0425). The replacement procedure for this key switch is found in Appendix D.

The third Apple keyboard was built by the keyboard Company which is located in Garden Grove, California. This style uses a new key switch whose replacement procedure is described in Appendix D. This style does not require the aluminum bracket stand-offs. This keyboard is refered to as an ALPS switchable with low profile or sculpured key caps. It also contains an encoder board seperate from the mechanical assembly.

The fourth Apple keyboard was also built by the Keyboard Company. This keyboard is described as a bucket keyboard. It also is a two piece keyboard with a detachable encoder board and a non-repairable mechanical assembly. This keyboard offers two types of keycaps low profile and sculpured.

All the keyboards described above use the same encoder board except the first keyboard built by Datanetics. Each keyboard is built around a AY-5-3600 keyboard encoder Rom. The inputs to this ROM, on pins 17 through 26 and 36 through 40 are connected to the matrix of keyswitches on the keyboard. The outputs of this ROM are buffered by a 74LS04 and are connected to the Apple keyboard connector.

The keyboard decoder rapidly scans through the array of keys on the keyboard, looking for one which has been pressed. This scanning action is controlled by the free running oscillator made up of three sections of a 74LS00 at location B3 on the separate encoder board. The speed of this oscillation is controlled by C7, R7, and R8 on the encoder board.

ENCODER BOARD

Theory of Operation:

The keyboard is a scanning encoder scheme. It uses a clock formed by 3 gates from B4 (74LS00), and 2 resistor with a capacitor to generate a 75 KHZ scan rate. The scan sequences through all of it's inputs looking for a transition. When it finds a transition it takes the X,Y co-ordinance of the key pressed and produces an ASCII character. This character corresponds to the key pressed.

The keyboard is also capable of repeating a particular character by activating the REPEAT key. This causes the some character to output with the strobe pulsing at 1 HZ or 1 character per/second. This repeat circuit is formed by a LM555 Monolithic Timer chip. It forms a square wave clock that pulses the data strobe line on and off for each repeat or a desired character.

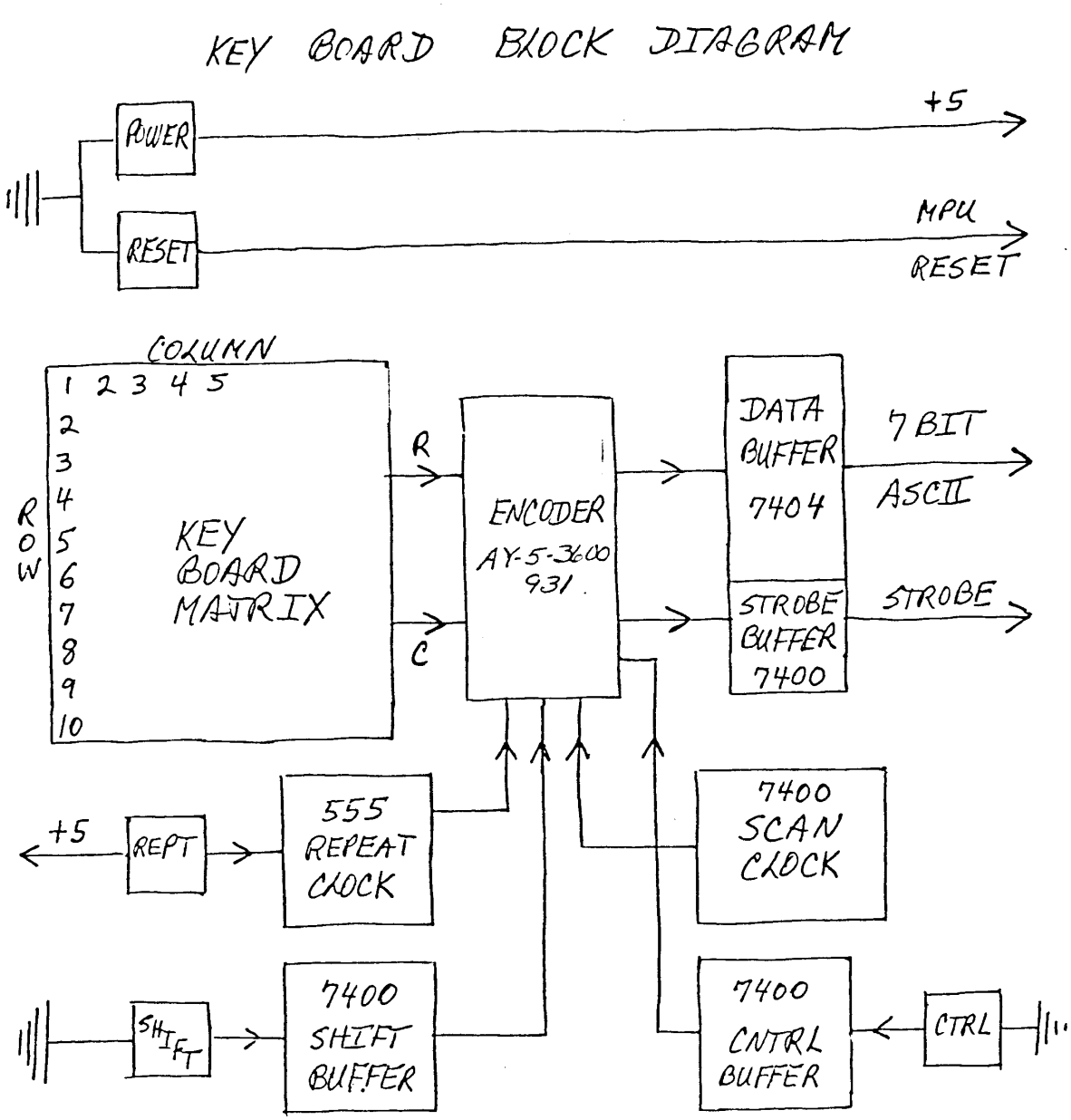
The Encoder is a AY-5-3600-931 MOS chip which converts X,Y co-ordinates into ASCII Characters. It has inputs for Scan Clock, Repeat Clock, and Control Key functions. The output is held in the enable mode by pulling it to ground.

The keys are arranged in a matrix that has 5 columns and 10 rows. Each key on the board is a cross point switch which shorts a unique X,Y location on the matrix. Each key has it's own X and Y. This produces a unique address for each key. The encoder sequences through it's key addresses until an X causes a Y to go to logic 1. When this occurs we have a key press and the encoders current address in the sequence corresponds to a data byte which is the ASCII Character desired. It then presents this ASCII Character as it's output and generates a strobe.

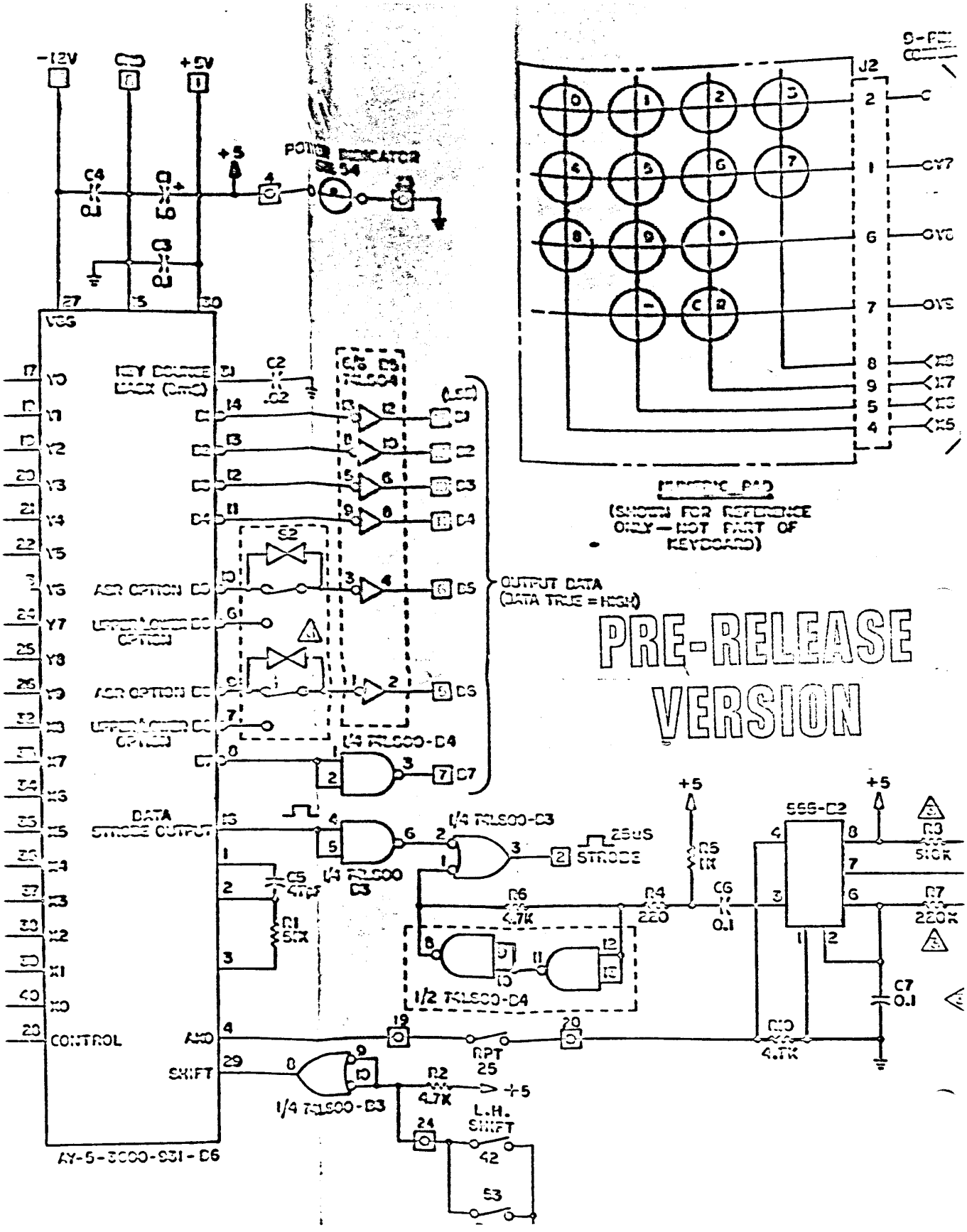
When a Shift or Control Character is desired the appropriate CTRL or SHIFT key is pressed in conjunction with the selected key value. This alters the addressing of the encoder to produce the character with the bit pattern of a control character. The SHIFT key and CTRL key give us the function of many keys with few keep switches.

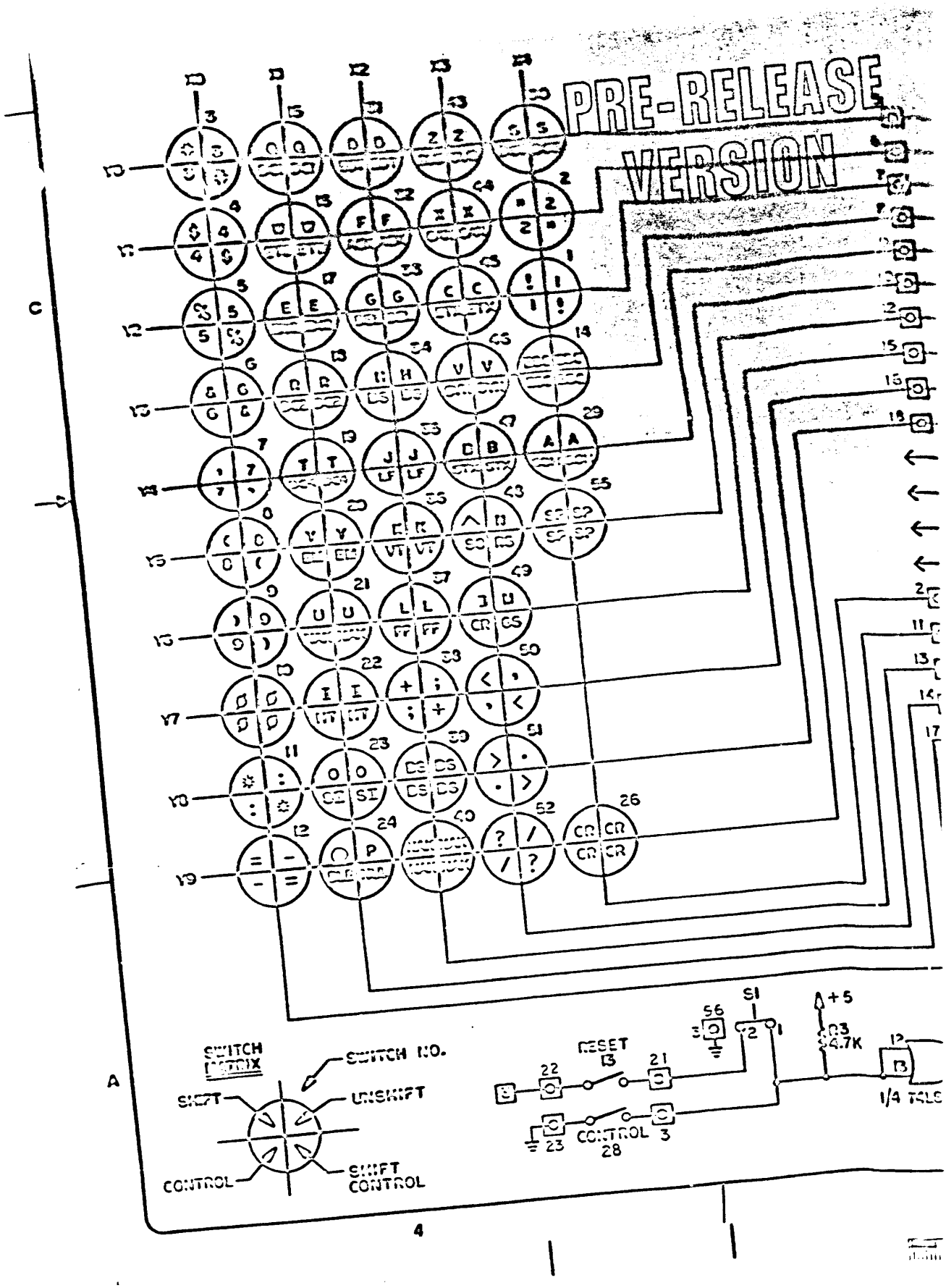
On the input to the encoder there is a debounce circuit. This circuit prevents the same key from being read two or more times. If it see's a second key press of the same key too soon it will ignore that signal. This delay in sampling is approximately the time it takes to depress and release a key switch. When a key is bouncing it will give a transition on the way down when pressed and also on the way up when it springs back into place. This sampling is quick enough that a ligitimate multipule character will be accepted.

When typing on the Apple II keyboard the fastest human operator will never loose a character as the key board has N Key roll over. This means that the keyboard is scaned at a faster rate than a human typist can generate characters.



PRE-RELEASE VERSION





AUTOSTART ROM/MONITOR ROM

All Apple 11 Plus Systems include the Autostart Monitor ROM. All other Apple systems do not contain the Autostart ROM, but instead have the Apple System Monitor ROM.This version of the ROM lacks some of the features present in the Autostart ROM, but also has some features which are not present in that ROM. The main differences in the two ROMS are listed below.

Editing Controls: The ESC-I,J,K, and M sequences, which move the cursor up, left, right, and down, respectively, are not available in the Old Monitor ROM.

Stop-List: The Stop-List feature (invoked by a CTRL S, which allows you to introduce a pause into the output of most BASIC or machine language programs or listings, is not available in the Old Monitor ROM.

The RESET cycle: When you first turn on your Apple or press RESET, the Old Monitor ROM will send you directly into the Apple System Monitor, instead of initiating a warm or cold start as described in AUTOSTART ROM RESET.

AUTOSTART ROM RESET

Apples with the Autostart ROM begin their RESET cycles by flipping the soft switches which control the video screen to display the full primary page of Text mode, with Low-Resolution Graphics mixed mode lurking behind the veil of text. It then opens the text window to its full size, drops the output cursor to the bottom of the screen, and sets Normal video mode. Then it sets the COUT and KEYLN switches to use the APPLE'S internal keyboard and video display as the standard input and output devices. It flips annunciators 0 and 1 OFF and annunciators 2 and 3 ON the Game I/O connector, clears the keyboard strobe, turns off any active I/O Expansion ROM and sounds a "beep!".

These actions are performed every time you press and release the RESET key on your APPLE. At this point, the Autostart ROM peeks into two special locations in memory to see if it's been RESET before or if the APPLE has just been turned on, then the Autostart ROM performs a "cold start" otherwise, it does a "warm start".

1)Cold Start. On a freshly activated Apple, RESET cycle continues by clearing the screen and displaying "APPLE 11" top and center. It then sets up the special locations in memory to tell itself that it's been powered up and RESET. Then it starts looking through the rightmost seven slots in your APPLE'S backplane, looking for a Disk 11 Controller Card. It starts the search with Slots 7 and continues down to Slot 1. If it finds a disk controller card, then to proceeds to bootstrap the Apple Disk Operating System (Dos) from the diskette in the disk drive attached to the controller card it discovered. You can find a descripition of the disk bootstrapping procedure in Do's and Don't of DOS. Apple part number A2L0012, page 11.

If the Autostart ROM cannot find a Disk 11 controller card, or you press RESET again before the disk booting procedure has completed, then the RESET cycle will continue with a "lukewarm start". It will initialize and jump into the language which is installed on ROM on your APPLE. For a Revision 0 APPLE, either without an Applesoft 11 firmware card or with such a card with

its controlling switch in the DOWN position, the Autostart ROM will start Apple Interger Basic. For Apple 11-plus systems, or Revision 0 Apple 11s with the Applesoft 11 Firmware card with the switch in the UP position, The Autostart ROM will begin Applesoft 11 Floating-Point BASIC.

2)Warm Start. If you have an Autostart ROM which has already performed a cold start cycle, then each time you press and release the RESET key, you will be returned to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

"OLD MONITOR" ROM RESET

A RESET cycle in the Apple 11 Monitor ROM begins by setting Normal video mode, a full screen of Primary Page text with the Color Graphics mixed mode behind it, a fully-opened text window, and Apple's standard keyboard and video screen as the standard input and output devices. It sounds a "beep!", the cursor leaps to the bottom line of the uncleared text screen, and you find yourself facing an asterisk (*) prompt and talking to the Apple System Monitor.

SUBROUTINES

Almost every program and language on the APPLE needs some sort of input from the keyboard, and some way to print information on the screen. There is a set of subroutines stored in the APPLE'S ROM which handle most of the standard input and output from all programs and languages on the APPLE.

The subroutines in the APPLE'S ROM which perform these input and output functions are called by various names. These names were given to the subroutines by their authors when they were written. The APPLE itself does not recognize or remember the names of its own machine language subroutines, but it's convenient for us to call these subroutines by their given names.

Standard Output:

The standard output subroutine is called COUT. COUT will display upper-case letters, numbers, and symbols on the screen in either Normal or Inverse mode. It will ignore control characters except RETURN, the bell character, the line feed character, and the backspace character.

The COUT subroutine maintains its own invisible "output cursor"* (the position at which the next character is to be placed). Each time COUT is called, it places one character on the screen at the current cursor position, replacing whatever character was there, and moves the cursor one space to the right. If the cursor is bumped off the right edge of the screen, then COUT shifts the cursor down to the first postion on the next line. If the cursor passes the bottom line of the screen, the screen "scrolls" up one line and the cursor is set to the first postion on the newly blank bottom line.

When a RETURN character is sent to COUT, it moves the cursor to the first postion of the next line. If the cursor falls off the bottom of the screen, the screen scrolls as described above.

The Stop-List Feature:

When any program or language sends a RETURN code to COUT, COUT will take a quick peek at the keyboard. If you have typed a CTRL S since the last time Cout looked at the keyboard, then it will stop and wait for you to press another key. This is called the Stop-List Feature. This feature is not present on APPLES without the Autostart ROM. When you press another key, COUT will then output the RETURN code and proceed with normal output. The code of the key which you press to end the Stop-List mode is ignored unless it is a CTRL C. If it is, then COUT passes this character code back to the program or language which is sending output. This allows you to terminate a BASIC program or listing by typing CRTL C while you are in Stop-List mode.

A line feed character causes COUT to move its mythical output cursor down one line without and horizontal motion at all. As always, moving beyond the bottom of the screen causes the screen to scroll and the cursor remains at its same position on a fresh bottom line.

A backspace character moves the imaginary cursor one space to the left. If the cursor is bumped off the left edge, it is reset to the rightmost

position on the previous line. If there is no previous line (if the cursor was at the top of the screen), the screen does not scroll downwards, but instead the cursor is placed again at the rightmost position on the top line of the screen.

When Cout is sent a "bell" character (CTRL G), it does not change the screen at all, but instead produces a tone from the speaker. The tone has a frequency of 100 Hz and lasts for 1/10th of a second. The output cursor does not move for a bell character.

Standard Input:

There are actually two subroutines which are concerned with the gathering of standard input: RDKEY, which fetches a single keystroke from the keyboard, and GETLN, which accumulates a number of keystrokes into a chunk of information called an input line.

RDKEY:

The primary function of the RDKEY subroutine is to wait for the user to press a key on the keyboard, and then report back to the program which called it with the code for the key which was pressed. But while it does this, RDKEY also performs two other helpful tasks:

1).Input Prompting. When RDKEY is activated, the first thing it does is make visible the hidden output cursor. This accomplishes two things: it reminds the user that the APPLE is waiting for a key to be pressed, and it also associates the input it wants with a particular place on the screen. In most cases, the input prompt appears near a word or phase describing what is being requested by the particular program or language currently in use. The input cursor itself is a flashing representation of whatever character was at the position of the output cursor. Usually this is the blank character, so the input cursor most often appears to be a flashing square. When the user presses a key, RDKEY dutifully removes the input cursor and returns the value of the key which was pressed to the program which requested it. Remember that the output cursor is just a position on the screen, but the input cursor is a flashing character on the screen. They usually move in tandem and are rarely separated from each other, but when the input cursor disappears, the output cursor is still active.

2). Ramdon Number Seeding. While it waits for the user to press a key, RDKEY is continually adding 1 to a pair of numbers in memory. When a key is finally pressed, these two locations together represent a number from 0 to 65,535, the exact value of which is quite unpredictable. Many programs and languages use this number as the base of a random number generator. The two locations which are randomized during RDKEY are numbers 78 and 79 (hexadecimal $4E and $4F).

GETLN:

The vast majority of input to the APPLE is gathered into chunks called input lines. The subrountine in the APPLE'S ROM called GETLN requests an input line from the keyboard, and after getting one, returns to the program which called it. GETLN has many features and nuances, and it is good to be

familiar with the services it offers.

When called, GETLN first prints a prompting character, or "prompt". The Prompt helps you to identify which program has called GETLN requesting input. A prompt character of an asterisk (*) represents the System Monitor, a right caret (>) indicates Apple Integer BASIC, a right bracket (]) is the prompt for Applesoft 11 BASIC, and an exclamation point (!) is the hallmark of the APPLE Mini-Assembler. In addition, the question-mark prompt (?) is used by many programs and languages to indicate that a user program is requesting input. From your (the user) point of view, the Apple simply prints a prompt and displays an input cursor. As you type, the charcaters you type are printed on the screen and the cursor moves accordingly. When you press RETURN, the entire line is sent off to the program or language you are talking to, and you get another prompt.

Actually, what really happens is that after the prompt is printed, GETLN calls RDKEY, which displays an input cursor. When RDKEY returns with a keycode, GETLN stores that keycode in an input buffer and prints it on the screen where the input cursor was. It then calls RDKEY again. This continues until the user presses RETURN. When GETLN recieves a RETURN code from the keytboard, it sticks the RETURN code at the end of the input buffer, clears the remainder of the screen line the input cursor was on, and sends the RETURN code to COUT (see above). GETLN then returns to the program which called it. The program or language which requested input may now look at the entire line, all at once, as saved in the input buffer.

At any time while you are typing a line, you can type a CTRL X and cancel that entire line. GETLN will simply forget everything you have typed, print a backslash (\), skip to a new line, and display another prompt, allowing you to retype the line. Also, GETLN can handle a maximum of 255 characters in a line. If you exceed this limit, GETLN will cancel the entire line and you must start over. To warn you that you are approaching the limit, GETLN will sound a tone every keypress starting with the 249th character.

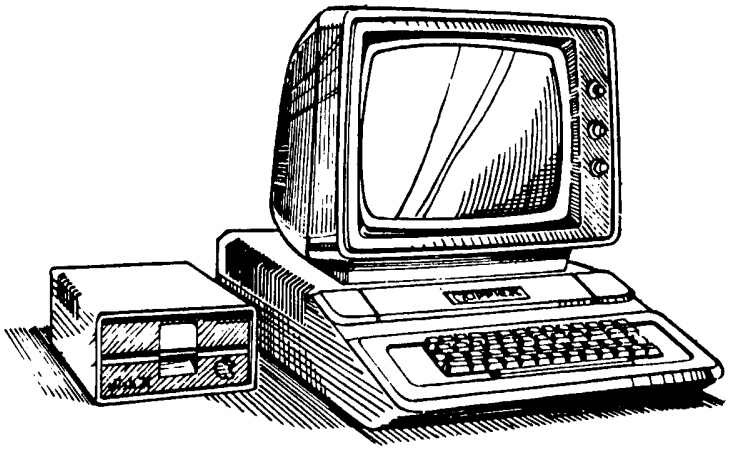
GETLN also allows you to edit and modify the line you are typing in order to correct simple typographical errors. A quick introduction to the standard editing functions and the use of the two arrow keys, <---- and ---->, appears in the section entitled Keyboard Theory.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 4
POWER SUPPLY



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

POWER SUPPLY

Theory of Operation

The metal box on the left side of the interior is the power supply. It supplies four volages +5v, -5.2v, +11.8v, and -12.0v. It is a high-frequency "switching" type power supply, with many protective features to ensure that there can be no imbalances between the different supplies. The main power cord for the computer plugs directly into the back of the power supply. The power on switch is also on the power supply itself, to protect you and your fingers from accidently becoming part of the high voltage power supply circuit.

The Apple power supply first converts the AC line voltage into a DC voltage and then uses this DC voltage to drive a high-frequency oscillator. The output of this oscillator is fed into a small transformer with many windings. The voltages on the secondary windings are then regulated to become the output voltages.

The +5 volt output voltage is compared to a reference voltage, and the difference error is fed back into the oscillator circuit. When the power supply's output starts to move out of its tolerances the frequency of the oscillator is altered and the volages return to their normal levels. If by chance one of the output voltages of the power supply is short-circuited a feed back circuit in the power supply stops the oscillator and cuts all output circuits. The power supply then pauses for about 1/2 second and then attempts to restart the oscillations. If the output is still shorted, it will stop and wait again. It will continue this cycle until the short circuit is removed or the power is turned off.

If the output connector of the power supply is disconnected from the Apple board, the power supply will notice this "no load" condition and effectively short-circuit itself. This activates the protection circuits described above, and cuts all power output. This pervents damage to the power supply's internals.

If one of the output volages leaves its tolerance range, due to any problen either within or external to the power supply, it will again shut itself down to prevent damage to the components on the Apple board. This insures that all voltages will either be correct and in porportion, or they will be shut off.

When one of the above fault conditions occurs, the internal protection circuits will stop the oscillations which drive the transformer. After a short while, the power supply will perform a restart cycle, and attempt to oscillate again. If the fault condition has not been removed, the supply will again shut down. This cycle can continue infinitely without damage to the power suply. Each time the oscillator shuts down and restarts, its frequency passes through the audible range and you can hear the power supply squeal and squeak. Thus, when a fault occurs, you will hear a steady "click click click" emanating from the power supply. This is your warning that something is wrong with one of the voltage outputs.

Under no circumtances should you apply more than 140 VAC to the input

of the transformer (or more than 280 VAC when the supply's switch is in the 220V position, if so equipped). Permanent damage to the supply will result.

THE APPLE POWER SUPPLY

Input Voltages: 107vac to 132vac
214vac to 264vac

Supply voltages: +5.0
+11.0
-12.0
+5.2

Power Consumption: 60 watts max.(full load)
79 watts max.(intermittent

Full Load Power Output:
+5v: 2.5amp
-5v: 250ma
+12v: 1.5amp(~2.5amp intermittent)
-12v: 250ma

Operating Temperture:
55c(131 degrees fareheit)

POWER SUPPLY VARITIES

Physical Description:

Four basic power supplies have been used on the Apple II since it was first introduced. Modifications and changes to the power supplies have been incorporated during the normal evolution of Apple II, which have made new part numbers necessary to identify modifications to each basic model. The four basic power supplies, modifications, changes and part numbers in order of production are:

Note: Apple supports all of the power supplies listed below except the first one which is being phased out. The RFI version is the only available new power supply.

1) Apple Power Supply (P/N 600--0026) (EM/N 600-9026)

The first power supply used in the Apple 11 computers was manufactured by Apple. A description on how the power supply functions is found in the theory portion of this chapter. To physically distinguish the first Apple power supply from the others note the toggle on/off switch on the outside of the case.

2) Apple Power Supply (P/N 605-5001) (EM/N 605-9001)

Designed and marketed by Apple Computer. Identified by the Apple Part number A2M001 on the back of the case. The case is Silver is color. On the back of the case indiciates UL recognition.

3) Astec Model AA11040 Standard (P/N 605-5703) (EM/N 605-9703)

Astec is a manufacturer of power supplies in Hong kong. The third power supply used in the Apple 11 computers was model 11040 built by Astec. The 11040 standard power supply was more cost effective and had a higher reliability rate than the Apple power supply. The physical difference can be seen in photo 2.

a. Switchable Version Astec Model AA11040 Standard (P/N 605-6001) (EM/N 605-9001)
Note the on/off switch and the black cover protecting the switchable 115v/230v switch. The model number AA 11040 is located on the power supply. The 11040 standard power supply is not U/L approved but U/L reconized.

4) Astec Model AA11040B (P/N 652-0337) (EM/N 652-9337)

European Version Astec Model AA11040B (P/N 699-0049) (EM/N 699-9049)

The fourth power supply which is model number 11040-B was built by Astec to meet U/L approval. Astec removed the outside 115v/230v switch and now uses jumpers on the PCB to determine whether it is to be a 115v or 230v power supply.

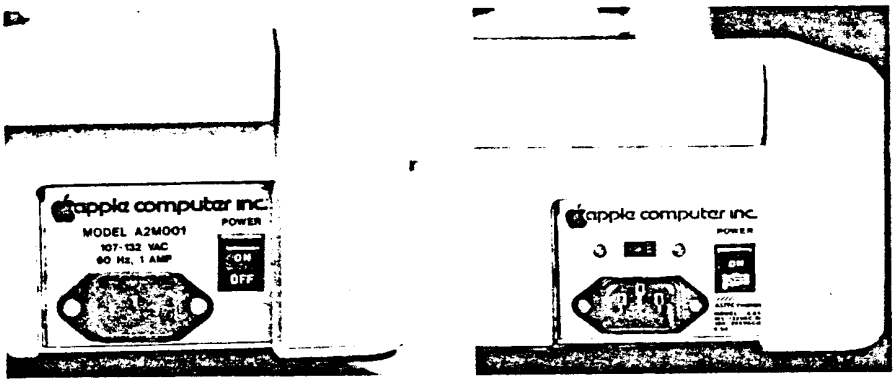
a) RFI Version Astec Model AA11040B:

110 volt (P/N 652-0337) (EM/N 652-9337)

220 volt (P/N 699-0049) (EM/N 699-9049)

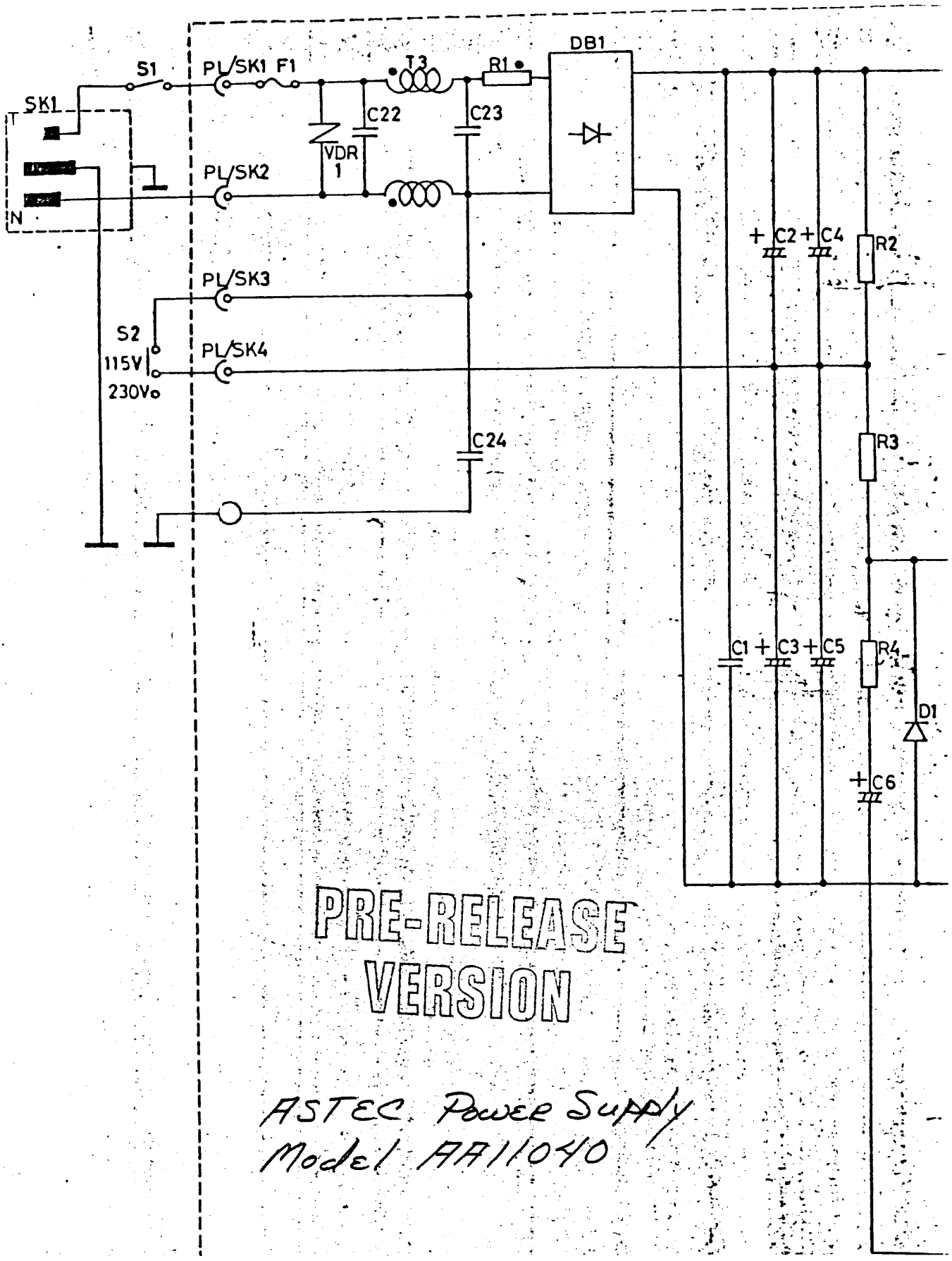
Astec Model AA11040B with Astec production numbers 55073241 through 55074240 and all AA11040B units beginning with 55079547 are RFI. Astec production numbers are stamped in the case on the left side of the unit. RFI units are also identified by a red dot on the back of the power supply.

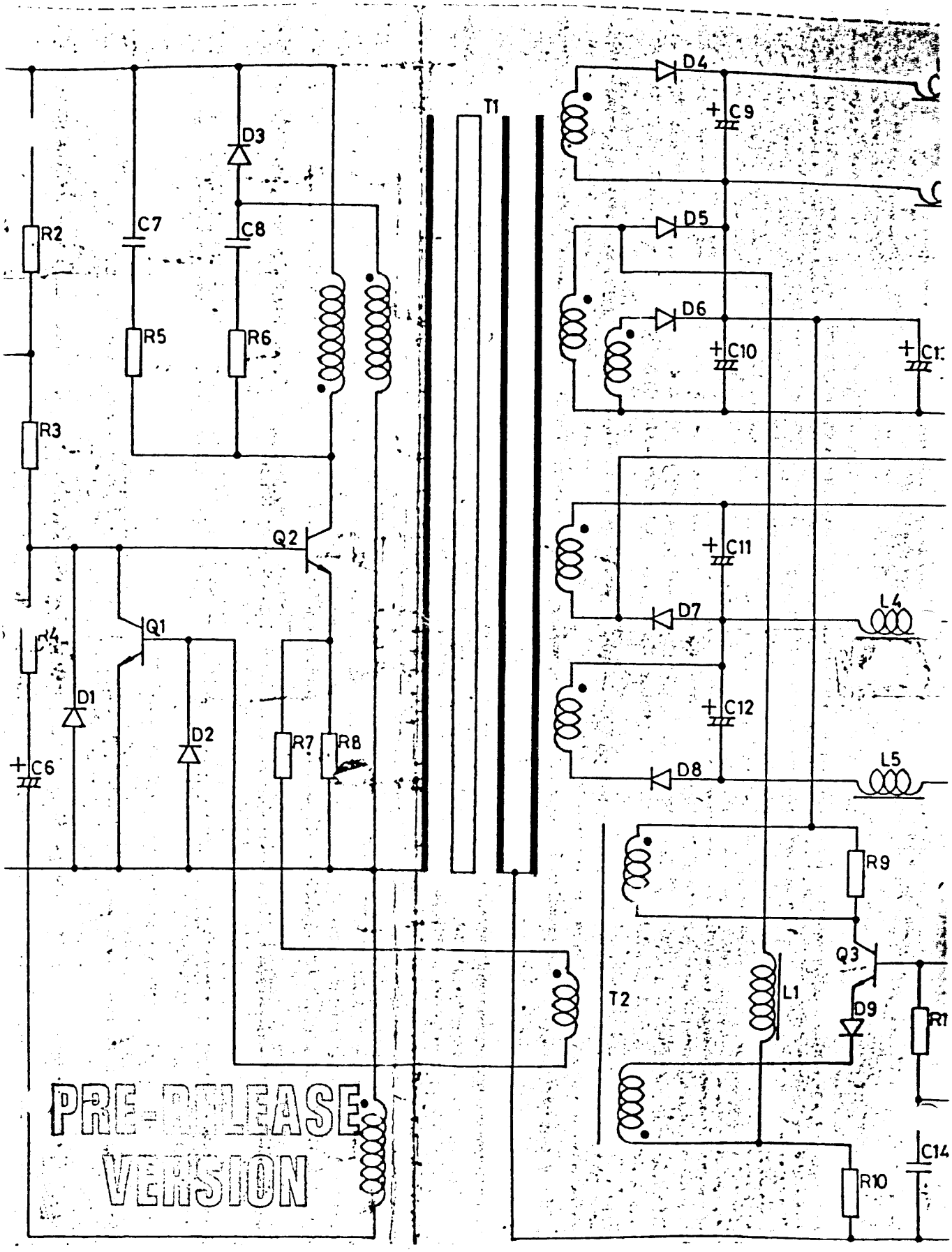
All RFI power supplies are UL Recognized.

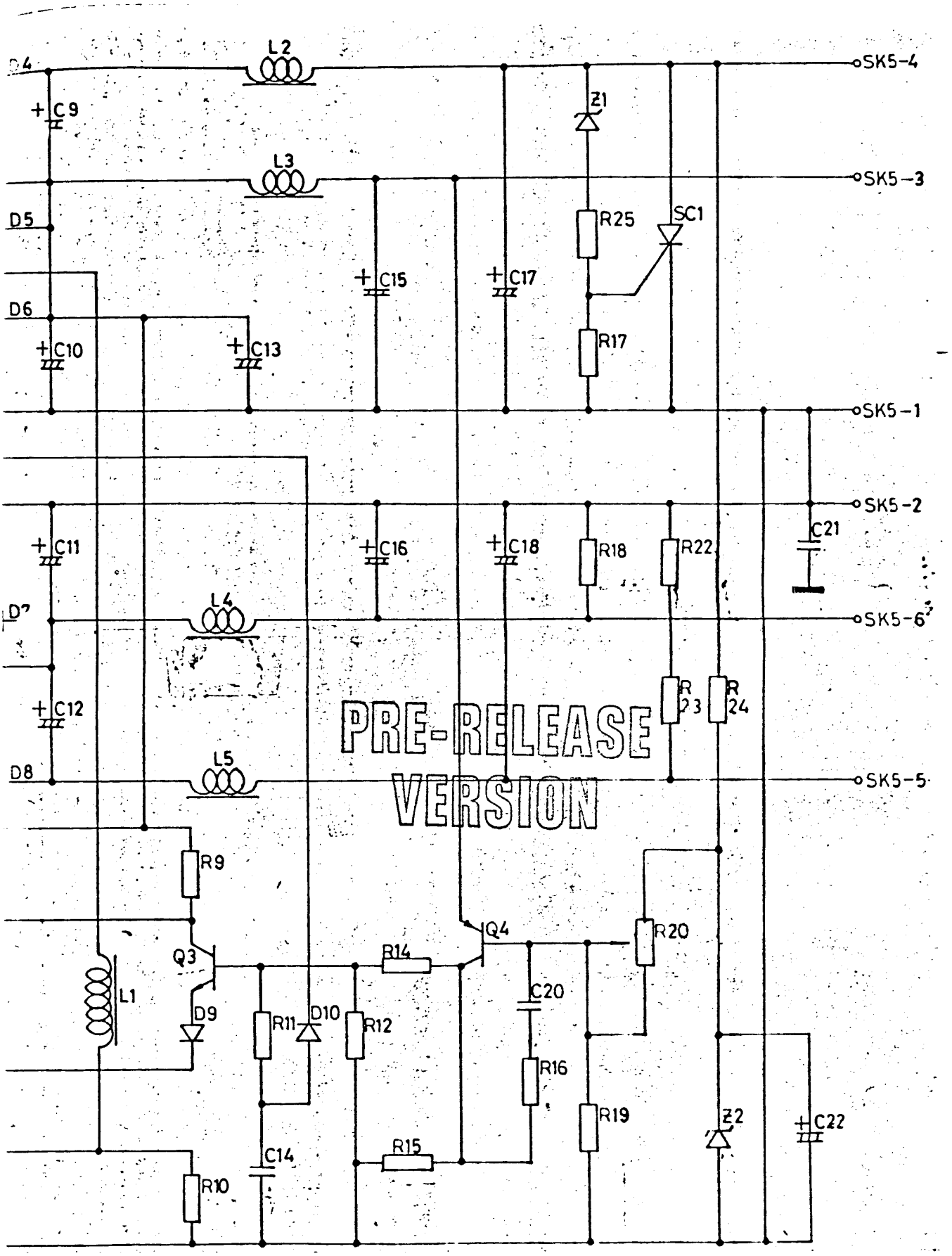


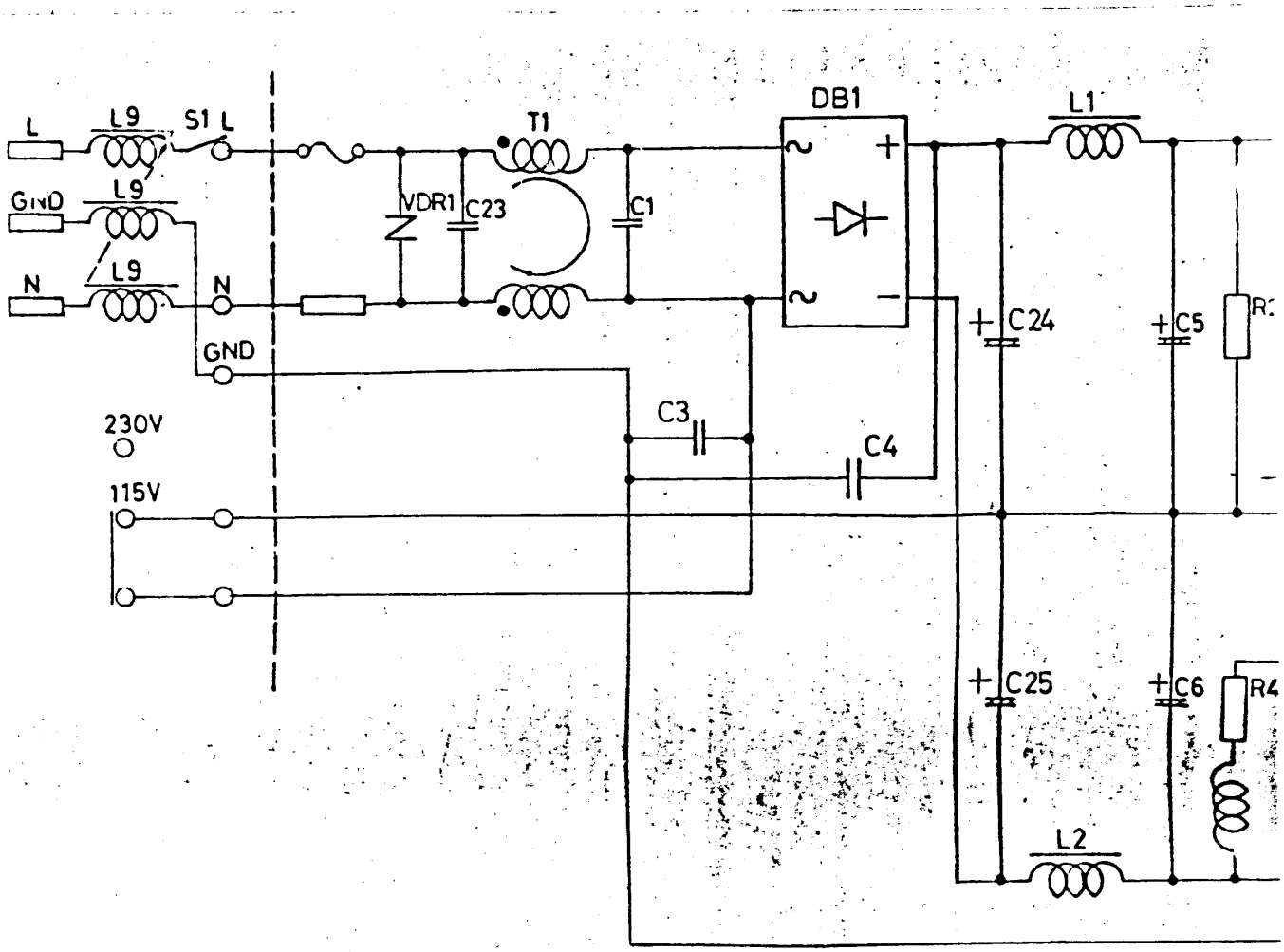
110 volt model 110/220 volt model

Photo 2. The back of the Apple Power Supply.





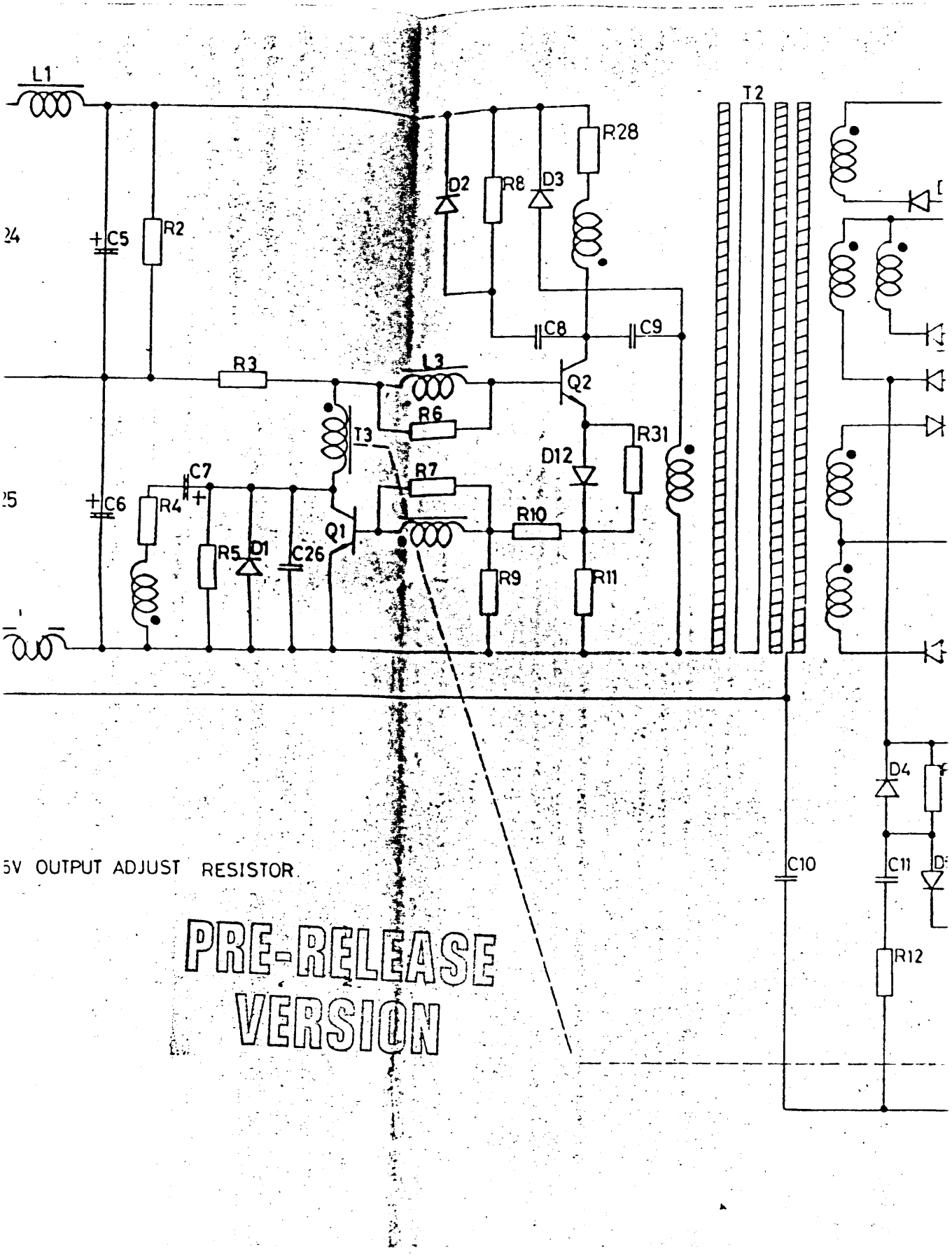


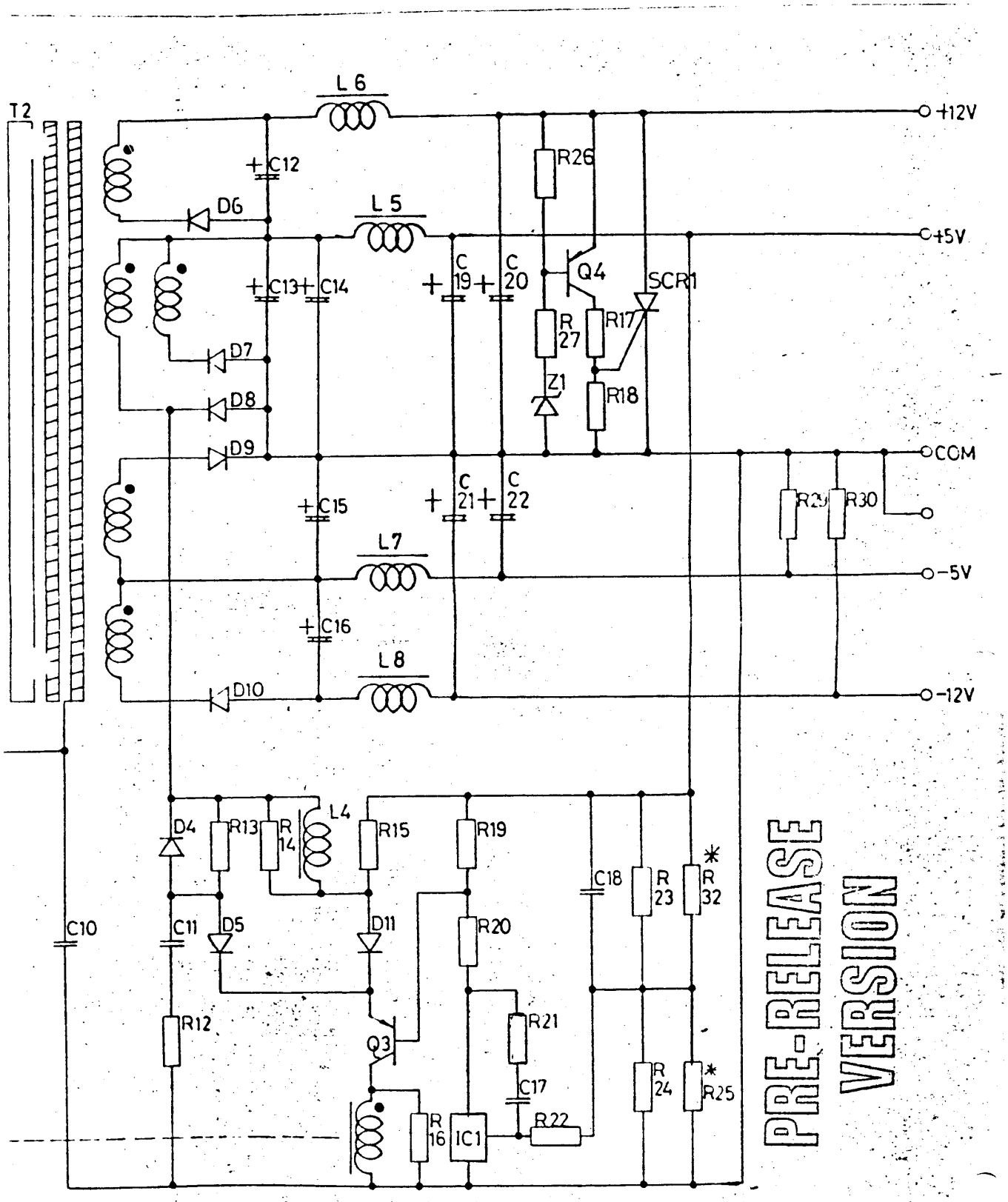


* R32 AND * R25 +5V OUTPUT ADJUST

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC Power Supply
Model AA11040B





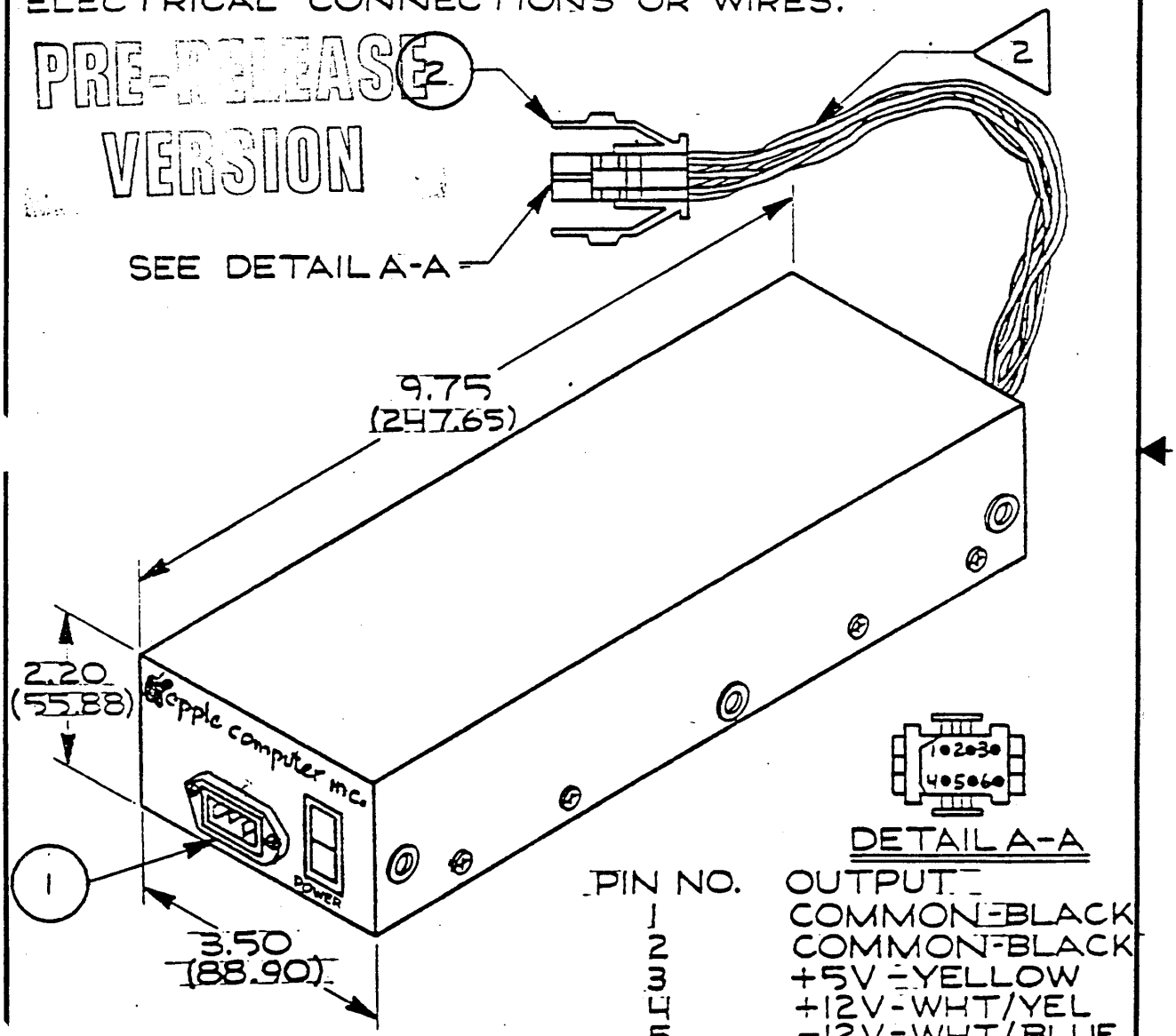
NOTES: UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED.

1. POWER CONNECTOR: ① PRIMARY - 3 PRONG INTERNATIONAL STANDARD POWER CORD RECEPTACLE ② SECONDARY: AMP P/N 1-350241-9 (HOUSING) & 350665-1 (PIN).

2. CABLE ASSY. FROM EXIT POINT TO END OF CONNECTOR SHALL BE 12" ± .5" (304.8 ± 12.7)

3. CABLE SHALL BE ABLE TO WITHSTAND 10LBS. OF FORCE IN ANY DIRECTION WITHOUT DAMAGE TO ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS OR WIRES.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

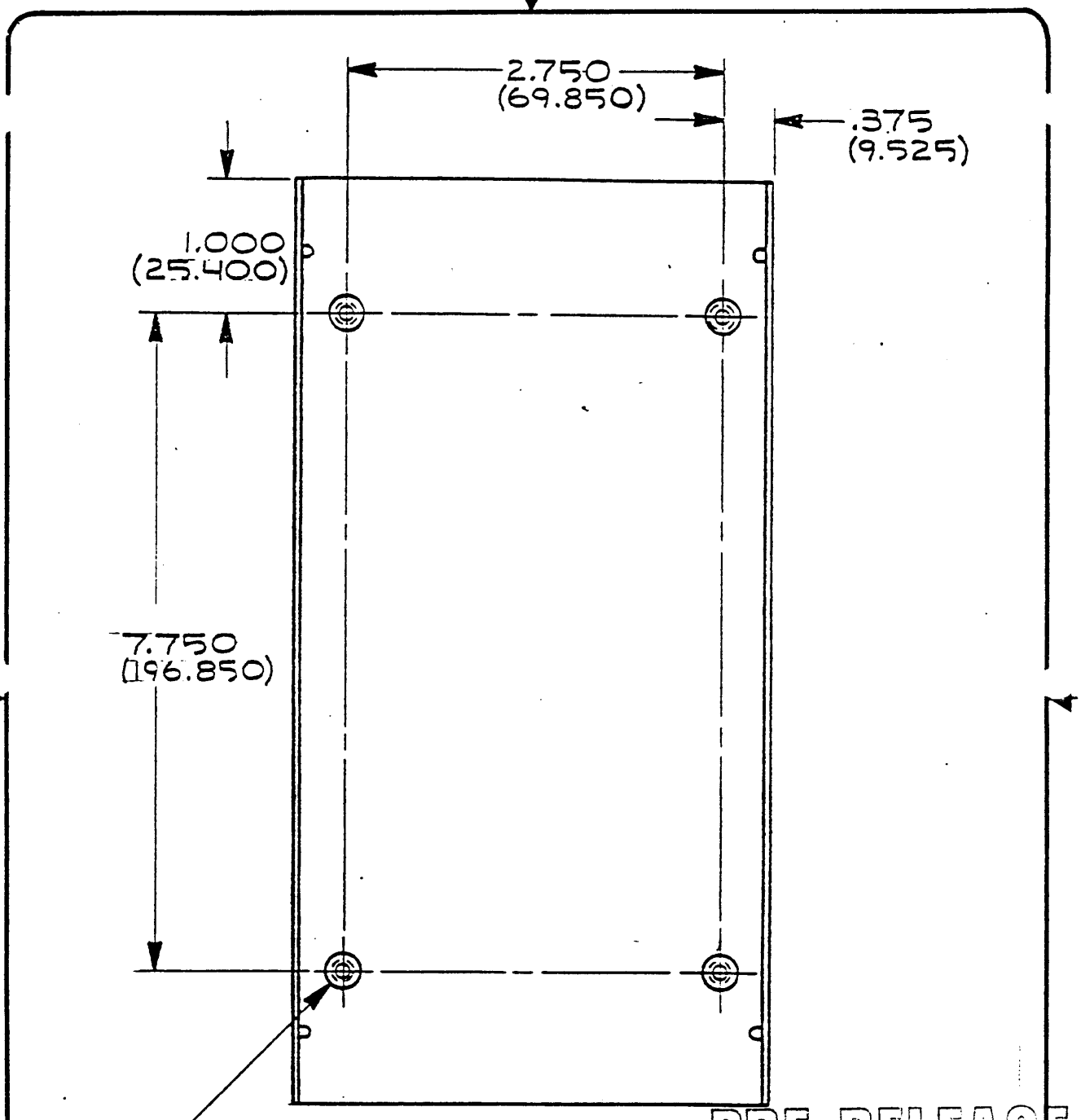


DETAIL A-A

PIN NO.	OUTPUT
1	COMMON-BLACK
2	COMMON-BLACK
3	+5V-YELLOW
4	+12V-WHT/YEL
5	-12V-WHT/BLUE
6	-5V-BLUE

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	699-0049-A
SCALE: NONE	SHEET 10 OF 11



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

NOTE: ALL DIMENSIONS ±.010 (±.254)

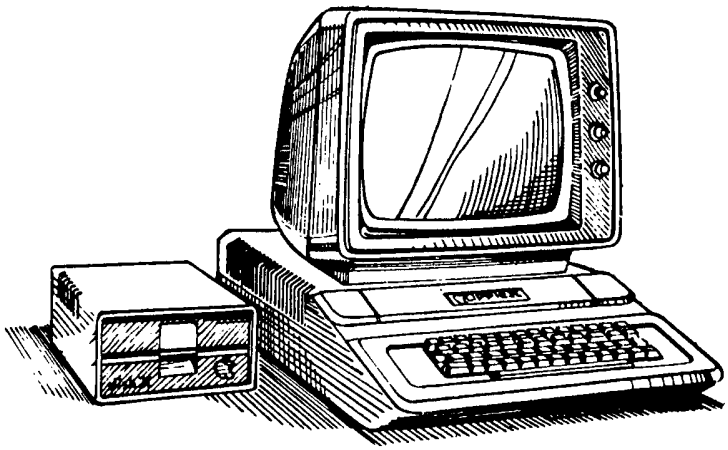
apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 699-0049-A
	SCALE: NONE	SHEET 11 OF 11

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 5
CONNECTORS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

PERIPHERAL CONNECTORS

Along the back of the Apple's main board is a row of eight long "slots", or Peripheral Connectors. Into seven of these eight slots, you can plug any of many Peripheral Interface boards designed especially for the Apple. In order to make the peripheral cards simpler and more versatile, the Apple's circuitry has allocated a total of 280 byte locations in the memory map for each of the seven slots. There is also a 2K byte "commmon area", which all peripheral cards in your Apple can share.

Each slot on the board is individually numbered, with the leftmost slot called "Slot 0" and the rightmost called "Slot 7". Slot 0 is special it is meant for RAM, ROM, or Interface expansion. All other slots (1 through 7) have special control lines going to them which are active at different times for different slots.

The pin out for these connectors is given in Figure 21, and the signal descriptions are given in Table 33.

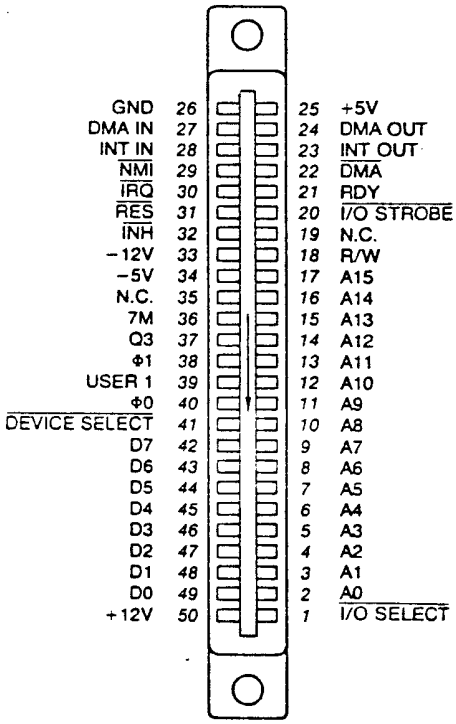


Figure 21. Peripheral Connector Pinout

Table 33: Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	I/O SELECT	This line, normally high, will become low when the microprocessor references page $C*n*, where *n* is the individual slot number. This signal becomes active during Φ0 and will drive 10 LSTTL loads*. This signal is not present on peripheral connector 0.
2-17	A0-A15	The buffered address bus. The address on these lines becomes valid during Φ1 and remains valid through Φ0. These lines will each drive 5 LSTTL loads*.
18	R/W	Buffered Read/Write signal. This becomes valid at the same time the address bus does, and goes high during a read cycle and low during a write. This line can drive up to 2 LSTTL loads*.
19	SYNC	On peripheral connector 7 *only*, this pin is connected to the video timing generator's SYNC signal. IN INTERNATIONAL APPLES ONLY.
20	I/O STROBE	This line goes low during Φ0 when the address bus contains an address between $C800 and $CFFF. This line will drive 4 LSTTL loads*.
21	RDY	The 6502's RDY input. Pulling this line low during Φ1 will halt the microprocessor, with the address bus holding the address of the current location being fetched.
22	DMA	Pulling this line low disables the 6502's address bus and halts the microprocessor. This line is held high by a 1KΩ resistor to +5v.
23	INT OUT	Daisy-chained interrupt output to lower priority devices. This pin is usually connected to pin 28 (INT IN).
24	DMA OUT	Daisy-chained DMA output to lower priority devices. This pin is usually connected to pin 22 (DMA IN).
25	+5v	+5 volt power supply. 500mA current is available for *all* peripheral cards.
26	GND	System electrical ground.

* Loading limits are for each peripheral card.

Table 33 (cont'd): Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
27	DMA IN	Daisy-chained DMA input from higher priority devices. Usually connected to pin 24 (DMA OUT).
28	INT IN	Daisy-chained interrupt input from higher priority devices. Usually connected to pin 23 (INT OUT).
29	$\overline{\text{NMI}}$	Non-Maskable Interrupt. When this line is pulled low the Apple begins an interrupt cycle and jumps to the interrupt handling routine at location $3FB.
30	$\overline{\text{IRQ}}$	Interrupt ReQuest. When this line is pulled low the Apple begins an interrupt cycle only if the 6502's I (Interrupt disable) flag is not set. If so, the 6502 will jump to the interrupt handling subroutine whose address is stored in locations $3FE and $3FF.
31	$\overline{\text{RES}}$	When this line is pulled low the microprocessor begins a RESET cycle (see page 36).
32	$\overline{\text{INH}}$	When this line is pulled low, all ROMs on the Apple board are disabled. This line is held high by a 1KΩ resistor to +5v.
33	−12v	−12 volt power supply. Maxmum current is 200mA for all peripheral boards.
34	−5v	−5 volt power supply. Maximum current is 200mA for all peripheral boards.
35	COLOR REF	On peripheral connector 7 *only*, this pin is connected to the 3.5MHz COLOR REFerence signal of the video generator.
36	7M	7MHz clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
37	Q3	2MHz asymmetrical clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
38	Φ1	Microprocessor's phase one clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
39	USER 1	This line, when pulled low, disables *all* internal I/O address decoding**.

* Loading limits are for each peripheral card.
** See page 99.

Table 33 (cont'd): Peripheral Connector Signal Description

Pin:	Name:	Description:
40	Φ0	Microprocessor's phase zero clock. This line will drive 2 LSTTL loads*.
41	$\overline{\text{DEVICE SELECT}}$	This line becomes active (low) on each peripheral connector when the address bus is holding an address between $C0*n*0 and $C0*n*F, where *n* is the slot number plus $8. This line will drive 10 LSTTL loads*.
42-49	D0-D7	Buffered bidirectional data bus. The data on this line becomes valid 300nS into Φ0 on a write cycle, and should be stable no less than 100ns before the end of Φ0 on a read cycle. Each data line can drive one LSTTL load.
50	+12v	+12 volt power supply. This can supply up to 250mA total for all peripheral cards.

SPEAKER CONNECTOR

The Apple's internal speaker is driven half of a 74LS74 flip-flop through a Darlington amplifer circuit. The speaker connector is a Molex KK100 series connector, with two square pins, .25 inch tall, on .10 inch centers.

The connector coming from the speaker is plugged into the socket labeled speaker between rows A and B on the rightmost section of the motherboard.

Table 32: Speaker Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	SPKR	Speaker signal. This line will deliver about .5 watt into an 8 Ohm load.
2	+5v	+5 volt power supply.

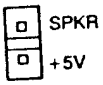


Figure 20. Speaker Connector

KEYBOARD CONNECTOR

The data from the Apple's keyboard goes directly to the RAM data multiplexers and latches, the two 74LS257's at locations B6 and B7. The STROBE line on the keyboard connector sets a 74LS74 flip-flop at location B10. When the I/O selector activates its "0" line, the data which is on the seven inputs on the keyboard connector, and the state of the strobe flip-flop, are multiplexed onto the Apple's data bus. The keyboard connector plugs into the A-7 socket on the main logic board.

Table 30: Keyboard Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	+5v	+5 volt power supply. Total current drain on this pin must be less than 120mA.
2	STROBE	Strobe output from keyboard. This line should be given a pulse at least 10μs long each time a key is pressed on the keyboard. The strobe can be of either polarity.
3	$\overline{\text{RESET}}$	Microprocessor's $\overline{\text{RESET}}$ line. Normally high, this line should be pulled low when the RESET button is pressed.
4,9,16	NC	No connection.
5-7, 10-13	Data	Seven bit ASCII keyboard data input.
8	Gnd	System electrical ground.
15	−12v	−12 volt power supply. Keyboard should draw less than 50mA.

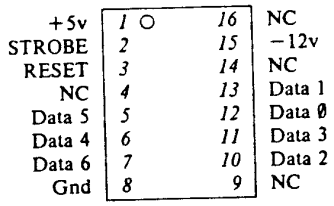
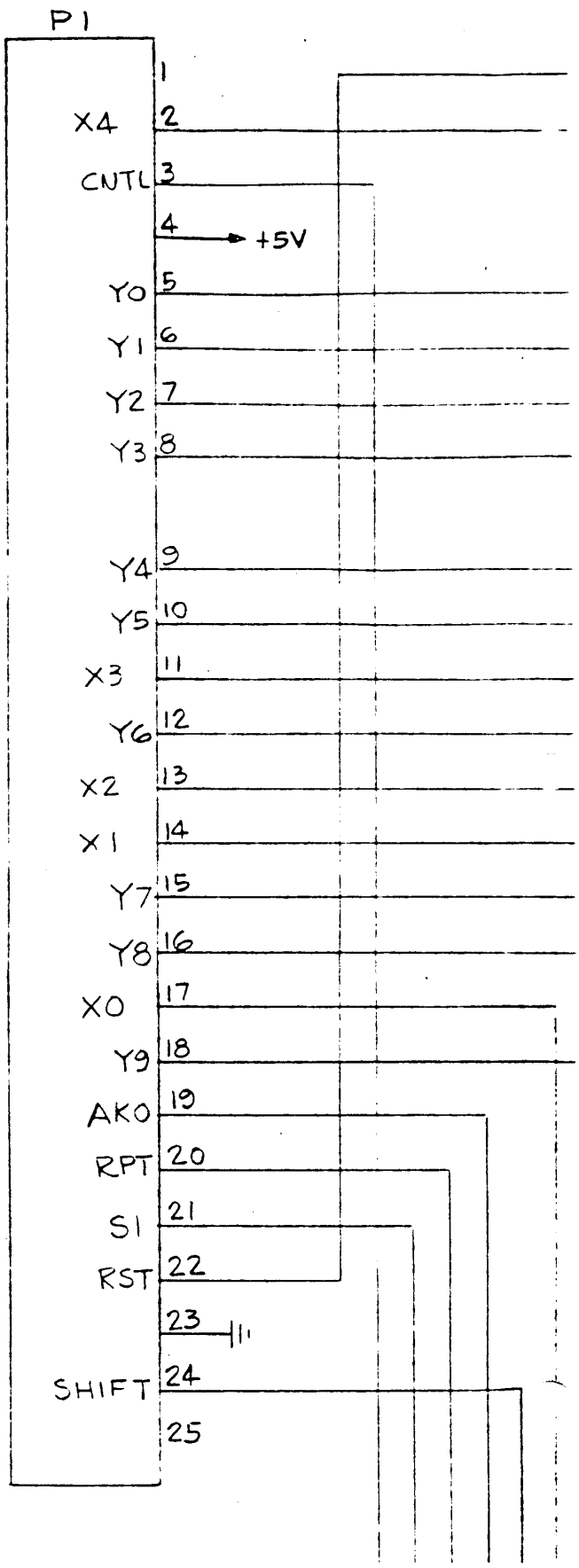


Figure 18.
Keyboard Connector Pinouts

ENCODER BOARD CONNECTOR

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



POWER CONNECTOR

This connector mates with the cable from the Apple power supply. This is an Amp #9-3028-1 six pin male connector. The connector leads from the power supply and plugs into the K-1 socket of the main logic board.

Table 31: Power Connector Pin Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1,2	Ground	Common electrical ground for Apple board.
3	+5v	+5.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~1.5 amp from this supply.
4	+12v	+12.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~400ma from this supply.
5	−12v	−12.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~12.5ma from this supply.
6	−5v	−5.0 volts from power supply. An Apple with 48K of RAM and no peripherals draws ~0.0ma from this supply.

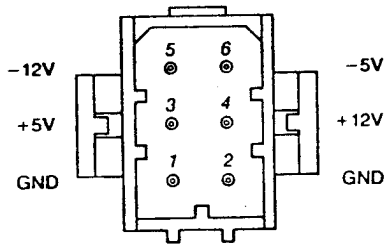


Figure 19. Power Connector

GAME I/O CONNECTOR

The purpose of the Game I/O Connector is to allow you to connect special input and output devices to heighten the effect of programs in general, and specifically, game programs. This connector allows you to connect three one-bit inputs, four one-bit outputs, a data strobe, and four analog inputs to the Apple, all of which can be controlled by your programs. Supplied with your Apple is a pair of Game Controllers which are connected to cables which plug into the Game I/O Connector. The two rotary dials on the controllers are connected to two analog inputs on the connector; the two pushbuttons are connected to two of the one-bit inputs.

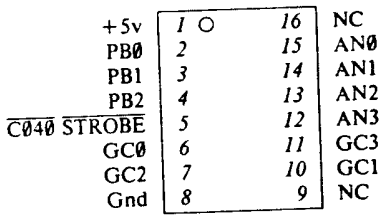


Figure 16.
Game I/O Connector Pinouts

Table 29: Game I/O Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin:	Name:	Description:
1	+5v	+5 volt power supply. Total current drain on this pin must be less than 100mA.
2-4	PB0-PB2	Single-bit (Pushbutton) inputs. These are standard 74LS series TTL inputs.
5	C040 STROBE	A general-purpose strobe. This line, normally high, goes low during Φ0 of a read or write cycle to any address from SC040 through SC04F. This is a standard 74LS TTL output.
6,7,10,11	GC0-GC3	Game controller inputs. These should each be connected through a 150K Ohm variable resistor to +5v.
8	Gnd	System electrical ground.
12-15	AN0-AN3	Annunciator outputs. These are standard 74LS series TTL outputs and must be buffered if used to drive other than TTL inputs.
9,16	NC	No internal connection.

CASSETTE INTERFACE JACKS

The two female miniature phone jacks on the back of the Apple 11 can connect your Apple to a normal home cassette tape recorder.

Cassette Input Jack:

This jack designed to be connected to the "Earphone" or "Monitor" output jacks on most tape recorders. The input voltage should be 1 volt peak to peak (nominal). The input impedance is 12K ohms.

Cassette Output Jack:

This jack is designed to be connected to the "Microphone" input on most tape recorders. The output voltage is 25mv into a 100 Ohm impedance load.

VIDEO OUTPUT

RCA Jack:

On the back of the Apple board, near the right edge is a standard RCA phono jack. The sleeve on this jack is connected to the Apple's common ground and the tip is connected to the video output signal through a 200 ohm potentiometer. This potentiometer can adjust the voltage on this connector from 0 to 1 volt peak.

Auxilary Video Connector:

On the right side of the Apple board near the back is a Molex KK100 series connector with four square pins, .25 inch on .10 inch centers. This connector supplies the composite video output and two power supply voltages. This connector is illustrated in figure 15 with a signal description in Table 28.

Auxilary Video Pin:

This single metal wire-wrap pin below the Auxilary Video Output Connector supplies the same video signal available on that connector. It is meant to be a connection point for Eurapple PAL/SECAM encoder boards.

Table 28: Auxiliary Video Output Connector Signal Descriptions

Pin	Name	Description
1	GROUND	System common ground; 0 volts.
2	VIDEO	NTSC compatible positive composite video. Black level is about .75 volt, white level about 2.0 volt, sync tip level is 0 volts. Output level is not adjustable. This is not protected against short circuits.
3	+12v	+12 volt power supply.
4	-5v	-5 volt line from power supply.

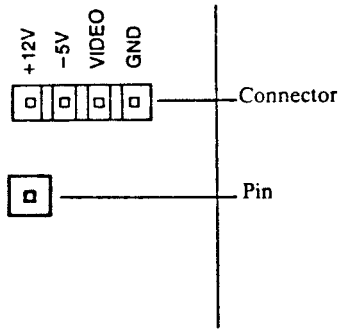


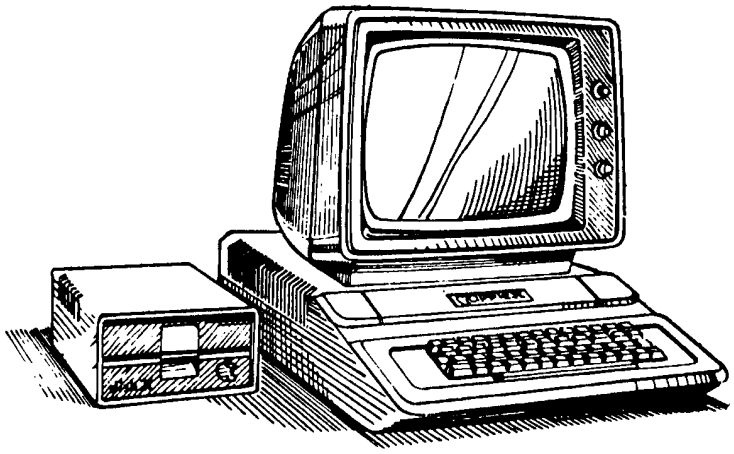
Figure 15. Auxiliary Video Output Connector and Pin.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 6
OTHER INPUT / OUTPUT FEATURES



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

"USER 1" JUMPER

There is and unlabeled pair of solder pads on the Apple board, to the left of slot 0, called the "User 1" jumper. This jumper is illustrated in Photo 8. If you connect a wire between these two pads, then the USER 1 line on each peripheral connectors becomes active. If any peripheral card pulls this line low, all internal I/O decoding is disabled. The I/O SELECT and the DEVICE SELECT lines all go high and will remain high while USER 1 is low, regardless of the address on the address bus.

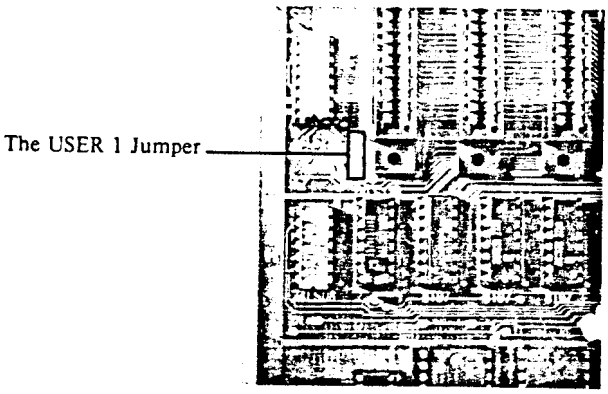
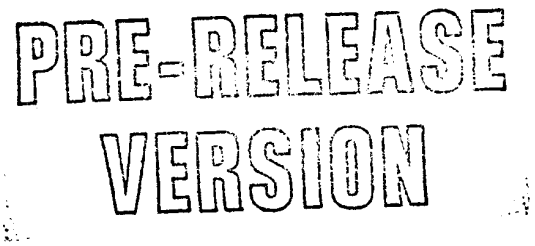


Photo 8. The USER 1 Jumper.

OTHER INPUT/OUTPUT FEATURES

Input: Cassette Input
Three One-bit Digital Inputs
Four Analog Inputs
OUTPUT: Cassette Output
Built-In Speaker
Four "Annunciator" Outputs
Utility Strobe Output



The Cassette Interface

On the back edge of the Apple's main board, on the right side next to the VIDEO connector, are two small black packages labelled "IN" and "OUT". These are miniature phone jacks into which you can plug a cable which has a pair of minature phono plugs on each end. The other end of this cable can be connected to a standard cassette tape recorder so that your Apple can save information on audio cassette tape and read it back again.

The connector marked "OUT" is wired to yet another soft switch on the Apple board. This is another toggle switch, like the speaker switch. The soft switch for the cassette out-put plug can be toggled by referencing memory location number 49184 (or the equivalent-16352 or hexadecimal $C020). Referencing this location will make the voltage on the OUT connector swing from zero to 25 millivolts (one forieth of a volt), or return from 25 millivolts back to zero. If the other end of the cable is plugged into the MICROPHONE input of a cassette tape recorder which is recording into a tape, this will produce a tiny "click" on the recording . By referencing the memory location associated with the cassette output soft switch repeatedly and frequently, a program can produce a tone on the recording. By varying the pitch and duration of this tone, information may be encoded on a tape and saved for later use.

Be forewarned that if you attempt to flip the soft switch for the cassette output by writing to its special location, you will actually generate two "clicks" on the recording. The reason for this is mentioned in the describtion of the speaker. You should only use "read" operations when toggling the cassette output soft switch.

The other connector, marked "IN", can be used to "listen" to a cassette tape recording. Its main purpose is to provide a means of listening to tones on the tape, decoding them into data, and storing them in memory. Thus, a program or data set which was stored on cassette tape may be read back in and used again.

The input circuit takes a 1 volt (peak-to-peak) signal from the cassette recorder's EARPHONE jack and converts it into a sting of ones and zeroes. Each time the signal applied to the input circuit swings from positive to negative, or vice-versa, the input circuit changes state: if it was sending ones, it will start sending zeroes, and vice versa. A program can inspect the state of the cassette input circuit by looking at memory location number 49248 or the equivalents-16288 or hexidecimal $C060. If the value which is read from this location is greater than or equal to 128, then the state is a "one", if the value in the memory location is less than 128, then the state

is a "zero". Although BASIC programs can read the state of the cassette input circuit, the speed of a BASIC program is usually much too slow to be able to make any sense out of what it reads. There is, however, a program in the System Monitor which will read the tones on a cassette tape and decode them.

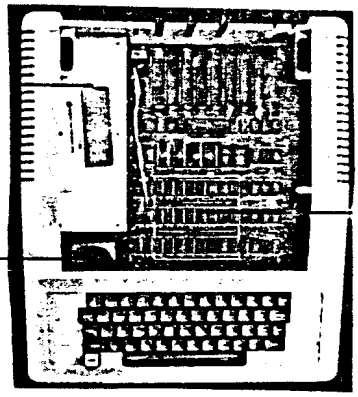
THE SPEAKER

Inside the Apple's case, on the left side under the keyboard, is a small 8 ohm speaker. It is connected to the internal electronics of the Apple so that a program can cause it to make various sounds.

The speaker is controlled by a soft switch. The switch can put the paper cone of the speaker in two positions: "in" and "out". This soft switch is not like the soft switches controlling the various video modes, but is instead a toggle switch. Each time a program references the memory address a associated with the speaker switch, the speaker will change state: change from "in" to "out" or vice-versa. Each time the state is changed, the speaker produces a tiny "click". By referencing the address of the speaker switch frequently and continuously, a program can generate a steady tone from the speaker.

The soft switch for the speaker is associated with memory location number 49200. Any reference to this address (or the equivalint addresses-16336 or hexidecimal $C030) will cause the speaker to emit a click.

A program can "reference" the address with memory location for the speaker by performing a "read" or "write" operation to that address. The data which are read or written are irrelevant, as it is the address which throws the switch. Note that a "write" operation on the Apple's 6502 microprocessor actually performs a "read" before the "write", so that if you use a "write" operation to flip and soft switch, you will actually throw that switch twice. For toggle-type soft switches, such as the speaker switch, this means that a "write" operation to the special location controlling the switch will leave the switch in the same state it was in before the operation was performed.



ANNUNCIATOR OUTPUTS

The four one-bit outputs are called "annunciators". Each annunciator output can be used as an input to some other electronic device, or the annunciator outputs can be connected to circuits to drive lamps, relays, speakers, etc.

Each annunciator is controlled by a soft switch. The addresses of the soft switches for the annunciators are arranged into four pairs, one pair for each annunciator. If you reference the second address in the pair, you turn the annunciator's output "on". When an annunciuator is "off", the voltage on its pin on the Game I/O Connector is near 0 volts; when an annunciator is "on", the voltage is near 5 volts. There are no inherent means to determine the current setting of an annunciator bit. The annunciator soft switches are:

Table 9: Annunciator Special Locations

Ann.	State	Address: Decimal		Hex
0	off	49240	-16296	$C058
	on	49241	-16295	$C059
1	off	49242	-16294	$C05A
	on	49243	-16293	$C05B
2	off	49244	-16292	$C05C
	on	49245	-16291	$C05D
3	off	49246	-16290	$C05E
	on	49247	-16289	$C05F

STROBE OUTPUT

There is an additional output, called C040 STROBE, which is normally +5 volts but will drop to zero volts for a duration of one-half microsecond under the control of a machine language or BASIC program. You can trigger this "strobe" by referring to location 49216 (-16320 or $C040). Be aware that if you perform a "write" operation to this location, you will trigger the strobe twice.

ONE-BIT INPUTS

The three one-bit inputs can each be connected to either another electronic device or to a pushbutton. You can read the state of any of the on-bit inputs from a machine language or BASIC program on the same manner as you read the Cassette input, above, the locations for the three one-bit inputs have the addresses 49249 through 49251 (-16287 through -16285 or hexidecimal $C061 through $C063).

ANALOG INPUTS

The four analog inputs can be connected to 150k Ohm varible resistors or potentiometers. The variable resistance on an input varies, the timing characteristics of its corresponding timing circuit change accordingly. Machine language programs can sense the changes on the timing loops and obtain a numerical value corresponding to the position of the potentiometer.

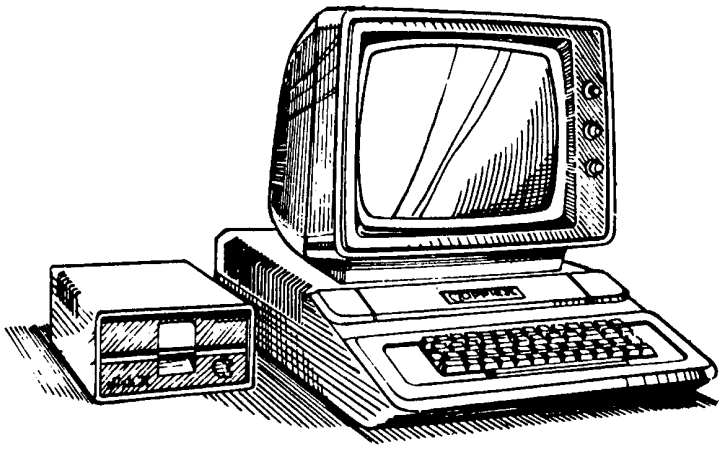
Before a program can start to read the setting of a potentiometer, it must first reset the timing circuits. Location number 49264 (-16272 or

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 7
MOTHERBOARD



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

hexidecimal $C070) does just this. When you reset the timing circuits, the values contained in the four locations 49252 through 49255 (-16284 through -16281 ir $C064 through $C067) become greater than 128 (their high bits are set). Within 3,060 milliseconds, the values contained on these four locations should drop below 128. The exact time it takes for each location to drop in value is directly proportional to the setting of the game paddle associated with that location. If the potentiometers connected to the analog inputs have a greater resistance than 150k Ohms, or there are no potentiometers connected, then the values in the game controller locations may never drop to zero.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MAIN LOGIC BOARD

THEORY OF OPERATION

The APPLE II's Main Logic Board represents the full range of integration from simple gates to highly dense microprocessor and memory chips. Much of the power of the APPLE II logic circuitry comes from the use of medium-scale (MSI) integrated circuits. These include multiplexers, shift registers, counters and decoders.

This Theory of Operation contains detailed descriptions of medium-scale ICs as they apply to the APPLE II design. It was written with the understanding that the reader has had exposure to simple gates and memory/microprocessor circuits. Since almost none of the APPLE II's use of medium-scale IC's is straightforward, each MSI package is described before detailing how it functions in the APPLE II. In cases where an MSI device is used in several sections of the circuit board, the functional description will be repeated. If you already know how a device functions you may want to pass over the device's functional description, and concentrate on how it fits into the APPLE II design.

This material is especially intended for the Service Technician, but it should also be helpful to individuals who need to interface hardware to the APPLE II.

There are three sections to this chapter:

1. The written part, which breaks the Main Logic Board into 11 sections verbally guides you through the APPLE II logic within each section, with appropriate overlapping between sections.

2. A block diagram and ten schematic drawings (Figures S1 - S11) which show the APPLE II logic circuits within each section.

3. A System Timing Diagram which graphically shows the timing signals within the Main Logic Board and includes a state diagram of the Sync Counters.

The goal of this chapter is to allow you to understand how the APPLE II works, using the schematics to refresh your memory when necessary. The written part is intended to help you through the schematics, and should be read WITH the schematics and System Timing Diagram.

As a practical note, the Service Technician will want to be able to get around on the Main Logic Board using a scope. It is suggested that an "open APPLE II" be created using a logic board, keyboard, power supply and monitor. As signals are described they can be observed as well, thus speeding up learning.

Effort has been made to keep each section complete unto itself at the risk of making this part of the manual redundant at times. This will allow you to read the sections in any order you want to. Please read SECTION 1: OVERVIEW first to get a general flavor.

One great asset to the the Service Technician is a working knowledge of the software contained in the APPLE II's F8 Monitor and the various APPLE II "soft switch" commands. The F8 Monitor is well documented in Chapter 9 and the

soft switches in Chapter 2.

Lastly, a few details:

ICs are identified on the Main Logic Board using an X-Y coordinate system. The X coordinate ranges from 1 to 14 with position 1 on the far left and position 14 on the far right as you face the keyboard. The Y coordinate ranges alphabetically from A (bottom row) to K (top row) as you face the keyboard. IC "B2", for example, locates the 74S86 in the second row and column from the lower left edge of the Main Logic Board. Pin numbers are indicated with a dash following the IC location. "B2-8" therefore locates pin 8 of the 74LS86 at B2.

Three types of TTL (Transistor-Transistor Logic) are used in the APPLE II. They are:

Standard TTL (example: "74166")... These parts are used only occasionally in the APPLE II and are electrically similar to Fairchild's 9000 series. APPLE part numbers of each type are prefixed with "301" so that the part number for "74166" becomes "301-0166", and the part number for "9334" becomes "301-9334".

Low-power Shottky TTL (example: "74LS195")... These ICs combine fast switching times with power needs similar to standard TTL. These chips are used in the high frequency System Timing section of APPLE II. The corresponding APPLE part numbers begin with "307" so that "74S195" becomes "307-0195".

ICs of the above types will be described once in each section using the full part name, and then will be abbreviated as follows:

"74175" becomes "175"

"74LS138" becomes "138"

"74166" becomes "166"

Signals which are active low are indicated with a single quote (') following the signal's mnemonic as in RAS (Row Address Strobe).

Numbers in base 16 (hexadecimal) are preceded with a "$".

OVERVIEW

SECTION 1

The Main Logic Board is one of a family of modules which make up the APPLE II product line. It is one of three "essential" modules which comprise a minimum APPLE II system. These essential modules are:

1. MAIN LOGIC BOARD. This is the large printed-circuit board which takes up most of the space inside the APPLE II's case. It is an integrated single board computer and video display terminal. With it we can display text or graphics through an external monitor, or using an inexpensive modulator, through an ordinary television set.

2. POWER SUPPLY. This square metal box sits on the upper left-hand corner as you face the keyboard. It supplies all the power requirements needed by the APPLE II.

3. KEYBOARD. The keyboard sends parallel ASCII characters to the Main Logic Board and allows programs or data to be manually entered.

In addition to these essential modules, peripheral devices may by connected to the APPLE II by installing printed-circuit cards into one of the eight connectors at the back of the Main Logic Board. These include disc drives, printers, etc. Circuits within the Main Logic Board allow control signals to be sent to each peripheral card under program control.

The Main Logic Board is the nucleus of the APPLE II computer. Figure S-1 is a Block Diagram of the logic board divided into 11 sections. Each section will by described briefly in this chapter.

The APPLE II Main Logic Board is both a computer and video display device; Random-Access Memory (RAM) is commonly shared by both. The computer end is controlled by a Synertek-MOS Technology 6502 microprocessor which generates 16-bit Addresses (via the System Address Bus) and one system control output, the R/W' (Read-Write') line. The Address generated by the 6502 points to a memory or I/O (input-output) location, and the R/W' line controls the direction of data over an eight-bit Data Bus. Some of the data flowing into the 6502 contains instructions, called opcodes, which direct the microprocessor to perform certain tasks.

The video circuits also generate an address to memory. All of the accesses to memory by the video circuits are memory reads which cause a byte of data to be sent to the Video Generator adds sync pulses and a color burst signal to the video data to produce composite video, available from an RCA jack behind the computer.

Making all of this possible are the System Timing ciruits which coordinate the timing events of both the microprocessor and the video circuits.

Here's a quick guide to the topic of each remaining sections. The appropriate schematic will be the same as the section's number. For Section 4 (Sync Counters) for example, the appropriate schematic would be Figure S-4.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

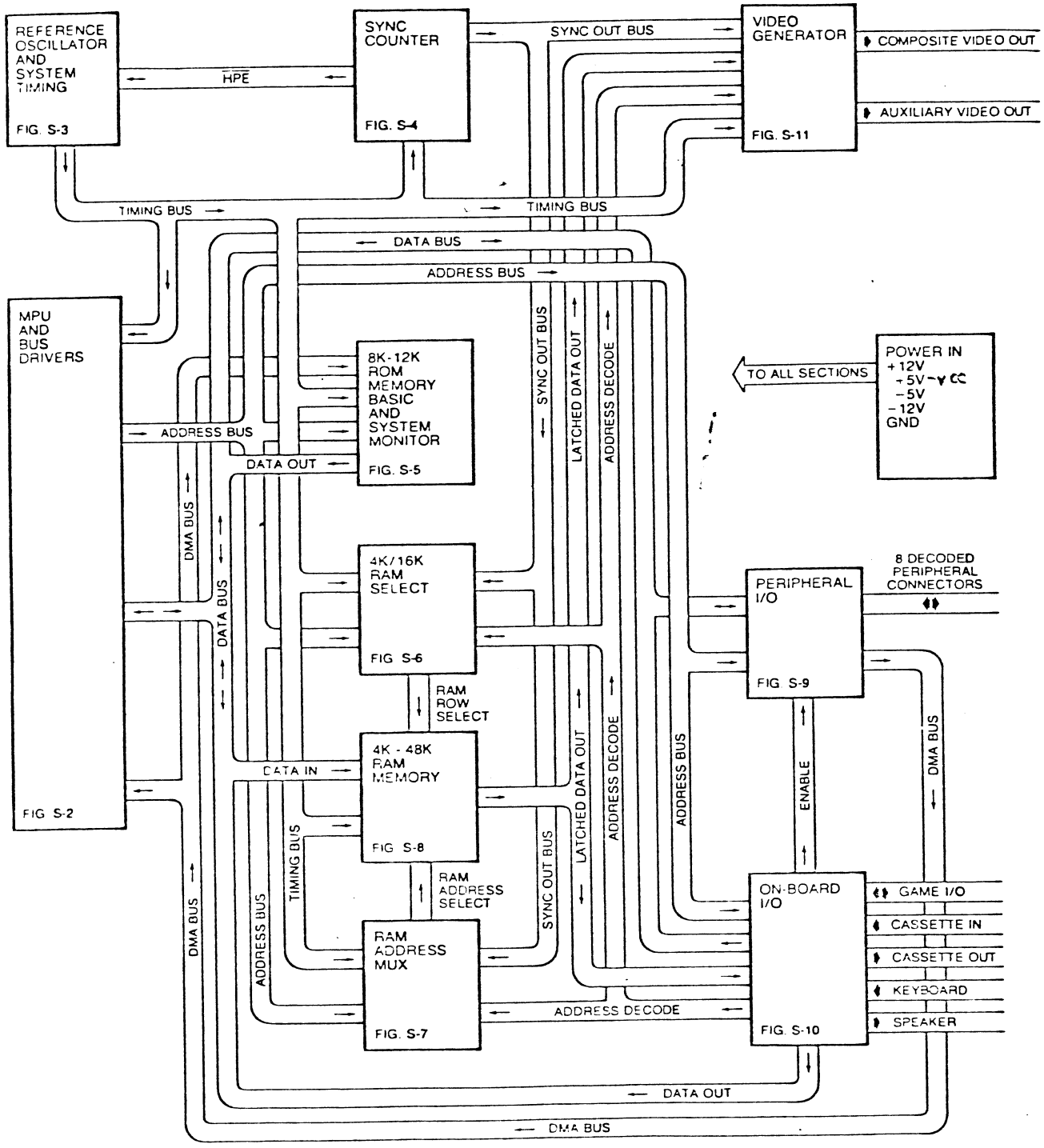


FIGURE S-1 APPLE II SYSTEM DIAGRAM

SECTION 2: MPU and System Bus. Signals to and from the 6502 microprocessor are isolated from the System Busses by bus drivers. These chips also create Direct Memory Access (DMA) capability. System Timing signal "PHASE ZERO" drives the microprocessor's clock input.

Section 3: Reference Oscillator and System Timing. Here a variety of timing signals are created.

One Mhz signals PHASE ZERO and PHASE ONE are used to select alternately between the microprocessor and the video bus cycles (memory accesses). These signals also enable circuits such as Peripheral I/O which use the System (buffered 6502) Busses. LDPS' advances the Sync Counters at one Mhz. LD194 controls when the Video Generator's graphics circuits load a new byte of data.

Two Mhz signals RAS' (Row Address Strobe) are timing signals to the APPLE II's dynamic RAM which receives an address in two steps (multiplexed). AX' controls when the RAM Address Mux circuits do the actual multiplexing. Q3 is available for general use.

Other System Timing signals include the 3.58 Mhz COLOR REF signal, 7M and 14M. These signals are used by the Video Generator.

SECTION 4: Sync Counters. Clocked by the one Mhz LDPS' signal, these four binary counters generate six horizontal and eight vertical timing signals. In the horizontal direction, signals H0 through H5 go through 65 states (40 microseconds of "live" characters and 25 microseconds of blanking). In vertical direction, signals VA, VB, VC, and V0 - V4 go through 262 state (192 "live" and 70 blanking). In text mode, VA, VB, and VC select one of the eight vertical scan lines within each character. Signals Vo - V4 point to a row of characters out of 245 possible rows.

SECTION 5: ROM Memory. The Apple II stores some programs permanently in 2K byte Read-Only Memory (ROM) ICs. Six ROMs may reside in the Main Logic Board for a total of 12K bytes of storage. Several different ROM variations are currently being offered, but every stock APPLE II offers and F8 (machine-langage) Monitor and a high-level BASIC language in ROM.

SECTION 6: RAM Select. Random-Access Memory (RAM) is stored in three rows of 16K-bit RAMs for a total of 48K bytes of on-board R/W' memory. A given byte-wide row of RAM is selected when it recieves the CAS' signal. This Section describes how that happens and describes how RAM address line A6 is driven.

SECTION 7: RAM Address Mux. This describes the circuits which allow both microprocessor and video circuits to access memory, and describes the function of some circuits which modify the Sync Counter outputs to create a Video Address.

SECTION 8: RAM Memory. The RAMs and their data latches are described here.

SECTION 9: Peripheral I/O. The Main Logic Board offers expansion capability via eight plug-in connectors. Three control signals, Device Select (DEV SEL'), I/O Select (I/O SEL') and I/O Strobe (I/O STRB') appear at each

connector and make control over the peripheral device possible.

SECTION 10: On-Board I/O. The Apple II offers on-board I/O (Input/Output) circuits which include the keyboard, video display and the built-in loudspeaker.

SECTION 11. Video Generator. The Apple II displays text characters and also operates in two graphics modes. This section describes how video data is created for each mode.

It will be helpful to have the System Timing Diagram and the appropriate detailed schematic alongside when tracing through the logic. The detailed schematics are of the REV 0 board and as such do not accurately show the current APPLE II circuitry in all cases.

MPU AND SYSTEM BUS

SECTION 2

The 6502 microprocessor is the heart of the APPLE II computer. The 6502 is an eight bit parallel, single chip processor with a repetoire of 56 instructions. Signals coming in and out of the 6502 divide into three groups of related signals, or "busses".

1. ADDRESS BUS (A0 - A15)

These 16 lines point to 2~16, or 65,536 unique locations in memory. The address lines coming from the 6502 cannot be placed into a high impedance or "floating" conditions. Also, they lack the drive capability to power both the on-board chips and peripheral cards which make use of them. 8T97 tristate buffers are then used to connect the 6502's address lines A0 - A15 to the System Address Bus. The Address Bus, as presented by the 6502, is valid about 200ns before the rising edge of the PHASE ZERO clock and is valid until after the PHASE ZERO clock falls. When PHASE ZERO is high, or its inverse, PHASE ONE, is low, a valid address is present on the Address Bus. For this reason, PHASE ZERO is used as a high-going enable, and PHASE ONE as a low going enable to ICs which use the System Address lines as inputs. These ICs include the motherboard 138s which are decoders for ROM and I/O space, and various chips on the peripheral cards.

The DMA' signal, normally pulled high through an on-board 1K ohm resistor, drives inverter input C11-13. If a peripheral device pulls this signal low, it causes the 8T97s to become high impedance, which released the Address Bus to the peripheral device.

2. DATA BUS (D0 - D7)

The Data Bus allows eight bits of data to be transferred to or from the 6502. When the 6502 performs a READ operations, data flows from the DATA Bus into the 6502. When a WRITE operation occurs, data passes from the 6502 onto the Data Bus.

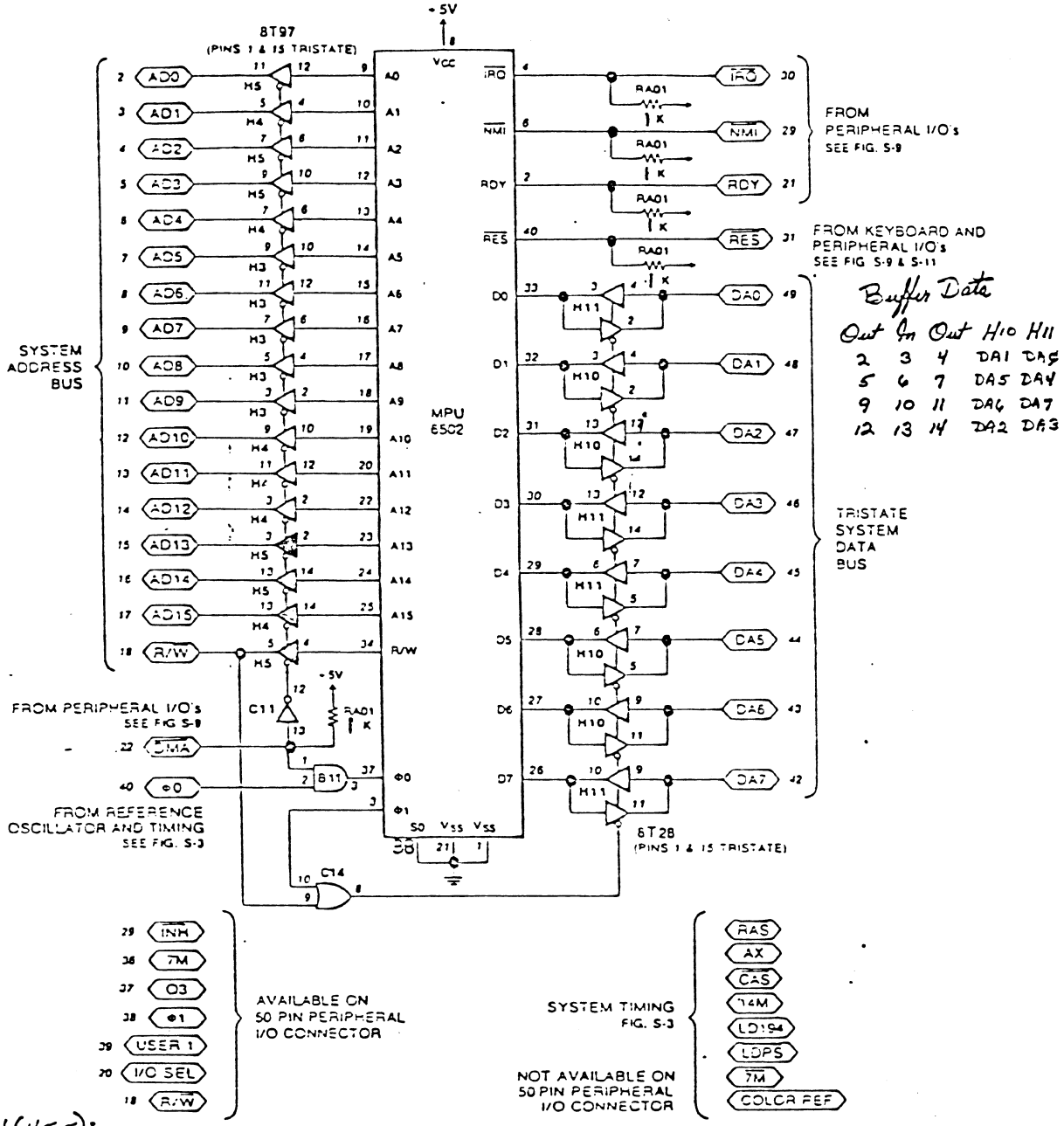
As in the case of the address lines, the 6502 data lines are also buffered - this time with 8T28 bus tranceivers. Pins 1 and 15 of each 8T28 are tied together, and form a receive / transmit input. Driving this input is C14-8 This signal goes low only when R/W' and the 6502's internal PHASE ONE goes low. Data from the 6502 will then be gated onto the System Data Bus. The 6502's PHASE ONE is used instead of the PHASE ONE from System Timing because the flow of data across the Data Bus must closely follow the 6502's internal timing. The 6502's PHASE ONE clock is produced when it inverts the PHASE ZERO signal, as provided by B11-3, and lags the System Timing PHASE ONE by a few nanoseconds.

During a READ cycles, data to the 6502 must be valid at least 100ns prior to the falling edge of PHASE ZERO.

During a WRITE cycle, data from the 6502 is valid roughly 200ns before the falling edge of PHASE ZERO.

8T28 3-State quad Bus. Transceiver
8T97 high speed hex 3-state inverters

Read cycle - valid at least 100ns prior to falling edge of phase 0 (Data to 6502)
Write cycle - valid ~ 200ns before falling edge of phase 0 (Data from 6502)



Buffer Data

Out	In	Out	H10	H11
2	3	4	DA1	DA5
5	6	7	DA5	DA4
9	10	11	DA6	DA7
12	13	14	DA2	DA3

R/W (H5-5):
C14-9 C14-13
A2-4, F/0-18

FIGURE S-2 MPU AND SYSTEM BUS

Valid address on bus is indicated by Phase 0 high & Phase 1 low

3. CONTROL BUS

This bus comprises six signals:

RES', NMI', IRQ', RDY, which connect directly to the processor.

R/W', which is buffered by one of the 8T97 gates.

DMA', which is implemented in hardware surrounding the 6502.

The RES' line is a "wake up" signal to the 6502 and causes it to begin executing code, starting at the address pointed to by locations $FFFC and $FFFD in memory. This signal goes low for about 150 milliseconds after system power-up and whenever the RESET key is pressed.

NMI' is a non-maskable (unconditional) interrupt input which causes the 6502 to save its current address and then jump to the address pointed to by locations $FFFA and $FFFB.

IRQ' is much like NMI except that the I flag internal to the 6502 must be at a logic "0" in order for this interrupt to be acknowledged by the CPU. The 6502 then jumps to the location pointed to by locations $FFFE and $FFFF.

RDY is an input intended to extend read cycles by 1 microsecond when the 6502 is connected to slow memory devices such as EPROM ICs. This input is sampled during PHASE ONE. If the RDY input is low (not-RDY) the CPU will then delay for one microsecond before reading the data.

All of the $FFFA-$FFFF locations point into the F8 MONITOR ROM which permanently stores these indirect addresses or "vectors". This allows the system to be able to handle any of these input signals immediately upon power-up.

The R-W' line controls the direction of data flow to and from the 6502. Like the Address Bus, it is also valid roughly 200ns before the rising edge of PHASE ZERO. Similarly, PHASE ZERO can be used as a negative-going enable and PHASE ONE as a positive-going enable for any IC using R/W as an input.

DMA', when held low, causes both the System Address Bus And the System Data Bus to tristate. An external device can pick up the busses and perform its own memory or I/O transfers. This signal should be brought low during I1.

When running a program, the 6502 first performs a fetch cycle by reading an opcode from memory. Then the 6502 executes the opcode, which could be a memory read or write instruction, an instruction to move data between two of the 6502's internal registers, etc. After this the 6502 then fetches another instructions and the pattern repeats. This fetch-execute pattern is called an instruction cycle. The time it takes for each instruction cycle varies from 2 to 6 microseconds with the APPLE II's Mhz clock.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

REFERENCE OSCILLATOR AND SYSTEM TIMING

SECTION 3

The Reference Oscillator consists of a differential amplifier made from discrete components, and a quartz crystal. The base of Q1 forms the different amp's inverting input and is held at AC ground (+5 V). The base of Q2 and the collector of Q1 form the amplifier's non-inverting input and output, respectively. The crystal electrically looks like a series L-R-C circuit with a resonant frequency of 14.31863 Mhz. It is tied from non-inverting input to non-inverting output creating a positive feedback loop. Above and below the crystal's resonant frequency, inductive and capacitive reactance, respectively, dominate and create a large voltage drop across the crystal causing very little voltage to appear at the base of Q2 (the non-inverting input). At the crystal's resonant frequency, inductive and capacitive reactance cancel allowing a large signal to appear at the base of Q2, and oscillations to take place.

The Exclusive-OR gate at B2 buffers and squares up the inverted output of the oscillator which appears across R3. The X-OR gate's output provides the 14M signal mainly to drive the System Timing circuits, but 14M is also used in the Video Generator section.

System Timing is generated by the tight interaction between three devices: the 195 at C2, the 153 at C1 and the 175 at B1. These three devices are operated synchronously - which means that all three chips are clocked together causing outputs to change together. Many of the outputs drive inputs on the same or another chip, getting ready for the next clocking. In addition, HPE' (Horizontal Parallel Enable) from the Sync Counters periodically causes most System Timing signals to be stretched slightly.

Eight basic signals are generated by System Timing:

1. 7M - A seven Mhz general purpose timing signal.

2. COLOR REF - A 3.58 Mhz signal used by an external television receiver as a phase reference for color information, as sent by the APPLE II.

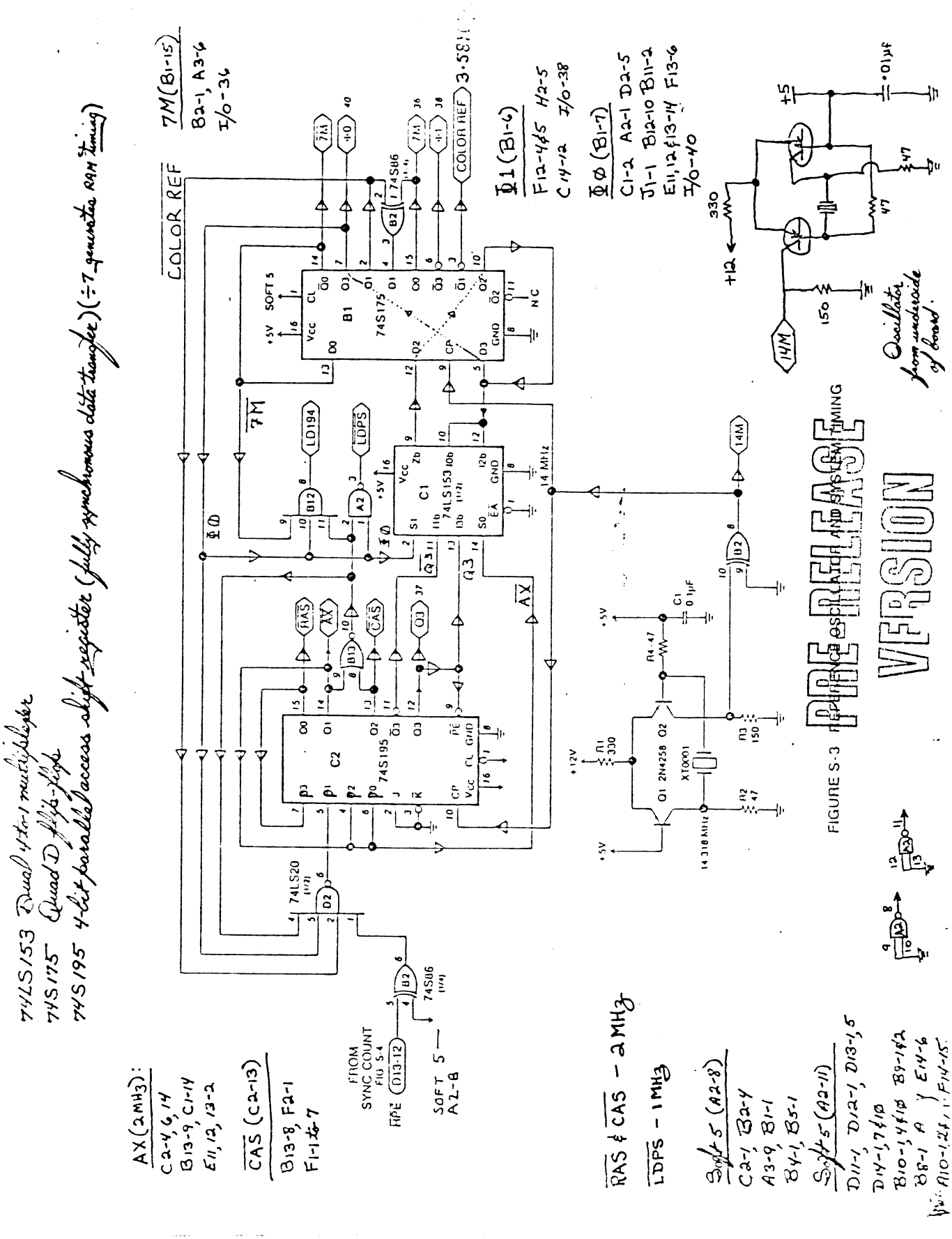
3. PHASE ZERO - A one Mhz signal used in both Microprocessor and Video timing. The term PHASE TWO is used in manufacturer's literature to describe the 6502 microprocessor's clock input (and output). PHASE ZERO supplies this input and is used with PHASE ONE for one Mhz timing needs.

4. PHASE ONE - The inverse of PHASE ZERO.

5. RAS' (Row Address Strobe) - This two Mhz signal is used to strobe a seven-bit row address into the 4116 dynamic RAM chips.

6. AX' (Address multipleX) - This two Mhz signal tells RAM hardware to switch from row to column address so that the seven-bit column address may be strobed into the RAMs.

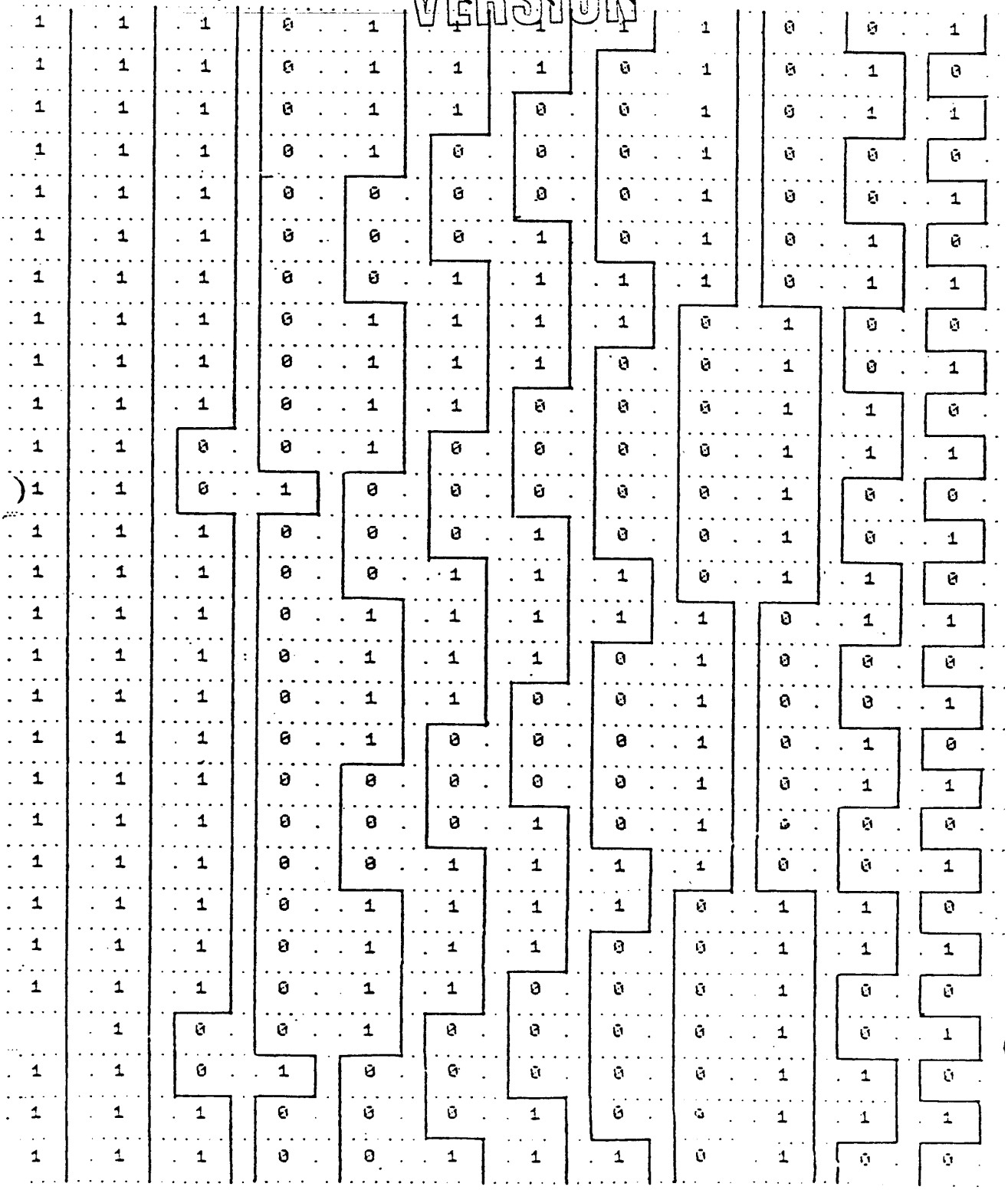
7. CAS' (Column Address Strobe) - This signal, also two Mhz, tells a row of 16K dynamic RAM to select the memory cell at the intersection of the row and



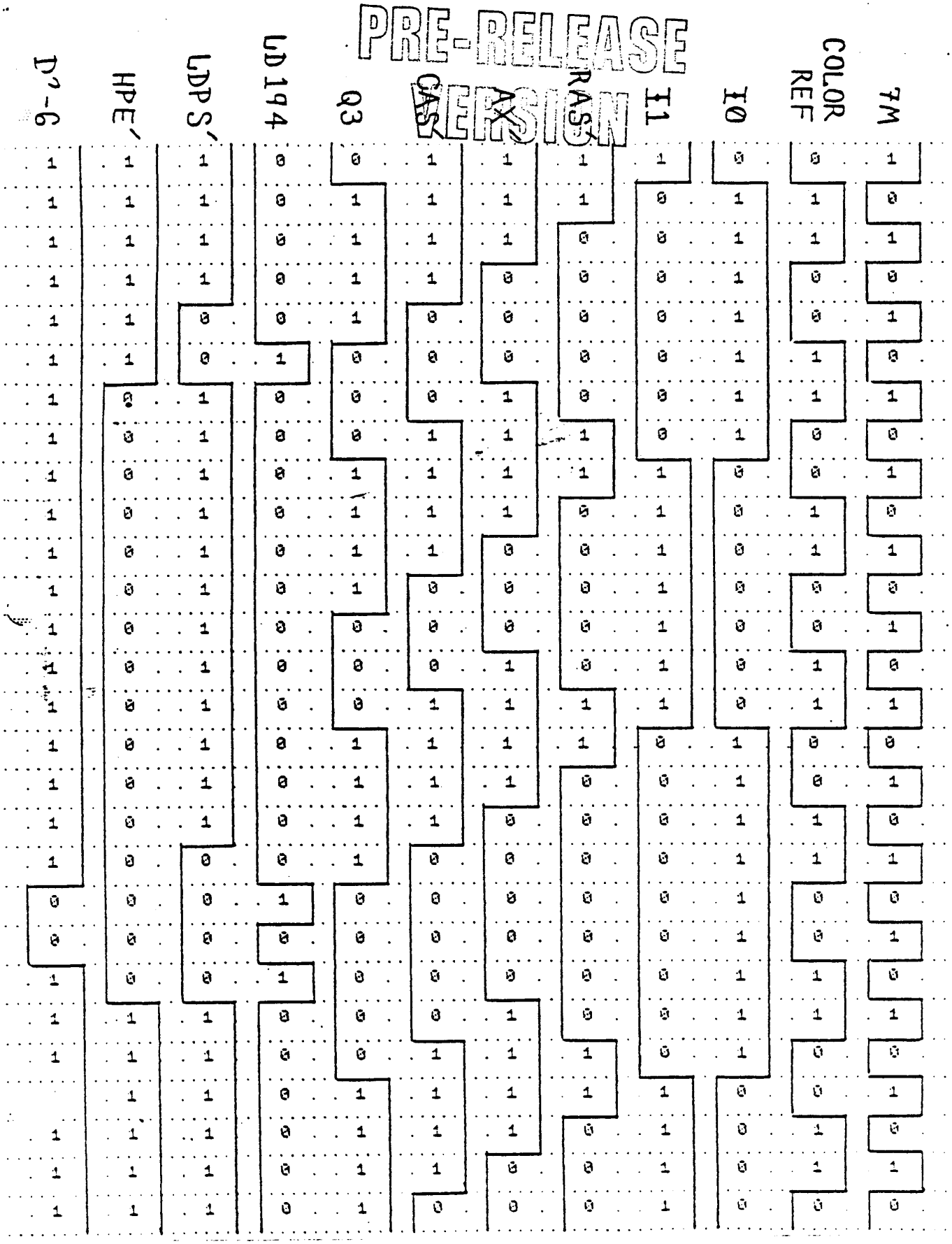
SYSTEM TIMING

dashed line = 14M

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



PRE-RELEASE VERSION



column addresses, and perform either a read or write cycle.

8. Q3 - A general purpose two MHz waveform similar to the RAM timing signals.

Two other signals are generated by combining the basic signals. They are:

1. LD194 (LoaD 194s) - This signal is used in the Video Generator circuits and determines when the 194 Universal Shift Registers will parallel-load graphics data.

2. LDPS′ (LoaD Parallel to Serial) - This signal forms the clock input to the 161 Sync Counters, and determines when the 166 Shift Register will parallel load one character row of data.

The Q3, COLOR REF and 7M signals also exist in their inverted form and are used occasionally in various sections of the Main Logic Board. These signals are produced as follows:

7M and COLOR REF are produced by dividing down 14M by two and then four; this is done in the 175.

RAM timing signals, RAS′, AX′ and CAS′, are generated in the 195 by first parallel loading ones, then shifting in zeroes.

The Phase Clocks are produced by the interaction between all three chips. Using the 153, PHASE ZERO routes either Q3 or Q3′ indirectly back into its D input at the 175, causing PHASE ZERO to change polarity twice each microsecond.

The 175 acts as a divide-by-two to produce 7M and 7M′. With the help of the EXCLUSIVE-OR gate at B2, 7M is divided by two to produce the 3.58 Mhz COLOR REF signal. (The actual frequency of 14M is 14.31818 Mhz; when divided down, 7M then has an actual frequency of 7.15909 Mhz, COLOR REF the required frequency of 3.579545 Mhz, and so on). Later on we will discuss how the 175 also helps generate the Phase Clocks.

The generation of 7M and 7M′ is straightforward. The Q0′ signal feeds its D0 Input to create a divide-by two. Less straightforward is the second divide-by-two which produces the 3.58 Mhz COLOR REF signal. Here the D1 Input is 7M exclusive-ORed with Q1. Here are the states:

7M	CURRENT: Q1	D1	NEXT: Q1
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1
0	1	1	1
1	1	0	0
0	0	0	0
1	0	1	1

Observe that Q1 half the frequency of 7M, which creates the 3.58 Mhz color burst signal.

The 195 Four-Bit Parallel-Access Shift Register acts as a divide-by-seven and generates the RAM timing signals: RAS', AX', and CAS'. The J and K' inputs, when tied together, form a D type input; this "D" input (pins 2 and 3 of the 195) is tied to ground. When the 195 is in SHIFT RIGHT mode, zeroes are continually shifted into to the Q0 position.

RAS', AX', CAS' and Q3 appear to be the same waveform shifted in time. This is true up until one 14M clock pulse after Q3 goes low. We also see that Q3 is connected to the PE' input of the 195. When Q3 goes, the operation mode changes from shift right mode to parallel load mode. This causes the 195 to behave as a group of D type latches where data at the P0 through P3 inputs appears at the Q0 through Q3 outputs at the next clocking.

Then, AX' goes high one clock pulse after Q3 goes low. This happens because AX's Parallel Input P1 is held high by the NAND gate at D2 pin 6.

RAS' and CAS' go high one clock pulse after AX' goes high. This is because AX' feeds their parallel enable inputs P0 and P2. Q3 goes high one clock pulse after RAS' goes high, because RAS' feeds the parallel enable input to Q3. At this point our cycle repeats for the 195's timing.

In detail, the generation of the phase clocks PHASE ZERO and PHASE ONE involves the interaction of all three System Timing chips. The 153 at C1 plays an important part.

Driving the Select Inputs to the 153 are:

PHASE ZERO, which drives the S1 Input and chooses between the I0b/I1b set of inputs and the I2b/I3b set.

AX', which drives the S0 input and chooses between the lower and higher numbered inputs within each set.

The phase clocks are generated using the 2 Mhz RAM signals which the 195 generates the unused latches on the 175 as a shift register and the 153 as a switch.

Of the phase clocks, only PHASE ZERO feeds back into the circuitry. Note the path that it takes within the 175 and how long each path takes:

From D2 to Q2, 70ns.

From D3 to Q3, 70ns.

Driving half of the inputs to the 153 (I0b and I2b) is the Q2 output. Since the 153's Z output drives the D2 input to the 175 while the 153 is selecting either the I0b or I2b inputs, the signal at Q2 then feeds back into itself.

The 153's S0 input is driven by AX', and the S1 input by PHASE ZERO. When AX' is low, the I0b and I2b inputs to the 153 are selected causing the Q2

signal to recirculate.

The other two inputs to the 153, I1b and I3b, are driven by Q3 and Q3', respectively. When AX' is high, either Q3' or Q3 is selected depending on the current value of PHASE ZERO.

During the first 500ns of timing, AX' is high, then goes low, then goes high again. When AX' is low, the signal from Q2 of the 195 recirculates through the 153 Q2 can only change when AX' is high.

Q3' is low, and Q3 is high when AX' first goes high. This causes PHASE ZERO to select a value equal to itself to be routed to the D2 input of the 175. Why? If PHASE ZERO is low with AX' high, Q3 (which is low) is routed to the D2 input. That leaves us with the period when AX' is high for the second time, for PHASE ZERO to change. Q3' is now high and Q3 low, causing PHASE ZERO to select its opposite to be routed into D2 of the 175. Two 14M clockings later this signal at D2 becomes the new PHASE ZERO.

The HPE' signal from the SYNC COUNTERS, which occurs during the 65th character position of each line, feeds into the EXCLUSIVE-OR gate at B2 which acts as an inverter. This output drives pin 1 of the 74LS20 at D2. Four signals must be high in order for the 74LS20's output to go low. They are:

HPE' (inverted by the X-OR gate)

COLOR REF'

PHASE ZERO

B13 pin 10 (AX' and CAS' low)

This occurs just before the second falling of Q3 as indicated on the System Timing Diagram.

When Q3 goes from high to low the 195 is in Parallel Enable mode. Usually, AX' is loaded with a one on the next clock pulse, which then pulls RAS' and CAS' up on the clocking after that. With P1 at a zero level, RAS', CAS', Q3 and Phase zero are frozen because they all depend on AX' to go high in order to change. The only signal which feeds the LS20 that is not dependent on AX' to go high is the COLOR REF' signal. Therefore, System Timing stops until the clock pulse after COLOR REF goes low. This adds two 14M clockings or one-half COLOR REF cycle to each line and causes the COLOR REF signal to be inverted with respect to the video data after each line. This allows the non-interlaced color video output of the APPLE II to work properly with ordinary color display devices.

During PHASE ZERO high, the 6502 microprocessor accuses memory. The 6502's Address Bus is valid about 200ns before the rising edge of PHASE ZERO, and is stable until after the falling edge of PHASE ZERO. During PHASE ONE high, the Video circuits access memory, fetching a byte of memory and routing it to the Video Generator. Ram Select (Figure S-6) and Ram Address Mux (Figure S-7) circuits switch between the 6502's Address Bus and the "Video Address Bus" begins life at the Sync Counters as seen in Figure S-4.

The Sync Counters consist of four 161 Four-Bit Binary Counters cascaded together. The counters are operated syncronously (all of the counters are clocked at the same time). When a carry is to be generated from one counter to the next, the counter generating the carry sets a flag, which indicates that the last count has been reached. This flag, called TC (Terminal Count), Enables the next counter stage to advance at the next clocking.

The Sync Counters provide both horizontal and vertical addresses, which point to a memory location containing the ASCII code for the current text character to be sent out. Six signals are used to define the current horizontal character position. They are H0 through H5 and HPE' (Horizontal Parallel Enable).

APPLE II uses 65 horizontal character positions per line. 40 of those are "live" while 25 are used for blanking. One count is used for Parallel Loading the 161's at D13 and D14. This causes HPE' to go from low to high while the remaining six signals, H0 through H5 stay low. 64 counts are used for these six signals H0 through H5 to go through a complete count sequence.

Besides Parallel Loading the 161's at D13 and D14, HPE' also affects System Timing by introducing a 140ns "freeze" on most of the System Timing signals. Refer to Section 3 for more details.

Each time a line of horizontal characters is displayed (the horizontal signals H0 through H5 and HPE' run through a complete 65-count sequence), the current vertical position is incremented so that the video circuits then begin fetching bytes of data from screen memory allocated for the next line. Eight signals are used to define the current vertical character position. They are VA, VB, VC, and V0 through V4.

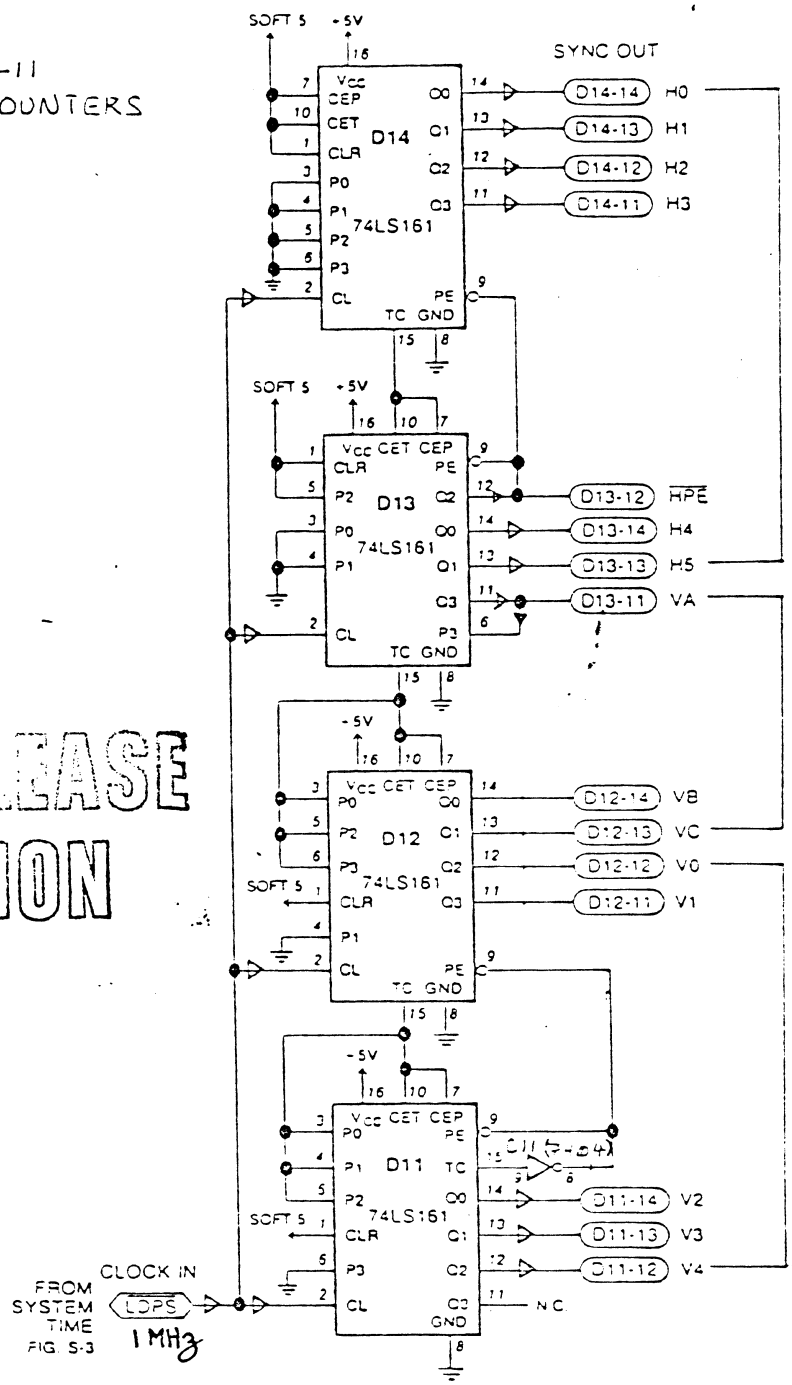
VA, VB, and VC determine which row (of eight rows of dots) is to be displayed. In TEXT mode, these signals are used by the 2316 Character Generator ROM to select the correct row of dots to be shifted out. In LORES mode, VC selects between the two 194's - VA and VB are not used. In HIRES mode, these signals influence the memory addressing sequence so that data is fetched from a unique memory location for each character - wide row of dots to be displayed.

Looking at Figure S-4, we see that VA Feeds its own Parallel Enable input. This leaves VA undisturbed by the Parallel Load That occurs during HPE'. Each Parallel Load copies the current value of VA back into itself.

The Vertical scan time in the APPLE II design is divided into 192 scan lines of "live" video followed by 70 lines of blanking. Looking at the System Timing

74LS161 4-bit binary counter

SOFT S = A2-11
ALL SYNC COUNTERS



HORIZONTAL CHARACTER POSITION

65 STATES,
40 μS ON-SCREEN
25 μS BLANKING

THESE SELECT ONE OF THE EIGHT VERTICAL SCAN LINES WITHIN A TEXT CHAR.

THESE SELECT WHICH ROW OF CHARS OUT OF 24 ON-SCREEN

Vertical
262 States
• 192 Live
• 70 Blanking

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

FIGURE S-4 SYNC COUNTERS

V1 (D12-11): C11-3, E11-12
VB (D12-14): C12-6, A5-15
VC (D12-13): A8-5, A5-16
C12-13, H1-13

Diagram, observe that the "live" vertical count and the first 64 counts of blanking are straightforward binary up-counting. Six extra counts are added to the blanking time with the following scheme:

At the 64th count of blanking, all of the counters are at an "all ones" condition. In addition D11-11 is high which means that all TC outputs including the TC output from the 161 at D11 are high. This causes the PE inputs of D11 and D12 to be held low by the inverter at C11 pin 8. On the next clocking, both D11 and D12 will Parallel Load data. (The 161's at D13 and D14 will again wrap around to all zeroes as usual.) This causes D11 and D12 to be set to a pattern six counts short of an all-ones condition.

However, D11-11 is pre-set to a zero, which means that on the seventh clocking after D11 and D12 Parallel Load, all counter outputs except D11-11 will wrap around to zero instead of Parallel Loading again. This happens because the unused output of D11 (pin 11) is at a logic zero and therefore the 161 at D11 cannot generate a TC signal until D11-11 goes high once again.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ROM MEMORY

SECTION 5

Just below the microprocessor are six sockets which may be filled with from one to six slightly smaller integrated circuits. These ICs are the Read-Only Memory (ROM) "chips" for the Apple. They contain programs for the Apple which are available the moment you turn on the power. Many programs are available in ROM, including the Apple System Monitor, the Apple Autostart Monitor, Apple Integer BASIC and Applesoft II BASIC, and the Apple Programmer's Aid #1 utility subroutine package. The number and contents of your Apple's ROMs depend upon which type of Apple you have, and the accessories you have purchased.

The APPLE II's motherboard ROM memory is organized into six sections of 2K (2048) bytes each. The type "2316" ROMs are referred to by the memory locations into which they map. The D0 ROM occupies space from $D000 - $D7FF, the F8 ROM from $F800 - $FFFF, etc. On a standard APPLE II, locations $E000 - $FFFF contain ROM memory with an optional IC available for the $D000 - $D7FF memory space. An APPLE II PLUS contains ROM memory in the entire $D000 - $FFFF memory space.

The two low-going Chip Select Inputs for each ROM are provided by outputs from the 138 at F12. Looking at Figure S-5, we see that the two negative-going enable inputs to the 138 (E1' and E2') are driven by pin 6 of the AND gate at H1. In order for one of the 138's outputs to go low, all of the Enable Inputs must be satisfied. This happens only if:

1. A14 and A15 are high ($C000 - $FFFF memory space addressed.)

2. PHASE ONE is low (a valid address is on the Address Bus at this time.)

If the 138's Enable Inputs are not satisfied, all outputs Z0 through Z7 are high.

If the Enable Inputs are satisfied, the three Address Inputs to the 138 select one of the Z0 through Z7 outputs to go low. Since the Address Inputs to the 138 are driven by A11 through A13, each 138 output reflects a unique 2K byte memory space. These low-going outputs are routed to the two low-going Enable Inputs of the appropriate ROM chip. The selected ROM will then go from high-impedance to low-impedance mode. The ROM places a byte of code onto the Data Bus selected from the 2K bytes which are permanently stored (mask programmed) within it. The byte to be selected is determined by the 12 Address Inputs A0 through A11, which drive the appropriate inputs to the ROM.

At the rising edge of PHASE ONE, the low-going enable to the 138 is removed, forcing all of its outputs high and disabling ROM. The selected ROM returns to tristate mode at this time.

The high-going enable (CS2) to each ROM has a pullup resistor to +5 volts. This INH' signal is available on the bus to deselect ROM memory. Two current APPLE products, the ROM Card and the Language Card, use this signal to "bank switch" the motherboard ROMs out, so that memory on the peripheral card can be mapped into the same address space.

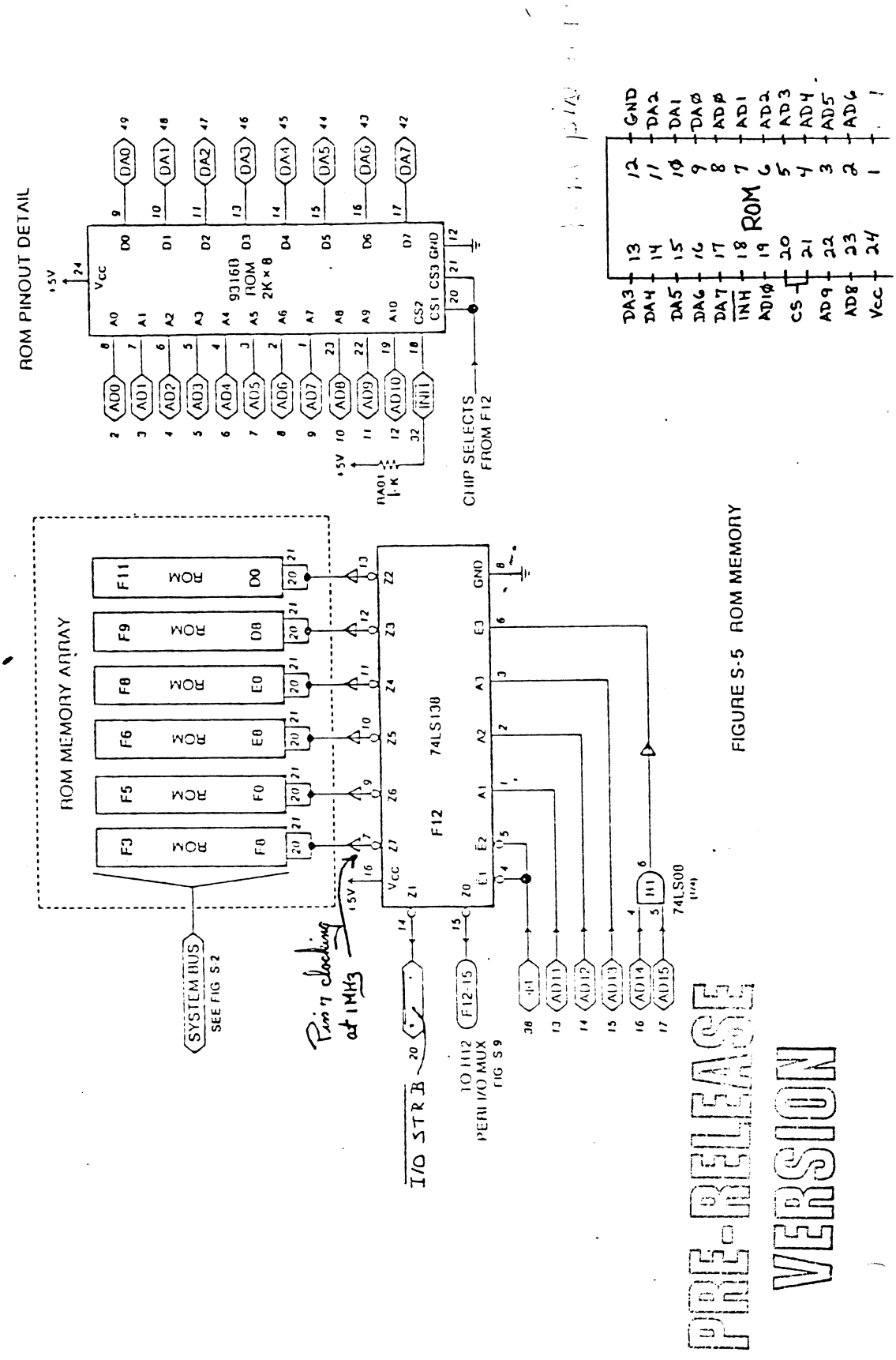


FIGURE S-5 ROM MEMORY

RAM SELECT

SECTION 6

Right below the ROMs and the central mounting nut is an area marked by a white square on the board which encloses twenty-four sockets for integrated circuits. Some or all of these may be filled with ICs. These are the main Random Access Memory (RAM) "chips" for your Apple. An Apple can hold 4,096 to 49,152 bytes of RAM memory in these three rows of components.* Each row can hold eight ICs of either the 4K or 16K variety. A row must hold eight of the same type of memory components, but the two types can both be used in various combinations on different rows to give nine different memory sizes.** The RAM memory is used to hold all of the programs and data which you are using at any particular time. The information stored in RAM disappears when the power is turned off.

The 6502 microprocessor has 16 address lines, and therefore can address 2~16 or 64K bytes of memory. APPLE II memory space is divided into four 16K sections and takes advantage of 16K dynamic RAMs. The top two address lines, A14 and A15, select the 16K block to be addressed:

A15	A14	SELECTED MEMORY
0	0	ROW C RAM: $0 TO $3FFF
0	1	ROW D RAM: $4000 TO $7FFF
1	0	ROW E RAM: $8000 TO $BFFF
1	1	I/O SPACE: $C000 TO $CFFF
		ROM OR LANGUAGE CARD: $D000 TO $FFFF

This leaves 14 address lines, A0 through A13, to select an individual byte within a row of RAM. (I/O and ROM / Language Card address space is discussed separately.)

The 16K "4116" Dynamic RAM has only 7 Address Inputs, A0 through A6. In order to send 14 address bits to the RAM, we send them in two groups of seven, a Row Address followed by a Column Address. We also send control signals which indicate when the Row and Column Addresses are valid. These control signals, RAS' (Row Address Strobe) and CAS' (Column Address Strobe) perform other important functions as well: RAS' refreshes data within the RAM, and when R/W is high and RAS' and CAS' are low, then the output of the RAM is enabled.

Looking at figure S-6 we see three sets of signals generated: RAM SEL', RAM A6, and RAM CAS'.

RAM SEL' goes low when there is a READ from RAM or the keyboard. This then places data from either RAM or the keyboard onto the System Data Bus, via the 257s at B6 and B7. RAM A6 sends two bits of address information to the RAM each time a READ or WRITE is performed.

74LS139 Dual 1-of-4 decoder/demultiplexer
74LS153 Dual 4-to-1 multiplexer
74LS257 Quad 2-to-1 3-state data selector/multiplexer

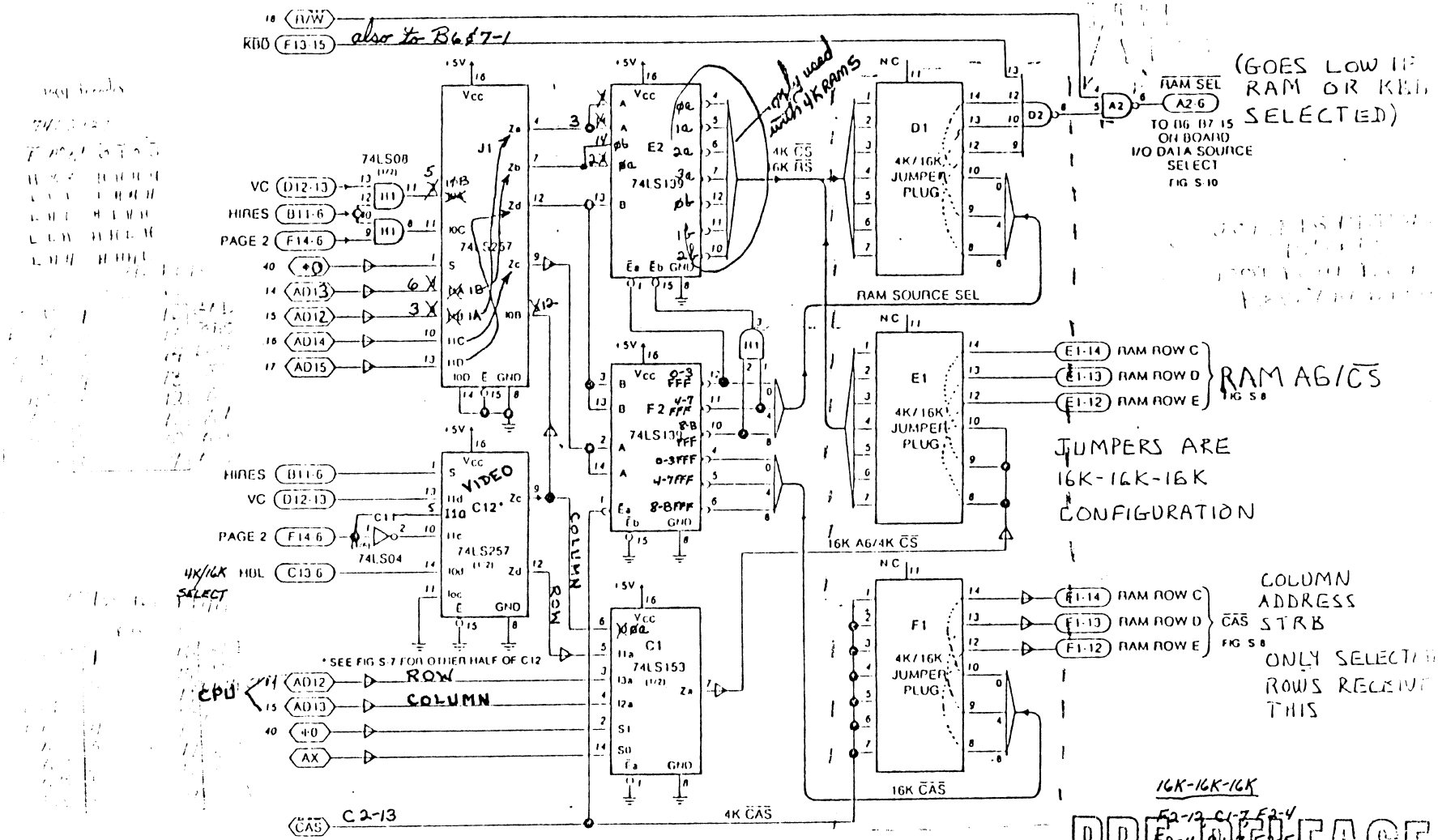
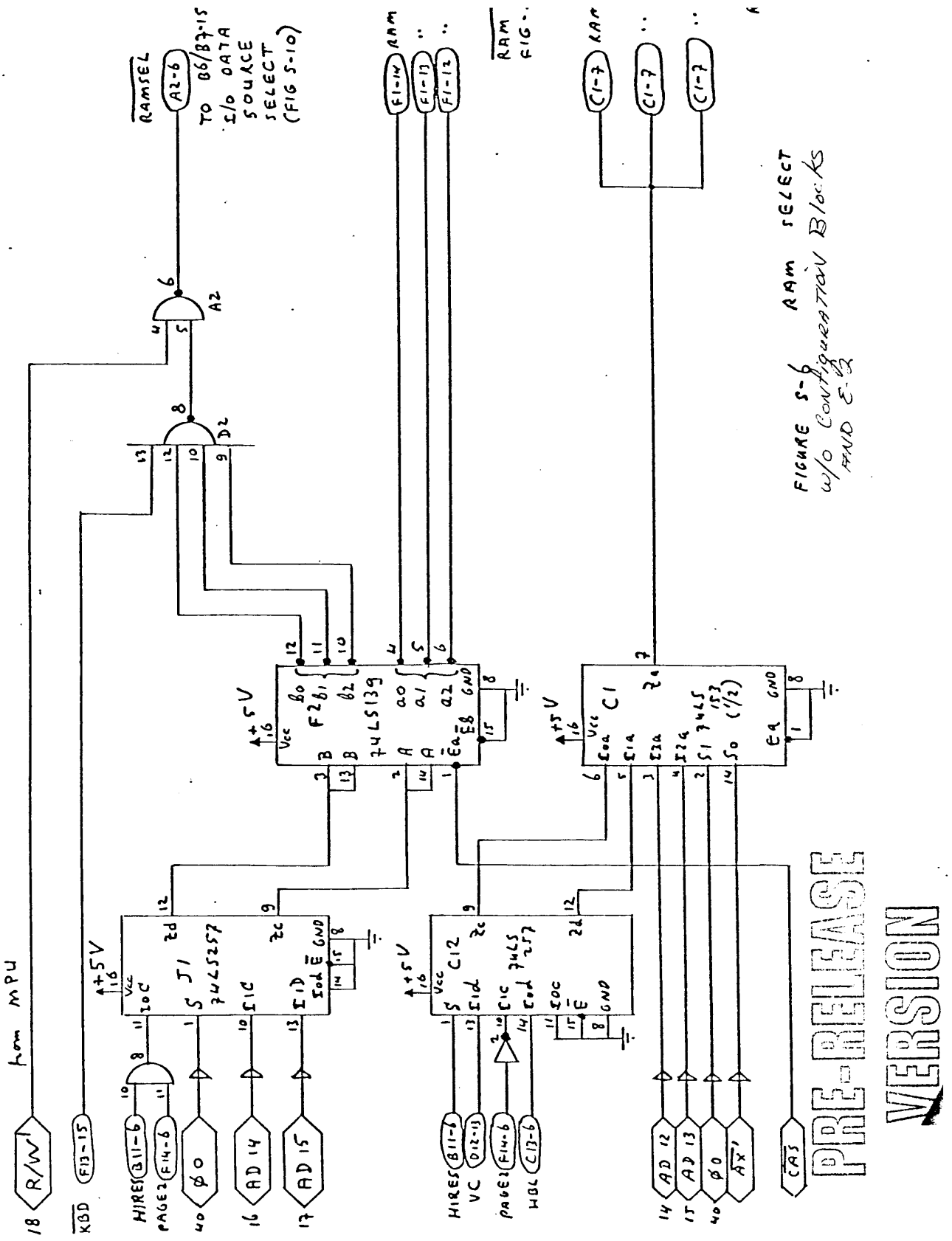


FIGURE S-6 4K/16K RAM SELECT
with CONFIGURATION Blocks

Phase zero high - CPU
low - Video

F14:
4 Text
5 Mix
6 Page 2



CAS' is the RAM chip select signal in 16K schemes. Only chips that receive CAS' actually go into a low-impedance mode when a READ from RAM happens. During a WRITE to RAM, only chips that receive CAS' actually change their data.

Referring to the System Timing Diagram, note that there are two memory accesses (bus cycles) each microsecond. The first one occurs when PHASE ZERO is low. This is the Video Cycle where a byte of data is fetched to be displayed on the screen.

The second memory access occurs when PHASE ZERO is high. This is the Microprocessor Cycle where a byte of data is read from or written to memory. There are three timing events within each cycle:

RAS'... When this signal goes low, the Row Address as it appears on RAM A0-A6 is strobed into memory.

AX' (Address multipleX)... This signal causes a switchover from Row to Column Address as seen on RAM A0-A6.

CAS'... This signal strobes in the now valid Column Address into RAM and selects a row of RAM.

Referring back to Figure S-6, we have two activities occuring:

1. The PHASE ZERO clock selects between Video (PHASE ZERO low) and Microprocessor (PHASE ZERO high) addresses.

2. AX' selects between Row Addresses (AX' high) and Column Addresses (AX' low) during each Video and Microprocessor Cycle.

Let's look at how the RAM A6 signal is produced. On systems with 16K RAMs, the RAM A6 signal is common to each RAM. The 153 at C1 produces both the Row A6 and Column A6 for each bus cycle (Video and Microprocessor).

Driving the Select Inputs to the 153 are:

PHASE ZERO - Drives the S1 input and chooses between the two Video Address Inputs (pins 5 and 6) and the two microprocessor inputs (pins 3 and 4).

AX' - Drives S0 input, and chooses between the two Video Address Inputs during PHASE ZERO low, and the two Microprocessor Inputs during PHASE ZERO high.

The Microprocessor Inputs to the 153 are straightforward - A12 and A13 from the microprocessor's Address Bus. The Video Inputs to the 153 are not as straightforward, however. They come from the 257 at C12.

Driving the Select Input to the 257 is the HIRES signal which is high during HIRES graphics and low otherwise. This is done because a different addressing scheme is required for HIRES as opposed to LORES and TEXT.

Now lets's look at how RAM CAS' is produced. Recall that we want to only give the chips in a selected ROW of RAM the CAS' signal. During PHASE ZERO (microprocessor mode), the high-order address lines A14 and A15 Select between four blocks of 16K bytes each. At this time we use these high order address lines

to point to a row of RAM to receive CAS'. During PHASE ONE (Video Mode), we use the Video Address signals to properly select a row of RAM.

RAM CAS' is produced at one of the outputs of the 139 only when CAS' goes low. At that time the values at the A and B inputs determine which row gets CAS'. The A and B inputs are determined by the 257 at J1.

Note in Figure S-6 that the other half of the 139 sends its outputs to a four input NAND gate at D2. This half of the 139 is configured much like the first half except that the Enable pin (pin 15) is grounded. This 139 half feeds the four input NAND gate at D2 with a low going signal any time RAM in the mother-board is selected. Also feeding this NAND gate is the KBD' signal from F13-5. The output of the NAND gate at pin 8 then goes high if either the keyboard or RAM is selected. DF2 pin 8 then drives one input of a two input NAND gate at A2. R/W', the microprocessor READ-WRITE line, drives the other input. The result is that RAM SEL' at A2 pin 6 goes low any time there is a READ from the keyboard or RAM. This gates keyboard or RAM data onto the System Data Bus (Figure S-10).

---

* You can extend your RAM memory to 64K by purchasing the Apple Language Card, part of the Apple Language System (part #A2B0006).

** Due to continuing cost reductions on 16K RAMs, current revisions of the Apple II will accept only 16K RAMs.

RAM ADDRESS MUX

SECTION 7

Two bus cycles occur within an APPLE II each microsecond. One cycle occurs when PHASE ZERO is high and causes the address generated by the microprocessor to be presented to the RAM chips. The other cycle occurs when PHASE ONE is high and causes the Video Address generated by the Sync Counters to be switched in. Some of the Sync Counter Outputs are ready "as is" to be presented to RAM memory while others undergo further processing. Both the Microprocessor Address and the processed Video Address are, at alternate 500ns intervals, presented to the RAM ICs. The RAM chips expect an address to be presented in two steps. With 16K RAMs, a seven bit row address is first presented. The RAM stores this internally when RAS' goes low. Then, a seven bit column address is presented and CAS' is sent to a selected row of RAM which causes it and the seven other selected RAM chips in that row to transfer data to or from the System Data Bus.

We then have a four-way multiplexing scheme, because both the Microprocessor Address and the Video Address must be presented to RAM, each being sent in two stages: a Row Address followed by a Column Address.

Looking at Figure S-7 (Appendix A) we see that six of the seven RAM Address lines are generated using the 153's at E12 and E13. The seventh address line is covered in the RAM Select chapter.

As shown in Figure S-7, two signals drive the select inputs to each 153:

1. PHASE ZERO - Drives each S0 input. It is high during microprocessor access and low during video access.

2. AX' - Drives each S1 input. IT is high when the Row Address is being presented, and low when the Column Address is presented, to the RAMs.

Twice during each bus cycle, RAS' (Row Address Strobe) goes low, strobing the Row Address into the RAM chips (they internally latch the Row Address). Next, AX' goes from high to low causing the 153s to switch over to the Column Address. Only a selected Row of RAM receives CAS' (Column Address Strobe), which latches the Column Address, now valid at the RAM address lines, into the RAM chip and causes a READ or WRITE operation to take place.

The refresh scheme used with dynamic RAM requires each chip to receive the full 128 possible Row Addresses, followed by RAS', every two milliseconds. The Video Address, multiplexed in during PHASE ZERO low, meets this requirement, and thus provides a transparent refresh without the need for dedicated refresh hardware.

Looking at Figure S-7, we see 12 Microprocessor Address lines and 12 Video Address lines driving the 153 inputs. For each MIcroprocessor address line, a corresponding Video Address line exists. In some cases the correspondence is straightforward - H0, H1, and H2 correspond to A0, A1, and A2. In order to hold the screen memory size down to a minimum, however, an extra chip, the 283 Adder, was introduced. Here's why....

74LS153 Dual 4-to-1 multiplexer
74LS257 Quad 2-to-1 data selector/multiplexer (3-state)
74LS283 4-bit full adder with fast carry

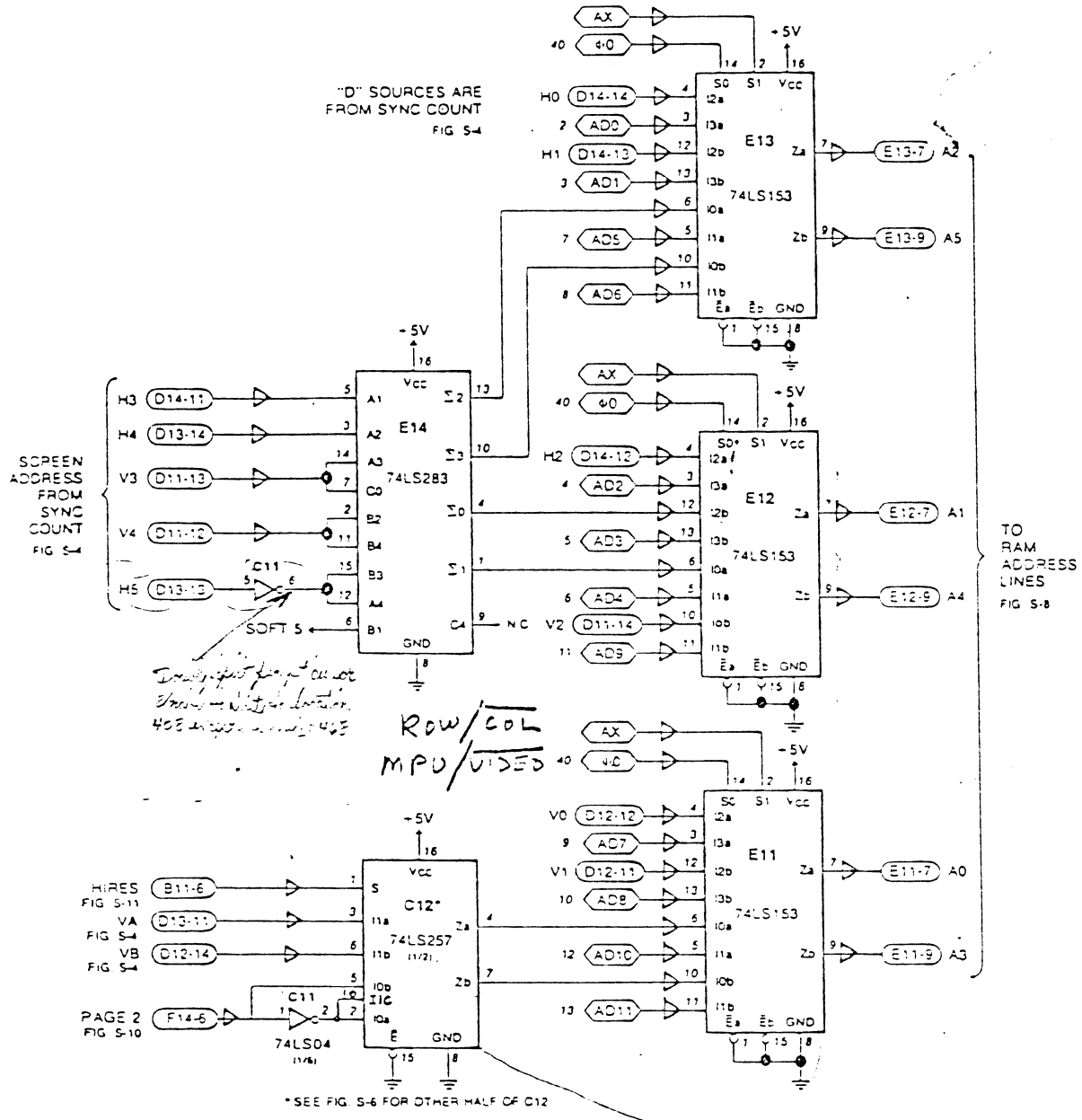


FIGURE S-7 RAM ADDRESS MUX & Refresh Count

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

In TEXT mode, there are 24 lines of 40 characters each for a total of 960 "live" characters. To be able to address each character in memory we need only 10 address lines since 2~10 equals 1024, more that the 960 we need. Furthermore, we don't care what the Video Address looks like during blanking except to satisfy the RAM refresh requirements. We do want all of the RAM memory that contains video character to be in one continuous block, however. There are a total of 11 "video address" lines generated by the Sync Counters: H0 through H5, and V0 through V4. (In TEXT mode, VA, VB, and VC go only to the 2316 Character Generator and don't affect the Video Addressing). The 283 takes in 5 Video Address lines from the Sync Counters, and by adding them together a four bit sum is created. This reduces the count to ten lines resulting in 1024 memory locations used to map 960 "live" characters. (The 64 "wasted" characters are used by the Peripheral Cards. This is documented in the Hobby Card Manual).

The 283 adds the two four bit binary words, plus a carry bit. It produces a four bit result and a carry out. The carry out is not used in the APPLE II design. The following are the two four-bit word signals:

```
                          V3   (CIN)

OP A:      H5'   V3   H4   H3

OP B:   +  V4    H5'  V4    1  (SOFT 5 VOLTS)

------------------------------------------

        =  E3    E2   E1   E0  (TO 153's)
```

The formula above accomplishes the compression from five signals to four. The circuit adds horizontal and vertical signals together, plus a constant, so that the address gaps created by horizontal and vertical blanking are removed. This scheme for generating addresses is responsible for the interweaving that takes place when a page of memory is filled with data from beginning to end consecutively. Adjacent lines are not stored in consecutive memory locations.

Another aspect of the Video Addressing not mentioned until now is the action of the 257 at C12. Looking at Figure S-7, we see that the 257 generates the upper two Address Bits of the Video Address. The Select Input of C12 is driven by the HIRES soft-switch output from the 9334 at B11. When S is low (TEXT/LORES mode) the PAGE 2 soft-switch output from the 9334 and its compliment form the Video Address equivalents of A11 and A12, respectively. This circuit creates the $400 or $800 base address used when in TEXT/LORES modes. The high-order four bits are all at a logic zero when in TEST/LORES. The circuits which do this are discussed in the RAM SELECT chapter.

When the HIRES soft-switch output is high (HIRES mode) these two outputs reflect VA and VB from the Sync Counters. HIRES uses an eight K byte memory block and must toggle the equivalent of A12 to A0 in the process of scanning the full memory block. VC is used as the video equivalent of A12,and the base address of $2000 (HIRES PAGE 1) or $4000 (HIRES PAGE 2) is generated in circuits found in the Ram Select chapter. This causes the twelve-way interlace seen when filling a HIRES page with data, starting at the base address and moving upwards.

PRE-RELEASE

VERSION

RAM MEMORY WITH DATA LATCH

SECTION 8

The APPLE II design centers heavily on the use of Random Access Memory (RAM). Our explanations are limited to the use of type "4116" 16K dynamic RAM ICs.

The four corners of each RAM supply power to the IC:

PIN NUMBER	FUNCTION	VOLTAGE
1	Vbb	-5 V
8	Vdd	+12 V
9	Vcc	+5 V
16 (GROUND)	Vss	0 V

Seven pins are used for addressing:

PIN NUMBER	FUNCTION
5	A5
6	A4
7	A3
10	A0
11	A1
12	A2
13	A6

Since each address line is independent of the others, the addresss labels assigned to the seven address pins are purely arbitrary. For example, one could switch the trace going to pin 5 of a RAM chip with the trace going to pin 6 with no effect in performance. Data would be stored in and read from different cells within the RAM but there would be no change external to the RAM. Usually the signals driving the RAM address lines are routed to the RAM address inputs at the convenience of the printed circuit board designer.

Two pins are used for DATA:

DIN (Data IN) appears at pin 2. This pin is driven by one of the System Data Bus signals D0-D7.

DOUT (Data OUT) appears at pin 14. This RAM signal drives the 174 RAM latches at B5 and B8.

74LS174 Hex D flip flop (... triggered storage ...)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

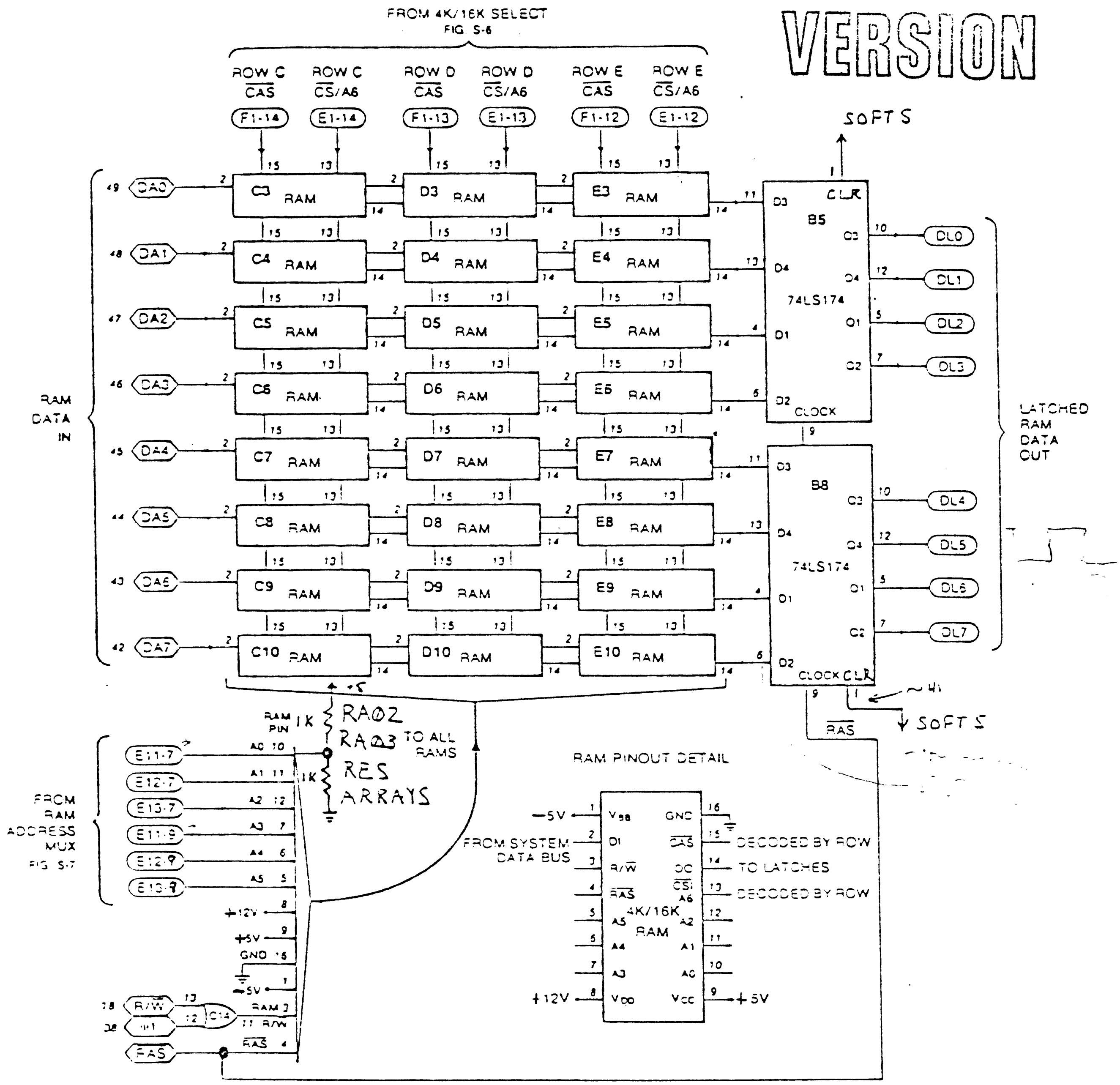
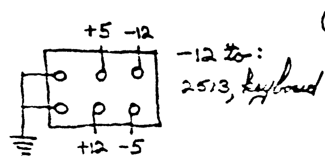
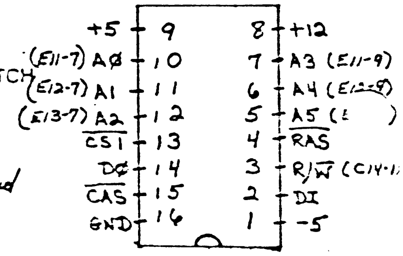


FIGURE S-8 4K TO 48K RAM MEMORY WITH DATA LATCH





There are three RAM control inputs:

WRITE' (READ/WRITE input). This input is driven by the System R/W' line and is ORed with the PHASE ONE clock before being presented to the RAM chips.

RAS' (Row Address Strobe). This signal latches the ROW address into each RAM and causes all cells in the indicated ROW to be refreshed.

CAS' (Column Address Strobe) Is applied only to selected rows of RAM and causes the unique bit cell indentified by the row and column address to be selected. If a write operation is indicated, the value which appears at the DIN input of the RAM cell is copied into the selected bit cell. If a read operation is indicated, the selected bit cell's contents is routed to the DOUT pin and latched by the 174's.

Looking at Figure S-8, we see that the RAM's WRITE' is driven by ORing the System R/W' with the PHASE ONE clock as described earlier. This is done to guarantee that a WRITE cycle only occurs during PHASE ZERO high (the microprocessor's turn to access memory) and never during PHASE ONE high (video's turn to access memory).

The 174s at B5 and B8 are each Quad "D" Latches with a positive-going Clock input. RAM data is latched so that the system can use RAM data while the next address is being set up. Looking at the System Timing Diagram, we see that the new ROW address is strobed into RAM 140ns after the data produced by the previous READ is latched into the 174s.

PERIPHERAL I/O

SECTION 9

Three pins on each slot of the APPLE II motherboard are used to send control pulses to the circuit card installed in that slot position. They are:

CONN. PIN#	SIGNAL NMEMONC
20	I/O STRB′
"I/O STROBE"	
41	DEV SEL′
"DEVICE SELECT"	
1	I/O SEL′
"I/O SELECT"	

Each of these signals produces a low-going pulse for 500ns in response to an address generated by the 6502 microprocessor. Of the three signals, only one, I/O STRB′, is common to all slots. The remaining two signals can be sent to a selected slot to the exclusion of all other slots. (I/O STRB′ is detailed in the ROM Memory section).

DEV SEL′ and I/O SEL′ are slot dependent signals. Each slot has a set of addresses which cause a pulse to be generated only at that particular slot. This eliminates the need to have the hardware in each peripheral card decide which signals are intended for it and which are not.

I/O SEL′ signals are generated by the 138 at H2. Driving its active-low inputs is F12-15 (see ROM Decode section). This pin goes low anytime an address in the $C000 to $C7FF range is generated. Looking at Figure S-9, we see that A8, A9, and A10 drive the Address Inputs to the (H2) 138. This causes the various outputs of the chip to go low anytime a particular 256 byte memory area is addressed. The Z0 output of H12 responds to addresses in the $C000 to $C0FF range and is used to enable the keyboard, on-board I/O and soft-switch circuits when A7 is high ($C080 to $C0FF), then the 138 at H2 is enabled and DEV SEL′ signals, to be detailed later, are generated.

The other seven outputs from the 138 at H12 are distributed among seven I/O slots (Slot 0 does not receive I/O SEL′). Since each slot receives I/O, SEL′ over a 256 byte range, this signal is used to enable a small program in PROM which controls APPLE II′S communication with the card. As described in the ROM Decode section, the outputs of the 138 at F12 go low only during PHASE AERO high. The enable into pins 4 and 5 of the 138 at H12 will only go low during Phase zero High. Our I/O SEL′ pulses will then be active only during the PHASE ZERO-high portion that the appropriate address is generated.

I/O SEL′ provides slots 0 through 7 with a 256 byte memory area. The mapping for this is $C <slot #> 00 to $C <slot #> FF, with slot 0 having no I/O SEL′ signal.

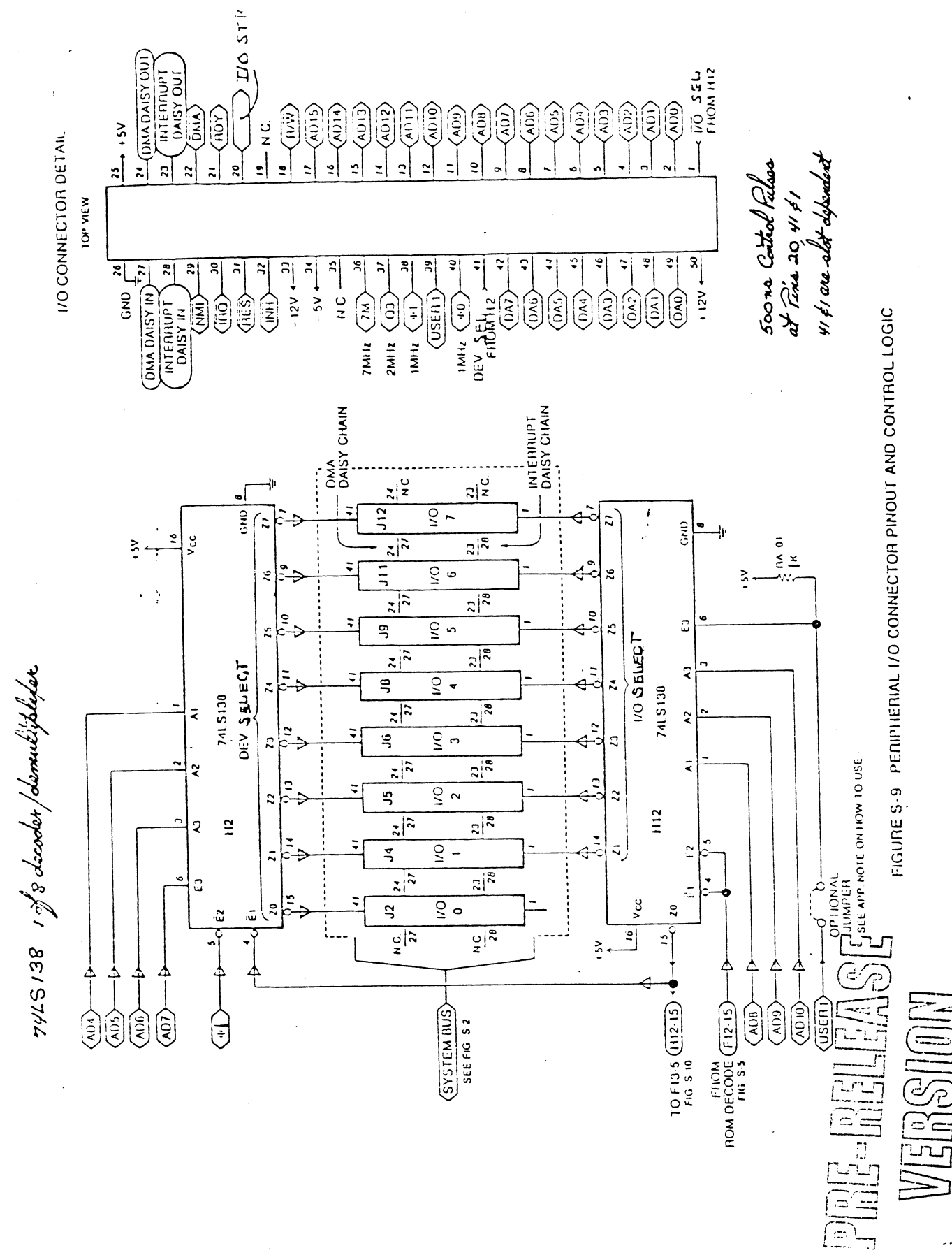


FIGURE S-9 PERIPHERIAL I/O CONNECTOR PINOUT AND CONTROL LOGIC

Observe in Figure S-9 that the active-high enable to the 138 at H12 has a pull-up resistor, and an optional jumper to connect it to the USER1 pin at the I/O slot (Pin 39). If the jumper is shorted, then USER1 may be used to disable any I/O signals in the $C800 memory range. This is done by bringing this pin to ground, which disables the 138's active high Enable Input.

DEV SEL' signals map into a tighter address space than the I/O SEL signals. Since the Z0 output of the 138 at H12 is used to enable the 138 at H2, the address space is limited to the $C000 to $C0FF space. Since A7 is also used as an enable to the 138 at H12, the address space is further limited to $C080 to $C0FF. This allows each peripheral connector a 16 byte address space since A4 to A7 Drive this 138's Address Inputs. Normally, address lines A0 to A3 Are used with the DEV SEL' signal to act as control signals for the peripheral card's hardware. The program to do this often resides in PROM, mapping into the peripheral card's I/O space. In summary:

I/O SEL' gives each peripheral slot, except Slot 0, 256 bytes of address space. Pin 1 of the selected slot will go low for one PHASE ZERO - high time period (500ns) each time one of the slot's 256 assigned addresses is generated by the 6502. This signal is used to enable a small PROM program on the peripheral card.

DEV SEL' gives each peripheral slot, including Slot 0, 16 bytes of address space. Pin 41 of the selected slot will go low for one PHASE ZERO - high time each time an address in the slot's DEV' address space is generated by the 6502. This signal is used to send control signals to the peripheral card.

Since the phase clocks are used to ENABLE the 138's, all signals generated by the 138's will LAG the phase clocks slightly. This means that that the DEV SEL' or I/O SEL' signal will be present until AFTER the falling edge of PHASE ZERO or the rising edge of PHASE ONE. These slot-dependent signals, along with I/O STRB', can be captured by sending the signal into the D input of a latch and clocking the latch with the rising edge of PHASE ONE.

ON-BOARD I/O

SECTION 10

APPLE II offers on-board I/O (input/output) circuits which include the keyboard, video display and the built-in loudspeaker. Other on-board I/O capability includes cassette interface circuitry, Game Paddle (analog to digital conversion) circuits and some general purpose logic inputs and outputs.

Looking at Figure S-10, observe how address lines A0 - A13 distribute themselves between the four ICs at the left. The 138s at F12 and H12 provide enable signals to the ROMs and to the peripheral cards. This is mentioned in detail in the Rom Memory and Peripheral I/O chapters. It is important to note that the Z0 output from the 138 at H12 goes low when an address in the $C000 - $C0FF range is generated. You may recall from the Peripheral I/O chapter that the DEV SEL' signals are only enabled when A7 is high and the Z0 output just mentioned is low. The 138 at H12 also uses this Z0 output and A7 as enable signals but A7 is used as a low-going enable signal producing an address range of $C000 - $C07F for the 138 at F13 where an address range of $C080 - $C0FF exists for the DEV SEL' signals.

Driving the high going Enable Input of the 138 at F13 is the I/O signal from System Timing. This is done since the Address Bus is valid all the time that I/O is high. Address lines A4 to A6 drive this 138's Address Inputs. Since A0 to A3 do not connect with this device, each output will have a 16 byte memory space where any one of the 16 addresses present on the Address Bus will cause the selected output to go low.

Let's cover some F13's outputs and the memory locations into which they are mapped:

Z0 ($C000 - $C00F). A READ to any of these addresses causes an ASCII character from the keyboard to be placed onto the Data Bus via the 257s at B6 and B7.

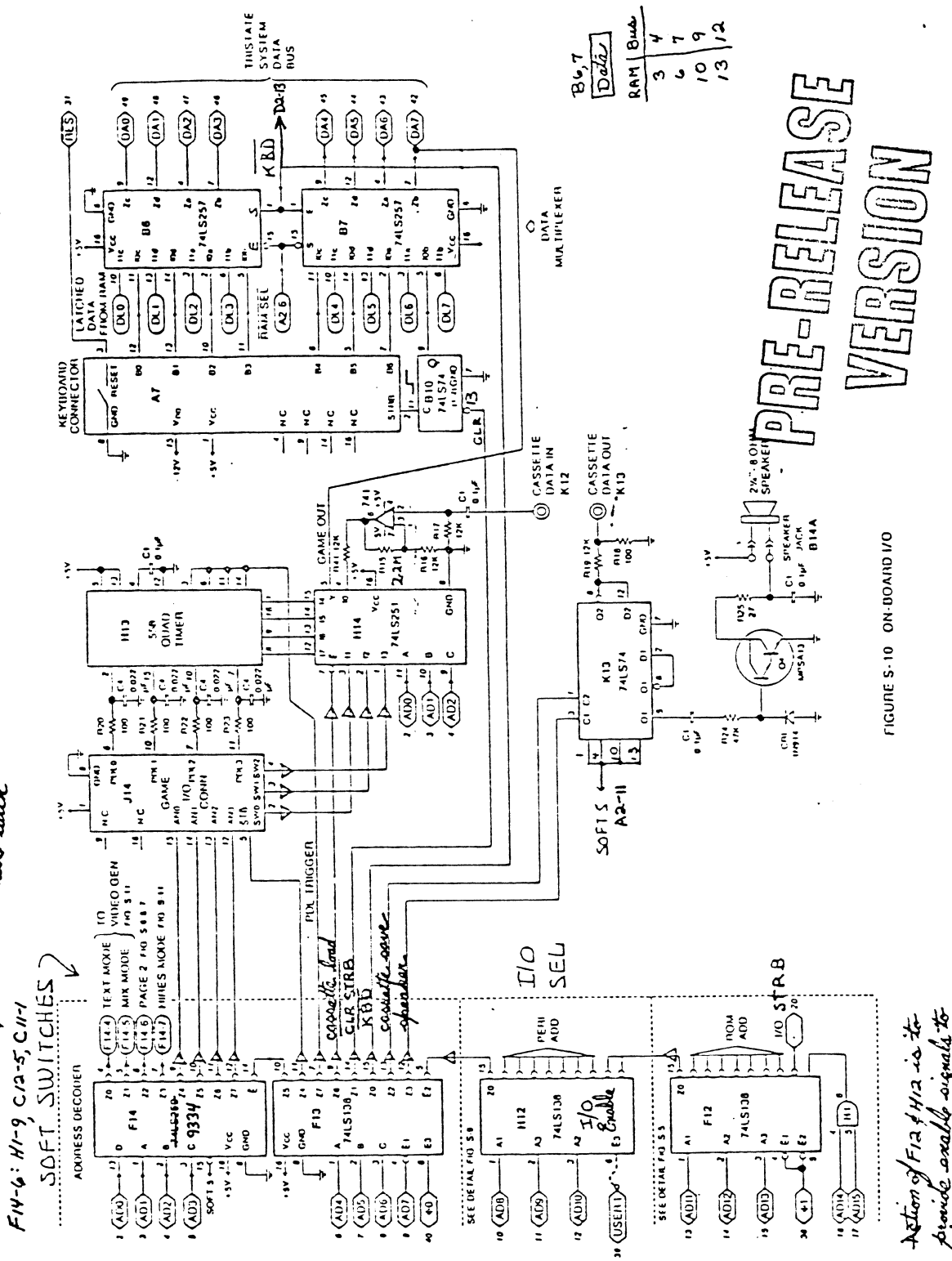
Z1 ($C010 - $C01F). This is the Cassette Save signal which clocks the 74LS74 at K13 which is set up as a divide-by-two. This causes its output to toggle. R18 and R19 form a 120 to 1 voltage divider and reduce the four volt peak-to-peak signal from K13's Q2 output to under 40 millivolts peak-to-peak.

Z3 ($C030 - $C03F). This signal clocks the other 74LS74 at K13 which is also configured as a divide-by-two. The output of this LS74 is AC coupled to a single-package Darlington amplifier which drives the speaker through a 27 ohm current-limiting resistor.

Z4 ($C040 - $C04F). This signal appears at pin 5 of the game I/O connector and is available for user applicaitons.

Z5 ($C050 - $C05F). This signal enables the 9334 at F14 which is responsible for the graphics "soft switches" and some software-controlled signals available at the Game I/O connector outputs.

Z6 ($C060 - $C06F). This signal enables the 251 at H14. The 251 chooses between the following inputs:



MUX INPUT NAME	INPUT IS
10	Cassette In
11	SW0
12	SW1
13	SW2
14	PDL0
15	PDL1
16	PDL2
17	PDL3

Since the 251's Select INputs are driven by A0-A2, these various inputs appear at Data bit 7 when reading to addresses $C060 $C067. The 251's Y output drives bit 7 of the Address Bus.

The Cassette In Signal to the 251 comes from the 741 Op-Amp at location K1.

The PDL signals to the 251 come from the 558 Quad Timer. The varying resistance of each paddle changes the R-C time constant; therefore, the time period for which the output remains high. This time period is converted into a number ranging from 0 to 255, in software.

Z7 ($C070 - $C07F). This output from the 138 resets all four of the 558's Timers.

The 257s at B6 and B7 buffer the keyboard and Latched RAM Data from the Data Bus.

The RAM SEL' signal drives the Enable Input to the 257, and goes low if RAM or the KBD is selected. When this happens, usually Latched RAM Data is selected. If our KBD' signal from the 138 at F13 is low, however, (READ from KBD) then the keyboard is selected.

The 9334 IC at F14 is an eight-bit Addressable Latch. The 9334's outputs perform two functions. The first one is to throw the soft switches which control the video modes. These switches are in the $C050 to $C057 address range. Note that A0 forms the D input to this 9334. This second function performed by the 9334 is to set the four Annuciator Outputs available at the Game I/O Connector. This general-purpose LSTTL outputs are available for user applications.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

VIDEO GENERATOR

SECTION 11

The Video Generator circuits convert bytes of data into serial video. Horizontal and vertical sync pulses are added to produce composite video. A color burst signal is also added when color graphics is displayed. The purpose of the Video Generator is then to:

1. Generate text or graphics serial video data.

2. Correctly route the video signal to the output jack.

3. Add horizontal and vertical sync pulses and, if required, a color burst signal.

There are three video modes:

1. TEXT. Data is displayed as alphanumeric characters in 24 lines of 40 columns each.

2. LORES (LOw RESolution) graphics. Data appears as colored squares within a 40 (h) by 48 (v) matrix with 16 available colors.

3. HIRES (HIgh RESolution) graphics. Data is shifted out as a 280 (h) by 192 (v) matrix with six colors available.

TEXT generation is the most straightforward of the three modes. Two principal ICs are involved - the *2316 Character Generator and the 166 Shift Register. Referring to Figure S-11 we see that the 2316 is a special-purpose ROM with 9 Address Inputs and 5 Data Outputs. Let's describe what a character is supposed to look like on the screen:

A TEXT character appears as seven groups of five dots across. These groups of five dots are stacked vertically to produce a five (h) by seven (v) dot matrix. To the left and right of each character is a blank column used to separate characters horizontally. An eighth ROW of blank dots is produced by the Character Generator to separate characters vertically.

The Character Generator produces eight groups of five dots each which are shifted out as serial video. Looking at Figure S-11, we see that six of the Character Generator's inputs are from Latched RAM Data and represent the ASCII code of th character to be displayed. Three other inputs to the 2316 are VA, VB, and VC from the Sync Counters. These three signals go through 2~3 or eight different states, each state addressing a different row of dots within each character.

The 166 Shift Register accepts each five-dot row from the Character Generator, adds a blank dot in front of an behind the row, and shifts out the dots one at a time.

Three inputs from System Timing, 14M, 7M, and LDPS' (LoaD Parallel to Serial) control the action of the 166. During each shift, bits are shifted up alphabetically: G moves to H, F to G, E to F, etc. Note that both H and B inputs

74LS151 8-[illegible] multiplexer
74166 8-bit serial/parallel-in, serial-out shift register
74LS174 Hex D flip-flop
74LS194 4-bit Bi-Di universal shift register
74LS257 Quad 3-state 2 to 1 Data selector/multiplexer

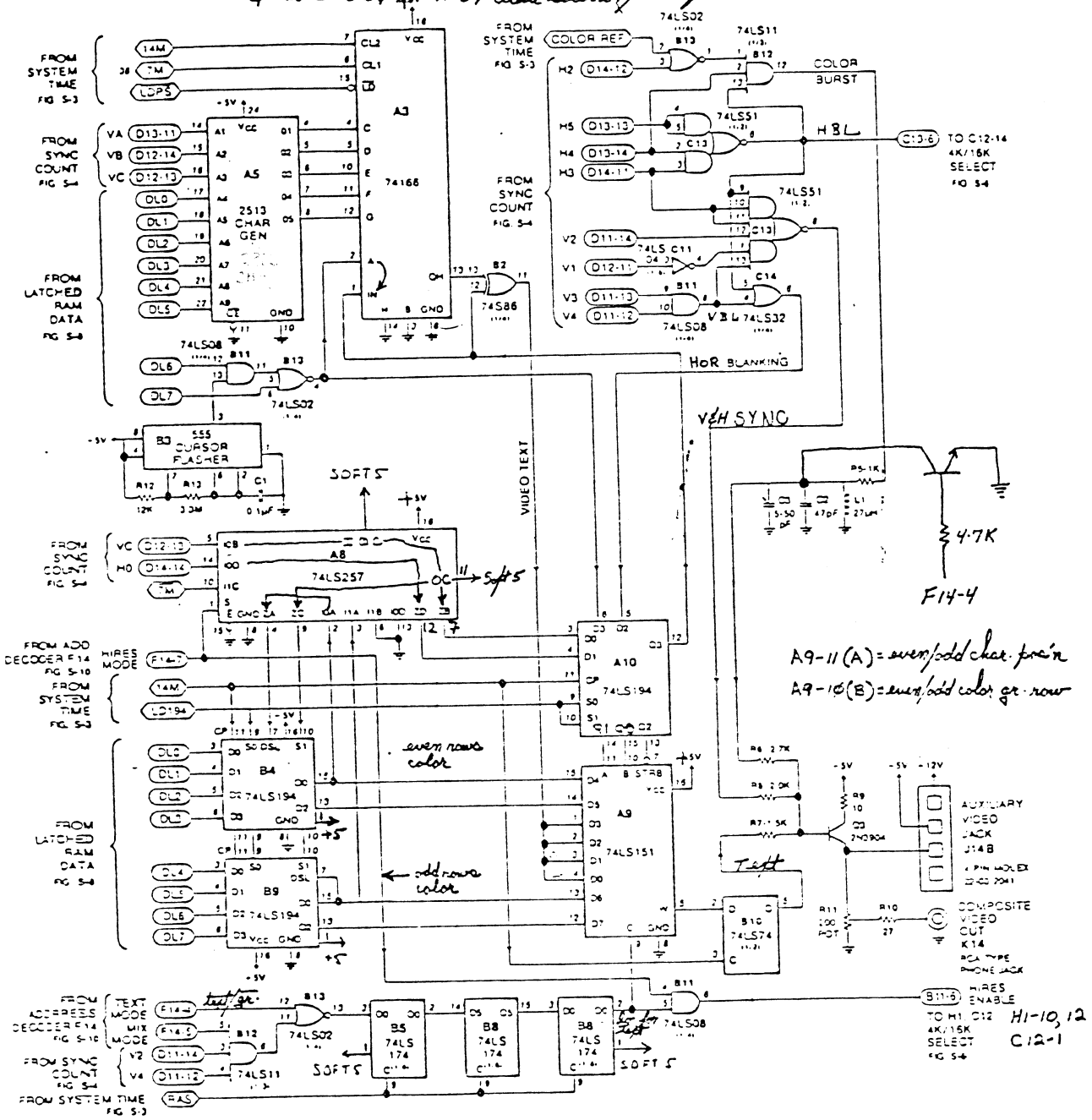


FIGURE S-11 VIDEO GENERATOR

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

are grounded; these create the blank dots to the left and right of each row which separate adjacent characters.

Our 166 mode diagram looks like this:

14M	7M	LDPS′	RESULT
X	1	X	HOLD CURENT POSITION
~	0	0	PARALLEL LOADS
~	0	1	SHIFTS UP ONE POSITION

NOTE: "~" represents a low-to-high transition. "X" means "can be any value."

The 166 is allowed to change only if 7M is high. This results in data being shifted out at 7 Mhz. Referring to the System Timing Diagram, we see that LDPS′ occurs in the middle of PHASE ZERO once every microsecond, causing a new row of microsecond.

The Exclusive-OR gate, which QH feeds into, functions as a controlled inverter. Observe in Figure S-11 that Latched RAM Data bits six and seven feed into gates at B11 and B13, the output of which passes through the 194 at A10 via pins six and seven, to the other input of the Exclusive-OR gate. (The 194 at A10 functions as a latch.) The 555 Oscillator at B3 operates at about three hertz and also feeds into the gates at B11 and B13. As a result, when pin 12 of the EXCLUSIVE-OR is high, video will be displayed in inverse field, otherwise it passes through undisturbed. The effect of DL6 and DL7 on the serial video output is:

DL7	DL6	VIDEO MODE	
0	0	INVERSE	B13-4 IS HELD HIGH
0	1	FLASHING	B13-4 WILL BE HIGH (EXCEPT WHEN 555 IS HIGH)
1	0	NORMAL	B13-4 IS HELD LOW
1	1	NORMAL	B13-4 IS HELD LOW

The video output feeds into the 151 at A9. This chip acts as a master switch between TEXT, LORES, and HIRES modes. (will be discussed later)

Both LORES and HIRES GRAPHICS make use of the 194 Universal Shift Register. The complexity of this chip is due to the four operation modes which cause a Hold conditon, Shift Left and Right conditions, and a Parallel Load condition. For our purposes we can ignore one unused mode and describe the 194′s operating modes as: (see top of next page)

S1	S0	MODE	RESULT
0	0	HOLD	DATA STAYS THE SAME
1	0	SHIFT LEFT	DATA FROM Q3 SHIFTS TO Q2, Q2 TO Q1, ETC DSL INPUT SHIFTS INTO Q3
1	1	PAR. LOAD	DATA AT D0 - D3 APPEARS AT Q0 - Q3

NOTE: References made to "the twin 194s" refer to the two at B4 and B9. These two ICs are the nucleus of the LORES and HIRES circuits.

In both LORES and HIRES schemes Latched RAM Data is parallel-loaded into the Twin 194s and then shifted left for a one microsecond interval. The HIRES signal from F14 pin 7 drives the 257's Select Input. The 257 then chooses between Data Input Set 0 when in LORES mode or Data Input Set 1 when in HIRES mode. The effect that changing modes has on the Twin 194s is to:

1. Change the way data circulates within the 194's - they act as independent recirculating shift registers, or "spinners" when in LORES. In HIRES mode the Twin 194s connect in series to make one eight position shift register (only 7 are actually used).

2. Change the rate at which the 194s are shifted by effecting the S1 Mode Control input to the 194s.

The twin 194s have their S1 Inputs held high all the time when in LORES. Remember that Data Input Set 0 is selected (routed to the Z Outputs) when in LORES mode, and Data Input Set 1 is selected when in HIRES. Following the path back from the ZC output of the 257, we see that the 194s S1 inputs connect to Soft 5 volts via the I0c Input of the 257. The S0 inputs of the 194s are "hardwired" to the LD194 signal from System Timing. In LORES then, the 194s are in one of two modes:

1. Parallel Load (LD194 is high)

2. Shift Left (LD194 is low) enter a Hold state

3. When LD194 is low and 7M' is high, then the 194s do an eight bit shift. The Q0 output of the 194 at B9 feeds the Data Shift Left Input of the 194 at B4.

The 151 at A9 serves as the master switch between TEXT, LORES and HIRES. It also switches between inputs in LORES mode. Looking at Figure S11, we see that the C Input to the 151 is driven by pin 2 of the 174 at B8. This signal serves to switch between TEXT and graphics. When the C Input is low, one of the Data Inputs D0 through D3 are candidates to become the output. Select inputs A and B choose between the four inputs. All four inputs D0 through D3 are, however, driven by the video text signal. Therefore, we are in TEXT mode regardless of the values of the A and B inputs when C Input is low.

When the C input is high, one of the data inputs D4 through D7 are selected to become the output signal. Here the final selection process is more involved.

The Zb and Zd outputs of the 257 pass through the 194 at A10 which acts as a latch. The Q0 and Q1 outputs of the 194 which reflect the levels of the Zb and Zd outputs from the 257, drive the A and B inputs, selecting either Data Input D4, D5, D6, or D7. The selected input becomes the final output.

In LORES mode, Data Input set 0 is selected. H0 and VC from the Sync Counters are now routed to the A and B inputs, respectively, of the 151. This causes two effects:

1. When VC is low, the 194 at B4 is selected. When VC is high, the 194 at B9 is selected.

2. On even numbered columns, data is tapped from each 194 at its Q0 output. On odd numbered columns, data is tapped from each 194 at its Q2 output. This allows for continuous LORES patterns to be generated across the screen. This happens because each 194 is two clockings out of phase after 14 clockings (14 MOD four is two). The "tap" is moved two places to corrector for this.

VC, from the Sync Counters, changes polarity every time four horizontal lines are generated. Switching between the Twin 194s every four horizontal lines causes a byte of Latched RAM Data to appear as two LORES squares stacked on top of one another.

In HIRES mode, the A and B inputs to the 151 are both low. This causes only the Q0 output of the 194 at B4 to be selected.

In summary for mode switching:

1. In TEXT mode the C input to the 151 at A9 is low. Any values for the A and B inputs to the 151 selected TEXT video. In either graphics mode, the C input is high.

2. In LORES mode, H0 and VC from the Sync Counters drive the A and B inputs to the 151, causing a byte of Latched Ram Data to appear as two LORES squares, stacked one on top of another.

3. In HIRES mode, only Q0 of the 194 at B4 is selected as video data.

At the bottom of Figure S-11 are two soft switch outputs, TEXT and MIX, two soft Sync Counter outputs V2 and V4, and RAS' from System Timing. These signals combine in the gates at B12 and B13. The resulting signal, delayed by 1.5 microseconds by the cascaded latches at B5 and B8 drives the C input to the 151 switching between TEXT (C input high). These gates allow for MIX mode which has four text lines at the bottom of the screen. The HIRES ENABLE signal is produced by ANDing the HIRES signal with latch output B8-2, and is used to alter the addressing scheme when in HIRES mode.

In either GRAPHICS mode, brightness and color information is contained in the bit patterns that are shifted out. Brightness, or luminance is based on the ratio of the number of dots set high to the total number of dots sent out within a given screen area.

Color information is based on the phase relationship between the 3.58 Mhz

COLOR BURST signal, which is sent for a brief time following the rising edge of the horizontal Sync pulse, and the serial video data.

As explained in the new APPLE II Reference Manual, the most significant bit from Latched RAM Data serves as a control bit in REV 1 or higher boards. This creates an additional 70ns delay to the serial video when the high-order bit from Latched RAM Data is set. We get green, violet, white and black when the "control bit" is 0 and orange, blue, whitel, and blackl when the control bit is 1.

The gates in the upper right corner of Figure S-11 produce the horizontal and vertical sync pulses that allow a television set to "lock in" to the APPLE II video signal. APPLE II generates composite video (all video information is contained in one signal); sync pulses are mixed in with the video data via R6. Looking at the System Timing Diagram, we see that horizontal blanking occurs during the first 25 counts of the Sync Counters. Note also that vertical blanking occurs whenever V3 and V4 from the Sync Counters are both high. Within each horizontal and vertical blanking period, a corresponding sync pulse is generated.

Circuits disable the 151 during blanking, thus forcing its output to a logic 0. Looking at Figure S-11, we can trace back from the STRB Input of the 151 (pin 7) through the 194 at A10 to pin 6 of the OR gate at C14. Since the STRB Input to the 151 is active low, we want the OR gate to go high only during horizontal or vertical blanking. Driving pin 5 of the OR gate is the HBL (Horizontal BLanking) signal produced by pin 6 of the LS51 - this signal is high during the first four counts of the Sync Counters. Driving pin 4 of the OR gate is V3 ANDed with V4, which is the Vertical Blanking signal. The sync pulses are produced by ANDing the blanking signals with a few more timing signals to narrow them down within the blanking periods. For the horizontal sync pulse we AND HBL with V3. For the vertical sync pulse we AND VBL with V2 And V1'. This is done with the lower LS51 in Figure S-11. This LS51 ORs the horizontal and vertical sync pulses and inverts the result so our sync pulses will be low-going. The final result is mixed into the output via R8.

Rev 1 or later boards have a modified version of the sync circuit, which corrects for some timing problems encountered when interfacing the APPLE II to certain television set models.

COLOR BURST occurs during HBL when H4 is high and H2 is low. Looking at the System Timing Diagram, we see that this starts right after the horizontal sync pulse and continues until H2 goes high (4 microseconds total time).

The COLOR BURST signal is shaped by R5, L1, C2, C3. This network is a tank circuit which is tuned to the COLOR BURST frequency of 3.58 Mhz.

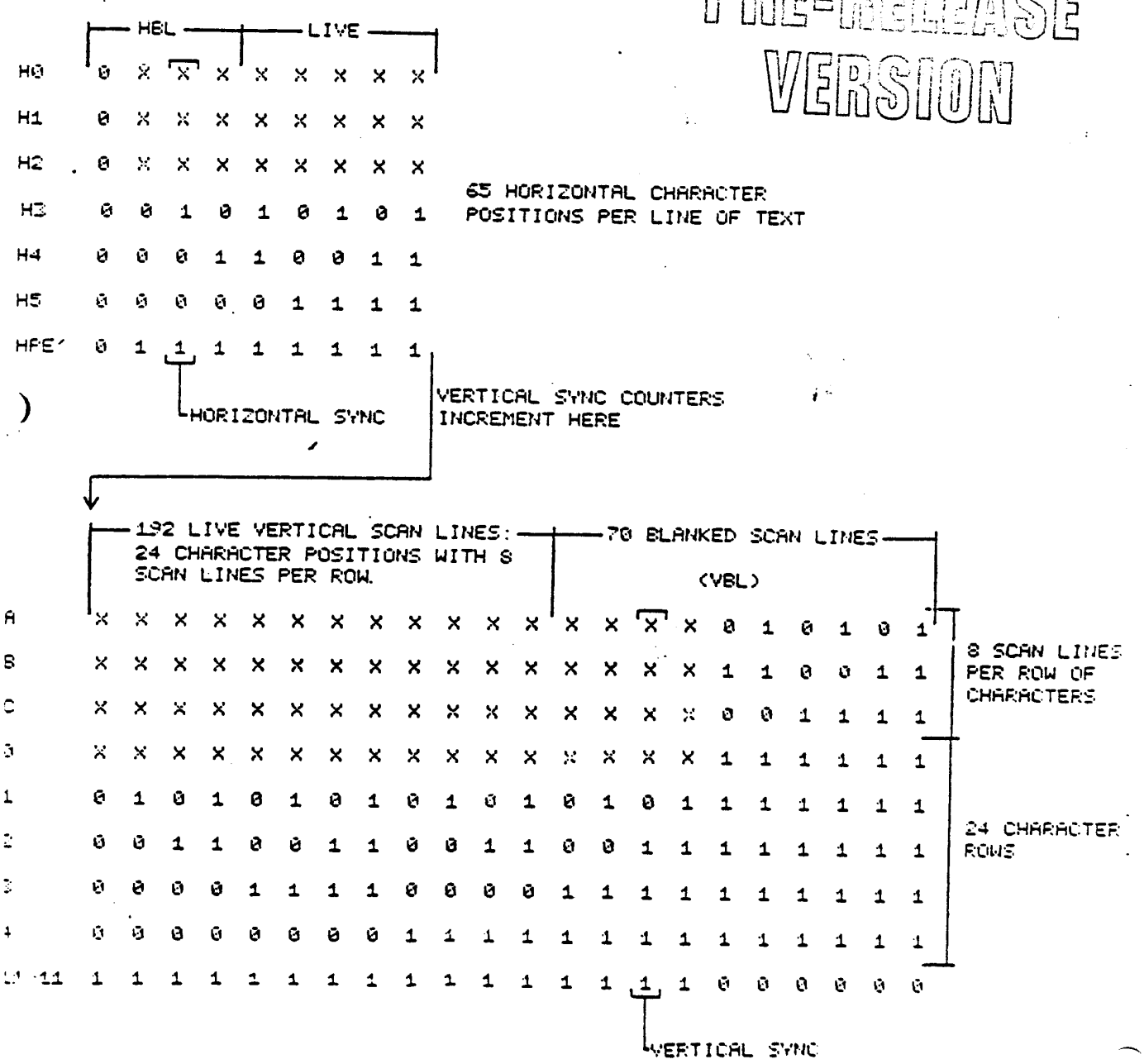
Adjusting C3 causes a slight phase shift to the COLOR BURST signal with reference to the video data and has the effect of shifting the colors on the screen. This provides a "fine tuning" color adjustment on the APPLE II to supplement controls found on the television set.

*Early revision boards used a 2513 Character Generator.

VIDEO STATE DIAGRAM

HORIZONTAL CHARACTER POSITIONS: 25 STATES OF BLANKING, 40 STATES OF "LIVE" VIDEO.
EACH STATE (ONE CHARACTER WIDE) LASTS 1 MICROSECOND (CLOCKED BY LDPS)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

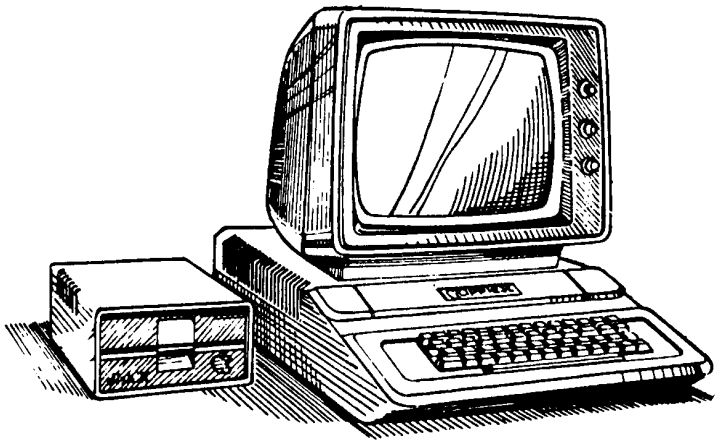


Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 8
MORE MEMORY



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

MORE MEMORY

The Apple's 6502 microprocessor can directly reference a total of 65,536 distinct memory locations. You can think of the Apple's memory as a book with 256 "pages", with 256 memory locations on each page. For example, "page $30" is the 256 memory locations beginning at location #3000 and ending at location $30FF. Since the 6502 uses two eight-bit bytes to form the address of any memory location, you can think of the bytes as the page number and other as the location within the page.

The Apple's 256 pages of memory fall into three categories: Random Access Memory (RAM), Read-Only Memory (ROM), and Input/Output locations (I/O). Different areas of memory are dedicated to different functions. The Apple's basic memory map looks like this:

System Memory Map		
Page Number: Decimal	Hex	
0	$00	RAM (45K)
1	$01	
2	$02	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
190	$BE	
191	$BF	
192	$C0	I/O (2K)
193	$C1	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
198	$C6	
199	$C7	
200	$C8	I/O ROM (2K)
201	$C9	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
206	$CE	
207	$CF	
208	$D0	ROM (12K)
209	$D1	
.	.	
.	.	
.	.	
254	$FE	
255	$FF	

Figure 5. System Memory Map

RAM STORAGE

The area in the Apple's memory map which is allicated for RAM memory begins at the bottom of Page Zero and extends up to the end of Page 191. The Apple has the capacity to house from 4K (4,096 bytes) of RAM on its main circuit board, (only early revisions with RAM configuration blocks). In addition, you can expand the RAM memory of your Apple all the way up to 64K (65,536 bytes) by installing an Apple Language Card. This extra 16K of RAM takes the place of the Apple's ROM memory, with two 4K segments of RAM sharing the 4K range from $D000 to $DFFF.

Most of your Apple's RAM memory is available to you for the storage of programs and data. The Apple, however, does reserve some locations in RAM for use of the System Monitor, various languages, and other system functions. Here is a map of the available areas in RAM memory:

Table 16: RAM Organization and Usage

Page Number: Decimal	Hex	Used For:	
0	$00	System Programs	
1	$01	System Stack	
2	$02	GETLN Input Buffer	
3	$03	Monitor Vector Locations	
4 5 6 7	$04 $05 $06 $07	Text and Lo-Res Graphics Primary Page Storage	
8 9 10 11	$08 $09 $0A $0B	Text and Lo-Res Graphics Secondary Page Storage	FREE RAM
12 through 31	$0C $1F		
32 through 63	$20 $3F	Hi-Res Graphics Primary Page Storage	
64 through 95	$40 $5F	Hi-Res Graphics Secondary Page Storage	
96 through 191	$60 $BF		

ZERO PAGE MEMORY MAPS

Table 18: Monitor Zero Page Usage

Decimal	Hex	0 $0	1 $1	2 $2	3 $3	4 $4	5 $5	6 $6	7 $7	8 $8	9 $9	10 $A	11 $B	12 $C	13 $D	14 $E	15 $F
0	$00																
16	$10																
32	$20	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
48	$30	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
64	$40	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•					•	•
80	$50	•	•	•	•	•	•										
96	$60																
112	$70																
128	$80																
144	$90																
160	$A0																
176	$B0																
192	$C0																
208	$D0																
224	$E0																
240	$F0																

Table 19: Applesoft II BASIC Zero Page Usage

Decimal	Hex	0 $0	1 $1	2 $2	3 $3	4 $4	5 $5	6 $6	7 $7	8 $8	9 $9	10 $A	11 $B	12 $C	13 $D	14 $E	15 $F
0	$00	•	•	•	•	•	•					•	•	•	•	•	•
16	$10	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•							
32	$20																
48	$30																
64	$40																
80	$50	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
96	$60	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
112	$70	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
128	$80	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
144	$90	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
160	$A0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
176	$B0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
192	$C0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•		
208	$D0	•	•	•	•	•	•			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
224	$E0	•	•	•		•	•	•	•	•	•	•					
240	$F0	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•							

Following is a breakdown of which ranges are assigned to which functions:

Zero page: Due to the construction of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor, the lowermost page in the Apple's memory is prime real estate for machine language programs. The System Monitor uses about 20 locations on Page Zero; Apple Integer BASIC uses a few more; and Applessoft II BASIC and Apple Disk Operating System use the rest. Tables 18, 19, 20, and 21 show the locations on zero page which are used by these system functions.

Page one: The Apple's 6502 microprocessor reserves all 256 bytes of Page 1 for use as a "stack". Even though the Apple usually uses less than half of this page at any one time, it is not easy to determine just what is being used and what is lying fallow, so you shouldn't try to use Page 1 to store any data.

Page two: The GETLN subroutine, which is used to get input lines by most programs and languages, uses Page 2 as its input buffer. If you're sure that you won't be typing any long input lines, then you can (somewhat) safely store temporary data in the upper regions of Page 2.

Page three: The Apple's Monitor ROM (both the Autostart and the original) use the upper sixteen locations in Page Three, from location $3F0 to $3FF (decimal 1008 to 1023). The Monitor's use of these locations is outlined on Table 14.

Pages four through seven. This 1,024-byte range of memory locations is used for the Text and Low-Resolution Graphics Primary Page display, and is therefore unusable for storage purposes. There are 64 locations in this range which are not displayed on the screen. These 64 locations are reserved for use by the peripheral cards.

Table 20: Apple DOS 3.2 Zero Page Usage

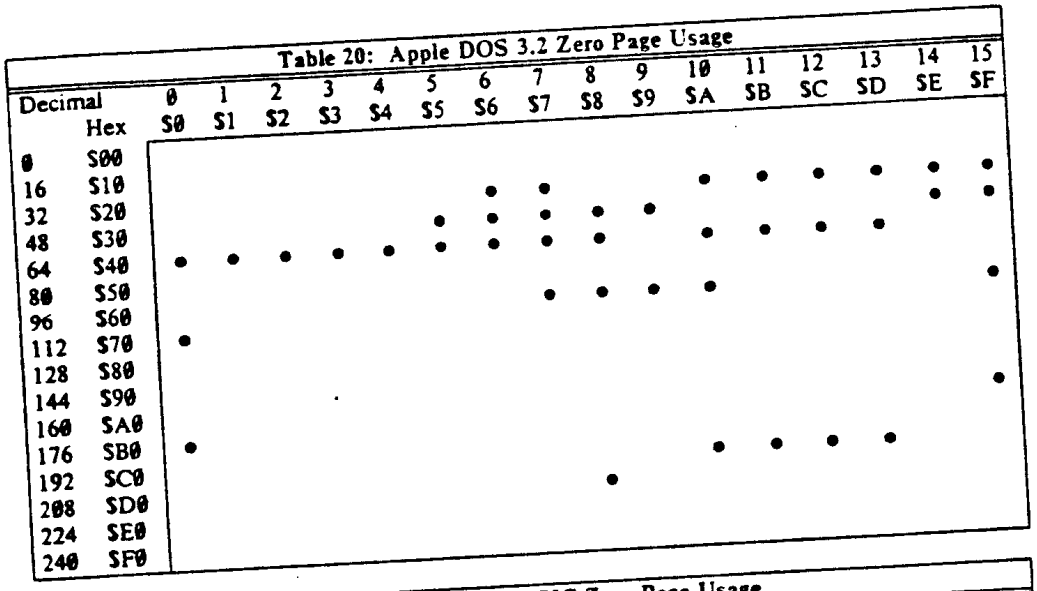
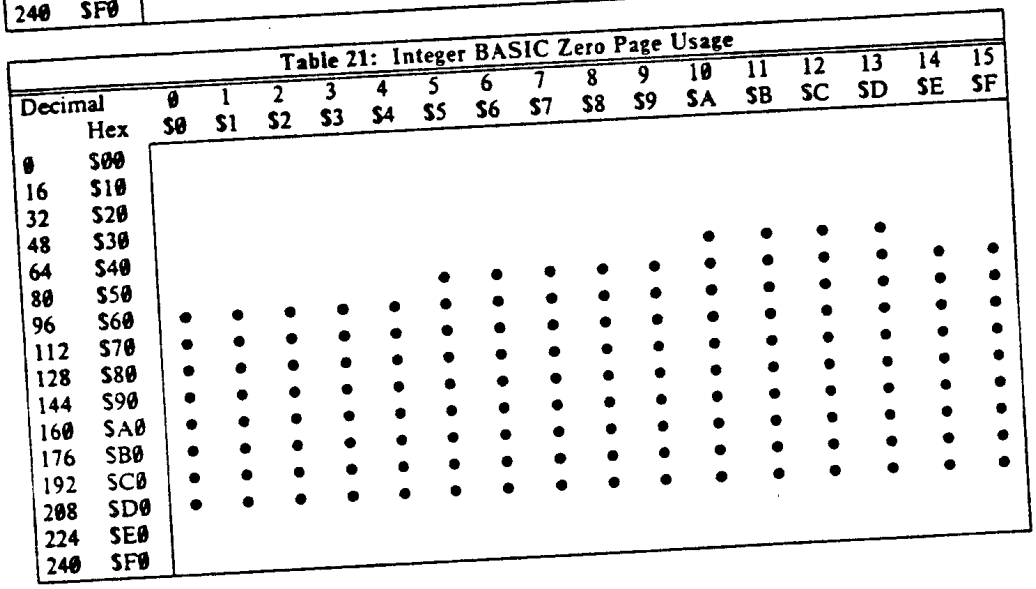


Table 21: Integer BASIC Zero Page Usage



RAM CONFIGURATION BLOCKS

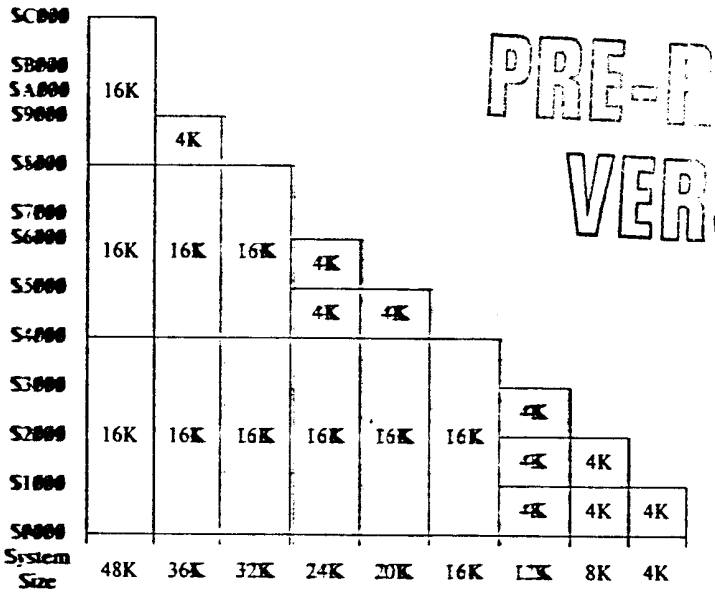
NOTE: RAM Configuration blocks are not included on Revision 7 and later Apple boards.

The Apple's RAM memory is composed of eight to 24 integrated circuits. These IC'S reside in three rows of sockets on the Apple board. Each row can hold eight chips of either the 4,096-bit (4-K) or 16,384-bit (16K) variety. The 4K RAM chips are of the Mostek "4096" family, and may be marked "MK4096" or "MCM6604". The 16K chips are of the "4116" type, and may have the denomination "MK4116" or "UPD4260". Each row must have eight of the same type of chip, although different rows may hold different types.

A row of eight 16K IC'S represents 16,384 eight-bit bytes of RAM. The leftmost IC in a row represents the lowermost (least significant) bit of every byte in that range, and the rightmost IC in a row represents the uppermost (most significant) bit of every byte. The row of RAM IC'S which is frontmost on the Apple board holds the RAM memory which begins at location 0 in the memory map; the next row back continues where the first left off.

You can tell the Apple how much memory it has, and of what type it is, by plugging Memory Configuation Blocks into three IC sockets on the left side of the Apple board. These configuration blocks are three 14-legged critters which look like big, boxy integrated circuits. But there are no chips inside of them; only three jumper wires in each. The jumper wires "strap" each row of RAM chips into a specific place on the Apple's memory map. All three configuration blocks should be strapped the same way. Apple supplies several types of standard configuration blocks for the most common system sizes.

There are nine different RAM memory configurations possible in your Apple. These nine memory sizes are made up from various combinations of 4K and 16K RAM chips in the three rows of sockets in the Apple. The nine memory configurations are:



Of the fourteen "legs" on each controller block, the three in the upper-right corner represents the three rows of RAM chips on the Apple's main board. There should be a wire jumper from each one of these pins to another pin in the configuration block. The "other pin" corresponds to a place in the Apple's memory map where you want the RAM chips in each row to reside. The pins on the configuration block are represented thus:

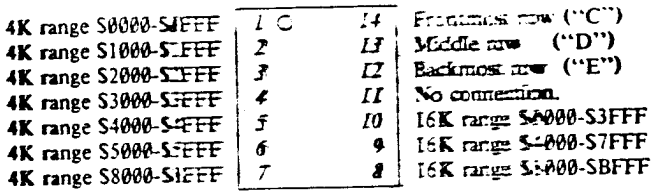


Figure 7. Memory Configuration Block Pinouts

If a row contains eight chips the 16K variety, then you should connect a jumper wire from the pin corresponding to that row to a pin corresponding to a 16K range of memory. Similarly, if a row contains eight 4K chips, you should connect a jumper wire from the pin that row to a pin corresponding to a 4K range of memory. You should never put 4K chips in a row strapped for 16K, or vice versa. It is also not advisible to leave a row unstrapped, or to strap two rows into the same range of memory.

You should always make sure that there is some kind of memory beginning at location 0. Your Apple's memory should be in one contiguous block, but it does not need to be. For example, if you have only three sets of 4K chips, but you want to use the primary page fo the High-Resolution Graphics mode, then you would strap one row of 4K chips to the beginning of memory (4K range $0000 through $0FFF), and strap the other two rows to the memory range used by the High-Resolution Graphics primary page (4K ranges $2000 through $2FFF and $3000 through $3FFF). This will give you 4K bytes of RAM memory to work with, and 8K bytes of RAM to be used as a picture buffer.

There is a problem in Apples with Revision 0 boards and 20K or 24K of RAM. In these systems, the 8K range of the memory map from $400 to $5FFF is duplicated in the memory range $6000 of $7FFF, regardless of whether it contains RAM or not. So systems with only 20K or 24K of RAM would appear to have 24K or 36K, but this extra RAM would be only imaginary. This has been changed in the Revision 1 Apple II boards.

ROM STORAGE

The Apple, in its natural state, can hold from 2K (2,048 bytes) to 12K (12,288 bytes) of Read-Only memory on its main board. This ROM memory can include the System Monitor, a couple of dialects of the BASIC language, various system and utility programs, or pre-packaged subroutines such as are included in Apple's Programmer's Aid #1 ROM.

The Apple's ROM memory resides in the top 12K (48 pages) of the memory map, beginning at location $D000. For proper operation of the Apple, there must be some kind of ROM in the uppermost locations of memory. When you turn on the Apple's power supply, the microprocessor must have some program to execute. It goes to the top locations in the memory map for the address of this program. In the Apple, this address is stored on ROM, and is the address of a program within the same ROM. This program initializes the Apple and lets you start to use it.

Here is a map of the Apple's ROM memory, and of the programs and packages that Apple currently supports in ROM:

Table 17: ROM Organization and Usage

Page Number: Decimal	Hex	Used By:	
208	$D0	Programmer's Aid #1	Applesoft II BASIC
212	$D4		
216	$D8		
220	$DC		
224	$E0	Integer BASIC	
228	$E4		
232	$E8		
236	$EC		
240	$F0		
244	$F4	Utility Subroutines	
248	$F8	Monitor ROM	Autostart ROM
252	$FC		

Six 24-pin sockets on the Apple's board hold the ROM integrated circuits. Each sockets can hold one of a type 9316B 2,048-byte by 8-bit Read-Only Memory. The leftmost ROM in the Apple's board holds the upper 2K of ROM in the Apple's memory map; the rightmost ROM IC holds the ROM memory beginning at page $D0 in the memory map. If a Rom is not present in a given socket, then the values contained in the memory range corresponding to that socket will be unpredictable.

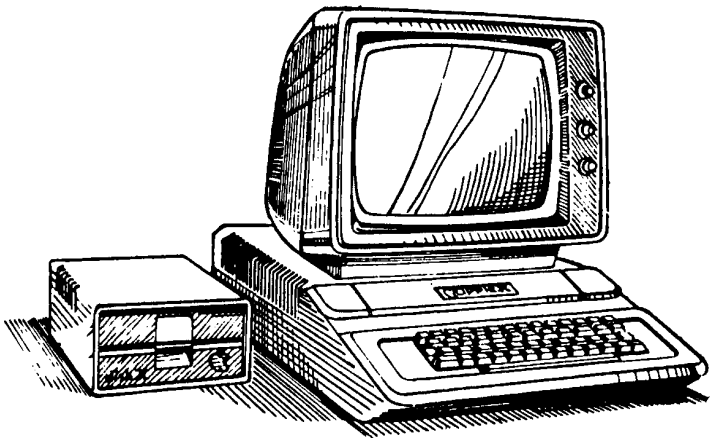
The Apple Firmware card can disable some or all of the ROMS on the Apple board, and substitute its own ROMs in their place. When you have an Apple Firmware card installed on any slot in the Apple's board, you can disable the Apple's on-board ROM'S by flipping the card's controller switch to its UP position and pressing and releasing the RESET button, or by referencing location $C080 (decimal 49280 or -16256). To enable the Apple's on-board ROM'S again, flip the controller switch to the DOWN position and press RESET, or reference location $C081 (decimal 49281 or -16255).

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 9
SYSTEM MONITOR



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

THE SYSTEM MONITOR

Buried deep within the recesses of the Apple's F8 ROM is a masterful program called the System Monitor. It acts as both a supervisor of the system and a slave to it; controls all programs and all programs use it. You can use the powerful features of the System Monitor to discover the hidden secrets in all 65,536 memory locations. From the Monitor, you may look at one, some, or all locations; you may change the contents of any location; you can write programs in Machine and Assembly languages to be executed directly by the Apple's microprocessor; you can save vast quantities of data and programs onto cassette tape and read them back in again; you can move and compare thousands of bytes of memory with a single command; and you can leave the Monitor and enter any other program or language on the Apple.

ENTERING THE MONITOR

The Apple System Monitor program begins at location number $FF69 (decimal 65385 or -151) in memory. To enter the Monitor, you or your BASIC program can CALL this location. The Monitor's prompt (an asterisk [*]) will appear on the left edge of the screen, with a flashing cursor to its right. The Monitor accepts standard input lines just like any other system or language on the Apple. It will not take and action until you press RETURN. Your input lines to the Monitor may be up to 255 characters in length. When you have finished your stay in the Monitor, you can return to the language you were previously using by typing CTRL C <CR> (or, with the Apple DOS:

3DOG <CR> or RESET

ADDRESSES AND DATA

Talking to the Monitor is somewhat like talking to any other program or language on the Apple: type a line on the keyboard, followed by a <CR), and the Monitor will digest what you typed and act according to those instructions. You will be giving the Monitor three types of information: addresses, values, and commands. Addresses and values are given to the Monitor in hexadecimal notation uses the ten decimal digits (0-9) to represent themselves and the first six letters (A-F) to represent the numbers 10 through 15. A pair of hex digits can assume any value from 0 to 255, and a group of four hex digits can denote any number from 0 to 65,536. It so happens that any address in the Apple can be represented by four hex digits, and any value by two hex digits. This is is how you tell the Monitor about addresses and values. When the Monitor is looking for an address, it will take any group of hex digts. If there are fewer than four digits in the group, it will prepend leading zeroes; if there are more than four hex digits, the Monitor will truncate the group and use only the last four hex digits. It follows the smae procedure when looking for two-digit data values.

The Monitor recognizes 22 different command characters. Some of these are punctuation marks, others are upper-case letters or control characters. In the following sections, the full name of a command will appear in capital letters. The Monitor needs only the first letter of the command name. Some commands are invoked with control characters. You should note that although the Monitor recognizes and interprets these characters, a control character typed

on an input line will not appear on the screen.

The Monitor remembers the addresses of up to five locations. Two of these are special: they are the addresses of the last location whose value you inquired about, and the location which is next to have its value changed. This are called the last opened location and the next changeable location. The usefulness of these two addresses will be revealed shortly.

EXAMINING THE CONTENTS OF MEMORY

When you type the address of a location in memory alone on an input line to the Monitor, it will reply* with the address you typed, a dash, a space, and the value** contained in that location, thus:

```
*E000

E000- 20
*300

0300- 99
*
```

Each time the Monitor displays the value contained in a location, it remembers that location as the last opened location. For technical reasons, it also considers that location as the next changeable location.

* In the example, your queries are in normal type and the Apple replies in BOLDFACE.

** The values printed in these examples may differ from the values displayed by your Apple instructions.

EXAMINING SOME MORE MEMORY

If you type a period (.) on an input line to the Monitor, followed by an address, the Monitor will display a memory dump: the values contained in all locations from the last opened location to the location whose address you typed following the period. The Monitor then considers the last location displayed to be both the last opened location and the next changeable location.

```
*20

0020- 00
*.2B

0021- 28 00 18 0F 0C 00 00
0028- 18 06 D0 07
*300

0300- 99
*.315

0301- B9 00 08 0A 0A 0A 99
```

```
0308- 00 08 C8 D0 F4 A6 2B A9
0310- 09 85 27 AD CC 03
*.32A

0316- 85 41
0318- 84 40 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A 09
0320- C0 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 20
0328- 43 03 20
*
```

You should notice several things about the format of a memory dump. First, the first line in the dump begins with the address of the location following the last opened location; second, all other lines begin with addresses which end alternately in zeroes and eights; and third, there are never more that eight values displayed on a single line in a memory dump. When the Monitor does a memory dump, it starts by displaying the address and value of the location following the last opened location. It then proceeds to the next successive location in memory. If the address of that location ends in an 8 or a 0, the Monitor will "cut" to a new line and display the address of that location and continue displaying values. After it has displayed the value of the location whose address you specified, it stops the memory dump and sets the address of both the last opened location, the Monitor will display the address and value of only the location following the last opened location.

You can combine the two commands (opening and dumping) into one operation by concatenating the second to the first; that is, type the first address, followed by a period and the second address. This two-addresses-separated-by-a-period form is called a memory range.

```
*300.32F

0300- 99 B9 00 09 0A 0A 0A 99
0308- 00 08 C8 D0 F4 A6 2B A9
0310- 09 85 27 AD CC 03 85 41
0318- 84 40 8A 4A 4A 4A 4A 09
0320- C0 85 3F A9 5D 85 3E 20
0328- 43 03 20 46 03 A5 3D 4D
*30.40

0030- AA 00 FF AA 05 C2 05 C2
0038- 1B FD D0 03 3C 00 40 00
0040- 30
*E015.E025

E015- 4C ED ED
E018- A9 20 C5 24 B0 0C A9 8D
E020- A0 07 S0 ED FD A9
*
```

EXAMINING STILL MORE MEMORY

A single press of the <CR> key will cause the Monitor to respond with one line of memory dump; that is, a memory dump from the location following the last

opened location to the next eight-location "cut". Once again, the last location displayed is considered the last opened and next changeable location.

```
*5

0005- 00
*<CR>
 00 00
*<CR>

0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
*32

0032- FF
*<CR>
 AA 00 C2 05 C2
*<CR>

0038- 1B FD D0 03 3C 00 3F 00
*
```


CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF A LOCATION

You've heard all about the "next changeable location"; now you're going to use it. Type a colon followed by a value.

```
*0

0000- 00
*:5F
```

Presto! The contents of the next changeable location have just been changed to the value you typed. Check this by examining that location again:

```
*0

0000- 5F
*
```

You can also combine opening and changing into one operation:

```
*302:42

*302

0302- 42
*
```

When you change the contents of a location, the old value which was contained in that location disappears, never to be seen again. The new value will stick around until it is replaced by another hexadecimal value.

CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF CONSECUTIVE LOCATIONS

You don't have to type an address, a colon, a value, and press <CR> for each and every location you wish to change. The Monitor will allow you to change the values of up to eighty-five locations at a time by typing only the initial address and colon, and then all the values separated by spaces. The Monitor will duly file the consecutive values in consecutive locations, starting at the next changeable location. After it has processed the string of values, it will assume that the location following the last changed location is the next changeable location. Thus, you can continue changing consecutive locations without breaking stride on the next input line by typing another colon and more values.

```
*300:69 01 20 ED FD 4C 0 3

*300

0300-69
*<CR>
 01 20 ED FD 4C 00 03
*10:0 1 2 3

*:4 5 6 7

*10.17

0010- 00 01 02 03 04 05 06 07
*
```


MOVING A RANGE OF MEMORY

You can treat a range of memory (specified by two addresses separated by a period) as an entity unto itself and move it from one place to another in memory by using the Monitor's MOVE command. In order to move a range of memory from one place to another, the Monitor must be told both where the range is situated in memory and where it is to be moved. You give this information to the Monitor in three parts: the address of the destination of the range, the address of the first location in the range proper, and the address of the last location in the range. You specify the starting and ending addresses of the range in the normal fashion, by separating them with a period, You indicate that this range is to be placed somewhere else by separating the range and the destination address with a left caret (<). Finally, you tell the Monitor that you want to move the range to the destination by typing the letter M for "MOVE". The final command looks like this:

```
{destination} < {start}.{end} M
```

When you type this line to the Monitor, of course, the words in curly brackets should be replaced by hexadecimal address and the spaces should be omitted. Here are some real examples of memory moves:

```
*0.F
```

```
0000- 5F 00 05 07 00 00 00 00
0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
*300:A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20 DA FD 4C 00 03

*300.30C

0300- A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20
0308- DA FD 4C 00 03
*<300.30CM

*0.C

0000- A9 8D 20 ED FD A9 45 20
0009- DA FD 4C 00 03
*310<8.AM

*310.312

0310- DA FD 4C
*2<7.9M

0000- A9 8D 20 DA FD A9 45 20
0008-DA FD 4C 00 03
*
```

The Monitor simply makes a copy of the indicated range and moves it to the specified destination. The orignal range is left undisturbed. The Monitor remembers the last location in the original rnage as the last opened location, and the first location in the original range as the next changeable location. If the second address in the range specification is less than the first, then only one value (that of the first location in the range) will be moved.

If the destination address of the MOVE command is inside the original range, then strange and (sometimes) wonderful things happen: the locations between the beginning of the range and the destination are treated as a sub-range and the values in this sub-range are replicated throughout the original range. See "Special Tricks", for an interesting application of this feature.

COMPARING TWO RANGES OF MEMORY

You can use the Monitor to compare two ranges of memory using much the same format as you use to move a range of memory from one place to another. In fact, the VERIFY command can be used immediatly after a MOVE to make sure that the move was succesful.

The VERIFY command, like the MOVE command, needs a range and a destination. In shorthand:

```
  {destination} < {start}.{end} V
```

The Monitor compares the range specified with the range beginning at the destination address. If there is any discrepancy, the Monitor displays the address at which the difference was found and the two offending values.

```
*0:D7 F2 E9 F4 F4 E5 EE A0 E2 F9 A0 C3 C4 C5

*300<0.DM

*300<0.DV

*6:E4

*300<0.DV

0006-E4 (EE)
*
```


Notice that if the VERIFY command finds a discrepancy, it displays the address of the location in the original range whose value differs from its counterpart in the destination range. If there is no discrepancy, VERIFY displays nothing. It leaves both ranges unchanged. The last opened and next changeable locations are set just as in the MOVE command. As before, if the ending address of the ranges will be compared. VERIFY also does unusual things if the destination is within the original range; see "Special Tricks".

SAVING A RANGE OF MEMORY ON TAPE

The Monitor has two special commands which allow you to save a range of memory onto cassette tape and recall it again for later use. The first of these two commands, WRITE, lets you save the contents of one to 65,536 memory locations on standard cassette tape.

To save a range of memory to tape, give the Monitor the starting and ending addresses of the range, followed by the letter W (for WRITE):

```
  {start}.{end} W
```

To get an accurate recording, you should put the tape recorder in record mode before you press <CR> on the input line. Let the tape run a few seconds, then press <CR>. The Monitor will write a ten-second "leader" tone onto the tape, followed by the data. When the Monitor is finished, it will sound a 'beep!' and give you another prompt. You should then rewind the tape, and label the tape with something intelligible about the memory range that's on the the tape and what it's supposed to be.

```
*0:FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04 C6 01 F0 08
*:CA D0 F6 A6 00 4C 02 00 60

*0.14

0000- FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04
0008- C6 0A F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
0010- 00 4C 02 00 60
*0.14W

*
```

It takes about 35 seconds total to save the values of 4,096 memory locations preceded by the ten-second leader onto tape. This works out to a speed of about 1,350 bits per second, average. The WRITE command writes one extra value on the tape after it has written the values in the memory range. is extra value is the checksum. It is the partial sum of all values in the range. The READ subroutine uses this value to determine if a READ has been successful (see below).

READING A RANGE FROM TAPE

Once you've saved a memory range onto tape with the Monitor's WRITE command, you can read that memory range back into the Apple by using the Monitor's READ command. The data values which you've stored on the tape need not be read back into the same memory range from whence they came; you can tell the Monitor to put those values into any similarly sized memory range in the Apple's memory.

The format of the READ command is the same as that of the WRITE command, except that the command letter is R, not W:

```
  {start}.{end} R
```

Once again, after typing the command, don't press <CR>. Instead, start the tape recorder in PLAY mode and wait for the tape's nonmagnetic leader to pass by. Although the WRITE command puts a ten-second leader tone on the beginning of the tape, the READ command needs only three seconds of this leader in order to lock on to the frequency. So you should let a few seconds of tape go by before you press <CR>, to allow the tape recorder's output to settle down to a steady tone.

```
*0:0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
 0 0

*0.14

0000- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0008- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0018- 00 00 00 00 00
*.14R

*.14

0000- FF FF AD 30 C0 88 D0 04
0008- C6 0A F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
0010- 00 4C 02 00 60
*
```


After the Monitor has read in and stored all the values on the tape, it reads in the extra checksum value. It compares the checksum on the tape to its own checksum, and if the two differ, the Monitor beeps the speaker and displays "ERR". This warns you that there was a problem during the READ and that the values stored in memory aren't the values which were recorded on the tape. If, however, the two checksums match, the Monitor will give you another prompt.

CREATING AND RUNNING MACHINE LANGUAGE PROGRAMS

Machine language is certainly the most efficient language on the Apple, albeit the least pleasant in which to code. The Monitor has special facilities for those of you who are determined to use machine language to simplify creating, writing, and debugging machine language programs.

You can write a machine language program, take the hexadecimal values for the opcodes and operands, and store them in memory using the commands covered above. You can get a hexadecimal dump of your program, move it around in memory, or save it to tape and recall it agian simply by using the commands you've already learned. The most important command, however, when dealing with machine language programs is the GO command. When you open a location from the Monitor and type the letter G, the Monitor will cause the 6502 microprocessor to start executing the machine language program which begins at the last opened location. The Monitor treats this program as a subroutine: when it's finished, all it need do is execute an RTS (return from subroutine) instruction and control will be transferred back to the Monitor.

Your machine language programs can call many subroutines in the Monitor to do various things. Here is an example of loading and running a machine language program to display the letters A through Z:

```
*300:A9 C1 20 ED FD 18 69 1 C9 DB D0 F6 60

*300.30C

0300- A9 C1 20 ED FD 18 69 01
0308- C9 DB D0 F6 60
*300G
ABCDEFGHIJKLMNOPQRSTUVWXYZ
*
```


(The instruction set of the Apple's 6502 microprocessor is listed in Appendix)

Now, straight hexadecimal code isn't the easiest thing in the world to read or debug. With this in mind, the creators of the Apple's Monitor neatly included a command to list machine language programs in assembly language form. This means that instead of having one, two, or three bytes of unformatted hexadecimal gibberish to comprehend for each instruction. The LIST command to start at the specified location and display a screenfull (20 lines) of instructions:

```
*300L

0300-   A9 C1          LDA     #$C1
0302-   20 ED FD       JSR     $FDED
0305-   18             CLC
0306-   69 01          ADC     #$01
0308-   C9 DB          CMP     #$DB
030A-   D0 F6          BNE     $0302
030C-   60             RTS
030D-   00             BRK
030E-   00             BRK
```

```
030F-   00              BRK
0310-   00              BRK
0311-   00              BRK
0312-   00              BRK
0313-   00              BRK
0314-   00              BRK
0315-   00              BRK
0316-   00              BRK
0317-   00              BRK
0318-   00              BRK
0319-   00              BRK
*
```


Recognize those first few lines? They're the assembly language form of the program you typed a page or so ago. The rest of the lines (the BRK instructions) are just there to fill up the screen. The address that you specify is remembered by the Monitor, but not in one of the ways explained before. It's put in the Program Counter, which is used solely to point to locations within programs. After a LIST command, the Program Counter is set to point to the location immediately following the last location displayed on the screen, so that if you do another LIST command it will continue with another screenfull of instructions, starting where the first screen left off.

THE MINI-ASSEMBLER

There is another program within the Monitor* which allows you to type programs into the Apple in the same assembly format which the LIST command displays. This program is called the Apple Mini-Assembler. It is a "mini-assembler because it cannot understand symbolic lables, something that a full-blown assembler must do. To run the Mini-Assembler, type:

```
*F666G

!
```

You are now in the Mini-Assembler. The exclamation point (!) is the prompt character. During your stay in the Mini-Assembler, you can execute any Monitor command by prededing it with a dollar sign ($). Aside from that, the Mini-Assembler has an instruction set and syntax all its own.

The Mini-Assembler remembers one address, that of the Program Counter. Before you start to enter a program, you must set the Program Counter to point to the location where you want your program to go. Do this by typing the address followed by a colon. Follow this with the mnemonic for the first instruction in your program, followed by a space. Now type the operand of the instruction (Formats for operands are listed on page 66). Now press <CR>. The Mini-Assembler converts the line you typed into hexadecimal, stores it in memory beginning at the location of the Program Counter, and then disassembles it again and displays the disassembled line on top of your input line. It then poses another prompt on the next line. Now it's ready to accept the second instruction in your program. To tell it that you want the next instruction to follow the first don't type and address or a colon, but only a space, followed by the next instruction's mnemonic and operand. Press <CR>. It assembles that line and

waits for another.

If the line you type has an error in it, the Mini-Assembler will beep loudly and display a circumflex (^) under or near the offending character in the input line. Most common errors are the result of typographical mistakes: misspelled mnemonics, missing parentheses, etc. The Mini-Assembler also will reject the input line if you forget the space before or after a mnemonic or include an extraneous character in a hexadecimal value or address. If the destination address of a branch instruction is out of the range of the brranch (more than 127 locations distant from the address of the isntruction), the Mini-Assembler will also flag this as an error.

```
!300-LDX #02

0300-   A2 02           LDX     #$02
! LDA $0,X

0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
! STA $10,X

0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
! DEX

0306-   CA              DEX
! STA $D030

0307-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
! BPL $302

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
! BRK

030C-   00              BRK
!
```


To exit the Mini-Assembler and re:enter the Monitor, either press <CR> or type the Monitor command (preceded by a dollar sign) FF69G:

```
!$FF69G

*
```

Your assembly language program is stored in memory. You can look at it again with the LIST command:

```
0300-   A2 02           LDX     #$02
0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
0306-   CA              DEX
0307-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
030C-   00              BRK
030D-   00              BRK
030E-   00              BRK
```

```
030F-   00              BRK
0310-   00              BRK
0311-   00              BRK
0312-   00              BRK
0313-   00              BRK
0314-   00              BRK
0315-   00              BRK
0316-   00              BRK
0317-   00              BRK
0318-   00              BRK
0319-   00              BRK
*
```

---

* The Mini-Assembler does not actually riside in the Monitor ROM, but is part of the Integer BASIC ROM set. Thus, it is not available on Apple II Plus systems or while Firmware Applesoft II is in use.

DEBUGGING PROGRAMS

As put so concisely by Lubarsky*, "There's always one more bug." Don't worry, the Monitor provides facilities for stepping through ornery programs to find that one last bug. The Monitor's STEP** command decodes, displays, and executes one instruction at a time, and the TRACE** command steps quickly through a program, stopping when a BRK instruction is executed.

Each STEP command causes the Monitor to execute the instruction in memory pointed to by the Program Counter. The instruction is displayed in its disassembled form, thn executed. The contents of the 6502's internal registers are displayed after the instruction is executed. After execution, the Program Counter is bumped up to point to the next instruction in the program.

Here's what happens when you STEP through the program you entered using the Mini-Assembler, above:

```
*300S

0300-   A2 02           LDX     #$02
 A=0A  X=02  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0302-   B5 00           LDA     $00,X
 A=0C  X=02  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0304-   95 10           STA     $10,X
 A=0C  X=02  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*12

0012- 0C
*S

0306-   CA              DEX
 A=0C  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
```

```
*S

0307-   8D D0 C0          STA     $C030
 A=0C  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

030A-   10 F6             BPL     $0302
 A=0C  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0302-   B5 00             LDA     $00,X
 A=0B  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

0304-   95 10             STA     $10,X
 A=0B  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*
```

Notice that after the third instruction was executed, we examined the contents of location 12. They were as we expected, and so we continued stepping. The Monitor keeps the Program Counter and the last opened address separate from one another, so that you can examine or change the contents of memory while you are stepping through your program.

The TRACE command is just an infinite STEPper. It will stop TRACEing the execution of a program only when you push RESET or it encounters a BRK instruction in the program. If the TRACE encounters the end of a program which returns to the Monitor via an RTS instruction, the TRACEing will run off into never-never land and must be stopped with the RESET button.

```
*T

0306-   CA                DEX
 A=0B  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0307-   8D 30 C0          STA     $C030
 A=0B  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

030A-   10 F6             BPL     $0302
 A=0B  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0302-   B5 00             LDA     $00,X
 A=0A  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0304-   95  10            STA     $10,X
 A=02  X=00  Y=D8  P=32  S=F8

0306-   CA                DEX
 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8

0307    8D 30 C0          STA     $C030
 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8

030A-   10 F6             BPL     $0302
```

```
 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8

030C-   00              BRK
030C-    A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8
*
```

---

* In Murphy's Law, and Other Reasons why Things Go Wrong, edited by Arthur Bloch. Price/Stern/Sloane 197/.

** The STEP and TRACE commands are not available on Apples with the Autostart ROM.

EXAMINING AND CHANGING REGISTERS

As you saw above, the STEP and TRACE commands displayed the contents of the 6502's internal registers after each instruction. You can examine these registers at will or pre-set them when you TRACE, STEP, or GO a machine language program.

The Monitor reserves five locations in memory for the five 6502 registers: A,X, Y,P (processor status register0, and S (stack pointer). The Monitor's EXAMINE command, invoked by a <CE), tells the Monitor to display the contents of these locations on the screen, and lets the location which holds the 6502's A-register be the next changeable location. If you want to change the values in these locations, just type a colon and the values separated by spaces. Next time you give the Monitor a GO, STEP, or TRACE command, the Monitor will load these five locations into their proper registers inside the 64502 before it executes the first instruction in your program.

```
*CTRL E

 A=0A  X=FF  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8
*:B0 02

*CTRL E
 A=B0  X=02  Y=D8  P=B0  S=F8
*306S

0306-   CA              DEX
 A=B0  X=0A  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

030/-   8D 30 C0        STA     $C030
 A=B0  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*S

030A-   10 F6           BPL     $0302
 A=B0  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8

*
```

MISCELLANEOUS MONITOR COMMANDS

You can control the setting of the Inverse/Normal location used by the COUT subroutine (see CHAPTER 3) from the Monitor so that all of the Monitor's output will be in Inverse video. The INVERSE command does this nicely. Input lines are still displayed in Normal mode, however. To return the Monitor's output to Normal mode, use the NORMAL command.

```
*0.F

0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
*1

*0.F

0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
*N

*0.F

0000- 0A 0B 0C 0D 0E 0F D0 04
0008- C6 01 F0 08 CA D0 F6 A6
*
```

The BASIC command, invoked by a CTRL B, lets you leave the Monitor and enter the language installed in ROM on your Apple, usually either Apple Integer or Applesoft II BASIC. Any program or variables that you had previously in BASIC will be lost. If you've left BASIC for the Monitor and you want to re-enter BASIC with your program and variables intact, use the CTRL C (CONTINUE BASIC) command. If you have the Apple Disk Operating System (DOS) active, the '3D0G' command will return you to the language you were using, with your program and variables intact.

The PRINTER command, activated by a CTRL P, diverts all output normally destined for the screen to an Apple Intelligent Interface in a given slot in the Apple's backplane. The slot number should be from 1 to 7, and there should be an interface card in the given slot, or you will lose control of your Apple and your program and variables may be lost. The format for the command is:

{slot number} CTRL P

A PRINTER command to slot number 0 will reset the flow of printed output back to the Apple's video screen.

The KEYBOARD command similarly substitutes the device in a given backplane slot for the Apple's keyboard. For details on how these commands and their BASIC counterparts PR# and IN# work, please refer to "CSW and KSW Switches". The format for the KEYBOARD command is:

{slot number} CTRL K

The Monitor will also perform simple hexadecimal addition and subtraction. Just type a line in the format:

```
{value} + {value}
{value} - {value}
```

The Apple will perform the arithmetic and display the result:

```
*20+13
=33
*4A-C
=3E
*FF+4
=03
*3-4
=FF
*
```


SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR

You can put as many Monitor commands on a single line as you like, as long as you separate them with spaces and the total number of characters in the line is less than 254. You can intermix any and all commands freely, except the STORE (:) command. Since the Monitor takes all values following a colon and places them in consecutive memory locations, the last value in a STORE must be followed by a letter command before another address is encountered. The NORMAL command makes a good separator; it usually has no effect and can be used anywhere.

```
*300.307 300:18 69 1 N 300.302 300S S

0300- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0300- 18 69 01
0300-    18              CLC
 A=04  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
0301-    69 01           ADC     #$01
 A=05  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*
```

Single-letter commands such as LCS,I, and N need not be separated by spaces.

If the Monitor encounters a character in the input line which it does not recognize as either a hexadecimal digit or a valid command character, it will execute all commands on the input line up to that character, and then grind to a halt with a noisy beep, ignoring the remainder of the input line.

The MOVE command can be used to replicate a pattern of values throughout a range in memory.

To do this, first store the pattern in its first position in the range:

```
*300:11 22 33

*
```

Remember the number of values in the pattern: in this case, 3. Then use this special arrangement of the MOVE command:

```
{start + number} < {start} . {end - number} M
```

This MOVE command will first replicate the pattern at the locations immediately following the original pattern, then re-replicate that pattern following itself and so on until it fills the entire range.

```
*303<300.32DM

*300.32F

0300- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
0308- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0310- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
0318- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
0320- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0328- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
*
```


A similiar trick can be done with the VERIFY command to check whether a pattern repeats itself through memory. This is especially useful to verify that a given range of memory locations all contain the same value:

```
*300:0

*301<300.31FM

*301<300.31FV

*304:02

*301<300.31FV

0303-00 (02)
0304-02 (00)
*
```

You can create a command line which will repeat all or part of itself indefinitely by beginning the part of the command line which is to be repeated with a letter command, such as N, and ending it with the sequence 34:n, where n is a hexadecimal number specifying the character position of the command which begins the loop; for the first character in the line, n=0. The value for n must be followed with a space in order for the loop to work properly.

```
*N 300 302 34:0

0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
```

```
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
030
*
```

The only way to stop a loop like this is to press RESET.

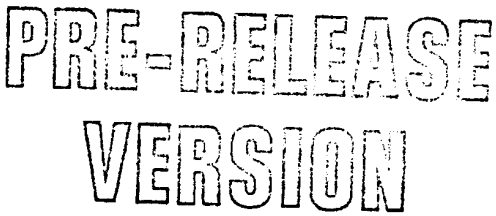
CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS

The USER (CTRL Y) command, when encountered in the input line, forces the Monitor to jump to location number $3F8 in memory. You can put your own JMP instruction in this location which will jump to your own program. Your program can then either examine the Monitor's registers and pointers or the input line itself. For example, here is a program which will make the CTRL Y command act as a "comment" indicator: everything on the input line following the CTRL Y will be displayed and ignored.

```
*F666G

!300:LDY $34

0300-   A4 34           LDY     #34
! LDA 200,Y

0302-   B9 00 02        LDA     $0200,Y
! JSR FDED

0305-   20 ED FD        JSR     $FDED
! INY

0308-   C8              INY
! CMP #$8D

0309-   C9 8D           CMP     #$8D
! BNE 302

030B-   D0 F5           BNE     $0302
! JMP $FF69

030D-   4C 69 FF        JMP     $FF69
!3F8:JMP $300

03F8-   4C 00 03        JMP     $0300
!$FF69G

*CTRL Y THIS IS A TEST.
THIS IS A TEST.
```

SPECIAL TRICKS WITH THE MONITOR

You can put as many Monitor commands on a single line as you like, as long as you separate them with spaces and the total number of characters in the line is less than 254. You can intermix any and all commands freely, except the STORE (:) command. Since the Monitor takes all values following a colon and places them in consecutive memory locations, the last value in a STORE must be followed by a letter command before another address is encountered. The NORMAL command makes a good separator; it usually has no effect and can be used anywhere.




```
*300.307 300:18 69 1 N 300.302 300S S

0300- 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00
0300- 18 69 01
0300-    18              CLC
 A=04  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
0301-    69 01           ADC      #$01
 A=05  X=01  Y=D8  P=30  S=F8
*
```

Single-letter commands such as LCS,I, and N need not be separated by spaces.

If the Monitor encounters a character in the input line which it does not recognize as either a hexadecimal digit or a valid command character, it will execute all commands on the input line up to that character, and then grind to a halt with a noisy beep, ignoring the remainder of the input line.

The MOVE command can be used to replicate a pattern of values throughout a range in memory.

To do this, first store the pattern in its first position in the range:

```
*300:11 22 33

*
```

Remember the number of values in the pattern: in this case, 3. Then use this special arrangement of the MOVE command:

```
  {start + number} < {start} . {end - number} M
```

This MOVE command will first replicate the pattern at the locations immediately following the original pattern, then re-replicate that pattern following itself and so on until it fills the entire range.

```
*303<300.32DM

*300.32F

0300- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
0308- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0310- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
0318- 11 22 33 11 22 33 11 22
```

```
0320- 33 11 22 33 11 22 33 11
0328- 22 33 11 22 33 11 22 33
*
```

A similiar trick can be done with the VERIFY command to check whether a pattern repeats itself through memory. This is especially useful to verify that a given range of memory locations all contain the same value:

```
*300:0

*301<300.31FM

*301<300.31FV

*304:02

*301<300.31FV

0303-00 (02)
0304-02 (00)
*
```

You can create a command line which will repeat all or part of itself indefinitely by beginning the part of the command line which is to be repeated with a letter command, such as N, and ending it with the sequence 34:n, where n is a hexadecimal number specifying the character position of the command which begins the loop; for the first character in the line, n=0. The value for n must be followed with a space in order for the loop to work properly.

```
*N 300 302 34:0

0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
0300- 11
0302- 33
030
*
```

The only way to stop a loop like this is to press RESET.

CREATING YOUR OWN COMMANDS

The USER (CTRL Y) command, when encountered in the input line, forces the Monitor to jump to location number $3F8 in memory. You can put your own JMP instruction in this location which will jump to your own program. Your pro-

gram can then either examine the Monitor's registers and pointers or the input line itself. For example, here is a program which will make the CTRL Y command act as a "comment" indicator: everything on the input line following the CTRL Y will be displayed and ignored.


```
*F666G

!300:LDY $34

0300-   A4 34           LDY     #34
! LDA 200,Y

0302-   B9 00 02        LDA     $0200,Y
! JSR FDED

0305-   20 ED FD        JSR     $FDED
! INY

0308-   C8              INY
! CMP #$8D

0309-   C9 8D           CMP     #$8D
! BNE 302

030B-   D0 F5           BNE     $0302
! JMP $FF69

030D-   4C 69 FF        JMP     $FF69
!3F8:JMP $300

03F8-   4C 00 03        JMP     $0300
!$FF69G

*CTRL Y THIS IS A TEST.
THIS IS A TEST.

*
```

SUMMARY OF MONITOR COMMANDS

Summary of Monitor Commands.

Examining Memory.	
{adrs}	Examines the value contained in one location.
{adrs1}.{adrs2}	Displays the values contained in all locations between {adrs1} and {adrs2}.
RETURN	Displays the values in up to eight locations following the last opened location.
Changing the Contents of Memory.	
{adrs}:{val} {val} ...	Stores the values in consecutive memory locations starting at {adrs}.
:{val} {val} ...	Stores values in memory starting at the next changeable location.
Moving and Comparing.	
{dest}<{start}.{end}M	Copies the values in the range {start}.{end} into the range beginning at {dest}.
{dest}<{start}.{end}V	Compares the values in the range {start}.{end} to those in the range beginning at {dest}.
Saving and Loading via Tape.	
{start}.{end}W	Writes the values in the memory range {start}.{end} onto tape, preceded by a ten-second leader.
{start}.{end}R	Reads values from tape, storing them in memory beginning at {start} and stopping at {end}. Prints "ERR" if an error occurs.
Running and Listing Programs.	
{adrs}G	Transfers control to the machine language program beginning at {adrs}.
{adrs}L	Disassembles and displays 20 instructions, starting at {adrs}. Subsequent L's will display 20 more instructions each.

Summary of Monitor Commands.

The Mini-Assembler

!666G	Invoke the Mini-Assembler.*
S{command}	Execute a Monitor command from the Mini-Assembler.
$FF69G	Leave the Mini-Assembler.
{adrs} S	Disassemble, display, and execute the instruction at {adrs}, and display the contents of the 65Ø2's internal registers. Subsequent S's will display and execute successive instructions.**
{adrs} T	Step infinitely. The TRACE command stops only when it executes a BRK instruction or when you press RESET.**
CTRL E	Display the contents of the 65Ø2's registers.

Miscellaneous.

I	Set Inverse display mode.
N	Set Normal display mode.
CTRL B	Enter the language currently installed in the Apple's ROM.
CTRL C	Reenter the language currently installed in the Apple's ROM.
{val}+{val}	Add the two values and print the result.
{val}-{val}	Subtract the second value from the first and print the result.
{slot} CTRL P	Divert output to the device whose interface card is in slot number {slot}. If {slot}=Ø, then route output to the Apple's screen.
{slot} CTRL K	Accept input from the device whose interface card is in slot number {slot}. If {slot}=Ø, then accept input from the Apple's keyboard.
CTRL Y	Jump to the machine language subroutine at location $3F8.

* Not available in the Apple II Plus.
** Not available in the Autostart ROM.

SOME USEFUL MONITOR SUBROUTINES

Here is a list of some useful subroutines in the Apple's Monitor and Autostart ROMs. To use these subroutines from machine language programs, load the proper memory locations or 65Ø2 registers as required by the subroutine and execute a JSR to the subroutine's starting address. It will perform the function and return with the 65Ø2's registers set as described.

$FDED COUT Output a character

COUT is the standard character output subroutine. The character to be output should be in the accumulator. COUT calls the current character output subroutine whose address is stored in CSW (locations $36 and $37), usually COUT1 (see below).

$FDFØ COUT1 Output to screen

COUT1 displays the character in the accumulator on the Apple's screen at the current output cursor position and advances the output cursor. It places the character using the setting of the Normal/Inverse location. It handles the control characters RETURN, linefeed, and bell. It returns with all registers intact.

$FE8Ø SETINV Set Inverse mode

Sets Inverse video mode for COUT1. All output characters will be displayed as black dots on a white background. The Y register is set to $3F, all others are unchanged.

$FE84 SETNORM Set Normal mode

Sets Normal video mode for COUT1. All output characters wwill be displayed as white dots on a black background. The Y register is set to $FF, all others are unchanged.

$FD8E CROUT Generate a RETURN

CROUT sends a RETURN character to the current output device.

$FD8B CROUT1 RETURN with clear

CROUT1 clears the screen from the current cursor position to the edge of the text window, then calls CROUT.

$FDDA PRBYTE Print a hexadecimal byte

This subroutine outputs the contents of the accumulator in hexadecimal on the current output device. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

$FDE3 PRHEX Print a hexadecimal digit

This subroutine outputs the lower nybble of the accumulator as a single hexadecimal digit. The contents of the accumulator are scrambled.

$F941 PRNTAX Print A and X in hexadecimal

This outputs the contents of the A and X reisters as a four-digit hexadecimal value. The accumulator contains the first byte output, the X register contains the second. The contents of the

accumulator are usually scrambled.

$F948 PRBLNK Print 3 spaces

Outputs three blank spaces to the standard output device. Upon exit, the accumulator usually contains $A0, the X register contains 0.

$F94A PRBL2 Print many blank spaces

This subroutine outputs from 1 to 256 blanks to the standard output device. Upon entry, the X register should contain the number of blanks to be output. If X=$00, then PRBL2 will output 256 blanks.

$FF3A BELL Output a "bell" character

This subroutine sends a bell (CTRL G) character to the current output device. It leaves the accumulator holding $87.

$FBDD BELL1 Beep the Apple's speaker

This subroutine beeps the Apple's speaker for .1 second at 1KHz. It scrambles the A and X registers.

$FD0C RDKEY Get an input character

This is the standard character input subroutine. It places a flashing input cursor on the screen at the position of the output cursor and jumps to the current input subroutine whose address is stored in KSW (locations $38 and $39), usually KEYIN (see below).

$FD35 RDCHAR Get an input character or ESC code

RDCHAR is an alternate input subroutine which gets characters from the standard input, but also interprets the eleven escape codes (see page 34).

$FD1B KEYIN Read the Apple's keyboard

This is the keyboard input subroutine. It reads the Apple's keyboard, waits for a keypress, and randomizes the random number seed (see page 32). When it gets a keypress, it removes the flashing cursor and returns with the keycode in the accumulator.

$FD6A GETLN Get an input line with prompt

GETLN is the subroutine which gathers input lines (see page 33). Your programs can call GETLN with the proper prompt character in location $33; GETLN will return with the input line in the input buffer (beginning at location $200) and the X register holding the length of the input line.

$FD67 GETLNZ Get an input line

GETLNZ is an alternate entry point for GETLN which issues a carriage return to the standard output before falling into GETLN (see above).

$FD6F GETLN1 Get an input line, no prompt

GETLN1 is an alternate entry point for GETLN which does not issue a prompt before it gathers the input line. If, however, the user cancels the input line, either with too many backspaces or with a CTRL X, then GETLN1 will issue the contents of location $33 as a prompt when it gets another line.

$FCA8 WAIT Delay

This subroutine delays for a specific amount of time, then returns to the program which called it. The amount of delay is specified by the contents of the accumulator. With A the contents of the accumulator, the delay is $\frac{1}{2}(26+27A+5A^2)$ μseconds. WAIT returns with the A register zeroed and the X and Y registers undisturbed.

$F864 SETCOL Set Low-Res Graphics color

This subroutine sets the color used for plotting on the Low-Res screen to the color passed in the accumulator. See page 17 for a table of Low-Res colors.

$F85F NEXTCOL Increment color by 3

This adds 3 to the current color used for Low-Res Graphics.

$F800 PLOT Plot a block on the Low-Res screen

This subroutine plots a single block on the Low-Res screen of the prespecified color. The block's vertical position is passed in the accumulator, its horizontal position in the Y register. PLOT returns with the accumulator scrambled, but X and Y unmolested.

$F819 HLINE Draw a horizontal line of blocks

This subroutine draws a horizontal line of blocks of the predetermined color on the Low-Res screen. You should call HLINE with the vertical coordinate of the line in the accumulator, the leftmost horizontal coordinate in the Y register, and the rightmost horizontal coordinate in location $2C. HLINE returns with A and Y scrambled, X intact.

$F828 VLINE Draw a vertical line of blocks

This subroutine draws a vertical line of blocks of the predetermined color on the Low-Res screen. You should call VLINE with the horizontal coordinate of the line in the Y register, the top vertical coordinate in the accumulator, and the bottom vertical coordinate in location $2D. VLINE will return with the accumulator scrambled.

$F832 CLRSCR Clear the entire Low-Res screen

CLRSCR clears the entire Low-resolution Graphics screen. If you call CLRSCR while the video display is in Text mode, it will fill the screen with inverse-mode "@" characters. CLRSCR destroys the contents of A and Y.

$F836 CLRTOP Clear the top of the Low-Res screen

CLRTOP is the same as CLRSCR (above), except that it clears only the top 40 rows of the screen.

$F871 SCRN Read the Low-Res screen

This subroutine returns the color of a single block on the Low-Res screen. Call it as you would call PLOT (above). The color of the block will be returned in the accumulator. No other registers are changed.

$FB1E PREAD Read a Game Controller

PREAD will return a number which represents the position of a game controller. You should pass the number of the game controller (0 to 3) in the X register. If this number is not valid, strange things may happen. PREAD returns with a number from $00 to $FF in the Y register. The accumulator is scrambled.

$FF2D PRERR Print "ERR"

Sends the word "ERR", followed by a bell character, to the standard output device. The accumulator is scrambled.

$FF4A IOSAVE Save all registers

The contents of the 6502's internal registers are saved in locations $45 through $49 in the order A-X-Y-P-S. The contents of A and X are changed; the decimal mode is cleared.

$FF3F IOREST Restore all registers

The contents of the 6502's internal registers are loaded from locations $45 through $49.

MONITOR SPECIAL LOCATIONS

Table 14: Page Three Monitor Locations

Address: Decimal	Hex	Use: Monitor ROM	Autostart ROM
1008 1009	$3F0 $3F1	None.	Holds the address of the subroutine which handles machine language "BRK" requests (normally $FA59).
1010 1011	$3F2 $3F3	None.	Soft Entry Vector.
1012	$3F4	None.	Power-up Byte.
1013 1014 1015	$3F5 $3F6 $3F7	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles Applesoft II "&" commands.* Normally $4C $58 $FF.	
1016 1017 1018	$3F8 $3F9 $3FA	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles "USER" (CTRL Y) commands.	
1019 1020 1021	$3FB $3FC $3FD	Holds a "JuMP" instruction to the subroutine which handles Non-Maskable Interrupts.	
1022 1023	$3FE $3FF	Holds the address of the subroutine which handles Interrupt ReQuests.	

* See page 123 in the **Applesoft II BASIC Reference Manual**.

MINI-ASSEMBLER INSTRUCTION FORMATS

The Apple Mini-Assembler recognizes 56 mnemonics and 13 addressing formats used in 6502 Assembly language programming. The mnemonics are standard, as used in the **MOS Technology/Synertek 6500 Programming Manual** (Apple part number A2L0003), but the addressing formats are different. Here are the Apple standard address mode formats for 6502 Assembly Language:

Table 15: Mini-Assembler Address Formats

Mode:	Format:
Accumulator	None.
Immediate	#${value}
Absolute	${address}
Zero Page	${address}
Indexed Zero Page	${address},X ${address},Y
Indexed Absolute	${address},X ${address},Y
Implied	None.
Relative	${address}
Indexed Indirect	(${address},X)
Indirect Indexed	(${address}),Y
Absolute Indirect	(${address})

An {address} consists of one or more hexadecimal digits. The Mini-Assembler interprets addresses in the same manner that the Monitor does: if an address has fewer than four digits, it adds leading zeroes; if it has more than four digits, then it uses only the last four.

All dollar signs ($), signifying that the addresses are in hexadecimal notation, are ignored by the Mini-Assembler and may be omitted.

There is no syntactical distinction between the Absolute and Zero Page addressing modes. If you give an instruction to the Mini-Assembler which can be used in both Absolute and Zero-Page mode, then the Mini-Assembler will assemble that instruction in Absolute mode if the operand for that instruction is greater than $FF, and it will assemble that instruction in Zero Page mode if the operand for that instruction is less than $0100.

Instructions with the Accumulator and Implied addressing modes need no operand.

Branch instructions, which use the Relative addressing mode, require the *target address* of the branch. The Mini-Assembler will automatically figure out the relative distance to use in the instruction. If the target address is more than 127 locations distant from the instruction, then the Mini-Assembler wil sound a "beep", place a circumfex (^) under the target address, and ignore the line.

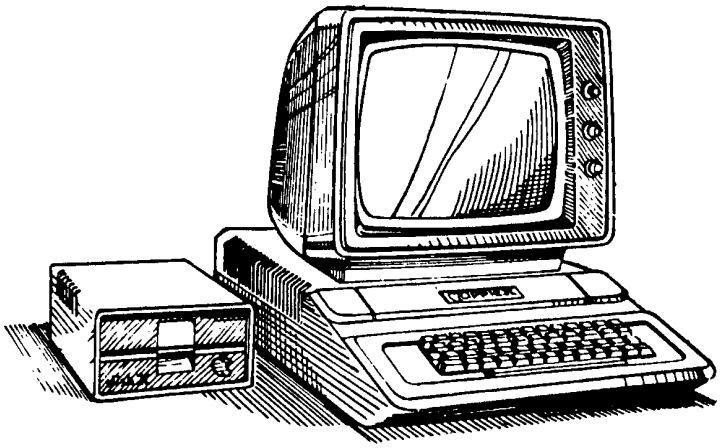
If you give the Mini-Assembler the mnemonic for an instruction and an operand, and the addressing mode of the operand cannot be used with the instruction you entered, then the Mini-Assembler will not accept the line.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

CHAPTER 10
TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

TROUBLESHOOTING GUIDE

General Troubleshooting Tips:

On both a hardware and a software level, APPLE ll is highly interactive. The first step in repairing an APPLE ll system is to isolate the problem to a particular module. With the Modular Exchange Program, this is done at the Dealer level. When a Main Logic Board is received, it should be connected up to a known-good Power Supply, Keyboard and Disk ll so that any failures observed are the fault of the board under repair. When a unit is received as a complete APPLE ll having its own Power Supply and Keyboard, the case must be removed from the unit so the the board may be completely exposed. You may also wish to remove the board, and connect it to a known-good Keyboard and Power Supply.

Most board failures are due to IC failure. In this case, the problem can usually be narrowed down to an area on the board, and parts substitution will identify the bad component.

If the problem is mechanical in nature, (open or shorted trace, bad socket) no amount of chip-swapping will solve the problem. In this case, the bad signal must be found with an oscilloscope to repair the board.

When an IC fails, often one of its outputs will fail to toggle even though the inputs to the chips are good. Sometimes an IC'S input will, due to an internal short, hang up a healthy IC'S output. This can be difficult to locate when the signal goes to many places on the board.

Mechanical failures on the board generally cause either dead shorts or opens, which can be positively identified with a VOM or continuity tester. Mechanical intermittents should be aggravated by flexing the board to bring out the failure.

Board contaminants (spilled liquids, etc.) can be removed from the bottom side of the board by scrubbing the board with a small brush soaked in alchohol. This is much more difficult to do on the component side of the board, and requires that the plastic carrier for each socket in the affected area be removed, and the board area carefully cleaned as above.

With intermittent boards, special attention is required. A 24 or 48 hour burn-in period will show whether a repair on an intermittent unit was successful or not. In cases where a unit dies completely after a period of time, a simple Monitor command such as:

```
N E000LLL 34:0 <SP> <RET>
```

will generate repeating screen action, indicating whether the machine is functioning or not. Often a Heat Gun and a can of Cold Spray will speed things up.

Here are some suggestions:

Each technician should have their own personal known-good Main Logic Board to use as a source of components when substituting parts into

the board under repair. This serves two purposes. First, we have confidence in the parts which are being placed into the bad unit. Second, the empty sockets in the known good board provide a record of what parts were replaced; this helps when filling out the paperwork.

It sometimes helps to scope out a known-good board when troubleshooting. This helps us get acquainted with what the proper signals should look like. After a while this won't be necessary.

The Main Logic Board Theory of Operation describes what the logic should be doing. It is especially important to spend time familiarizing yourself with the Medium-Scale (MSI) chips present on the board. Consult this material when in doubt.

Learn to use the F8 Monitor's software commands. (A tutorial on switching between video modes and testing video operation from the keyboard is given in the Section entitled "Using the Montor to Verify Video Failure"). It also helps to know 6502 Assembly Language programming (information on using the Dis-assembler and Mini-assembler can be found in the APPLE 11 Reference Manual, APPLE product number A2L0001A).

Temperature-related problems can be fixed by using a heat-gun and cold-spray to isolate the bad component. Heat the unit up until it fails, and then chill suspected ICS on the board using the thin plastic tube that comes with the cold-spray. The board will usually begin functioning correctly when the temperature-sensitive part is cooled.

SERVICE PROCEDURES

Motherboard:

I. Test Set-Up:

A. Equipment Needed:

1. A "known good, in spec" 48k system complete with all Apple peripherals.
2. Oscilloscope
3. I C Puller
4. 48K RAM
5. Disk Interface Card
6. Diagnostics Diskette
7. Non Conductive Foam Pad
8. Heat Gun

B. Set up Procedure:

1. Place mother board to be tested in postion on non-conductive foam pad.
2. With power supply switch OFF, plug power supply and video cable into motherboard.(no RAM should yet be installed!)

C. Visual Inspection:

1. Look for obvious damage- burned chips, scratches, drink strains, burn marks, drops of solder, etc.
2. Make sure that there are no missing chips.
3. Make sure that all chips are what they're supposed to be.
4. Make sure all chips are firmly seated.
5. Make sure that all chips are installed correctly pin 1 to hole 1.
6. Make sure that no pins are bent under.

II. Start-up

A. Video Problem:

1. Turn ON power supply.
2. If you have a video failure, look for symtom and possible fix in the section entitled "Motherboard Video Failures/ Symtoms".
3. Repair video problem first and you may find that it will also fix a no reset problem if there is one.

III. Troubleshooting

A. Running Diagnostics:

1. When you have a good video pattern, continue the following procedures.
2. Assure power supply is OFF and insert only 16K of RAM (c-row only), plug in speaker and keyboard (Do not insert Disk Interface Card yet).
3. Turn ON power supply at which time determine whether you have a good cold-start reset (beep, prompt and cursor)-- if you have an Autoboot ROM at F8 you may also get some data locations listed on screen along with prompt and cursor).
4. If you have a good cold start, turn OFF power supply, install full 48K RAM, insert Disk Interface Card, insert Diagnostics Diskette in drive and continue testing (most motherboard problems from this point may be found in the section entitled "Motherboard Miscellaneous Failures/

Symtoms). IF YOU DO NOT HAVE A GOOD COLD START RESET (making sure all three: beep, prompt and cursor, are present), then refer to the section entitled "Motherboard Reset Failures/Symtoms".

5. When you have accomplished the fix and have a good cold start reset, turn OFF power supply and continue as stated in paragraph directly above.

V. Testing:

Once diagnostics have been completed error free, then it is suggested you final test system by running a continuous loop possibly similar to the following:

```
10 for X = 1 TO 39
20 TAB X (HTAB X for Applesoft)
30 PRINT X
40 FOR I = 1 TO 100:NEXT I
50 NEXT X
60 GOTO 10
RUN
```

While this loop is running you might run a heat gun over the board for a short period, then tap chips with the plastic end of a screw-drive. In justifying this seemingly unorthodox procedure, a sufficient number of problems are found at this point that would otherwise have found their wayback to the dealer/customer. Remember that our objective at this point is to create a potential hidden failure if one indeed exists. If there is no failure after a couple of passes with the heat gun and one pass shocking the ICS, pat yourself on the back and ship it (if you have any doubts put it on the burn-in rack overnight).

Of course, once these procedures above are exhausted, it becomes a matter of technical expertise finding opens, shorts, incorrect values, etc. Some test points for various system signals are provided in the section entitled "Scope and Meter".

It is suggested that as you repair a failure you might make note of the systom and the fix action to provide a means of evalution and ready, handy reference. This trouble shooting guide by no means provides all systoms or fix actions.

USING THE MONITOR TO VERIFY VIDEO FAILURE

First, we need to get into the Monitor. On systems with the F8 Monitor ROM this is easy: just turn on the power and press the Reset button a couple of times. An asterisk prompt (*) will be displayed in the lower left-hand corner of the screen. Newer circuit boards don't require you to press the Reset button at all, but it won't hurt to do so.

On systems with the newer Autostart Monitor (APPLE part number 341-0020) the system will boot up your disk drive if it finds a disc controller card in one of the motherboard slots 1 through 7. If no card is present it will go into BASIC, which is indicated with a greater-than (>) prompt in the lower left-hand corner of the screen. To enter the Monitor type CALL-151 followed by a Return.

To fill the screen with TEXT characters, type in the command L (for list). This invokes the disassembler which interprets memory locations as a series of machine language instructions and displays the opcodes for you. To look at the contents of the F8 ROM you type: F800 L. Each L command following causes the next locations in memory to be displayed.

Now suppose we wish to check out the LORES graphics mode. We do this by typing a series of soft-switch commands which causes the system to shift from TEXT mode into LORES mode. These commands are:

C050 C056

Now entering L causes the text displayed to appear as LORES characters. If we want a TEXT-window at the bottom to see what we are doing, we type:

C053

To make the TEXT-window disappear we type:

C052

These commands will tell you whether or not LORES graphics is ok or not.

For HIRES graphics, we can't alter the contents of screen memory just by entering L. This is because the HIRES screen memory area is mapped into locations $2000 to $3FFE instead of $400 to $800 as is the case with TEXT and LORES modes. In order to use the monitor to alter the HIRES screen memory we must do a "block move" into memory. Here's an example:

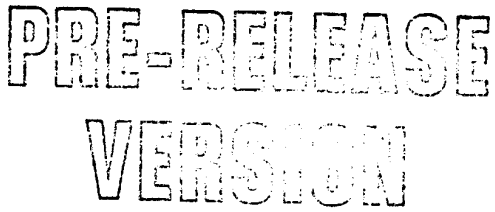
Fill the Hires main display page with the value $55 (Since the monitor already speaks on hex, the dollar sign is not required.)

This is done with the command:

2000:55 2001<2000.3FFEM

To see the results use the soft-switch commands:

C050 C053 C057



This will display vertical bars of green and purple on the HIRES screen. Do the block move using AA instead of 55:

2000:AA 2001<2000.3FFEM

This will produce orange and blue vertical bars on the HIRES screen. (On REV 0 boards you will still get the colors green and purple but the positions of the vertical bars will be reversed.)

The soft-switch cammand:

C055

Causes the APPLE 11 to jump into PAGE 2 of whatever graphics mode you are in. The screen locations for these secondary pages are:

Secondary page of TEXT/LORES: $800 to $BFF

Secondary page of HIRES: $4000 to $5FFF

To check out the secondary page of TEXT/LORES, try the following scheme:

C053 C055 (Page 1 with TEXT window)

800<400.7FFM (Loads data from primary to secondary page)

C055 (Switches into secondary page)

For LORES display type:

C056

To load into secondary HIRES page:

To display it type:

C050 C053 C055 C057

If you get lost, type:

C051 C054

Which will return you back to the primary TEXT page so you can see the last 20 or so commands typed in.

Now you have a way to verify each graphics mode and the machine's ability to switch between modes correctly. Again, practice switching modes and block-moving data on a known-good APPLE 11 system. Then on any machine with good Reset you will be able to verify a video problem without special equipment.

MOTHERBOARD VIDEO FAILURE/SYMTOMS

No video at all (dark rather than light screen): With scope grounded, first scope (B2-74S86 pin 10) for 14MHz signal from crystal. Replace crystal if no oscillator signal or if signal is questionable and if this does not correct oscillation then replace Q1 and Q2 (2N4258's) below crystal. If signal at B2 pins 10 & 8 are good then swap the following ICs: (Note:swap 2 or 3 ICs at a time leaving replacements in until you have video. Then remove replacements in the same manner reinserting original ICs and turning system on after replacing 2 or 3 to assure no more than the one chip you replaced is bad).

REMEMBER TURN POWER OFF BEFORE SWAPPING CHIPS!

Most likely cause replace these four first:
B1-74LS175
B2-74S86
C1-74LS153
C2-74LS195
Turn power back on ----if still no video try these:

A2-74LS00	B10-74LS74	C13-74LS51	D2-74LS20	F14-9334
A9-74LS151	B11-74LS08	C14-74LS32	D11-74LS04	
A10-74LS194			D13-74LS161	

If you still have no video, refer to the Section entitled "Scope and Meter".

The following are various types of video failures/symptoms you may encounter and possible fixes. Be aware that the fix given may not be the only problem areas, they are only the most likely, giving you a starting point.

SYMPTOM	CAUSE
Blank white screen	F14-9334 6502 A3-74166 B5,8-74LS174
Screen goes blank when disk boots	B9-74LS194
Will get into diagnostics menu but screen goes all white during RAM test	B2-74S86
Video wavers	C11-74LS04 D11-74LS161 D12-74LS161 D13-74LS161 D14-74LS161
Pulsating data with corresponding speaker static	H1-74LS08
Video distortion but reset OK	D2-74LS20
Top of video missing/distorted	B14-74LS02
Video pushed down & to the right	C13-74LS02
Can't write into upper left of screen	A9-74LS151

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Top three lines of HIRES missing	A11-74LS74
Rolling(not scrolling) video	B14-74LS32
	C11-74LS04
Full vertical screen of question marks scrolling (not rolling) up	E11-74LS153
Entire screen inverse & prompt not flashing	B2-74LS86
Inverse/incorrect prompt at CTRL B/C	F8 ROM
Split video with four corners	B1-74LS174
	C1-74LS153
Split location of prompt/cursor	C11-74LS04
	E14-74LS283
No prompt/cursor	B3-555 timer
	open from C1 pin 3 to H2 pin 14
No flashing cursor	B3-555 timer
	0.1uf capacitor just above B3
Horizonial lines & garbage chars.	B5-74LS174
	B11-74LS08
Color bar test has horizonial lines	B4-74LS194
Color bars come up in text mode	B5-74LS174
	B8-74LS174
Distorted color bars	A12-74LS02
Vertical bars at cold start	F14-9334
	A5-2513
	A9-74LS151
	C12-74LS257
	D12-74LS161
Vertical bars in HIRES	B4-74LS194
Left margin has vertical white column	A3-74LS166
Graphic color bars broken up	B4-74LS194
	B9-74LS194
No page 2	open B11 pin 6 to H1 pin 10
Black sqares with left to right moving characters	B12-74LS11
	B13-74LS02
Smaller chars. & vertical bars	B2-74LS86
Constantly active characters at row 9, column 39&40 also writes garbage into rows 3/4;11/12;19/20 at reset	C11-74LS04
Random chars. upon keyboard reset	B11-74LS08
	F1-(no F1 on boards Rev 7 and up).
Part graphics & part text	A11-74LS74
Entire screen background of exclamation marks	A5-2513
Garbage chars after warmup	27 microhenry choke at end of H-row
Full video & reset but video is pushed down a couple of inches from top	B14-74LS02
Distorted, diagonal breaks in video	C1-74LS153

Right half of text char. missing	A3-74LS166
Video shows only top halves of letters, you get two tops instead of a top & bottom	H1-74LS08 A5-2513(VC line to pin 13 held low
Mis-shaped question marks/char	A3-74LS166 A5-2513 A9-74LS151 B2-74LS86 B10-74LS74
No graphics but text ok	B4-74LS194 B9-74LS194 A8-74LS257 A9-74LS151
LORES/HIRES,only one works	A9-74LS151
Double row of prompt, cursor & text	E11-74LS153
No video but will reset & boot disk	A9-74LS151 A10-74LS194
All white screen with black blinking cursor square	A3-74LS166
All white screen rolling upward & will produce a horizontal bar at each reset & may or may not reset continusously	A12-74LS02
Vertical roll in LORES (color bars) but ok in text & can be corrected momentarily by tweaking video pot	replace video pot

MOTHERBOARD RESET FAILURES/SYMTOMS

For a no reset condition where there is no cursor, no prompt, and no speaker beep as obvious symptoms, with scope grounded, check pin 40 of the 6502 for a high to low transition when the reset key is pressed. If no transition occurs, check the following:

REMEMBER TURN POWER OFF WHEN REPLACING ICS!

A13-555
Q5-(2N3904 near A13)
capacitor below Q5 (.1uf)

Usually if you have a good reset from the keyboard, but are unable to get a cold start reset , Q5 is good and change the capacitor.
IF YOU HAVE A GOOD TRANSITION WITH HIGH LEVEL AT +5V and still no reset swap the following ICS: NOTE: swap 2 or 3 at a time leaving replacements in umtil you have a good reset then remove replacement ICS in the same manner reinserting original ICS and turning system on after replacing 2 or 3 to assure no more than the one chip you replaced is bad.

Swap chips in the following order as they are arranged according to most common failures and will save you some time: Remove all ROM and the 6502, insert known good 6502 and the F8 ROM leaving all other ROMS out. Then proceed with the chips at the following locations.

B6-74LS257	H10-8T28	H3-8T97	C14-74LS32	D2-74LS20
B7-74LS257	H11-8T28	H4-8T97	A2-74LS00	E11-74LS153
		H5-8T97	B11-74LS08	E12-74LS153
				E13-74LS153

C1-74LS153	F12-74LS138	F14-9334	H1-74LS08
B5-74LS174	F13-74LS138	F2-74LS139	H12-74LS138
B8-74LS174	C11-74LS04	J1-74LS74	H14-74LS251

At this point, if you still have no reset, assure that your 16K of RAM has not gone bad by replacing the row. If a bad reset condition still remains refer to the Section entitled Scope and Meter. This may assist you in getting started in the right direction.

The following are various types of reset failures/symtoms you may encounter and possible fixes. Be aware that the fix given may not be the only problem areas.

No reset & intermittent oscillator failure	Short-pins 5&6
No reset & random char. generation from keyboard reset	D2-74LS20 F1-jumper block E12-74LS153 F2-74LS139
Intermittent reset both at cold start & from keyboard reset	C14-74LS32
Intermittent reset,inputs random data & will not access drive	A2-74LS00 E8-ROM
Random chars. at keyboard reset	B11-74LS08

	F1-jumper block
Constantly active chars. at Row 9, column 39&40 & writes random data into rows 3/4, 11/12, 19/20 at reset	C11-74LS04
Repetitive/continuous reset without load at cold start	B7-74LS257
Good at 16K, no reset above 16K	RAM short (RA02 or RA03)
Good at 16K, intermittent reset over 16K & will not complete RAM test	F2-74LS139
Reset OK but no speaker output (no beep)	J13-74LS74
Good speaker output but no reset, prompt or cursor	C13-74LS51
	F14-9334
	E11-74LS153
	E12-74LS153
	E14-74LS153
	H1-74LS08
No prompt or cursor	B3-555
	cap. just above B3
Split location of prompt/cursor	C11-74LS04
No reset with ROM card in and switch in up position, OK with switch down (determined not to be a ROM card fault)	RA01
No reset with Disk Interface Card, OK without	H2-74LS138
	H12-74LS138
At cold start, reset nay be intermittent, random data input & will not complete RAM test	RAM short

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MISCELLANEOUS MOTHERBOARD SYMTOMS/FAILURES

Following are various types of miscellaneous motherboard failures/symtoms and possible fixes. Be aware that the fix given may not be the only problem areas, they are only the most likely, giving you a starting point.

Unable to access drive:	B5-74LS174 B6-74LS257
Will not boot disk, drive LED on, prompt switches back and forth from Monitor to a mis-shaped rounded Basic: Will not boot disk:	B5-74LS174 C1-74LS153 H2-74LS138 B6-74LS257 H3-74LS8T97 B7-74LS257 H12-74LS138
Prompt but no cursor and will not access disk: Disk boots then screen goes blank:	B3-555 B9-74LS194
Goes into monitor, program stops after warmup:	RAM C1-74LS153 E11-74LS153 B6-74LS257 E12-74LS153 B7-74LS257 E13-74LS153 ROM E14-74LS153 Card in slot 0 Slot 0 50-pin connector
Keyboard input failures but keyboard is good:	B6-74LS257 C11-74LS04 B7-74LS257 F13-74LS138 B10-74LS74 anything in keyboard strobe line
Will not run D-row RAM & has static output to speaker & screen during diagnostics:	H1-74LS08 J1-74LS257 D2-74LS20
Will not run E-row RAM & has static output to speaker & screen during diagnostics:	D2-74LS20 H1-74LS08 J1-74LS257
Will not run E-row RAM (no static output at speaker):	D1-jumper block D-row RAM F1-not on rev. 7 or later boards.
Cursor moves by itself through diagnostics menu, sometimes will not move when ESC pressed & will boot intermittently:	I/O select not grounded
Will not go to Basic from Monitor with CTRL B/C:	B6-74LS257
Double row of prompt,cursor, & chars.:	E11-74LS153

SCOPE AND METER

NO RESET

A no reset condition is where there is no cursor, no prompt, and no speaker. Check pin 40 of the 6502 for a high to low transition when the reset key is pressed. If no transition occurs check the following: Q5 (2N3904 near A13, and the capacitor below Q5(.1 microfarad). Usually if Q5 is bad the APPLE will keyboard reset (but will not power on reset). If a transistion occurs check the following points with an oscilloscope:

Data Lines D0-D7 (pins 49-42 on I/O slots),
Address Lines A0 to A15 (pins 2-17 on I/O slots),
Read/Write (the write signal is active low) at pin 34 of the 6502,
pin 5 of H5(8T97),
pin 9(R/W in) of C14,
pin 8(R/W out) at C14.

Look for low logic levels and missing (except AD7 and AD9 which are normally low) signals. The following IC'S could be at fault:

SYMTOMS	PROBABLE CAUSE	
Low Data Levels	B6-74LS257	H10-8T28
	B7-74LS257	H11-8T28
	Bad ROM'S	
Bad Address levels	H3-8T97	Bad ROM'S
	H4-8T97	6502
	H5-8T97	
No R/W signal	H5-8T97	A2-74LS00
	C14-74LS32	6502

With an osilloscope check for the 1 MHz clock on pin 37 of the 6502. Also check B11 pin 1 (74LS08) for the 1 Mhz clock. Check B11 pin 1 for +5 volt level. C11 pin 13 (74LS04) for a +5 volt level, and C11 pin 12 for a low level. See schematic for futher details. Check the following IC'S.

SYMTOMS	PROBABLE CAUSE
No 1 MHz at 6502	C11-74LS04
	B11-74LS08
	RA01 (resistor pak)

SCOPE AND METER

RA01 (resistor pak)

Check the following signals to make sure there is proper RAM addressing. Check the CAS bar signals at pin 15 of the RAM. The CAS bar signal at pins 4 ($0-3FFF), 5 ($4000-$7FFF), 6 ($8000-$BFFF) from F2 (74LS139). Check the CS bar signal at pins 13 of the RAM and pin 7 of C1 (74LS153). Check RAM SEL bar at pin 4 of the RAM, pin 6 of A2 (74LS00). Check inputs and outputs of D2 (74LS20) and pins 10 ($8000-$BFFF), 11 ($4000-$7FFF), and pin 12 ($0-$3FFF). See the schematic for complete detail and check the inputs and outputs of the following IC'S.

J1-74LS257	H1-74LS08	F2-74LS139
C1-74LS153	C12-74LS257	D2-74LS20
C11-74LS04	C14-74LS32	A2-74LS00

Also check the Memory Select headers for continuity (except Rev 7 and above boards)

Check RAM pins 5,6,7, and 10,11,12 for RA0 (pin10), RA1 (pin 11), RA2 (pin 12), RA3 (pin 7), RA4 (pin 6), and RA5 (pin 5). These are the RAM refresh, video addressing signals. Also check pins 7 and 9 of E11,12, and 13 (74LS153's). Check the address and sync inputs to the 74LS153's (see schematic for pinouts).

If the system works with 16k RAM but not with 32K or 48K check RA02 and RA03 resistor paks. These located between E10 and E11 and D10 and D11. Check these with and ohm meter from pins 7 and 9 of E11,12,13 between ground and +5 volts. There should be a reading of about 500 ohms between pin 7 of E11 and ground. Also, it should read the same for pin 7 of E11 and +5 volt buss (about 500 ohms). The readings should be the same for each for them (see schematic for more details).

Service Procedure

New style keyboards(two part)

Symptoms	Cause
No keyboard output	Encoder(331-0931)
No Data Strobe(no keybd output)	B3(74LS00) B4(74LS00) C6(.1 microfarad cap)
Incorrect data out	Encode B5(74LS04) B3(74LS00)
No output	Cable
P, Return, and : keys repeat	Change R10 to 3.0K ohm 1/4 watt resistor. See Apple Service Bulletin #15

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

APPLE

P.S. TEST PROCEDURE

1. DISASSEMBLE

(A) REMOVE RIVETS AND SHEETMETAL SCREWS THAT HOLD LID TO HOUSING.
(B) REMOVE PCB HOLD-DOWN SCREWS AND WASHERS.
(C) REMOVE PCB FROM HOUSING.
(D) FIND THE TWO RIVETS.

2. VISUAL CHECK

(A) DETERMINE LEVEL OF SUPPLY, UPDATE AS NECESSARY.
C6 C7 C16 10UF, 25V ; R17 R20 39 OHM,1/4W.
(B) CHECK FOR BAD DATE CODE OF CR1, IF "7841" CHANGE.
(C) CHECK FOR MOST COMMON FAILURES.
(1) RESISTANCE ACROSS CR16 220 OHM, IF LESS CR15 OR CR16 BAD.
(2) IF FUSE BLOWN CR3 MAY BE SHORTED OR Q1 & Q2 MAY BE BAD.
(3) IF R1 IS OPEN CR1 PROBABLY BAD.
(D) CHECK FOR BURNT RESISTORS AND BAD SOLDER CONNECTIONS.

3. LOAD TEST

(A) HOOK-UP P.S. TO TEST FIXTURE. CHECK FOR FAILURE.
(B) TAKE IN CIRCUIT RESISTANCE READINGS TO FIND CAUSE OF FAILURE.
HAVING A KNOWN GOOD P.S. TO COMPARE WITH WOULD BE HELPFUL.
(C) MAKE NECESSARY REPAIRS.
(D) TEST AT ALL S/W SETTINGS.
(E) VIBRATION TEST, WITH POWER APPLIED TO P.S. ,
TAP PCB WITH THE HANDLE OF A SCREWDRIVER.
NO FLUCTUATION IN OUTPUT SHOULD OCCUR.

4. FINAL TEST

(A) SECURE PCB IN HOUSING, REPLACE LID.
(B) VERIFY OPERATION.
(C) BURN-IN FOR 3-6 HOURS.
COMMON THERMAL PROBLEMS AR1, CR17, CR18, OR CR19.
(D) VERIFY OPERATION.
(E) REPLACE SHEETMETAL SCREWS & RIVETS.

APPLE ORIGINAL
P.S. PROBLEMS

"BAD" MEANS COMPONENT COULD BE OPEN, SHORTED, MISSING, WRONG VALUE, PHSICALLY DAMAGED, HEAT SENSITIVE, OR HAVE A POOR SOLDER CONNECTION.

SYMPTOM ON TESTER	PROBABLE CAUSE IN ORDER OF OCCURRENCE
FAILS CROWBAR TEST	(1) Q5 BAD
@107 HI LOAD NO OUTPUT	(1) FUSE BLOWN - CHECK CR3 (2) R1 OPEN - CHECK CR1 (3) BAD S/W (4) CR15 OR CR16 BAD (5) CR1 BAD
@107 HI LOAD ALL VOLTAGES LO WON'T ADJUST	(1) AR1 BAD (2) C6 OR C7 BAD (3) Q1 OR Q2 BAD (4) CR9, CR18 OR CR19 BAD
@107 HI LOAD OSCILLATING MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) AR1 BAD (2) C6 OR C7 BAD (3) Q1 OR Q2 BAD (4) CR5, CR9 OR CR11 BAD
@115 1A LOAD +12V DROPS BELOW 11.25V	(1) CR17, CR18 OR CR19 BAD
@120 HLOO LOAD EXCESSIVE RIPPLE OR MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) AR1 BAD (2) R17 BAD (3) C11, C12 OR C18 BAD (4) CR9 OR CR19 BAD
@120 LHOO LOAD EXCESSIVE RIPPLE OR MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) CR17, CR18 OR CR19 BAD
@137 LO LOAD EXCESSIVE RIPPLE OR MAKES CLICKING SOUND	(1) C6 OR C7 BAD (2) CR5, CR6, CR9 OR CR11 BAD
VIBRATION PROBLEM	(1) SOLDER CONNECTION OF SINGLE ENDED CAPACITORS (2) HEAT SINK TO PCB SOLDER CONNECTION (3) R16 BAD - REPLACE

August 1981

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

REPAIR MANUAL FOR ASTEC POWER SUPPLY AA1040

Section I: Test Set-up

A. Equipment Needed

1. Isolation Transformer (minimum of 500 VA rating)
   Dangerously high voltages are present in this power supply. For the safety of the individual doing the testing, please use an isolation transformer. The 599 VA rating is needed to keep the AC wave form from being clipped off at the peaks. These power supplies have peak charging capacitors and draw full power at the peak of the AC wave form.

2. 0-140V Variable Transformer (Variac)
   Used to vary input voltage. Recommend 10 Amp. 1.4 DVA rating, minimum

3. Voltage meter - Needed to measure DC voltages to 50VDC and AC voltages to 200VAC. Recommend 2 digital Multi Meters.

4. Oscilloscope - Need X10 and X100 probes.

5. Load board with connectors
   See table I for values of loads required. The entry on the table for safe load power is the minimum power ratings for the load resistors used.

6. Ohm meter.

B. Set-up Procedure

Set-up as shown in Figure 1. Monitor the input voltage and the output voltage of the regulated bus, which is the +5 output, with DVM's. Also monitor the +5 output with the oscilloscope using 50mv/div sensitivity. The DVM monitoring the +5 output can also be used to check the other outputs. See text of section III for test points within power supply.

Section II

A. Visual Inspection:

Check power supply for any broken, burned, or obviously damaged components. Visually check fuse; if any question, check with Ohm meter.

B. Load power supply with minimum load as specified in Table I. Bring power up slowly with variable Transformer while monitoring +5 output with scope and DVM. Supply should start with approximately 40-60 VAC applied and should regulate when 104 VAC is reached. If output has reached 5 volts, do a performance test as shown in Section VI. If there is no output refer to Section III.

Section III - No Output

General

With the AC input applied to the L & N connections and the power does not produce an output, and power switch on one or more components have failed. A no output fault condition is most likely caused by a shorted or opened component on the primary side but may also be caused by a short on the secondary. To determine this follow the steps below.

A. Check Fuse:
If fuse is blown, replace but do not apply power until cause of failure is found.

B. Preliminary Check on Major Primary Components:
Check Diode Bridge (DBI), Power Transistor (Q2) and check diode (D3) for shorted junctions. If a component is found shorted, replace it.

C. Primary Check on Major Secondary Components:
Using Ohm meter from output common to each output, with output loads disconnected, check for shorted rectifiers or capacitors. If the +12V output is shorted also check crowbar: SCR (SCR1), +12V.

D. Check B+ with the fuse intact:
Set power supply and attach X100 scope probe ground to the anode of (D1). Slowly turn up power and check for B+ Cathode of D3 (near the transformer T1). With input at 107VAC, this point should be between 260-270 VDC. If this is not correct check R1 and DB1.

If R8 is open, it was most likely caused by a shorted component that is fed power by T1. Check the following components for proper operation, (Q2, Q1, D3).

E. Check Q4 Waveforms:
Use X100 probe on Heat Sink of Q2, check collector waveform. Transistor should be switching, correct waveform is shown in Figure 2. If this is not present check for open junctions on Q2. If Q2 is OK, check to see if base voltage is being supplied to Q2; it should be .7V. If it is not present, check components, (C6, Q1, D1, and R3).

Section IV - Low Outputs

A. All outputs are low
If all outputs are low at the same time, check to insure that the voltage selection jumper is in the proper position.

B. +5V output
The power supply is regulated off the +5V DC output. If this output is low, it could cause the others to be low, If so, adjust +5V by changing R20. If adjustment to correct voltage is not possible, check Q3 and Q4.

C. If any one output is not present, first check the rectifier associated with that output and then the rest of the components in the circuit and

the solder joints on the PCB. Check respective choke for output in question (ie. L2, L3, L4, L5).

Section V - Crowbar

If the crowbar is not operating, check Z1 and SCR1. If the crowbar is not triggering within the specified limits, change Z1 and check that any adjustment resistor in series with Z1 has not changed value from its color code value.

Section VI - Performance Test

Each of these test conditions should be set-up and noted to be within the limits specified in Table II.

STEP	INPUT	+5V LOAD	+12V	-12V	-5V
1.	107 VAC	Max	Max	Max	Max
2.	132	Max	Max	Max	Max
3.	120	Max	Min	Min	Min
4.	120	Min	Min	Max	Min
5.	132	Min	Min	Min	Min
6.	Test Crowbar Limits				

If the power supply does not pass the above test, refer to Section IV and V.

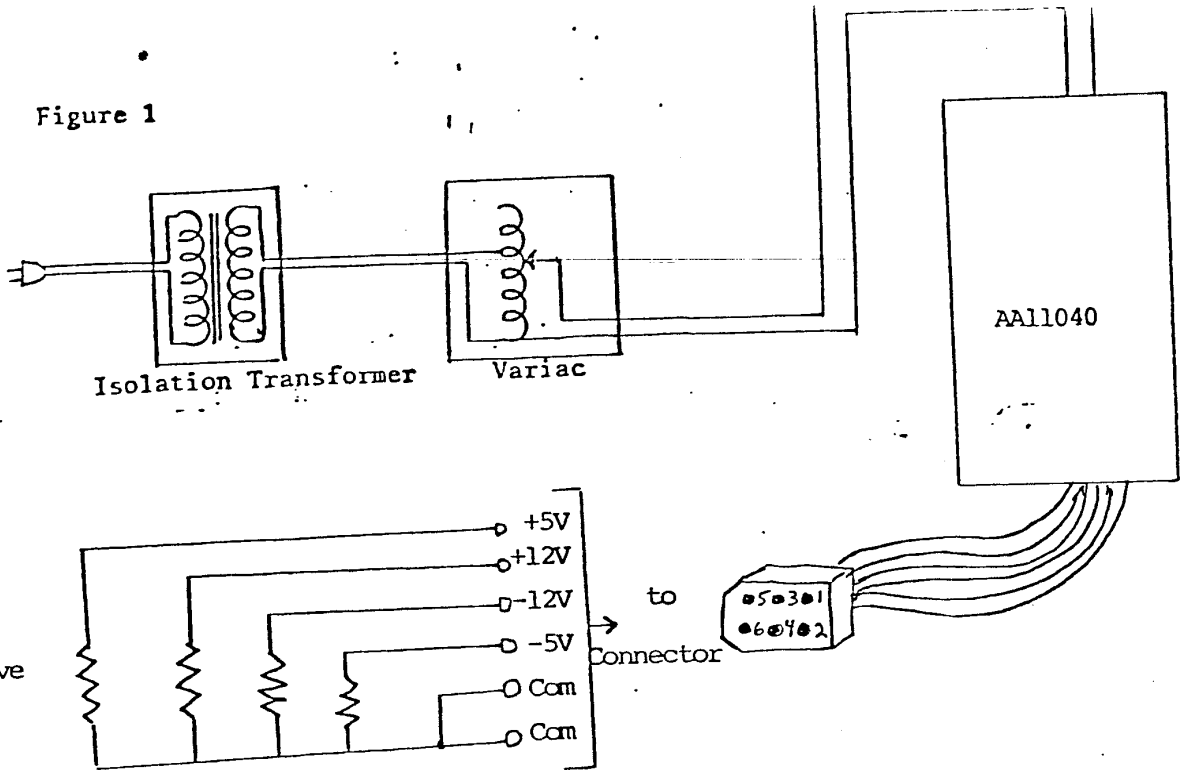
Table I: Load Board Valves

OUTPUT	MIN LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER	MAX LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER
+5V	1.0A	5.0 ohms	10 watts	2.5A	2.0 ohms	25 watts
+12V	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts	2.5A	4.8 ohms	60 watts
-12V	0.05A	240 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts
-5V	0.10A	50 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	20 ohms	2.5 watts

Table II: Voltage and Ripple Specifications

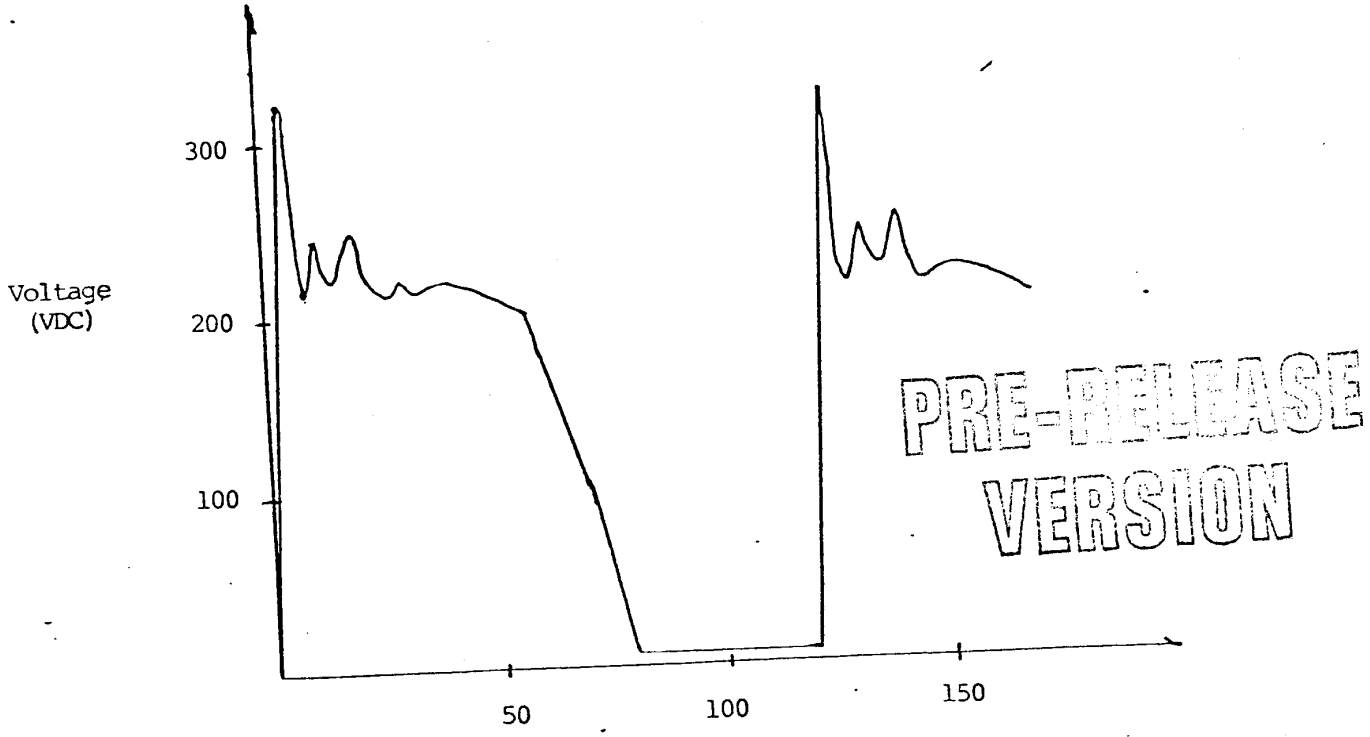
OUTPUT	MIN	MAX	RIPPLE (MAX RP)
+ 5V	4.90V	5.10V	45MV
+ 12V	11.10V	12.50V	100MV
-12V	-10.80V	-13.20V	100MV
-5V	-4.70V	-5.70V	45MV

Figure 1



Pin No.	Output
1	Common
2	Common
3	+5V
4	+12V
5	-12V
6	-5V

Figure 2



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

June 1981

REPAIR MANUAL FOR ASTEC POWER SUPPLY AA11040(B)

Section I: Test Set-up

A. Equipment Needed

1. Isolation Transformer (minimum of 500 VA rating)
   Dangerously high voltages are present in this power supply. So for the safety of the individual doing the testing please use an isolation transformer. The 500 VA rating is needed to keep the AC wave form from being clipped off at the peaks. These power supplies have peak charging capacitors and draw full power at the peak of the AC wave form.

2. 0-140V Variable Transformer (Variac)
   Used to vary input voltage. Recommend 10 Amp. 1.4 KVA rating, minimum.

3. Voltage meter - Needed to measure DC voltages to 50VDC and AC voltages to 200VAC. Recommend 2 digital Multi Meters.

4. Oscilloscope - Need X10 and X100 probes.

5. Load board with connectors-
   See table one for values of loads required. The entry on the table for safe load power is the minimum power ratings for the load resistors used.

6. Ohm meter.

B. Set-up Procedure

Set-up as shown in Figure 1. You will want to monitor the input voltage and the output voltage of the regulated buss, which is the +5 output, with DVM's. Also monitor the 5 output with the oscilloscope using 50mv/div sensitivity. The DVM monitoring the +5 output can also be used to check the other outputs. See text of section III for test points within power supply.

Section II

A. Visual Inspection:

Check power supply for any broken, burned, or obviously damaged components. Visually check fuse, if any question check with Ohm meter.

B. Start-up

Load power supply with minimum load as specified in Table I. Bring power up slowly with variable Transformer while monitoring +5 output with scope and DVM. Supply should start with approx. 40-60 VAC applied and should regulate when 95 VAC is reached. If output has reached 5 volts, do a performance test as shown in Section VI. If there is no output refer to Section III.

Section III - No Output

General

With the AC input applied to the L & N connections and the power does not produce an output, and power switch on, one or more components have failed. A no output fault condition is most likely caused by a shorted/open component on the primary side but may also be cuased by a short on the secondary. To determine this follow the steps below.

A. Check Fuse:
If fuse is blown, replace but do not apply power until cause of failure is found.

B. Preliminary Check on Major Primary Components:
Check Diode Bridge (DB1), Power Transistor (Q2) and catch diode (D3) for shorted junctions. If any component is found shorted, replace.

C. Primary Check on Major Secondary Components:
Using Ohm meter from output common to each output, with output loads disconnected, check for shorted rectifiers or capacitors. If +12V output is shorted also check crowbar; SCR (SCR1), +12V.

D. Check B with the fuse intact:
Set power supply and attach X100 scope probe ground to the anode of (D1). Slowly turn up power and check for B+ on end of (R28) nearest the transformer. With input at 95VAC, this point should be between 260-270 VDC. If this is not correct check resistor and DB1.

If R5 is open it was most likely caused by a shorted component that is fed power by R28. Check the following components for proper operation, (Q2, Q1, D1)

E. Check Q4 Waveforms:
Using X100 probe on Heat Sink of Q4, check collector waveform. Transistor should be switching, correct waveform is shown in Figure 2.

If this is not ~~present~~ PRESENT check for open junctions on Q2. If Q2 is ok, check to see if base voltage is being supplied to Q2, it should be .7V. If it is not present, check components, (L3, Q1, D1 and R3).

Section IV - Low Outputs

A. All outputs are low.
If all outputs are low all at the same time, check to insure that the voltage selection jumper is in the proper position.

B. +5V output.
The power supply regulates off of the +5V DC output. If this output is low, it could cause the others to be low. If so, adjust +5V by changing R25.

C. If any one output is not present, first check the rectifier accociated with that output and then the rest of the components in the circuit and the solder joints on the PCB.

Section V - Crowbar

If the crowbar is not operating, check Z1, Q4, and SCR1. If the crowbar is not triggering within the specified limits change Z1 and check that R26 and R27 are of the proper resistance.

Section VI Performance Test

Each of these test conditions should be set-up and noted to be within the limits specified in Table II.

STEP	INPUT	+5V LOAD	+12V	-12V	-5V
1.	90 VAC	Max	Max	Max	Max
2.	132	Max	Max	Max	Max
3.	120	Max	Min	Min	Min
4.	120	Min	Min	Max	Min
5.	132	Min	Min	Min	Min
6.	Test Crowbar Limits.				

If the power supply does not pass the above tests, refer to Section IV and V.

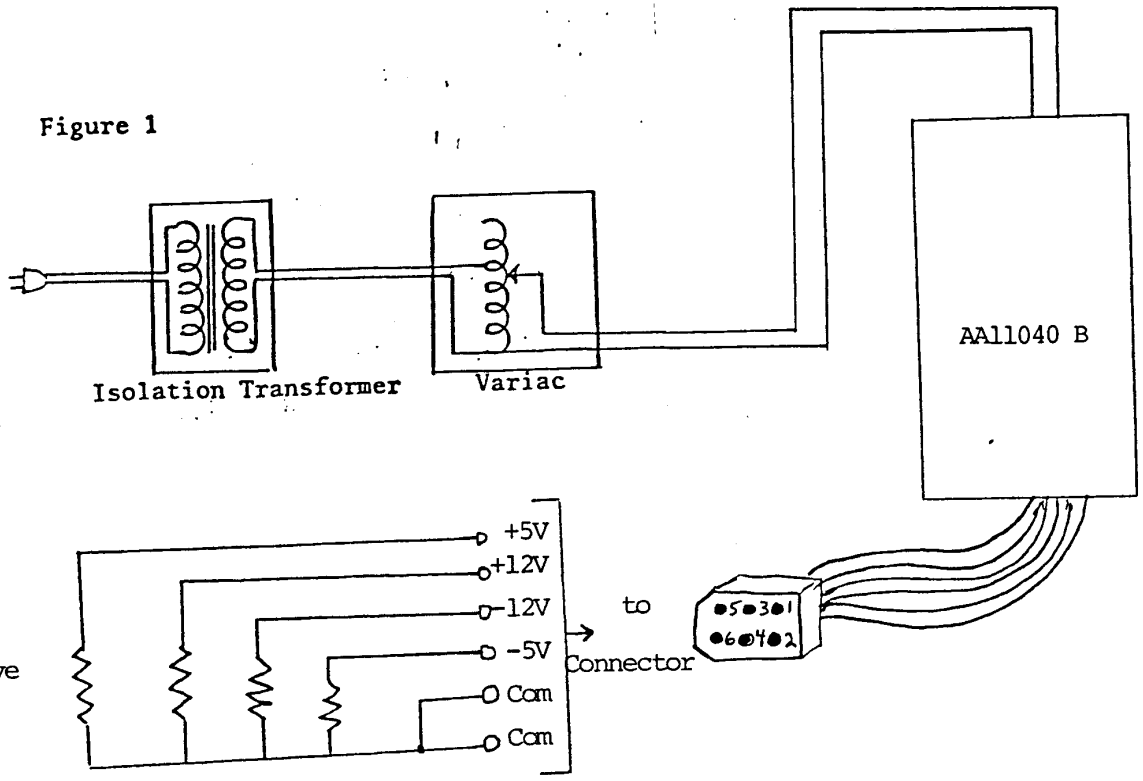
Table I: Load Board Valves

OUTPUT	MIN LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER	MAX LOAD	LOAD RESISTANCE	SAFE LOAD POWER
+5V	1.0A	5.0 ohms	10 watts	2.5A	2.0 ohms	25 watts
+12V	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts	2.5A	4.8 ohms	60 watts
-12V	0.05A	240 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	48 ohms	6 watts
-5V	0.10A	50 ohms	1 watt	0.25A	20 ohms	2.5 watts

Table II: Voltage and Ripple Specifications

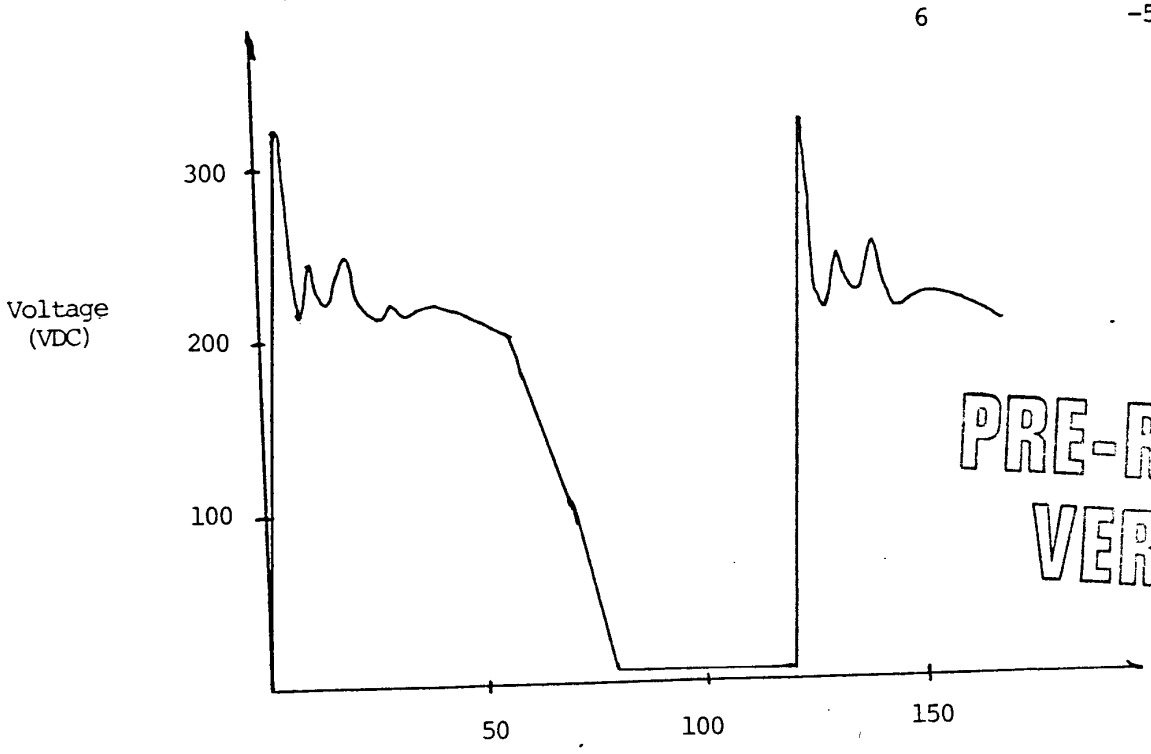
OUTPUT	MIN	MAX	RIPPLE (MAX RP)
+ 5V	4.90V	5.10V	45MV
+ 12V	11.10V	12.50V	100MV
-12V	-10.80V	-13.20V	100MV
-5V	-4.70V	-5.70V	45MV

Figure 1



Pin No.	Output
1	Common
2	Common
3	+5V
4	+12V
5	-12V
6	-5V

Figure 2



SCOPE AND METER

Introduction:

The following scope & meter points of reference and procedures are provided only as a guideline for tech's in training status. Tech's should eventually develop their own methods/procedures with which they feel most comfortable.

When metering RAM, ROM or I/O slots for continuity the following will not zero out:
RAM: Row- pin 2 will read approximately 19 to 20 and pin 14 will read open.
Column- pin 15 will read open.
ROM: Pins 20 & 21 will read open.
I/O slots: The following pins will read open --1,19,23,27,28,35,41.

SECTION 5: REFERENCE GUIDE TO SIGNALS

A. SYSTEM TIMING

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
14M	B2-8
7M	B1-15
7M'	B1-14
COLOR REF	B1-3
COLOR REF'	B1-2
PHASE ZERO	B1-7
PHASE ONE	B1-6
RAS'	C2-15
AX'	C2-14
CAS'	C2-13
Q3	C2-12
Q3'	C2-11
LD194	B12-8
LDPS'	A2-3

B. VIDEO

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
H0	D14-14
H1	D14-13
H2	D14-12
H3	D14-11
H4	D13-14
H5	D13-13
HPE'	D13-12
HBL	C13-6
VA	D13-11
VB	D12-14
VC	D12-13
V0	D12-12
V1	D12-11
V2	D11-14
V3	D11-13
V4	D11-12
VBL	B11-8
SYNC	C13-8
TEXT VIDEO	B2-11

C. MPU

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION

A0	H5-11
A1	H4-5
A2	H5-7
A3	H5-9
A4	H4-7
A5	H3-9
A6	H3-11
A7	H3-7
A8	H3-5
A9	H3-3
A10	H4-9
A11	H4-11
A12	H4-3
A13	H5-3
A14	H5-13
A15	H4-13
R/W	H5-5
D0	H11-2
D1	H10-2
D2	H10-14
D3	H11-14
D4	H11-5
D5	H10-5
D6	H10-11
D7	H11-11

D. ROM

SIGNAL MNEMONIC		LOCATION
CS'	: D0	F12-13
	D8	F12-12
	E0	F12-11
	E8	F12-10
	F0	F12-9
	F8	F12-7

E. RAM

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
+12	PIN 8
+5	PIN 9
GND	PIN 16
-5	PIN 1
A0	PIN 10
A1	PIN 11
A2	PIN 12
A3	PIN 7
A4	PIN 6

A5	PIN 5
A6	PIN 13
RAS'	C2-15
CAS' : ROW C	F2-4
ROW D	F2-5
ROW E	F2-6
RAM R/W	C14-11
RAM SEL'	A2-6

F. ON-BOARD I/O

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
KBD	F13-15
KBDSTRB	F13-14
CASSETTE CLK	F13-13
CASSETTE OUT	K13-8
SPEAKER CLK	F13-12
SPEAKER OUT	K13-5
GAME I/O STRB	F13-11
9334 EN'	F13-10
251 EN'	F13-9
PDL TRIG	F13-7

G. PERIPHERAL I/O

SIGNAL MNEMONIC	LOCATION
DEV' : SLOT 0	H2-15
SLOT 1	H2-14
SLOT 2	H2-13
SLOT 3	H2-12
SLOT 4	H2-11
SLOT 5	H2-10
SLOT 6	H2-9
SLOT 7	H2-7
I/O SEL : SLOT 1	H12-14
SLOT 2	H12-13
SLOT 3	H12-12
SLOT 4	H12-11
SLOT 5	H12-10
SLOT 6	H12-9
SLOT 7	H12-7
I/O STRB'	F12-14

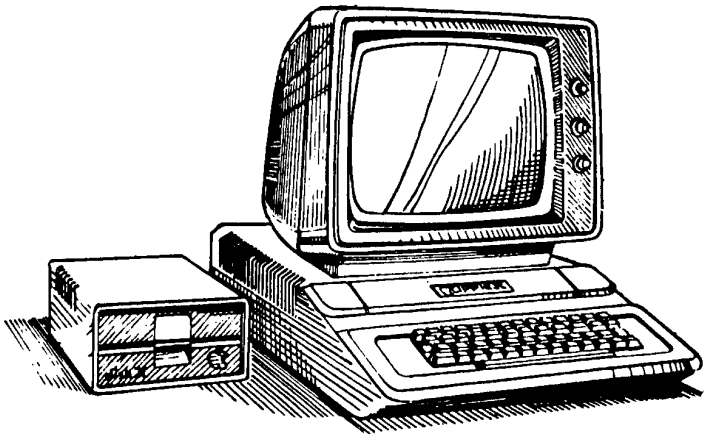
NOTE: Each location given represents the signal's point of origin (furthest upstream location). The schematic diagrams should be used to follow the signal downstream if necessary.

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
IC CHIP MAPS • IC SPECIFICATIONS
6502 INSTRUCTIONS • ROM LISTINGS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

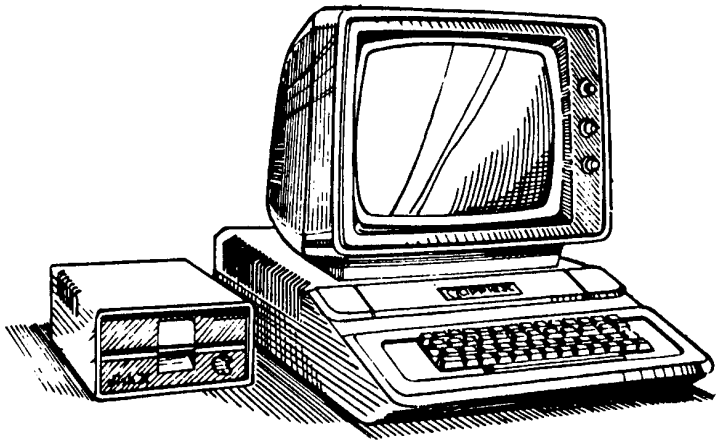
(This page is not part of the original service manual)

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

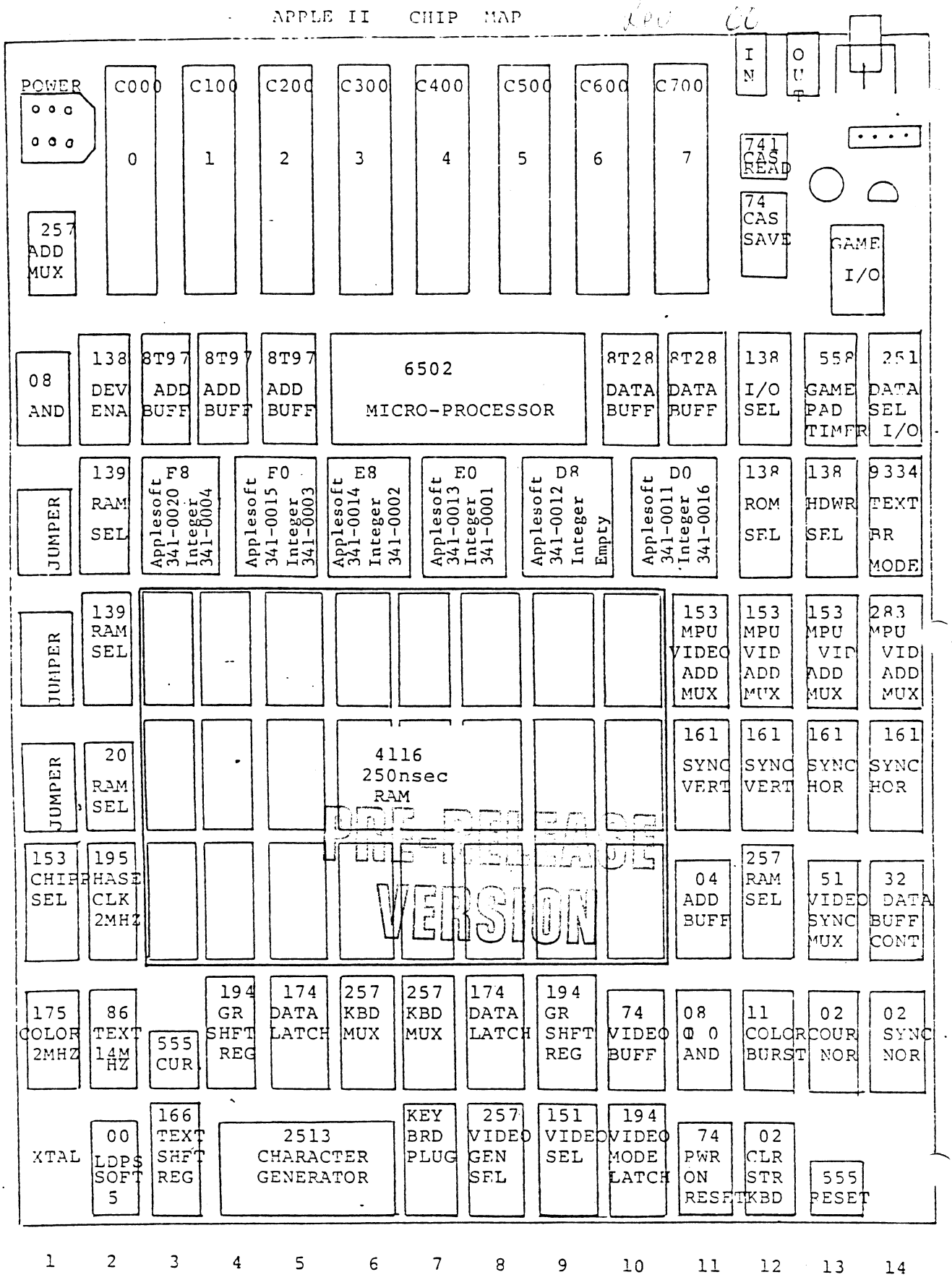
Pre-Release Version

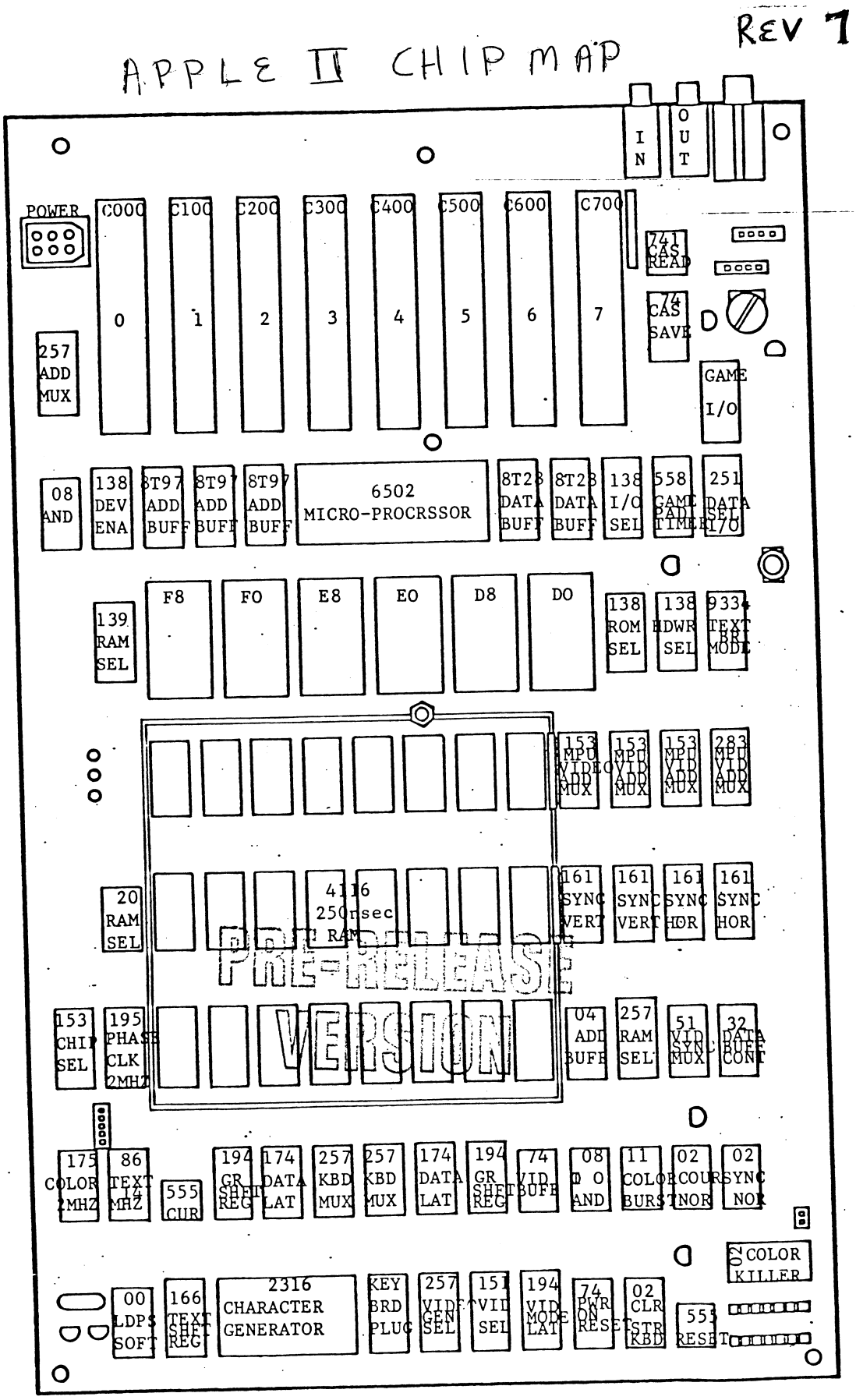
APPENDIX A
IC CHIP MAPS



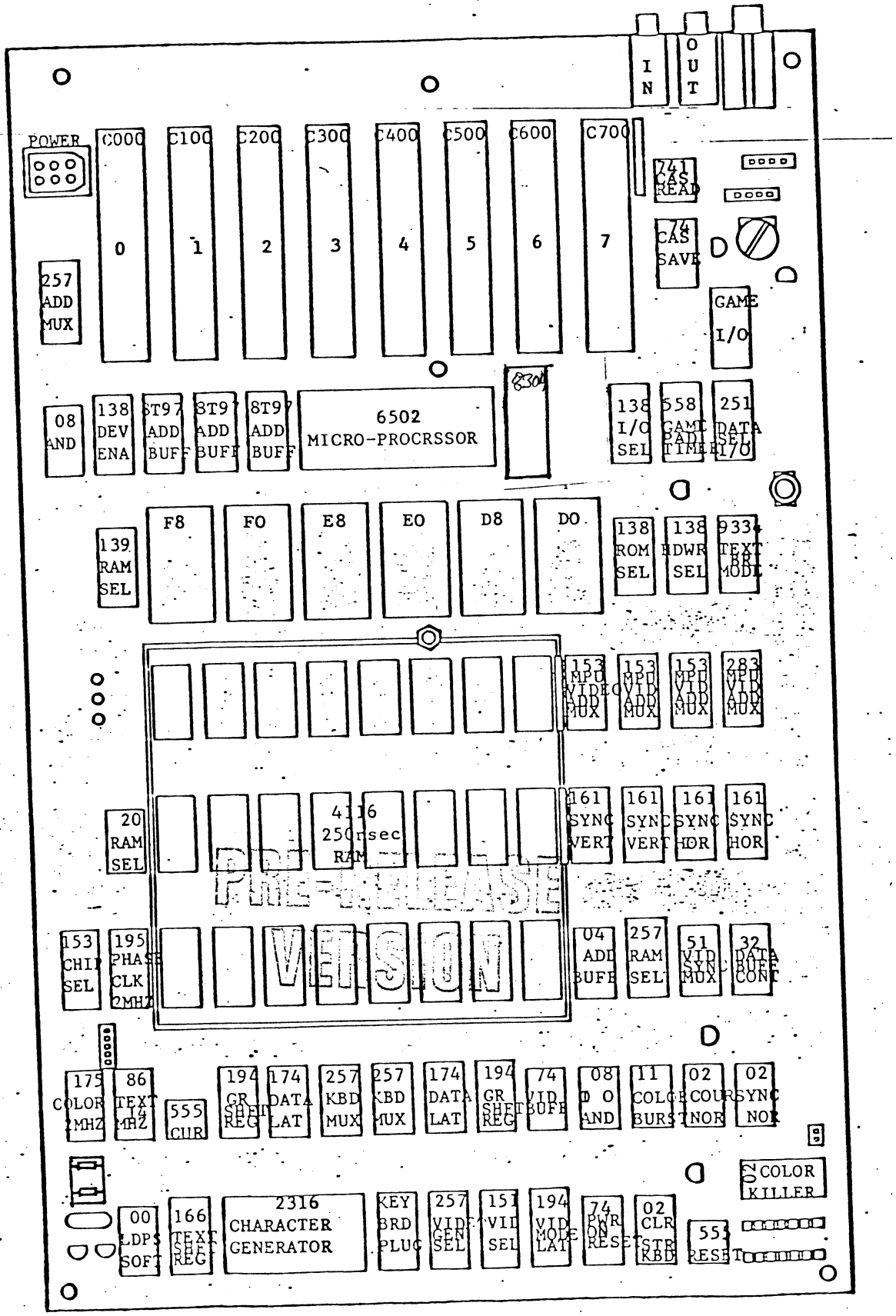
Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)





820-0044 Rev B

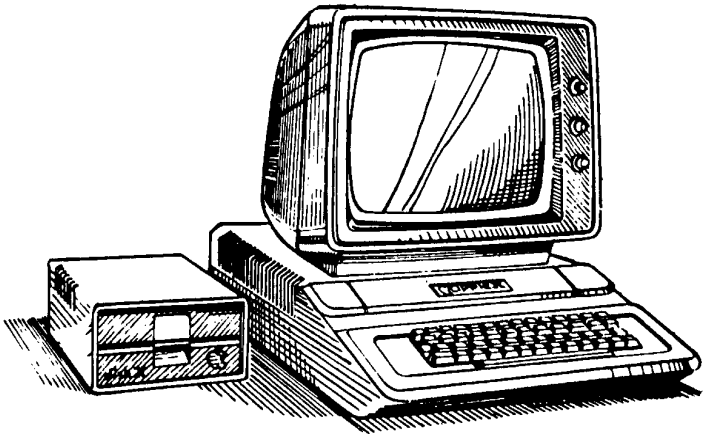


Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
IC SPECIFICATIONS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE NAND GATE

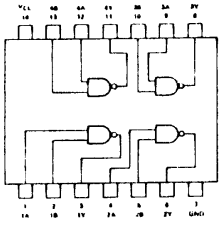
S54S00/503–A,F,W • N74S00/503–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

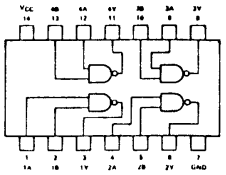
S5
S54S03
H74S00
N74S03

CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE

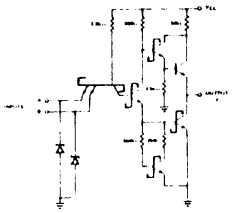


A,F PACKAGE



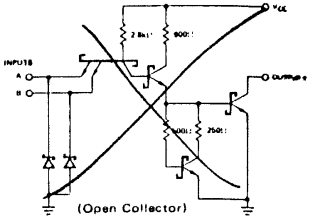
LOGIC (each gate)

S54/N74S00



NOTE:
Component values shown are nominal

S54/N74S03



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54S00			N74S00		
	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Supply voltage, V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
Fan-Out from each Output, N: High logic level			20			20
Low logic level			10			10
Free-Air Temperature, T_A	-55		125	0		70

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted) (74S00)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX
High-level input voltage				2		
Low-level input voltage						0.8
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA				-1.2
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IL} = 0.8V,	Series 54S	2.5	3.4	
	I_{OH} = -1mA		Series 74S	2.7	3.4	
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IH} = 2V,				0.5
	I_{OL} = 20mA					
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V				1
High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V				50
Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V				-2
Short-circuit output current[1]	V_{CC} = MAX			-40		-100
Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V			2.5	4
Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V			5	9

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10 (74S00)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	MAX
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω	NOTE 1	2	3	4.5
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			4.5	
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω		2	3	5
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			5	

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			MIN	TYP**	MAX
High-level input voltage			2		
Low-level input voltage					0.8
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA			-1.2
High-level output current	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IL} = 0.8V,			250
	V_{OH} = 5.5V				
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IH} = 2V,			0.5
	I_{OL} = 20mA				
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1
High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V			50
Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V			-2
Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V		1.5	3.3
Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V		5	9

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	MAX
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω	NOTE 1	2	5	5ns
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			4.5	
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 280Ω		2	4.5	7
	C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω			7	

For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable type.

All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

Load circuit and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

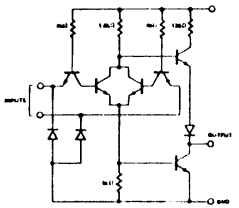
QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE NOR GATE

S5402 N7402

S5402–A,F,W • N7402–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

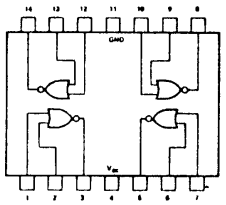
ATIC (each gate)



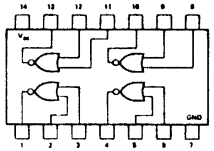
L: Component values shown are nominal.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE



A,F PACKAGE



MENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
y Voltage V_{CC}:	S5402 Circuits	4.5	5	5.5	V
	N7402 Circuits	4.75	5	5.25	V
lized Fan-Out from each Output, N				10	
ting Free-Air Temperature Range, T_A:	S5402 Circuits	-55	25	125	°C
	N7402 Circuits	0	25	70	°C

ICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
$V_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 input voltage required at either input terminal to ensure logical 0 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN			2			V
$V_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 input voltage required at both input terminals to ensure logical 1 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN					0.8	V
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{load} = -400μA	V_{in} = 0.8V		2.4	3.3		V
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{sink} = 16mA	V_{in} = 2V,			0.22	0.4	V
$I_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0.4V				-1.6	mA
$I_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 level input curren[illegible] input)	V_{CC} = MAX, V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 2.4V V_{in} = 5.5V				40 1	μA
I_{OS}	Short circuit output	V_{CC} = MAX		S5402 N7402	-20 -18		-55 -55	mA

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Cont'd)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP	MAX
I_{CC0}	Logical 0 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5V		14	27
I_{CC1}	Logical 1 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0		8	16

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{pd0}	Propagation delay time to logical 0 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		8	15
t_{pd1}	Propagation delay time to logical 1 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		12	22

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the device type.

** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

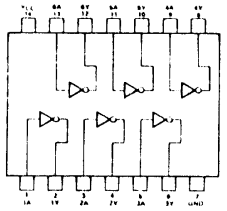
HEX INVERTER | S54S05 N74S04 N74S05

S54S04–A,F,W • S54S05–A,F,W • N74S04–A,F,W • N74S05–A,F

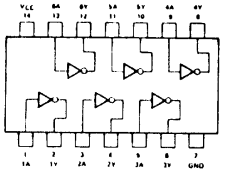
DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

IGURATIONS

W PACKAGE

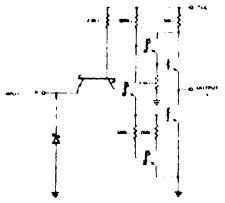


A,F PACKAGE



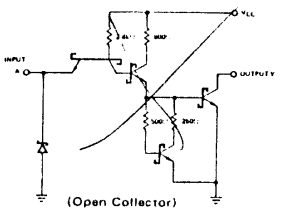
IIC (each gate)

S54/N74S04



NOTE: Component values shown are nominal.

S54/N74S05



(Open Collector)

NDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S04 MIN	S54S04 NOM	S54S04 MAX	N74S04 MIN	N74S04 NOM	N74S04 MAX	UNIT
Voltage V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
ed Fan Out from each Output, N:	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
g Free Air Temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

AL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted) (74S04)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
High level input voltage				2			V
Low level input voltage						0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA				-1.2	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IL} = 0.8V,	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		V
	I_{OH} = -1mA		Series 74S	2.7	3.4		V
Low level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,				0.5	V
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V				1	mA
High level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V				50	µA
Low level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V				-2	mA
Short circuit output current[1]	V_{CC} = MAX			-40		-100	mA
Supply current, high level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V			2.5	4	mA
Supply current, low level							

TCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	M
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω	NOTE 1	2	3	
		C_L = 50 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω			4.5	
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω		2	3	
		C_L = 50 pF,	R_L = 280 Ω			5*	

N74S05

ECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2		
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA			-1.2
I_{OH}	High-level output current	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{OH} = 5.5V	V_{IL} = 0.8V,			250
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,			0.5
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1
I_{IH}	High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V			50
I_{IL}	Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V			-2
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V		1.5	3.3
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V		5	9

TCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS			MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high level output	C_L = 15pF, C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω R_L = 280Ω	NOTE 1	2	5 4.5	5
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15pF, C_L = 50pF,	R_L = 280Ω R_L = 280Ω		2	4.5 7	

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for device type.

** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

*** Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

NOTES:

A. The pulse generator has the following characteristics: $V_{in(1)}$ = 3V, $V_{in(0)}$ = 0V, t_1 = t_0 = 2.5ns, PRR = 1 MHz, duty cycle = 50%, Z_{out} ≈ 50Ω.

B. Inputs not under test are at 2.7V.

C. C_L includes probe and jig capacitance.

NOTE 1: Load circuit and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

signetics

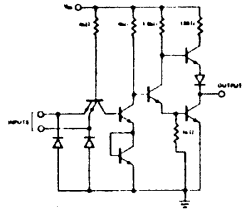
QUADRUPLE 2-INPUT POSITIVE AND GATES

S5408 N7408

S5408–A,F,W • N7408–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

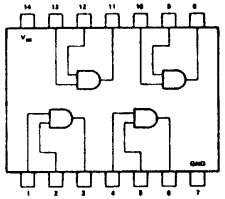
SCHEMATIC (each gate)



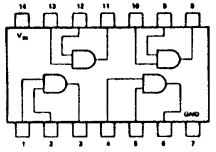
NOTE: Component values shown are nominal.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE



A PACKAGE



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
Supply Voltage V_{CC}:	S5408 Circuits	4.5	5	5.5	V
	N7408 Circuits	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized Fan-Out from Output, N				10	
Operating Free-Air Temperature Range, T_A:	S5408 Circuits	-55	25	125	°C
	N7408 Circuits	0	25	70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
$V_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 input voltage required at both input terminals to ensure logical 1 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN			2			V
$V_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 input voltage required at either input terminal to ensure logical 0 level at output	V_{CC} = MIN					0.8	V
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{load} = -800µA	V_{in} = 2.0V,		2.4	3.3		V
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{sink} = 16mA	V_{in} = 0.8V,			0.22	0.4	V
$I_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX	V_{in} = 0.4V				-1.6	mA
$I_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX, V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 2.4V V_{in} = 5.5V				40 1	µA mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		S5408	-20		-55	mA
				N7408	-18		-55	

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Cont'd)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**
$I_{CC(1)}$	Logical 1 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5V		10
$I_{CC(0)}$	Logical 0 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0		18

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP
t_{pd0}	Propagation delay time to logical 0 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		12
t_{pd1}	Propagation delay time to logical 1 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		17.5

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the device type.
** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C
† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TRIPLE 3-INPUT POSITIVE AND GATE

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

N74S
N74S1

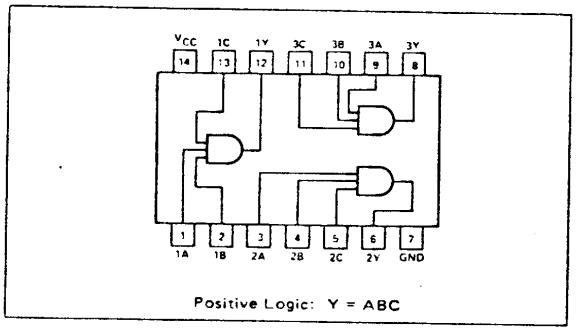
FEATURES

N74S11 ACTIVE PULL-UP

- TYPICAL PROPAGATION TIME — 5 ns at C_L = pF
- TYPICAL POWER DISSIPATION AT 50% DUTY CYCLE — 32 mW PER GATE

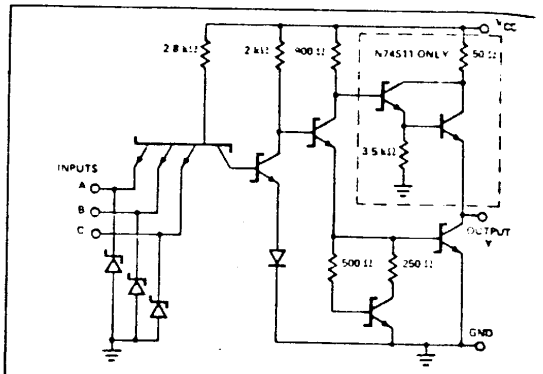
N74S15 OPEN-COLLECTOR

- TYPICAL PROPAGATION TIME — 6 ns at C_L = 15 pF
- TYPICAL POWER DISSIPATION AT 50% DUTY CYCLE — 29 mW PER GATE



Positive Logic: Y = ABC

SCHEMATIC (each gate)



NOTE: Component values shown are nominal.

RECOMMENDED MAXIMUM FAN-OUT FROM EACH OUTPUT

	N74S11	N74S15
Loads at a high logic level	20	
Loads at a low logic level	10	

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*	N74S11 MIN	N74S11 TYP**	N74S11 MAX	N74S15 MIN	N74S15 TYP**	N74S15 MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage		2			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage				0.8			0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA			−1.2			−1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OH} = −1 mA	2.7	3.4					V
I_{OH}	High-level output current	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{OH} = 5.5 V						250	µA
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA			0.5			0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V			1			1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V			50			50	µA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V			−2			−2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX	−40		−100				mA
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX, All inputs at 5 V		4.5	8		3.5	6.5	mA
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output (Average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX, All inputs at 0 V		8	14		8	14	mA

*For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable series on the second page of this section.
**All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
‡Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS NOTE 1	N74S11 MIN	N74S11 TYP	N74S11 MAX	N74S15 MIN	N74S15 TYP	N74S15 MAX	UNITS
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω	2.5	4.5	7	2.5	5.5	8.5	ns
		C_L = 50 pF, R_L = 280 Ω		6			8.5		
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω	2.5	5	7.5	2.5	6	9	ns
		C_L = 50 pF, R_L = 280 Ω		7.5			8		

NOTE 1: Load circuits and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

DUAL 4-INPUT POSITIVE NAND GATE

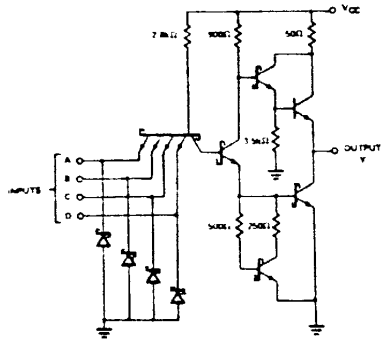
S54S20
N74S20

S54S20–A,F,W • N74S20–A,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

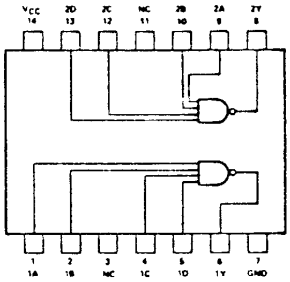
PRE-RELEASE VERSION

SCHEMATIC (each gate)

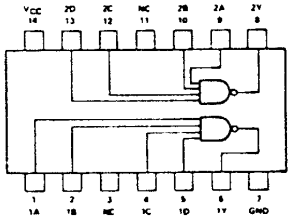


NOTE Component values shown are nominal.

W PACKAGE



A,F PACKAGE



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54S20 MIN	S54S20 NOM	S54S20 MAX	N74S20 MIN	N74S20 NOM	N74S20 MAX	UNIT
Supply Voltage V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized Fan-Out from each Output, N: High logic level			20			20	
Low logic level			10			10	
Operating Free-Air Temperature, T_A	-55		125	0		70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage				2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage						0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = -18mA				-1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IL} = 0.8V,	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		V
		I_{OH} = -1mA		Series 74S	2.7	3.4		V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{OL} = 20mA	V_{IH} = 2V,				0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V				1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7V				50	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5V				-2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX			-40		-100	mA
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 0V			2.5	4	mA
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output (average per gate)	V_{CC} = MAX,	All inputs at 5V			5	9	mA

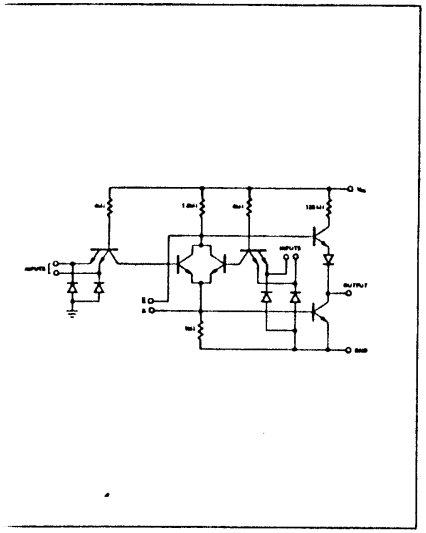
EXPANDABLE DUAL 2-WIDE 2-INPUT AND-OR-INVERT GATES

S5450 S5451 N7450 N7451

S5450A,F,W • S5451–A,F,W • N7450–A,F • N7451–A,F

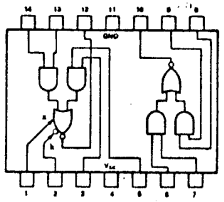
DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

SCHEMATIC (each gate)

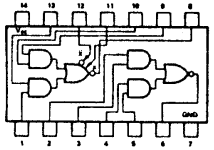


PIN CONFIGURATIONS

W PACKAGE



A,F PACKAGE



NOTES:
1. Component values shown are nominal.
2. Both expander inputs are used simultaneously for expanding.
3. If expander is not used leave X and $\overline{X}$ pins open.
4. Make no external connection to X and $\overline{X}$ pins of the S5451 and N7451.
5. A total of four expander gates can be connected to the expander inputs.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
Supply Voltage V_{CC}:	S5450, S5451 Circuits	4.5	5	5.5	V
	N7450, N7451 Circuits	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized Fan-Out from Output, N				10	
Operating Free-Air Temperature Range, T_A:	S5450, S5451 Circuits	-55	25	125	°C
	N7450, N7451 Circuits	0	25	70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
$V_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 input voltage required at both input terminals of either AND section to ensure logical 0 at output	V_{CC} = MIN		2			V
$V_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 input voltage required at one input terminal of each AND section to ensure logical 1 at output	V_{CC} = MIN				0.8	V
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{load} = –400µA	V_{in} = 0.8V,	2.4	3.3		V
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{sink} = 16mA	V_{in} = 2V,		0.22	0.4	V

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Cont'd)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX
$I_{in(0)}$	Logical 0 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0.4V				-1.6
$I_{in(1)}$	Logical 1 level input current (each input)	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 2.4V				40
		V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5.5V				1
I_{os}	Short circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		S5450, S5451	-20		-55
				N7450, N7451	-18		-65
$I_{CC(0)}$	Logical 0 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 5V			7.4	14
$I_{CC(1)}$	Logical 1 level supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_{in} = 0			4	8

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (S5450 circuits) using expander inputs, V_{CC} = 4.5V, T_A = -55° C

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP**	MAX
I_X	Expander current	V_1 = 0.4V,	I_{sink} = 16mA			2.9
$V_{BE(Q)}$	Base-emitter voltage of output transistor (Q)	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 0	I_1 = 0.41mA,			1
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	I_{load} = –400µA, I_2 = –0.15mA	I_1 = 0.15mA,	2.4	3.3	
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 138Ω	I_1 = 0.3mA,		0.22	0.4

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (N7450 circuits) using expander inputs, V_{CC} = 4.75V, T_A = 0°C

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS		MIN	TYP**	MAX
I_X	Expander current	V_1 = 0.4V,	I_{sink} = 16mA			3.1
$V_{BE(Q)}$	Base-emitter voltage of output transistor (Q)	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 0	I_1 = 0.62mA,			1
$V_{out(1)}$	Logical 1 output voltage	I_{load} = –400µA, I_2 = –270µA	I_1 = 270µA,	2.4	3.3	
$V_{out(0)}$	Logical 0 output voltage	I_{sink} = 16mA, R_1 = 130Ω	I_1 = 0.43mA,		0.22	0.4

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

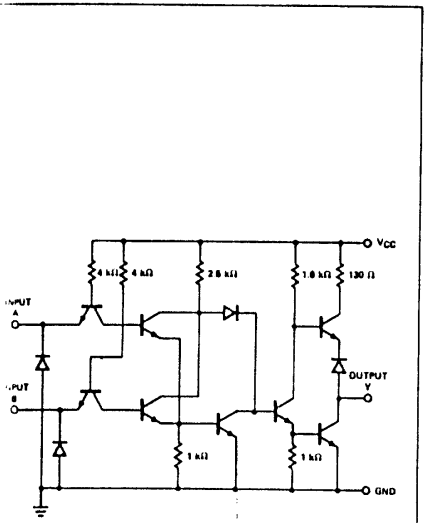
PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{pd0}	Propagation delay time to logical 0 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		8	15
t_{pd1}	Propagation delay time to logical 1 level	C_L = 15pF,	R_L = 400Ω		13	22

*For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable type. Expander inputs X and $\overline{X}$ are open.
**All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.
†Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.

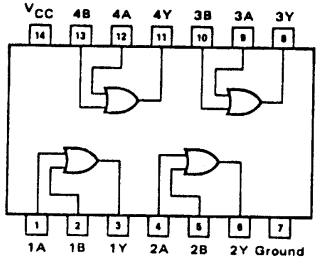
ESCRIPTION

54/7432 provides four 2 input or logic functions. Each may be used individually or connected serially to provide an equivalent five input or function.

HEMATIC (Each gate)



PIN CONFIGURATION (Top View) *



Positive Logic: Y = A + B

*Pin assignments for these circuits are the same for all packages.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 1) . . . . . 7 V
Input voltage . . . . . 5.5 V
Operating free-air temperature range:
5432 Circuits . . . . . -55°C to 125°C
7432 Circuits . . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . -65°C to 150°C

NOTE:
1. Voltage values are with respect to network ground terminal.

OMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		5432			7432			UNIT
		MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	
ply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
inalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
rating free-air temperature, T_A		-55	25	125	0	25	70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS†		MIN.	TYP‡
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2	
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage				
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MAX. I_I = -12 mA			
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN. V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OH} = -800μA		2.4	3.3
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 16 mA			0.22
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V			
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX. V_I = 2.4 V			
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.4 V			
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current §	V_{CC} = MAX	5432	-20	
			7432	-18	
I_{CCH}	Supply current, high-level output	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 2			15
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low-level output	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 3			23

† For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for type
‡ All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25° C.
§ Not more than one output should be shorted at a time.
NOTES: 2. I_{CCH} is measured with one input of each gate at 4.5 V, the remaining inputs grounded, and outputs open.
3. I_{CCL} is measured with both inputs of all gates grounded, and outputs open.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN.	T
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 400Ω		
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output			

Distributed under the Creative Commons License on page 4

Signetics

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DUAL D-TYPE EDGE-TRIGGERED FLIP-FLOPS

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

S54S74
N74S74

DESCRIPTION

These monolithic dual edge-triggered flip-flops utilize Schottky TTL circuitry to produce very high speed D-type flip-flops. Each flip-flop has individual clear and preset inputs, and also complementary Q and $\overline{Q}$ outputs.

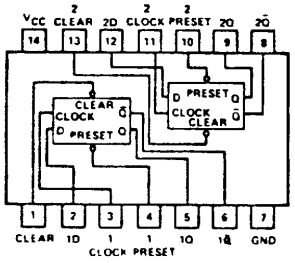
Information at input D is transferred to the Q output on the positive going edge of the clock pulse. Clock triggering occurs at a voltage level of the clock pulse and is not directly related to the transition time of the positive going pulse. When the clock input is at either the high or low level, the D-input signal has no effect.

These circuits are fully compatible for use with most TTL or DTL circuits. A full fan-out to 10-normalized series 54S/74S loads is available from each of the outputs at low logic level. At a high logic level, a fan-out of 20 is available to facilitate tying unused inputs to used inputs. Maximum clock frequency is 75 megahertz, with a typical power dissipation of 75 milliwatts per flip-flop.

The N74S74 is characterized for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

Typical Maximum Input Clock Frequency	90 MHz
Typical Power Dissipation	75 mW per Flip-Flop

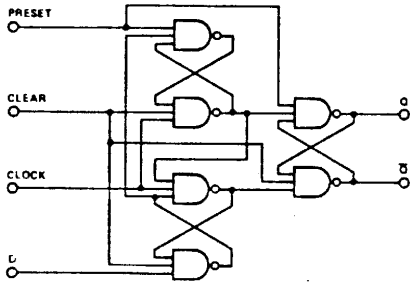
PIN CONFIGURATION



Positive Logic:

Low input to preset sets Q to high level
Low input to clear resets Q to low level
Preset and clear are independent of clock

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM (EACH FLIP-FLOP)



TRUTH TABLE (Each Flip-Flop)

t_n	t_{n+1}	
INPUT	OUTPUT	
D	Q	$\overline{Q}$
L	L	H
H	H	L

H = High level, L = Low level

NOTES: A. t_n = bit time before clock pulse
B. t_{n+1} = bit time after clock pulse

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20	
	Low logic level			10	
Clock frequency, f_{clock}			70		MHz
Width of clock pulse, t_w (clock)			7		ns
Width of preset pulse, t_w (preset)			7		ns
Width of clear pulse, t_w (clear)			7		ns
Input set-up time, t_{setup}	High level data		10		ns
	Low level data		12		
Input hold time, t_{hold}		0			ns
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		0		70	°C

SIGNETICS DUAL D-TYPE EDGE-TRIGGERED FLIP-FLOPS ■ S54S74,N74S74

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
V_{IH}	High level input voltage			2			V
V_{IL}	Low level input voltage					0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18 mA			−1.2	V
V_{OH}	High level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IH} = 2 V	2.7	3.4		V
		V_{IL} = 0.8,	I_{OL} = 20 mA				
V_{OL}	Low level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	V_{IH} = 2 V			0.5	V
		V_{IL} = 0.8,	I_{OL} = 20 mA				
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5 V			1	mA
I_{IH}	High level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	D input			50	μA
		V_I = 2.7 V	Clock or Preset			100	
			Clear			150	
I_{IL}	Low level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	D input			−2	mA
		V_I = 0.5 V	Clock or Preset			−4	
			Clear			−6	
I_{OS}	Short circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	mA
I_{CC}	Supply Current	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 1		30		mA

*For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
**All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
‡Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short circuit test should not exceed one second.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
f_{max}	Maximum clock frequency	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω NOTE 1		90		MHz
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high level output, from clear or preset			5		ns
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low level output, from clear or preset			8		ns
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high level output, from clock			7		ns
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low level output, from clock			7		ns

NOTE 1: Load circuit and test waveforms are shown on page 2-293

signetics

QUAD EXCLUSIVE-OR, EXCLUSIVE-OR/NOR GATES

S54S86
N74S86
S54S135
N74S135

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

FEATURES

- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH MOST TTL AND TTL MSI CIRCUITS
- FULLY SCHOTTKY CLAMPING REDUCES DELAY TIMES:
  - 7 ns Typical — 54S86*/74S86
  - 8 ns Typical — 54S135*/74S135
- 54S135*, 74S135 CAN OPERATE AS EXCLUSIVE-OR GATE (C INPUT LOW) OR AS EXCLUSIVE-NOR GATE (C INPUT HIGH)

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Supply voltage (see Note 1) . . . . . 7 V
Input voltage . . . . . 5.5 V
Operating free-air temperature range:
54S86*, 54S135* Circuits . . . -55°C to 125°C
74S86, 74S135 Circuits . . . . . 0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range . . . . . -65°C to 150°C

NOTE:
1. All voltage values are with respect to network ground terminal.

FUNCTION TABLE 54S86*, 74S86

INPUTS		OUTPUT
A	B	Y
L	L	L
L	H	H
H	L	H
H	H	L

H = High level, L = Low level

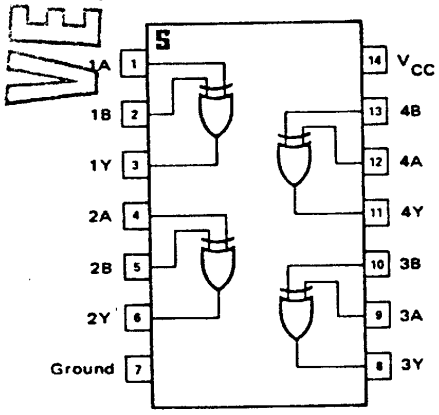
FUNCTION TABLE 54S135*, 74S135

INPUTS			OUTPUT
A	B	C	Y
L	L	L	L
L	H	L	H
H	L	L	H
H	H	L	L
L	L	H	H
L	H	H	L
H	L	H	L
H	H	H	H

H = High level, L = Low level

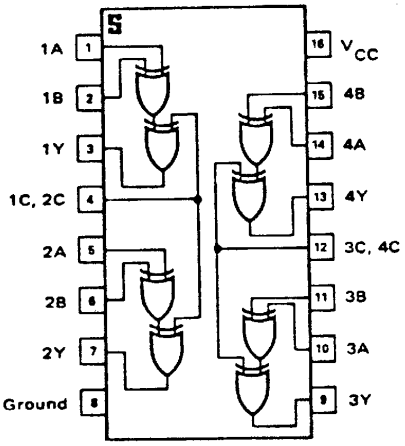
PIN CONFIGURATION (Top View)*

74S86* W-A & F



Positive Logic: $Y = A \cdot B = \overline{A}B + A\overline{B}$

74S135* W-B & F



Positive Logic: With C low, $Y = A \cdot B = \overline{A}B + A\overline{B}$
With C high, $Y = \overline{A \cdot B} = AB + \overline{A}\overline{B}$

*Pin assignments same for all packages.

SIGNETICS QUAD EXCLUSIVE-OR, EXCLUSIVE-OR/NOR GATES ■ S54/N74S86, S54/N74S135

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Over recommended operating free-air temperature range. Unless otherwise noted

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN.	TYP.**	MAX.	UNIT
V_{IH}	High level input voltage			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -18mA				-1.2	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -18 mA	Series 54S*	2.5	3.4		V
		V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = -1mA	Series 74S*	2.7	3.4		
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20mA				0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V				50	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 05. V				-2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		-40		-100	mA
I_{CC}	Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note	54S86*				mA
			74S86				
			54S135*				
			74S135				

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.

** All typical values are V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

NOTE:

I_{CC} is measured with the inputs grounded and the outputs open.

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

		54S86*			54S135*			UNIT
		MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	MIN.	NOM.	MAX.	
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

*Full military version to be announced.

gnetics 3-LINE-TO-8-LINE AND DUAL 2-LINE-TO-4-LINE DECODERS/DEMULTIPLEXERS

54/74S138
54/74S139

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

CRIPTION

e Schottky-clamped TTL MSI circuits are designed to used in high-performance memory-decoding or routing applications requiring very short propagation y times. In high-performance memory systems these ders can be used to minimize the effects of system ding. When employed with high-speed memories ing a fast-enable circuit the delay times of these ders and the enable time of the memory are usually than the typical access time of the memory. This means the effective system delay introduced by the ttky-clamped system decoder is negligible.

54S138 and 74S138 decode one-of-eight lines ident on the conditions at the three binary select ts and the three enable inputs. Two active-low and one e-high enable inputs reduce the need for external gates verters when expanding. A 24-line decoder can be emented without external inverters and a 32-line der requires only one inverter. An enable input can be as a data input for demultiplexing applications. cal delay time through the three-level address circuitry nanoseconds total or an average of 2.6 nanoseconds per level. Average power dissipation is typically 245 watts or approximately 16 milliwatts each for the 15 valent gates.

54S139 and 74S139 comprise two individual line-to-four-line decoders in a single package. The e-low enable input can be used as a data line in ltiplexing applications. Typical total delay time is 7.5 econds through the three-gate-level address circuitry ower consumption is typically 300 milliwatts total.

f these decoders/demultiplexers feature fully buffered ts each of which represents only one normalized Series 74S load to its driving circuit. All inputs are clamped high-performance Schottky diodes to suppress nging and simplify system design. The 54S138 and 39 are characterized for operation over the full ary temperature range of −55°C to 125°C; the 74S138 74S139 are characterized for 0°C to 70°C industrial ns.

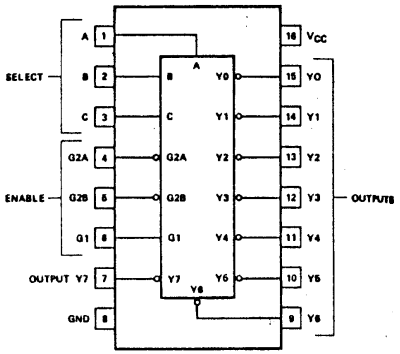
OLUTE MAXIMUM RATING

ly Voltage, V_{CC} (See Note 1)	7 V
Voltage	5.5 V
ating Free-Air Temperature Range:	
S138, 54S139 Circuits	−55°C to 125°C
S138, 74S139 Circuits	0°C to 70°C

PIN CONFIGURATIONS (Top View)

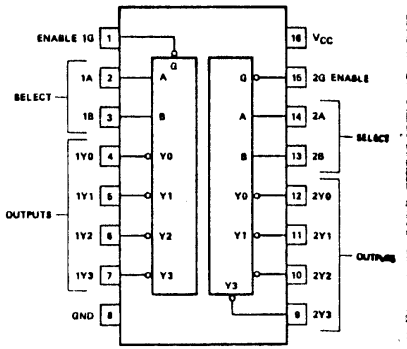
B-F-W PACKAGES

54/74S138



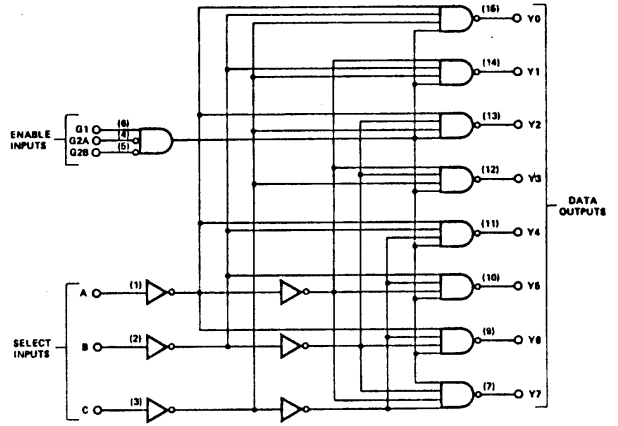
POSITIVE LOGIC: SEE FUNCTION TABLE

54/74S139

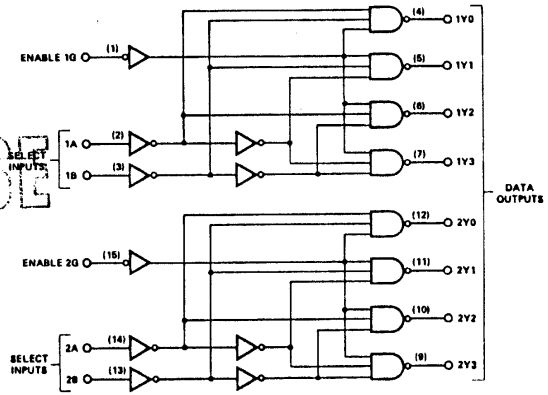


BLOCK DIAGRAMS

54/74S138



54/74S139



54/74S138
FUNCTION TABLE

INPUTS					OUTPUTS							
ENABLE		SELECT										
G1	G2[1]	C	B	A	Y0	Y1	Y2	Y3	Y4	Y5	Y6	Y6
H	H	X	X	X	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H
L	X	X	X	X	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H
L	L	L	L	L	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	H
L	L	L	L	H	H	L	H	H	H	H	H	H
L	L	L	H	L	H	H	L	H	H	H	H	H
L	L	L	H	H	H	H	H	L	H	H	H	H
L	L	H	L	L	H	H	H	H	L	H	H	H
L	L	H	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	H	H
L	L	H	H	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	L	H
L	L	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	H	L

54/74S139 FUNCTION TAB
(EACH DECODER/DEMULTIPLE

INPUTS			OUT	
ENABLE	SELECT			
G	B	A	Y0	Y1
H	X	X	H	H
L	L	L	L	H
L	L	H	H	L
L	H	L	H	H
L	H	H	H	H

H = High level, L = Low level, X = Irrelevant

SIGNETICS DECODERS/DEMULTIPLEXERS ■ 54/74S138, 54/74S139

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		54S138 54S139			74S138 74S139			UNIT
		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (Over recommended operating free-air temperature range. Unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS[1]		54S138 54S139			74S138 74S139			UNIT
				MIN	TYP[2]	MAX	MIN	TYP[2]	MAX	
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -18mA				-1.2			-1.2	V
V_{IH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OH} = -1mA	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		2.5	3.4		V
			Series 74S	2.7	3.4		2.7	3.4		
V_{IL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OL} = 20mA				0.5			0.5	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5V				1			1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7V				50			50	μA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5V				-2			-2	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current[3]	V_{CC} = MAX		-40		-100	-40		-100	mA
I_{CC}	Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, Outputs enabled and open			49	74		60	90	mA

NOTES:
1. For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
2. All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.
3. Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER[1]	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	LEVELS OF DELAY	TEST CONDITIONS	54S138, 74S138			54S139 74S139			UNIT
					MIN	TYP	MAX	MIN	TYP	MAX	
t_{PLH}	Binary select	Any	2	C_L = 15pF, R_L = 280 Ω		4.5	7		5	7.5	ns
t_{PHL}						7	10.5		6.5	10	
t_{PLH}			3			7.5	12		7	12	ns
t_{PHL}						8	12		8	12	
t_{PLH}	Enable	Any	2			5	8		5	8	ns
t_{PHL}						7	11		6.5	10	
t_{PLH}			3			7	11				ns
t_{PHL}						7	11				

NOTE:
1. t_{PLH} ≡ propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
   t_{PHL} ≡ propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output

signetics

8-INPUT DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS

S54S151
S54S251
N74S151
N74S251

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

DESCRIPTION

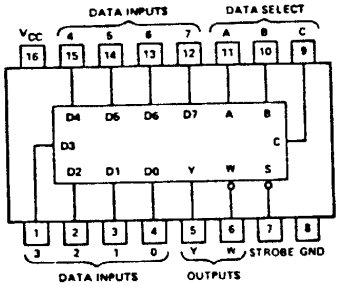
The S54S151, S54S251, N74S151, and N74S251 Schottky-clamped, high-performance, eight-input data selectors/multiplexers are designed for use in very high-speed data routing applications. These multiplexers select one of eight data sources when so directed by the binary address inputs. Both true and complementary data are presented when the strobe input goes low.

The S54S151 and N74S151 are functionally and mechanically interchangeable with the S54151 and N74151 respectively, and in most TTL systems can be utilized to upgrade the performance of existing designs as delay times are typically half that of the S54151 or N74151.

The S54S251 and N74S251 have three-state outputs which permit the outputs to be connected to a common bus. When the strobe input is high, both outputs are in a high-impedance state in which both the upper and lower transistors of each totem-pole output are off, and the output can neither drive nor load the bus. When the strobe is low, the outputs are activated and operate as standard TTL totem-pole outputs.

Typical power dissipation is 225 milliwatts for the S54S151 or N74S151 and 275 milliwatts for the S54S251 and N74S251, or approximately 14 and 17 milliwatts respectively per equivalent gate. The S54S151 and S54S251 are characterized for operation over the full military temperature range of −55°C to 125°C; the N74S151 and N74S251 are characterized for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

PIN CONFIGURATION



Positive Logic: See function table.

FEATURES

- S54S151/N74S151 INTERCHANGEABLE WITH S54151/N74151 IN MOST SYSTEMS
- SCHOTTKY CLAMPED FOR SIGNIFICANT REDUCTION IN DELAY TIMES . . . 4.5 ns TYPICAL, DATA INPUT TO W OUTPUT
- HIGH-SPEED SELECTION FOR ONE OF EIGHT DATA SOURCES
- PERMITS MULTIPLEXING FROM N LINES TO ONE LINE
- S54S251 AND N74S251 HAVE TRI-STATE OUTPUTS
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH SERIES 54/74 AND OTHER TTL MSI CIRCUITS

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER	S54S151			S54S251			N74S151			N74S251			UNIT
	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	
Supply voltage, V_{CC}	4.5	5	5.5	4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	4.75	5	5.25	V
Normalized fan-out from each output, N (at a low logic level)			10			10			10			10	
High-level output current, I_{OH}			−1			−2			−1			−6.5	mA
Operating free-air temperature, T_A	−55		125	−55		125	0		70	0		70	°C

AL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		S54S151 N74S151 MIN	TYP**	MAX	S54S251 N74S251 MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
High-level input voltage			2			2			V
Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA				−1.2			−1.2	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = MAX	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		2.4	3.2		V
		Series 74S	2.7	3.4		2.4	3.2		
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA				0.5			0.5	V
Off-state (high-impedance-state) output current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 2.7 V							50	µA
	V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 0.4 V							−50	
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1			1	mA
High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V				50			50	µA
Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V				−2			−2	mA
Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	−40		−100	mA
Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, All inputs at 4.5 V, All outputs open			45	70		55	85	mA

itions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the e device type.
l values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.

G CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

ETER	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	S54S151, N74S151 MIN	TYP	MAX	S54S251, N74S251 MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
H	A, B, or C (4 levels)	Y	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 1		12	18		12	18	ns
					12	18		13	19.5	
H	A, B, or C (3 levels)	W			10	15		10	15	ns
					9	13.5		9	13.5	
H	Any D	Y			8	12		8	12	ns
					8	12		8	12	
H	Any D	W			4.5	7		4.5	7	ns
					4.5	7		4.5	7	
H	Strobe	Y			11	16.5				ns
					12	18				
H	Strobe	W			9	13				ns
					8.5	12				
	Strobe	Y	C_L = 50 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 1					13	19.5	ns
								14	21	
	Strobe	W						13	19.5	ns
								14	21	
	Strobe	Y	C_L = 5 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 1					6.5	8.5	ns
								9	14	
	Strobe	W						5.5	8.5	ns
								9	14	

ropagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
ropagation delay time, high-to-low-level output
utput enable time to h level
utput enable time to level
utput disable time from high level

NCTION TABLE

INPUTS											OUTPUTS		
SELECT			STROBE	DATA							S54S151,	N74S151	S54S251,
C	B	A	S	D0	D1	D2	D3	D4	D5	D6	D7	Y	W	Y
X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	Z
L	L	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	L	L	L	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
L	L	H	L	X	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	L	H	L	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
L	H	L	L	X	X	L	X	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	H	L	L	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
L	H	H	L	X	X	X	L	X	X	X	X	L	H	L
L	H	H	L	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	X	H	L	H
H	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	L	X	X	X	L	H	L
H	L	L	L	X	X	X	X	H	X	X	X	H	L	H
H	L	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	L	X	X	L	H	L
H	L	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	H	X	X	H	L	H
H	H	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	X	L	H	L
H	H	L	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	X	H	L	H
H	H	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	L	H	L
H	H	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	H	H	L	H

= high logic level, L = low logic level, Z = high impedance, X = irrelevant

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DUAL 4-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS

S54S
N74S153

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

TION

ilithic Schottky-barrier-diode-clamped TTL circuits are mance multiplexers which are significantly faster than N74153. As an example, the two-gate-level delay from puts to the output is only 8.5 nanoseconds maximum to 18 or 23 nanoseconds maximum for the ed part. Overall, the guaranteed delay times for the 74S153 represent approximately a 100% improvement d TTL with only a 12% increase in maximum d-c power n. In many cases, the S54S153 or N74S153 can plug systems designed for S54153 or N74153.

selectors/multiplexers are fully compatible for use with d, high-speed, and low-power TTL and DTL circuits. clamped input represents only one normalized Series d, and full fan-out to 10 normalized Series 54S/74S able from each of the outputs at low logic levels. A 0 normalized Series 54S/74S loads is provided at high to facilitate connection of unused inputs to used inputs. er dissipation is 225 milliwatts.

3 is characterized for operation over the full military range of −55°C to 125°C; the N74S153 is for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

CHOTTKY-BARRIER-DIODE CLAMPING FOR VERY FEEDS

S MULTIPLEXING FROM N LINES TO 1 LINE

IN ASSIGNMENTS AS S54153 AND N74153

(ENABLE) LINE PROVIDED FOR CASCADING (N O n LINES)

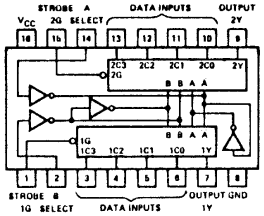
L AVERAGE PROPAGATION DELAY TIMES:
A INPUT TO OUTPUT (2 GATE LEVELS) 6 ns
BE INPUT TO OUPUT (3 GATE LEVELS) 9.5 ns
CT INPUT TO OUTPUT (4 GATE LEVELS) 12 ns

AN-OUT LOW-IMPEDANCE TOTEM-POLE OUTPUTS

COMPATIBLE WITH MOST TTL AND DTL CIRCUITS

PIN CONFIGURATION

J OR N DUAL-IN-LINE
OR W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)



LOGIC: SEE FUNCTION TABLE

FUNCTION TABLE

SELECT INPUTS		DATA INPUTS				STROBE	OUTPUT
B	A	C0	C1	C2	C3	G	Y
X	X	X	X	X	X	H	L
L	L	L	X	X	X	L	L
L	L	H	X	X	X	L	H
L	H	X	L	X	X	L	L
L	H	X	H	X	X	L	H
H	L	X	X	L	X	L	L
H	L	X	X	H	X	L	H
H	H	X	X	X	L	L	L
H	H	X	X	X	H	L	H

Address inputs A and B are common to both sections.
H = High level, L = Low level, X = Irrelevant

MMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S153 MIN	S54S153 NOM	S54S153 MAX	N74S153 MIN	N74S153 NOM	N74S153 MAX
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20
	Low logic level			10			10
Operating free-air temperature range, T_A		−55		125	0		70

TRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage				2		
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage						0.8
V_I	Input clamp Voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18 mA				−1.2
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V,	I_{OH} = −1 mA	Series 54S	2.5	3.4	
				Series 74S	2.7	3.4	
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V,	I_{OL} = 20 mA				0.5
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5 V				1
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7 V				50
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5 V				−2
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX			−40		−100
I_{CCL}	Supply current, low level output	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 1			45	70

r conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the plicable device type.
typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
more than one output should be shorted at a time.
OTE: 1: I_{CCL} is measured with the outputs open and all inputs grounded.

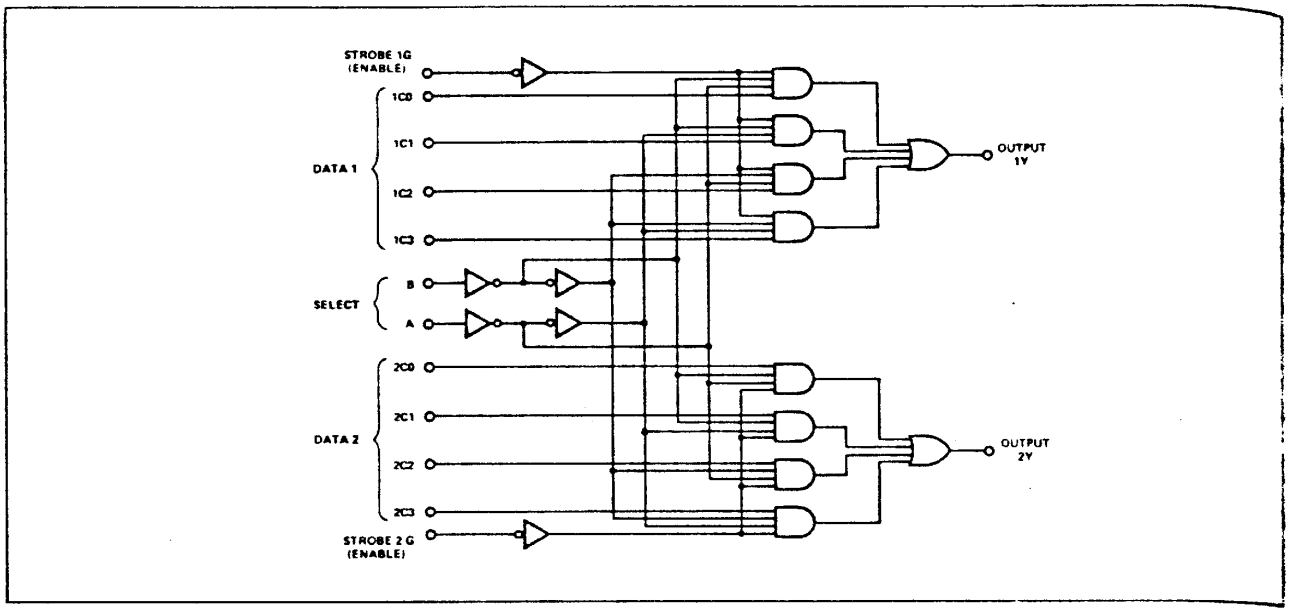
CHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

PARAMETER	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNI
t_{PLH}	Data	Y	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 2		6	9	ns
t_{PHL}	Data	Y			6	9	ns
t_{PLH}	Select	Y			11.5	18	ns
t_{PHL}	Select	Y			12	18	ns
t_{PLH}	Strobe	Y			10	15	ns
t_{PHL}	Strobe	Y			9	13.5	ns

= Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output.
= Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output.
E 2: Load circuit and test waveforms are shown on page 2-293

SIGNETICS DUAL 4-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS ■ S54S153, N74S153

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



TEST TABLE FOR NOTE 2

INPUTS							OUTPUT Y WAVEFORM
B	A	C0	C1	C2	C3	G	
GND	GND	INPUT	X	X	X	GND	A
GND	4.5 V	X	INPUT	X	X	GND	A
4.5 V	GND	X	X	INPUT	X	GND	A
4.5 V	4.5 V	X	X	X	INPUT	GND	A
GND	INPUT	GND	4.5 V	X	X	GND	A
INPUT	GND	GND	X	4.5 V	X	GND	A
GND	GND	4.5 V	X	X	X	INPUT	B

X = Irrelevant A=IN-PHASE OUTPUT
B=OUT-OF-PHASE

SYNCHRONOUS 4-BIT COUNTER

S54160 N7
S54161 N74161
S54162 N74162
S54163 N74163

S54160–B,F,W • S54161–B,F,W • S54162–B,F,W • S54163–B,F,W
N74160–B,F • N74161–B,F • N74162–B,F • N74163–B,F

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

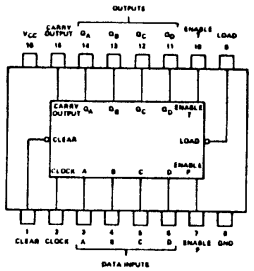
DESCRIPTION

...chronous, presettable counters feature an internal carry ...d for application in high-speed counting schemes. The S54162, N74160, and N74162 are decade counters and the S54163, N74161, and N74163 are 4-bit binary counters. ...ous operation is provided by having all flip-flops cl...cked ...ously so that the outputs change coincident with each ...n so instructed by the count-enable inputs and interl...l. ...his mode of operation eliminates the output counting ...hich are normally associated with asynchronous (ripple ...unters. A buffered clock input triggers the four J-K master-...flops on the rising (positive-going) edge of the clock input ...

...s are diode-clamped to minimize transmission-line effects, ...mplifying system design. A full fan-out to ten normalized ...74 loads is available from each of the outputs in the low-... A fan-out to 20 normalized Series 54/74 loads is provided ...gh-level state to facilitate connection of unused inputs ...r dissipation is typically 325 milliwatts.

PIN CONFIGURATION

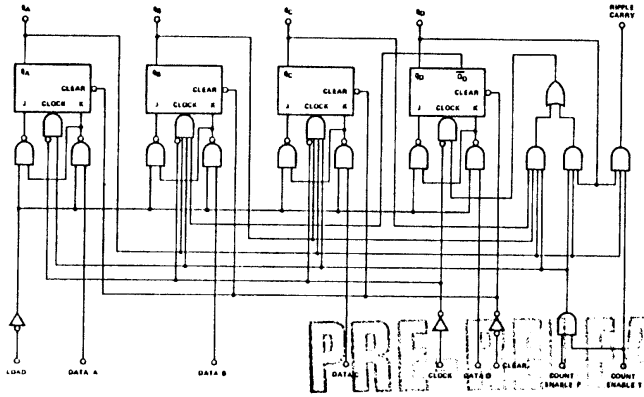
B,F,W PACKAGE



LOGIC DIAGRAM

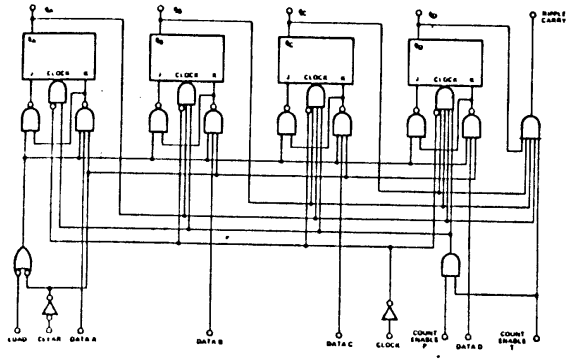
S54160/N74160 SYNCHRONOUS DECADE COUNTERS

(S54162/N74162 synchronous decade counters are similar; however the clear is synchronous as shown for the S54163/N74163 binary counters).



S54163/N74163 SYNCHRONOUS BINARY COUNTERS

S54161/N74161 synchronous binary counters are similar; however the clear is asynchronous as shown for the S54160/N74160 decade counters).



RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54160, S54161 S54162, S54163			N74160, N74161 N74162, N74163		
		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX
Supply Voltage V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
Normalized Fan-Out from each Output, N:	High logic level			20			20
	Low logic level			10			10
Input Clock Frequency, f_{clock}		0		25	0		25
Width of Clock Pulse, $t_{w(clock)}$		25			25		
Width of Clear Pulse, $t_{w(clear)}$		20			20		
Setup Time, t_{setup}:	Data Inputs, A,B,C,D	15			15		
	Enable P	20			20		
	Load	25			25		
	Clear	20			20		
Hold Time at any Input, t_{hold}		0			0		
Operating Free-Air Temperature, T_A		-55	25	125	0	25	70

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise specified)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		S54160,S54161 S54162,S54163			N74160,N74161 N74162,N74163			UN
				MIN	TYP**	MAX	MIN	TYP**	MAX	
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2			2			
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,				0.8			0.8	
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	I_I = -12mA			-1.5			-1.5	
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OH} = -800μA	2.4			2.4			
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OL} = 16mA			0.4			0.4	
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1			1	m
I_{IH}	High-level input current: Clock or enable T	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.4V			80			80	μ
	Other inputs					40			40	μ
I_{IL}	Low-level input current: Clock or enable T	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.4V			-3.2			-3.2	m
	Other inputs					-1.6			-1.6	m
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX		-20		-57	-18		-57	m
I_{CC}	Supply current, all outputs high	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 3		50			50		m

Signetics

HEX QUADRUPLE D-TYPE FLIP-FLOPS WITH CLEAR

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

S54S174
S54S175
N74S174
N74S175

DESCRIPTION

[illegible] high performance monolithic, positive-edge-triggered flip-flops utilizing Schottky TTL technology to implement D-type flip-flop logic. All have a direct clear input, and the S54S175 and [illegible] feature complementary outputs from each flip-flop. Pin [illegible] for these Schottky flip-flops are identical to the [illegible] TTL versions meaning that these Schottky versions can be [illegible] to upgrade existing system performance in most cases.

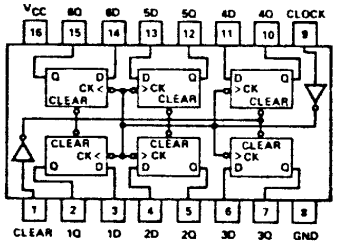
[illegible] of the D inputs meeting the setup time requirements is [illegible] to the Q outputs on the positive-going edge of the clock [illegible]. When the clock input is at either the high or low level, the D [illegible] signal has no effect at the output.

FEATURES

- FULL SCHOTTKY CLAMPING TO ACHIEVE TYPICAL MAXIMUM TOGGLE RATES OF 110 MHz
- FUNCTIONALLY AND MECHANICALLY IDENTICAL TO THE SERIES 54/74 COUNTERPARTS AND CAN BE USED TO UPGRADE EXISTING SYSTEMS WITH SIGNIFICANT IMPROVEMENT IN SPEED
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH OTHER TTL CIRCUITS
- [illegible]S174 AND S54S175 OPERATE OVER FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE OF −55°C TO 125°C
- FOR USE IN HIGH-PERFORMANCE:
  - BUFFER STORAGE REGISTERS
  - SHIFT REGISTERS
  - COUNTERS
  - PATTERN GENERATORS

PIN CONFIGURATION

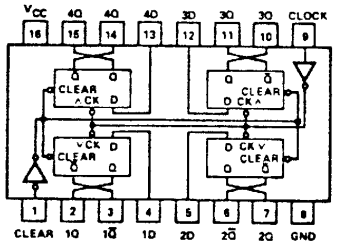
S54S174, N74S174



Positive Logic: See function table

PIN CONFIGURATION

S54S175, N74S175



Positive Logic: See function table

FUNCTION TABLE (EACH FLIP-FLOP)

INPUTS			OUTPUTS	
CLEAR	CLOCK	D	Q	Q̄ †
L	X	X	L	H
H	↑	H	H	L
H	↑	L	L	H
H	L	X	Q_0	$\bar{Q}_0$

- H = High level (steady state)
- L = Low level (steady state)
- X = Irrelevant
- ↑ = Transition from low to high level
- † = The level of Q before the indicated steady-state input conditions were established
- S54S175 and N74S175 only

…MENDED OPERA… …NDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S174, S54S175 MIN	NOM	MAX	N74S174, N74S175 MIN	NOM	MAX	UNIT
…ply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
…malized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			20			20	
	Low logic level			10			10	
…ut clock frequency, f_{clock}		0		75	0		75	MHz
…th of clock or clear pulse, t_w		12			12			ns
…p time, t_{setup}	Data input	8			8			ns
	Clear inactive-state	15			15			
…hold time, t_{hold}		2			2			ns
…rating free-air temperature, T_A		−55		125	0		70	°C

…ICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*			MIN	TYP**	MAX	UNIT
High-level input voltage				2			V
Low-level input voltage						0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18 mA				−1.2	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V,	V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OH} = −1 mA	Series 54S	2.5	3.4		V
			Series 74S	2.7	3.4		
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8 V,	V_{IH} = 2 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA				0.5	V
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5 V				1	mA
High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.7 V				50	µA
Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.5 V				−2	mA
Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX			−40		−100	mA
Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 1	S54S174, N74S174		90		mA
			S54S175, N74S175		60		

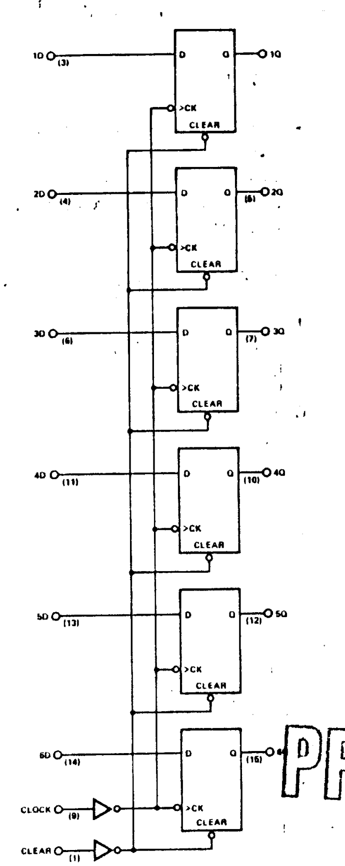
…nditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the …able device type.
…ical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
…re than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of the short-circuit should not exceed one second.
With all outputs open and 4.5 V applied to all data and clear inputs, I_{CC} is measured after a momentary ground, then 4.5 V, …is applied to clock.

…ING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C, N = 10

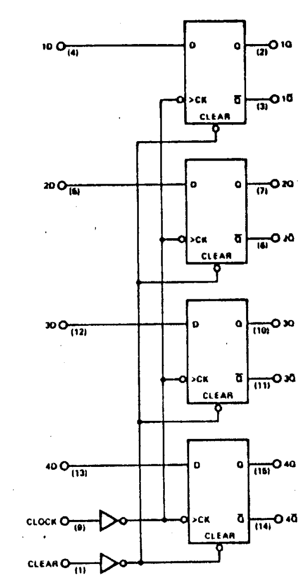
PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Maximum input clock frequency	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 2	75	110		MHz
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level $\overline{Q}$ output from clear (S54S175, N74S175 only)			13		ns
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level Q output from clear			13		ns
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output from clock			9		ns
Propagation time, high-to-low-level output from clock			11		ns

…CTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAMS

S54S174, N74S174



S54S175, N74S175



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

Dynamic input activated by a transition from a high level to a low level.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS

4-BIT BIDIRECTIONAL UNIVERSAL SHIFT REGISTERS

S54S194
N74S194

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

...ION

...rformance bidirectional shift registers are functionally ...ally identical to the N54194 and S74194, however, ...l shift frequency of 110 megahertz the Schottky- ...ons can be used in very high speed systems, or can be ...r the N54194/S74194 to upgrade the performance of ... systems. The universal shift register has four distinct ...ration, namely:

	MODE CONTROL	
	S1	S0
...dside) Load	H	H
...n the direction Q_A toward Q_D)	L	H
...the direction Q_D toward Q_A)	H	L
...ite) data	L	L

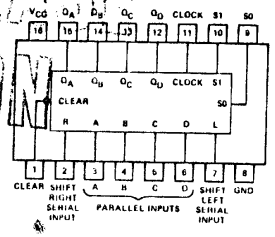
...oad mode, data is loaded into the associated flip-flop ...the outputs after the positive transition of the clock ...loading, serial data flow is inhibited. Shift right is ...chronously with the rising edge of the clock pulse ...and S1 is low. Serial data for this mode is entered at ...ata input. When S0 is low and S1 is high, data shifts ...ly and new data is entered at the shift-left serial ...circulated when both mode control inputs are low. ...bility the mode controls can be changed independ-...

...hift registers are compatible with most other TTL ...amilies. All inputs are buffered to lower the drive ...one normalized Series 54S/74S load, and input ...minimize switching transients to simplify system ...equivalent of 46 gates on the monolithic chip, ...sipation is less than 10 milliwatts per equivalent ...

...haracterized fo... ...ation over the full military ...the S74S194 is characterized ...of −55°C to 12...

PIN CONFIGURATION

J OR B DUAL IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)



Positive Logic: See description

FEATURES

- SCHOTTKY-CLAMPED TO ACHIEVE TYPICAL MAXIMUM SHIFT FREQUENCY OF 110 MHz
- FUNCTIONALLY AND MECHANICALLY IDENTICAL TO N54194, S74194 AND CAN BE USED TO UPGRADE EXISTING SYSTEMS WITH SIGNIFICANT IMPROVEMENT IN SPEED
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH MOST OTHER TTL AND DTL CIRCUITS
- N54S194 OPERATES OVER FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE OF −55°C TO 125°C
- FOR USE IN HIGH-PERFORMANCE: ACCUMULATORS/PROCESSORS, SERIAL-TO-PARALLEL AND

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER			54S194 MIN	54S194 NOM	54S194 MAX	74S194 MIN	74S194 NOM	74S194 MAX
Supply voltage, V_{CC}			4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25
...h-level output current, I_{OH}					−1			−1
...w-level output current, I_{OL}					20			20
...ock frequency, f_{clock}			0		70	0		70
...dth of clock pulse, $t_{w(clock)}$			7			7		
...dth of clear pulse, $t_{w(clear)}$			12			12		
...up time, t_{setup}	PA	Mode control	8			8		
		Serial and parallel data	5			5		
		Clear inactive-state	9			9		
...old time at any input, t_{hold}			3			3		
...ating free-air temperature, T_A			−55		125	0		70

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS over recommended operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*		54S194 MIN	54S194 TYP**	54S194 MAX	74S194 MIN	74S194 TYP**	74S194 MAX
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage			2			2		
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage					0.8			0.8
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN,	I_I = −18mA			−1.5			−1.5
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OH} = −1mA	2.5	3.4		2.7	3.4	
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IL} = 0.8V,	V_{IH} = 2V, I_{OL} = 20mA			0.5			0.5
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 5.5V			1			
I_{IH}	High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 2.4V			50			50
I_{IL}	Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX,	V_I = 0.4V			−2			−2
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX		−40		−100	−40		−100
I_{CC}	Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX,	See Note 2		85	135		85	135
		V_{CC} = MAX, T_A = 125°C, See Note 2	SN54S194N SN54S194W			99 110			

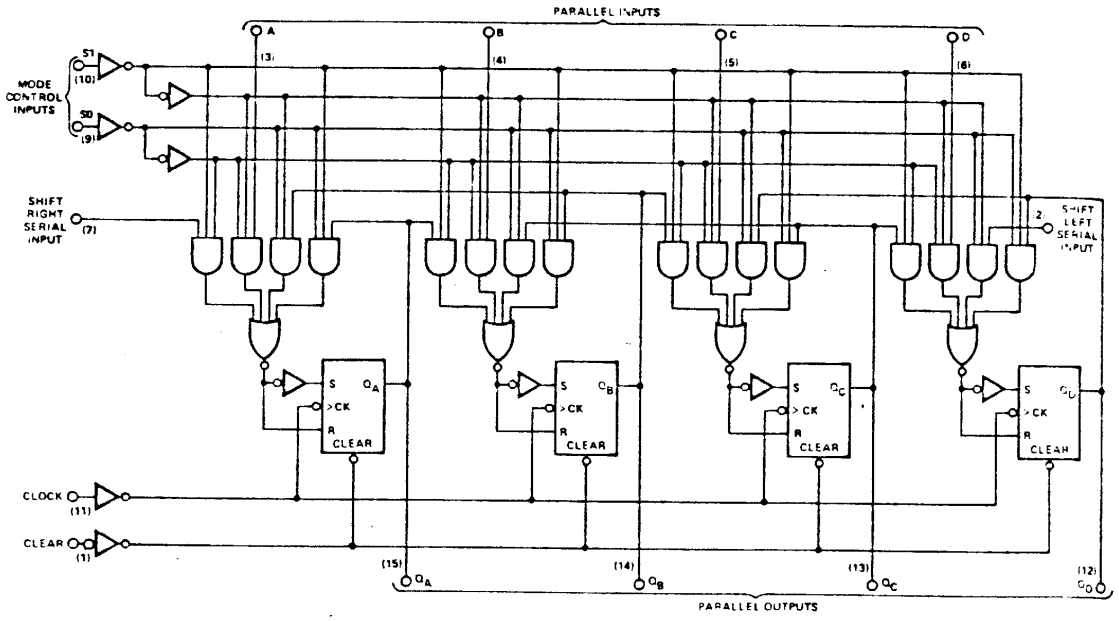
* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions.
** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.
‡ Not more than one output should be shorted at a time, and duration of short-circuit should not exceed one second.
NOTE 2
With all outputs open, inputs A through D grounded, and 4.5V applied to S0, S1, clear, and the serial inputs, I_{CC} is tested momentarily GND, then 4.5V, applied to clock.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C

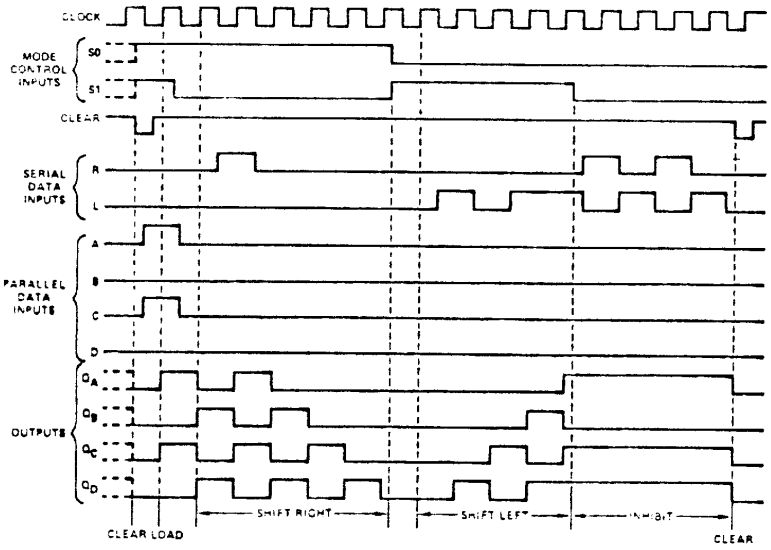
PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX
f_{max}	Maximum clock frequency	C_L = 15pF, R_L = 280Ω, See Figure 1	70	105	
t_{PHL}	Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output from clear			12.5	18
t_{PLH}	Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output from clock		4	8	1

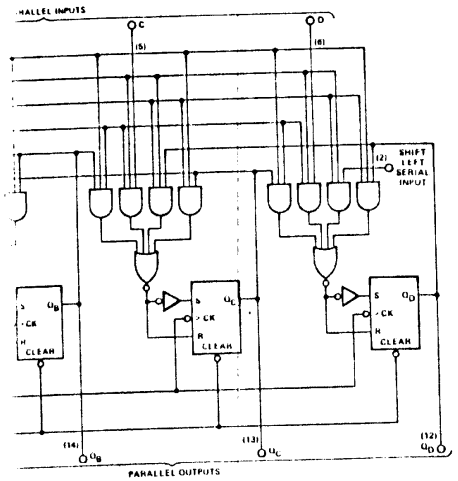
SIGNETICS 4-BIT BIDIRECTIONAL UNIVERSAL SHIFT REGISTERS ■ S54S194, N74S194

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



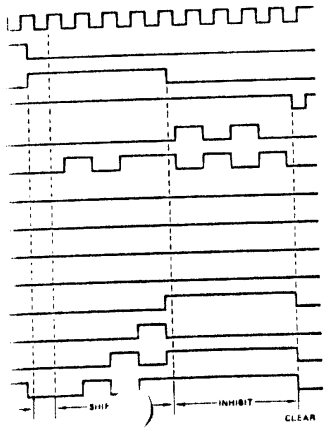
TYPICAL CLEAR, LOAD, RIGH-SHIFT, INHIBIT, AND CLEAR SEQUENCES





high level to a low level.

UENCES



SIGNETICS

4-BIT PARALLEL-ACCESS SHIFT REGISTERS

S54S195
N74S195

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

SCRIPTION

high-performance 4-bit registers feature a 110-megahertz maximum shift-frequency which makes them particularly active for very high-speed data processing systems. As the pin arrangements are the same as the S54195 and N74195, existing systems can in most cases be upgraded merely by utilizing the Schottky-clamped versions. The registers have two modes of operation:

Parallel (Broadside) Load
Shift (In the direction Q_A toward Q_D)

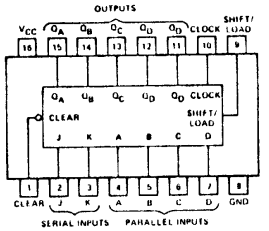
loading is accomplished by applying the four bits of data and taking the shift/load control input low. The data is loaded into the associated flip-flop and appears at the outputs after the positive transition of the clock input. During loading, serial data flow is inhibited.

is accomplished synchronously when the shift/load control is high. Serial data for this mode is entered at the J-$\overline{K}$ inputs. These inputs permit the first stage to perform as a J-$\overline{K}$, D-, or T-type flip-flop as shown in the function table.

These shift registers are fully compatible with other TTL families. All inputs are buffered to lower the drive requirements to one normalized Series 54S/74S load, including the clock input. The S54S195 is characterized for operation over the full military temperature range of −55°C to 125°C; the N74S195 is characterized for operation from 0°C to 70°C.

PIN CONFIGURATION

J OR B DUAL-IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)



Positive Logic. See function table

FEATURES

- SCHOTTKY-CLAMPED TO ACHIEVE TYPICAL M SHIFT FREQUENCY OF 110 MHz
- FUNCTIONALLY AND MECHANICALLY IDENT N54195, S74195 AND CAN BE USED TO UPGRAI ING DESIGNS WITH SIGNIFICANT IMPROVE SPEED
- FULLY COMPATIBLE WITH OTHER TTL CIRCUI
- N54S195 OPERATES OVER FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE OF −55°C TO 125°C
- USE IN HIGH-PERFORMANCE:
  ACCUMULATORS/PROCESSORS
  SERIAL-TO-PARALLEL,
  PARALLEL-TO-SERIAL CONVERTERS

FUNCTION TABLE

INPUTS									OUTPUTS				
CLEAR	SHIFT/LOAD	CLOCK	SERIAL		PARALLEL				Q_A	Q_B	Q_C	Q_D	$\overline{Q}_D$
			J	$\overline{K}$	A	B	C	D					
L	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	L	L	L	L	H
H	L	↑	X	X	A	B	C	D	A	B	C	D	$\overline{D}$
H	H	L	X	X	X	X	X	X	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	Q_{D0}	$\overline{Q}_{D0}$
H	H	↑	L	H	X	X	X	X	Q_{A0}	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$
H	H	↑	L	L	X	X	X	X	L	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$
H	H	↑	H	H	X	X	X	X	H	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{C0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$
H	H	↑	H	L	X	X	X	X	Q_{A0}	Q_{A0}	Q_{B0}	Q_{B0}	$\overline{Q}_{C0}$

- = High level (steady state)
- = Low level (steady state)
- = Irrelevant (any input, including tran ...)
- = Transition from low to high level

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

74LS257

NDED OPERA IDITIONS

PARAMETER		54195 MIN	54195 NOM	54195 MAX	74195 MIN	74195 NOM	74195 MAX	UNIT
voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
d output current, I_{OH}				-800			-800	µA
l output current, I_{OL}				16			16	mA
quency, f_{clock}		0		30	0		30	MHz
clock input pulse, $t_{w(clock)}$		16			16			ns
clear input pulse, $t_{w(clear)}$		12			12			ns
ne, t_{setup} (see Figure 1)	Shift/load	25			25			ns
	Serial and parallel data	15			15			
	Clear inactive-state	25			25			
d release time, $t_{release}$ (see Figure 1)				10			10	ns
d parallel data hold time, t_{hold} (see Figure 1)		0			0			ns
g free-air temperature, T_A		-55		125	0		70	°C

AL CHARACTERISTICS over recommended operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS*		MIN	TYP†	MAX	UNIT
High-level input voltage			2			V
Low-level input voltage					0.8	V
Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = -12mA				-1.5	V
High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OH} = -800µA		2.4	3.4		V
Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2V, V_{IL} = 0.8V, I_{OL} = mA			0.2	0.4	V
Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5				1	mA
High-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.				40	µA
Low-level input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.				-1.6	mA
Short-circuit output current‡	V_{CC} = MAX	54195	-20		-57	mA
		74195	-18		-57	
Supply current	V_{CC} = MAX, See Not			39	63	mA

conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified und ommended operating conditions for the applicable e type.

ypical values are at V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C.

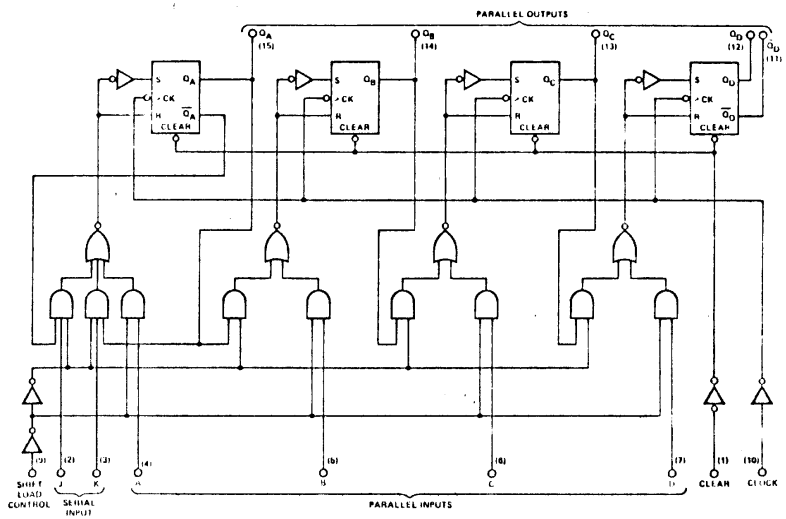
more than one output should be shorted at a time.

all outputs open, shift/load grounded, and 4.5V applied to the J, $\overline{K}$, and d puts, I_{CC} is measured by applying a momentary nd, followed by 4.5V, to clear and then applying a momentary ground, follow 4.5V, to clock.

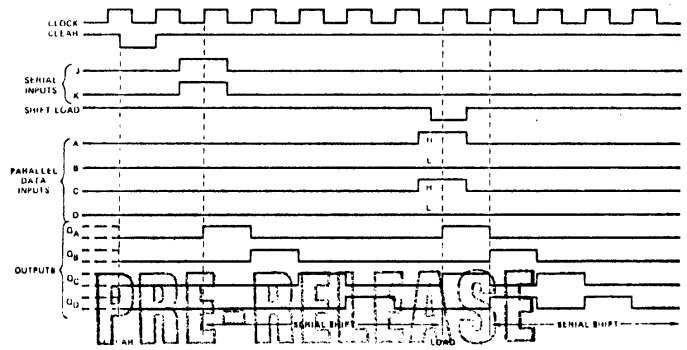
G CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C

PARAMETER	TEST CO ONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
Maximum clock frequency		30	39		MHz
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output from clear	C_L =		19	30	ns
Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output from clock	R_L =	6	14	22	ns
Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output from clock		7	17	26	

CTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAM



TYPICAL CLEAR, SHIFT, AND LOAD SEQUENCES



QUADRUPLE 2-LINE TO 1-LINE DATA SELECTORS/MULTIPLEXERS

S54S25...
S54S25...
N74S25...
N74S25...

DIGITAL 54/74 TTL SERIES

...IPTION

...Schottky-clamped high-performance multiplexers feature ...ate outputs which can interface directly with and drive data ... bus-organized systems. With all but one of the common ... disabled (at a high impedance state) the low impedance of ...le enabled output will drive the bus line to a high or low ...el.

...ree-state output feature means that n-bit (paralleled) data ...s with up to 258 sources can be implemented for data buses. ...permits the use of standard TTL registers for data retention ...out the system.

...ical propagation delay times from data input to output ... only 4.8 nanoseconds for the S54S257, N74S157 and only ...econds for the S54S258, N74S258. Also, to minimize the ...ty that two outputs will attempt to take a common bus to ... logic levels, the output-enable circuitry is designed such ... output disable times are shorter than the output enable

...URES

- ...ISTATE OUTPUTS INTERFACE DIRECTLY WITH ...STEM BUS
- ...HOTTKY-CLAMPED FOR SIGNIFICANT IMPROVEMENT ...A-C PERFORMANCE
- ...LLY COMPATIBLE WITH MOST TTL FUNCTIONS IN-...UDING MSI
- ...ME PIN ASSIGNMENTS AS S54S157, N74S157 AND ...S158, N74S158
- ...OVIDES BUS INTERFACE FROM MULTIPLE SOURCES ...HIGH-PERFORMANCE SYSTEMS
- ...S257 AND N54S258 ARE GUARANTEED FOR OPERA-...N OVER THE FULL MILITARY TEMPERATURE RANGE ... 55°C TO 125°C

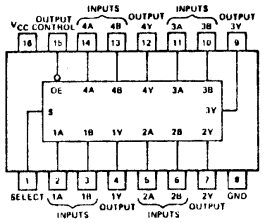
...ION TABLE

INPUTS				OUTPUT Y	
...UTPUT ...UTROL	SELECT	A	B	N54S257 S74S257	N54S258 S74S258
H	X	X	X	Z	Z
L	L	L	X	L	H
L	L	H	X	H	L
L	H	X	L	L	H
L	H	X	H	H	L

PIN CONFIGURATION

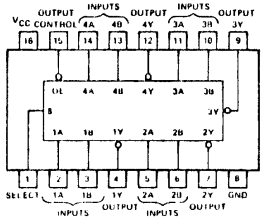
J OR B DUAL IN-LINE OR W FLAT PACKAGE
(TOP VIEW)

S54S257, N74S257



Positive Logic: See function table

S54S258, N74S258



Positive Logic: See function table

RECOMMENDED OPERATING CONDITIONS

PARAMETER		S54S257, S54S258 MIN	NOM	MAX	N74S257, N74S258 MIN	NOM	MA
Supply voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.2
Normalized fan-out from each output, N	High logic level			40			1...
	Low logic level			10			...
High-level output current, I_{OH}				2			6...
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		−55		125	0		7...

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS (over recommended operating free-air temperature range unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER		TEST CONDITIONS*	S54S257, S54S258 MIN	TYP**	MAX	N74S257, N7... MIN	TYP**
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage		2			2	
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage				0.8		
V_I	Input clamp voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −18 mA			−1.2		
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, Series 54S; V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = MAX, Series 74S	2.5	3.4		2.5	3.4
			2.4	3.2		2.4	3.2
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = 20 mA			0.5		
$I_{O(off)}$	Off-state (high-impedance state) output current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 2.4 V			50		
		V_{CC} = MAX, V_O = 0.4 V			−50		
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V			1		
I_{IH}	High-level input current: S input	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.7 V			100		
	Any other				50		
I_{IL}	Low-level input current: S input	V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.5 V			−4		
	Any other				−2		
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current†	V_{CC} = MAX	−40		−100	−40	
I_{CC}	Supply current: All outputs high	V_{CC} = MAX, See Note 1		44	68		36
	All outputs low			60	93		52
	All outputs off			64	99		56

* For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for th... applicable device type.
** All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
† Not more than one output should be shorted at a time and duration of the short-circuit test should not exceed one second.
NOTE 1: I_{CC} is measured with all outputs open and all possible inputs grounded while achieving the stated output conditions.

SWITCHING CHARACTERISTICS, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

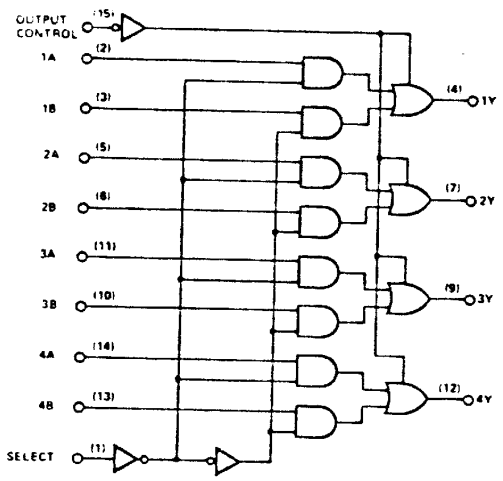
PARAMETER	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	S54S257, N74S257 MIN	TYP	MAX	S54S258, N74S258 MIN	TYP	MAX
t_{PLH}	Data	Any	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 280 Ω, See Note 4		5	7.5		4	6
t_{PHL}					4.5	6.5		4	6
t_{PLH}	Select	Any			8.5			8	12
t_{PHL}					8.5			7.5	12
t_{ZH}	Output Control	Any			13	19.5		13	19.5
t_{ZL}					14	21		14	21
t_{HZ}	Output Control	Any	C_L = 5 pF See Note 2		5.5	8.5		5.5	8.5
t_{LZ}					9	14		9	14

t_{PLH} = Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
t_{PHL} = Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output
t_{ZH} = Output enable time to high level
t_{ZL} = Output enable time to low level
t_{HZ} = Output disable time from high level
t_{LZ} = Output disable time from low level
NOTE 2: Load circuit and waveforms are shown on page 2-293

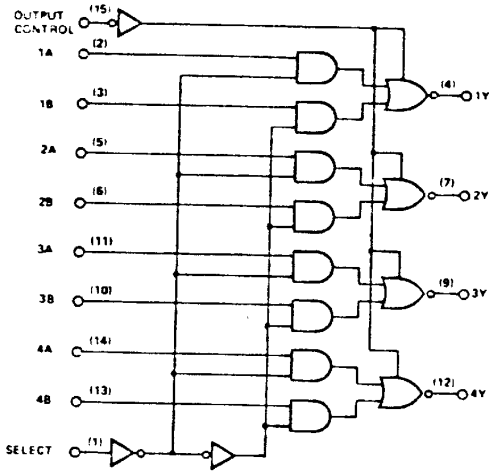
SIGNETICS QUADRUPLE 2-LINE TO 1-LINE ■ S54S257, S54S258, N74S257, N74S258

FUNCTIONAL BLOCK DIAGRAMS

S54S257, N74S257



S54S258, N74S258



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

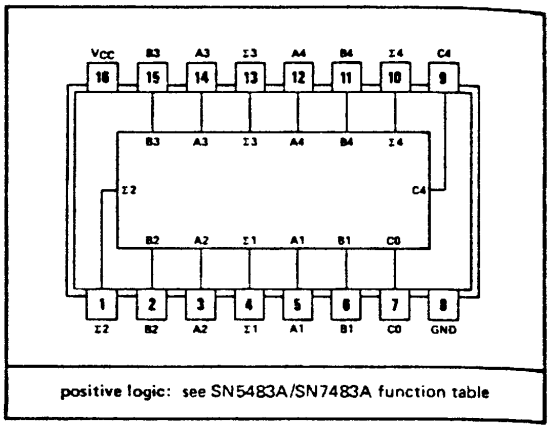
TTL
MSI

TYPES SN54283, SN74283
4-BIT BINARY FULL ADDERS WITH FAST CARRY

BULLETIN NO. DL-S 7211832, DECEMBER 1972

- Full-Carry Look-Ahead across the Four Bits
- Typical Add or Subtract Times:
  23 ns (Two 8-bit Words)
  43 ns (Two 16-Bit Words)
- Systems Achieve Partial Look-Ahead Performance with the Economy of Ripple Carry
- Supply Voltage and Ground on Corner Pins to Simplify P-C Board Layout

J OR N DUAL-IN-LINE OR
W FLAT PACKAGE (TOP VIEW)



positive logic: see SN5483A/SN7483A function table

description

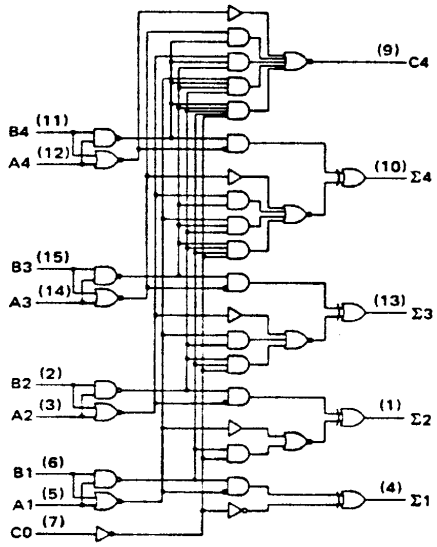
The SN54283 and SN74283 adders are electrically and functionally identical to the SN5483A and SN7483A, respectively. Only the arrangement of the terminals has been changed in the SN54283 and SN74283.

These improved 4-bit full adders/subtractors feature full look-ahead across four bits to generate the carry term in typically 10 nanoseconds. This capability provides the system designer with parital look-ahead performance at the economy and reduced package count of a ripple-carry implementation.

These full adders are designed so that levels of the input and output, including the carry, are in their true form. Thus the end-around carry is accomplished without the need for level inversion.

Power dissipation is typically 310 mW. Delay times through the package are 10 ns and 16 ns respectively from carry-in to carry-out and data-in to data-out. The SN54283 is characterized for operation over the full military temperature range of −55°C to 125°C. The SN74283 is characterized for 0°C to 70°C operation.

functional block diagram



function table and schematics of inputs and outputs

Same as SN5483A/SN7483A, see pages 198 and 199.

absolute maximum ratings over operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

Supply voltage, V_{CC} (see Note 1)	7 V
Input voltage	5.5 V
Interemitter voltage (see Note 2)	5.5 V
Operating free-air temperature range: SN54283	−55°C to 125°C
SN74283	0°C to 70°C
Storage temperature range	−65°C to 150°C

NOTES: 1. Voltage values, except interemitter voltage, are with respect to network ground terminal.
2. This is the voltage between two emitters of a multiple-emitter transistor. For this circuit, this rating applies between the following pairs: A1 and B1, A2 and B2, A3 and B3, A4 and B4.

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
INCORPORATED
POST OFFICE BOX 5012 • DALLAS, TEXAS 75222

recommended operating conditions

		SN54283			SN74283			UNIT
		MIN	NOM	MAX	MIN	NOM	MAX	
Supply Voltage, V_{CC}		4.5	5	5.5	4.75	5	5.25	V
High-level output current, I_{OH}	Any output except C4			−800			−800	µA
	Output C4			−400			−400	
Low-level output current, I_{OL}	Any output except C4			16			16	mA
	Output C4			8			8	
Operating free-air temperature, T_A		−55		125	0		70	°C

electrical characteristics over recommended operating free-air temperature range (unless otherwise noted)

PARAMETER			TEST CONDITIONS†		SN54283			SN74283			UNIT
					MIN	TYP‡	MAX	MIN	TYP‡	MAX	
V_{IH}	High-level input voltage				2			2			V
V_{IL}	Low-level input voltage						0.8			0.8	V
V_I	Input clamp voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, I_I = −12 mA				−1.5			−1.5	V
V_{OH}	High-level output voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OH} = MAX		2.4	3.6		2.4	3.6		V
V_{OL}	Low-level output voltage		V_{CC} = MIN, V_{IH} = 2 V, V_{IL} = 0.8 V, I_{OL} = MAX			0.2	0.4		0.2	0.4	V
I_I	Input current at maximum input voltage		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 5.5 V				1			1	mA
I_{IH}	High-level input current		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 2.4 V				40			40	µA
I_{IL}	Low-level input current		V_{CC} = MAX, V_I = 0.4 V				−1.6			−1.6	mA
I_{OS}	Short-circuit output current§	Any output except C4	V_{CC} = MAX		−20		−55	−18		−55	mA
		Output C4			−20		−70	−18		−70	
I_{CC}	Supply current		V_{CC} = MAX, Outputs open	All B low, other inputs at 4.5 V		56			56		mA
				All inputs at 4.5 V		66	99		66	110	

†For conditions shown as MIN or MAX, use the appropriate value specified under recommended operating conditions for the applicable device type.
‡All typical values are at V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C.
§Only one output should be shorted at a time.

switching characteristics, V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

PARAMETER¶	FROM (INPUT)	TO (OUTPUT)	TEST CONDITIONS	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT
t_{PLH}	C0	Any Σ	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 400 Ω, See Note 3		14	21	ns
t_{PHL}					12	21	
t_{PLH}	A_i or B_i	Σ_i			16	24	ns
t_{PHL}					16	24	
t_{PLH}	C0	C4	C_L = 15 pF, R_L = 780 Ω, See Note 3		9	14	ns
t_{PHL}					11	16	
t_{PLH}	A_i or B_i	C4			9	14	ns
t_{PHL}					11	16	

¶t_{PLH} ≡ Propagation delay time, low-to-high-level output
t_{PHL} ≡ Propagation delay time, high-to-low-level output
NOTE 3: Load circuit and voltage waveforms are shown on page 148.

PRINTED IN U.S.A

TEXAS INSTRUMENTS
INCORPORATED
POST OFFICE BOX 5012 • DALLAS, TEXAS 75222

9334
93L34

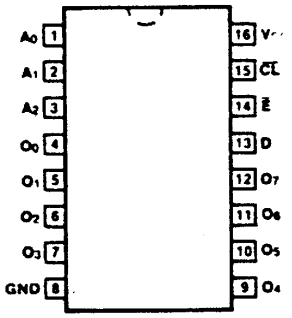
8-BIT ADDRESSABLE LATCH

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

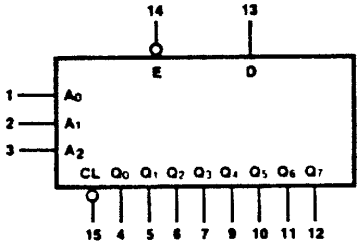
DESCRIPTION — The '34 is an 8-bit addressable latch designed for general purpose storage applications in digital systems. It is a multifunctional device capable of storing single line data in eight addressable latches, and being a one-of-eight decoder and demultiplexer with active level HIGH outputs. The device also incorporates an active LOW common clear for resetting all latches, as well as, an active LOW enable.

- SERIAL TO PARALLEL CAPABILITY
- EIGHT BITS OF STORAGE WITH OUTPUT OF EACH BIT AVAILABLE
- RANDOM (ADDRESSABLE) DATA ENTRY
- ACTIVE HIGH DEMULTIPLEXING OR DECODING CAPABILITY
- EASILY EXPANDABLE
- COMMON CONDITIONAL CLEAR

CONNECTION DIAGRAMS
PINOUT A



LOGIC SYMBOL



VCC = Pin 16
GND = Pin 8

ORDERING CODE: See Section 9

PACKAGES	PIN OUT	COMMERCIAL GRADE VCC = +5.0 V ±5%, TA = 0°C to +70°C	MILITARY GRADE VCC = +5.0 V ±10%, TA = -55°C to +125°C	PKG TYPE
Plastic DIP (P)	A	9334PC, 93L34PC		9B
Ceramic DIP (D)	A	9334DC, 93L34DC	9334DM, 93L34DM	6B
Flatpak (F)	A	9334FC, 93L34FC	9334FM, 93L34FM	4L

INPUT LOADING/FAN-OUT: See Section 3 for U.L. definitions

PIN NAMES	DESCRIPTION	93XX (U.L.) HIGH/LOW	93L (U.L.) HIGH/LOW
$A_0 - A_3$	Address Inputs	1.0/1.0	0.5/0.25
D	Data Input	1.0/1.0	0.5/0.25
$\overline{E}$	Enable Input (Active LOW)	1.5/1.5	0.75/0.38
$\overline{CL}$	Clear Input (Active LOW)	1.0/1.0	0.5/0.25
$Q_0 - Q_7$	Parallel Latch Outputs	18/6.0	10/5.0 (3.0)

34

FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION — The '34 has four modes of operation which are shown in the Mode Select Table. In the addressable latch mode, data on the data line (D) is written into the addressed latch. The addressed latch will follow the Data input with all non-addressed latches remaining in their previous states. In the memory mode, all latches remain in their previous state and are unaffected by the data or address inputs. To eliminate the possibility of entering erroneous data into the latches, the Enable should be held HIGH while the Address lines are changing. In the 1-of-8 decoding or demultiplexing mode, the addressed output will follow the state of the D input with all other outputs in the LOW state. In the clear mode all outputs are LOW and unaffected by the address and data inputs. When operating the '34 as an addressable latch, changing more than one bit of the address could impose a transient wrong address. Therefore, this should only be done while in the memory mode.

MODE SELECT TABLE

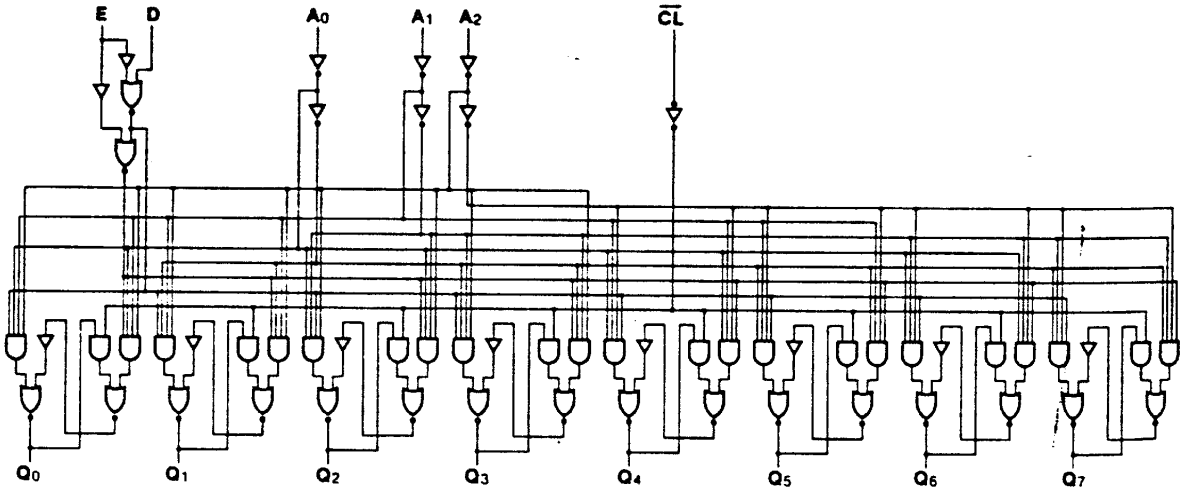
$\overline{E}$	$\overline{CL}$	MODE
L	H	Addressable Latch
H	H	Memory
L	L	Active HIGH 8-Channel Demultiplexer
H	L	Clear

TRUTH TABLE

INPUTS					OUTPUTS								MODE
$\overline{CL}$	$\overline{E}$	A_0	A_1	A_2	Q_0	Q_1	Q_2	Q_3	Q_4	Q_5	Q_6	Q_7	
L	H	X	X	X	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	Clear
L	L	L	L	L	D	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	Demultiplex
L	L	H	L	L	L	D	L	L	L	L	L	L	
L	L	L	H	L	L	L	D	L	L	L	L	L	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
L	L	H	H	H	L	L	L	L	L	L	L	D	
H	H	X	X	X	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Memory
H	L	L	L	L	D	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Addressable
H	L	H	L	L	Q_{t-1}	D	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Latch
H	L	L	H	L	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	D	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	
H	L	H	H	H	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	Q_{t-1}	D	

H = HIGH Voltage Level L = LOW Voltage Level X = Immaterial Q_{t-1} = Previous Output State

LOGIC DIAGRAM



DC CHARACTERISTICS OVER OPERATING TEMPERATURE RANGE (unless otherwise specified)

SYMBOL	PARAMETER		93XX Min	93XX Max	93L Min	93L Max	UNITS	CONDITIONS
I_{CC}	Power Supply Current	XM		86		21	mA	V_{CC} = Max
		XC		86		26		

AC CHARACTERISTICS: V_{CC} = +5.0 V, T_A = +25°C (See Section 3 for waveforms and load configurations)

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	93XX C_L = 15 pF Min	93XX C_L = 15 pF Max	93L C_L = 15 pF Min	93L C_L = 15 pF Max	UNITS	CONDITIONS
t_{PLH}	Propagation Delay $\overline{E}$ to Q_n		23		45	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-9
t_{PHL}			24		42		
t_{PLH}	Propagation Delay D to Q_n		28		65	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-5
t_{PHL}			24		45		
t_{PLH}	Propagation Delay A_n to Q_n		35		66	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-20
t_{PHL}			35		66		
t_{PHL}	Propagation Delay $\overline{CL}$ to Q_n		40		55	ns	Figs. 3-1, 3-10

AC OPERATING REQUIREMENTS: V_{CC} = +5.0 V, T_A = +25°C

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	93XX Min	93XX Max	93L Min	93L Max	UNITS	CONDITIONS
t_s (H)	Setup Time HIGH, D to $\overline{E}$	20		45		ns	Fig. 3-13
t_h (H)	Hold Time HIGH, D to $\overline{E}$	0		-5.0		ns	
	Setup Time LOW, D to $\overline{E}$	17		45		ns	
t_h (L)	Hold Time LOW, D to $\overline{E}$	0		-7.0		ns	
t_s (H)	Setup Time HIGH or LOW A_n to $\overline{E}$	5.0		10		ns	Fig. 3-21
t_s (L)		5.0		10			
t_w (L)	$\overline{E}$ Pulse Width LOW	17		26		ns	
t_w (L)	$\overline{CL}$ Pulse Width LOW			35		ns	Fig. 3-17

DESCRIPTION

The 8T26A/28 consists of four pairs of 3-State logic elements configured as Quad Bus Drivers/Receivers along with separate buffered receiver enable and driver enable lines. This single IC Quad Transceiver design distinguishes the 8T26A/28 from conventional multi-IC implementations. In addition, the 8T26/28's ultra high speed while driving heavy bus capacitance (300pF) makes these devices particularly suitable for memory systems and bidirectional data buses.

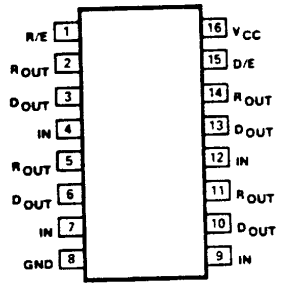
Both the Driver and Receiver gates have 3-State outputs and low-current PNP inputs 3-State outputs provide the high switching speeds of totempole TTL circuits while offering the bus capability of open collector gates. PNP inputs reduce input loading to 200μA maximum.

APPLICATIONS

- **Half-duplex data transmission**
- **Memory interface buffers**
- **Data routing in bus oriented systems**
- **High current drivers**
- **MOS/CMOS-to-TTL interface**

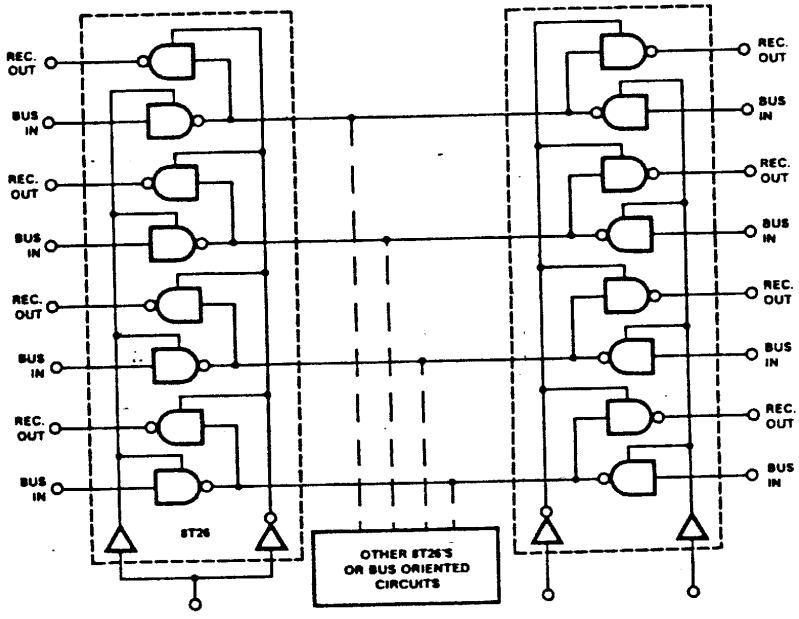
PIN CONFIGURATION

N,F PACKAGE



TYPICAL APPLICATION

BIDIRECTIONAL DATA BUS



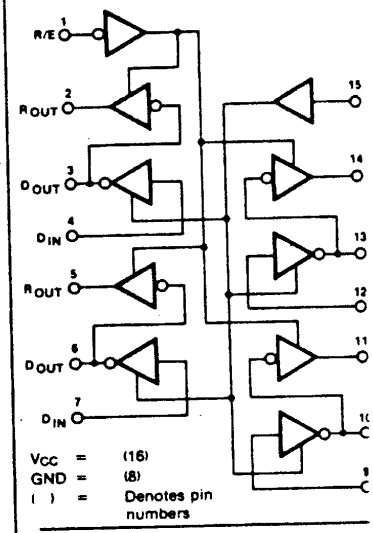
Control lines may be tied together, such that logical "1" transmit, logical "0" receive

Logical "0" = active
Logical "1" = HI-z

Logical "1" = active
Logical "0" = HI-z

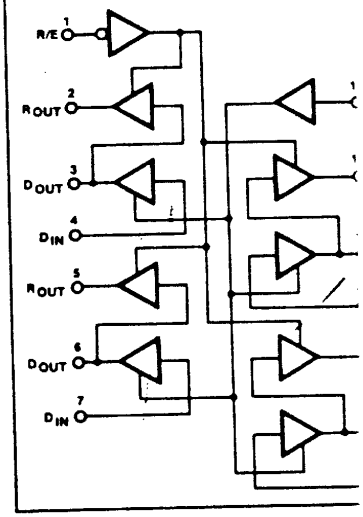
LOGIC DIAGRAM

8T26A
Inverting Output (3-State)



VCC = (16)
GND = (8)
( ) = Denotes pin numbers

8T28
Non-Inverting Output (3-State



DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	8T26A			8T28			UNIT
		Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Input voltage								
V_{IL} Low			N/A			N/A		
V_{IH} High			N/A			N/A		
V_{IC} Clamp	V_{CC} = MIN, I_{IN} = -12mA			-1.0			-1.0	V
Output voltage	V_{CC} = MIN							
V_{OL} Low								
Drive	I_{OL} = 48mA			0.5			0.5	V
Receive	I_{OL} = 20mA			0.5			0.5	V
Input current	V_{CC} = MAX, V_{IN} = 0.4V							
I_{IL} Low								
Drive (low level)				-200			-200	mA
Disabled (low level)				-25			-25	mA
Receive				-200			-200	mA

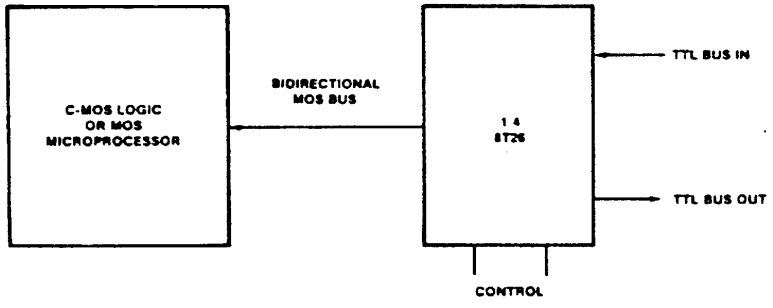
NOTE
Output sink current is supplied through a resistor to ground.

AC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

PARAMETER	TO	FROM	TEST CONDITIONS	8T26A			8T28			UNIT
				Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Propagation delay										
t_{ON}	R_{OUT}	D_{OUT}	C_L = 30pF			14			17	ns
	D_{OUT}	D_{IN}	C_L = 300pF			14			17	ns
t_{OFF}	R_{OUT}	D_{OUT}	C_L = 30pF			14			17	ns
	D_{OUT}	D_{IN}	C_L = 300pF			14			17	ns
Data enable to data output			C_L = 300pF							
t_{PZL}	0	High Z				25			28	ns
t_{PZL}	High Z	0				20			23	ns
Receive enable to receive output			C_L = 30pF							
t_{PZL}	0	High Z				20			23	ns
t_{PLZ}	High Z	0				15			18	ns

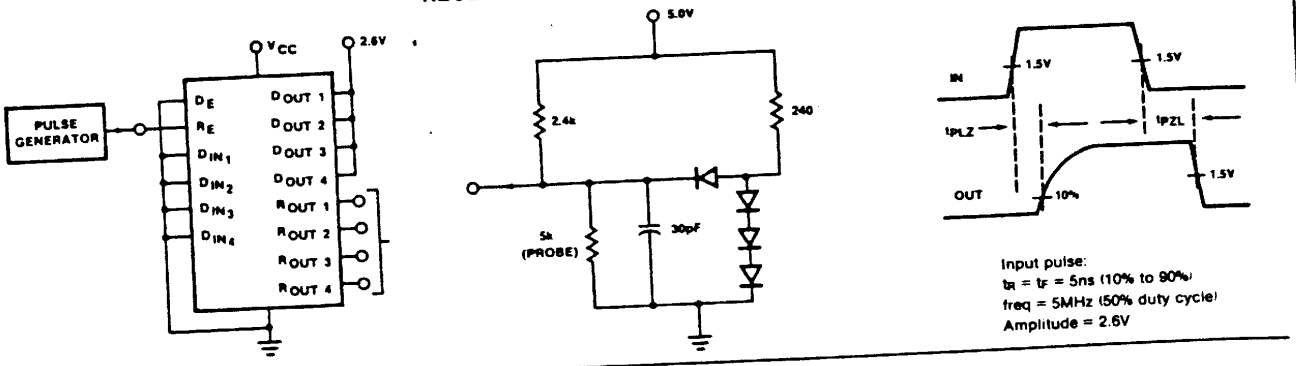
TYPICAL APPLICATION

BIDIRECTIONAL MOS
CMOS to TTL Interface

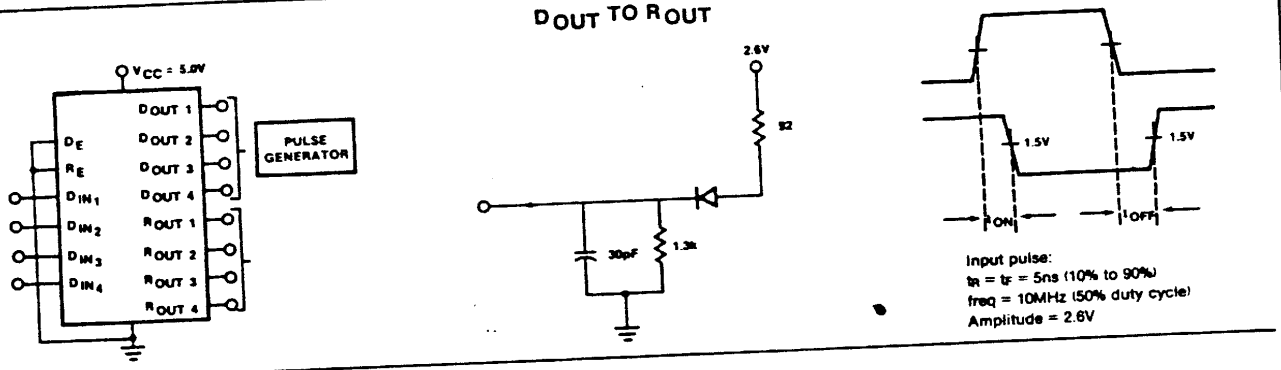


AC TEST CIRCUITS AND WAVEFORMS

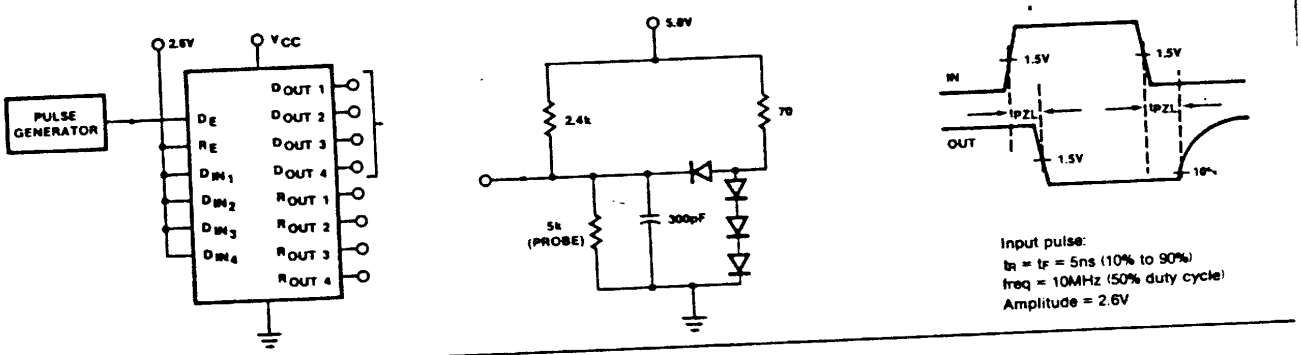
PROPAGATION DELAY
RECEIVE ENABLE TO RECEIVE OUTPUT



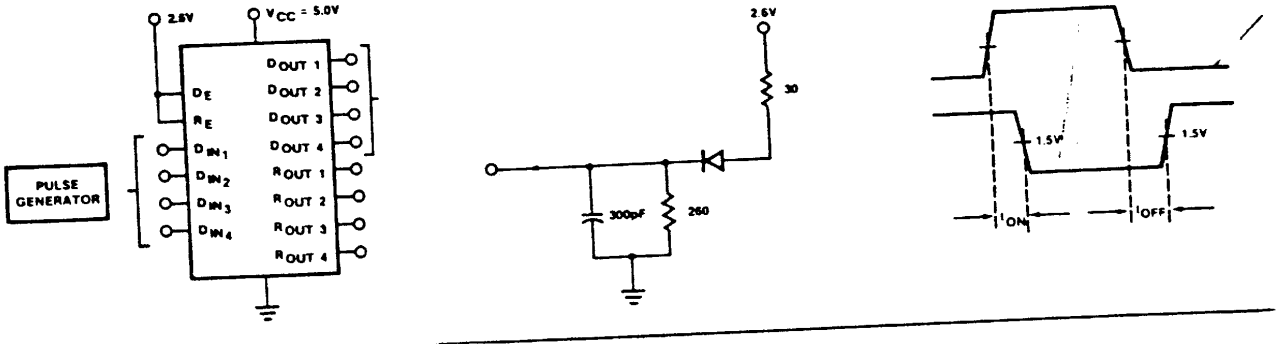
DOUT TO ROUT



DATA ENABLE TO DATA OUTPUT



DIN TO DOUT



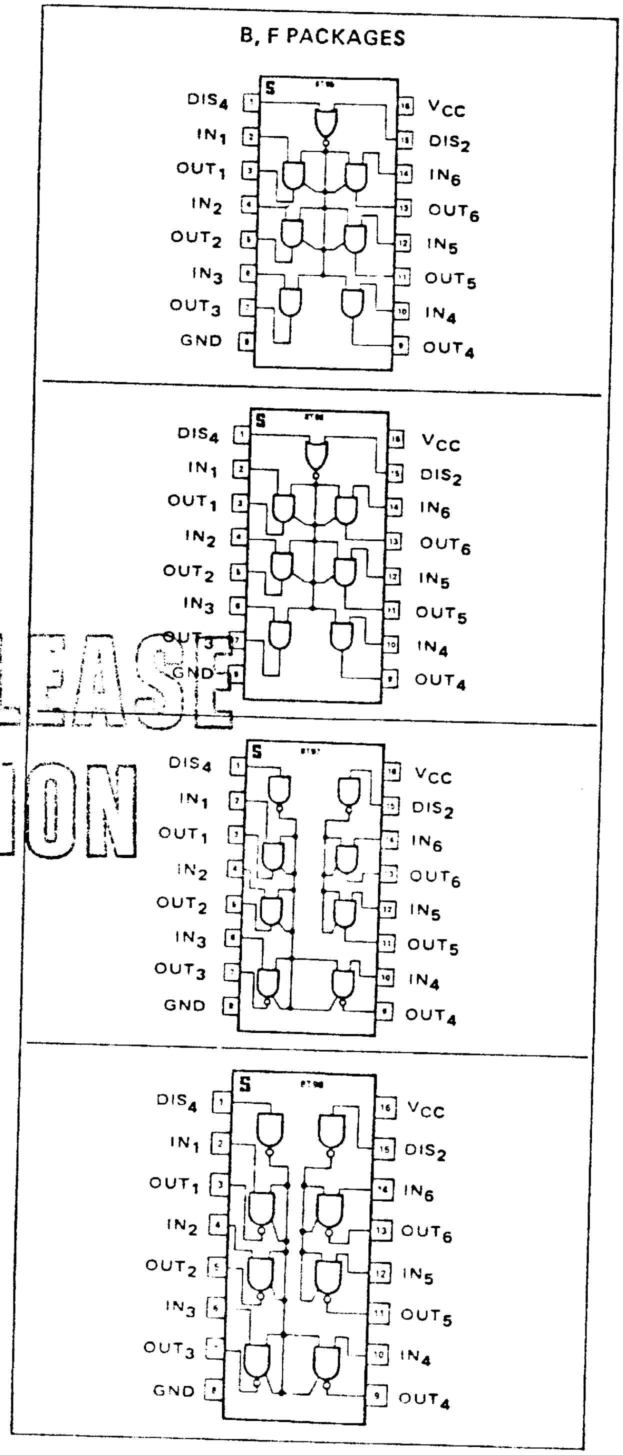
8T95
8T96
8T97
8T98

SPECIFICATION

DIGITAL 8T SERIES INTERFACE TTL/MSI

... the Tri-State Bus Interface Elements described ... has low current PNP inputs and is designed with ...y TTL technology for ultra high speed. The devices ... to convert TTL/DTL or MOS/CMOS to tri-state ... levels. For maximum systems flexibility the 8T95 ... 8T97 do so without logic inversion, whereas, the 8T96 ... 8T98 provide the logical complement of the input. The ... and 8T96 feature a common control line for all six ..., whereas, the 8T97 and 8T98 have control lines for ... from one input and two from another input.

(Top View)



- LOW CURRENT PNP INPUTS (400μA)
- HIGH SPEED SHOTTKY TTL DESIGN (TYP. 8ns)
- TTL DTL, MOS/CMOS COMPATIBLE
- LOW POWER DISSIPATION
  - 8T95/97 TYP. 325mW
  - 8T96/98 TYP. 295mW
- HIGH SPEED REPLACEMENTS FOR
  - DM 8095 = 8T95
  - DM 8096 = 8T96
  - DM 8097 = 8T97
  - DM 8098 = 8T98

8T95

DISABLE DIS_1	INPUT DIS_2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1
0	1	x	H-z
1	0	x	H-z
1	1	x	H-z

8T96

DISABLE DIS_1	INPUT DIS_2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
0	1	x	H-z
1	0	x	H-z
1	1	x	H-z

3-197

8T97			
ABLE DIS_4	INPUT DIS_2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	0
0	0	1	1
x	1	x	Hi-z*
1	x	x	Hi-z**

8T98			
DISABLE DIS_4	INPUT DIS_2	INPUT	OUTPUT
0	0	0	1
0	0	1	0
x	1	x	Hi-z*
1	x	x	Hi-z**

*Output 5-6 only **Output 1-4 only x = Irrelevant

Over Recommended Voltage and Temperature Range

CHARACTERISTIC	LIMITS MIN.	TYP.	MAX.	UNITS	TEST CONDITIONS		NOTES
"1" Input Voltage	2.0			V	V_{CC} = Min T_A = 25°C		
"0" Input Voltage			0.8	V	V_{CC} = Min T_A = 25°C		
"1" Output Voltage	2.4			V	V_{CC} = Min I_0 = −5.2 mA		6
"0" Output Voltage			0.5	V	I_{out} = 48 mA		7
State Input Current			-40	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_{in} = 0.5V DIS = 2.0V	
State Output Current			40	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_o = 2.4V	
			-40	μA		V_o = 0.5V	
"1" Input Current			40	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_{in} = 2.4V	
"0" Input Current			-400	μA	V_{CC} = Max	V_{IN} = 0.5V DIS = 0.5V	
Short Circuit Current	-40	-80	-115	mA	V_{CC} = Max	V_o = 0V	9, 10
Current (Device) 8T95/97		65	98mA	mA	V_{CC} = Max		
8T96/98		59	89mA				
Voltage Rating	5.5			V	I_{in} = 1 mA		
Clamp Voltage			-1.5	V	V_{CC} = Min	I_{in} = −12 mA	
V_{CC} Clamp Voltage			1.5	V	V_{CC} = 0V	I_o = 12 mA	

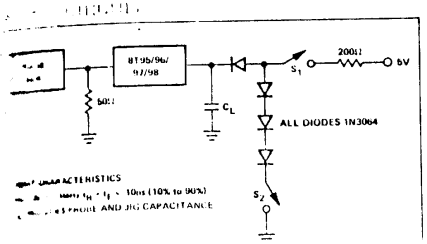
T_A = 25°C and V_{CC} = 5.0V

CHARACTERISTIC	LIMITS MIN.	TYP.	MAX.	UNITS	TEST CONDITIONS	NOTE
Propagation Delays (All Devices)						
Data Inputs to Data Outputs t_{on}		5			See AC Test Figures	
t_{off}		6				
Disable to Outputs						
Logic "1" to High Z t_{PIH}		4		ns		
Logic "0" to High Z t_{POH}		6		ns		
High Z to Logic "1" t_{PHI}		10		ns		
High Z to Logic "0" t_{PHO}		12		ns		

...ts
...ge measurements are referenced to the ground terminal.
...s not specifically referenced are left electrically open.
...measurements are taken with ground pin tied to zero volts.
...current is defined as into the terminal referenced.
...logic definition: "UP" level = "1"; "DOWN" = "0".
...tionary measures should be taken to ensure current limit-
...ccordance with Absolute Maximum Ratings should the
...diodes become forward biased.

6. Output source current is supplied through a resist
7. Output sink current is supplied through a resis
8. Refer to AC Test Figures and Test Table.
9. V_{CC} = 5.25V.
10. Not more than one output should be shorted at a ti

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



	S_1	S_2
t_{on}	Closed	Closed
t_{off}	Closed	Closed
t_{0H}	Closed	Closed
t_{1H}	Closed	Closed
t_{H0}	Closed	Open

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TIMER 555

LINEAR INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

DESCRIPTION

The SE/NE 555 monolithic timing circuit is a highly stable controller capable of producing accurate time delays, or oscillation. Additional terminals are provided for triggering and resetting if desired. In the time delay mode of operation, the time is precisely controlled by one external resistor and capacitor. For a stable operation as an oscillator, the free running frequency and the duty cycle are both accurately controlled with two external resistors and one capacitor. The circuit may be triggered and reset on falling waveforms, and the output structure can source or sink up to 200mA or drive TTL circuits.

FEATURES

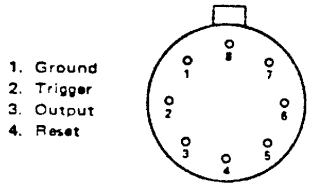
- TIMING FROM MICROSECONDS THROUGH HOURS
- OPERATES IN BOTH ASTABLE AND MONOSTABLE MODES
- ADJUSTABLE DUTY CYCLE
- HIGH CURRENT OUTPUT CAN SOURCE OR SINK 200mA
- OUTPUT CAN DRIVE TTL
- TEMPERATURE STABILITY OF 0.005% PER °C
- NORMALLY ON AND NORMALLY OFF OUTPUT

APPLICATIONS

PRECISION TIMING
PULSE GENERATION
SEQUENTIAL TIMING
TIME DELAY GENERATION
PULSE WIDTH MODULATION
PULSE POSITION MODULATION
MISSING PULSE DETECTOR

PIN CONFIGURATIONS (Top View)

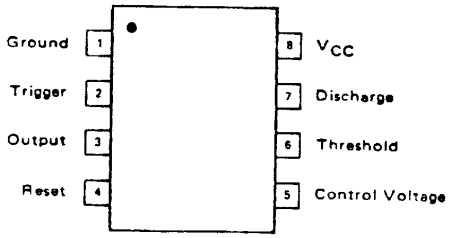
T PACKAGE



1. Ground
2. Trigger
3. Output
4. Reset
5. Control Voltage
6. Threshold
7. Discharge
8. V_{CC}

ORDER PART NOS. SE555T/NE555T

V PACKAGE

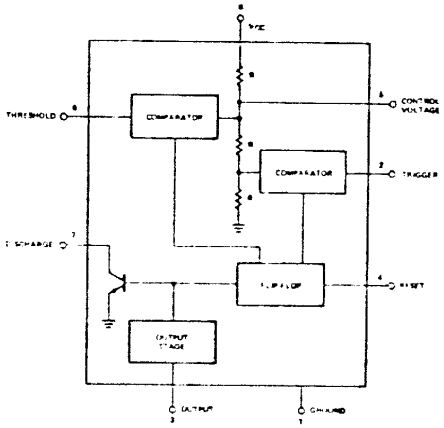


ORDER PART NOS. SE555V/NE555V

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

Supply Voltage	+18V
Power Dissipation	600 mW
Operating Temperature Range	
NE555	0°C to +70°C
SE555	−55°C to +125°C
Storage Temperature Range	−65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (Soldering, 60 seconds)	+300°C

BLOCK DIAGRAM



CTRICAL ... ACTERISTICS T_A = 25°C, V_{CC} = +5V to +15 unless otherwise specified

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	SE 555			NE 555		
		MIN	TYP	MAX	MIN	TYP	MAX
Supply Voltage		4.5		18	4.5		16
Supply Current	V_{CC} = 5V R_L = ∞		3	5		3	6
	V_{CC} = 15V R_L = ∞		10	12		10	15
	Low State, Note 1						
Timing Error(Monostable)	R_A, R_B = 1KΩ to 100KΩ						
Initial Accuracy	C = 0.1 µF Note 2		0.5	2		1	
Drift with Temperature			30	100		50	
Drift with Supply Voltage			0.05	0.2		0.1	
Threshold Voltage			2/3			2/3	
Trigger Voltage	V_{CC} = 15V	4.8	5	5.2		5	
Timing Error(Astable)	V_{CC} = 5V	1.45	1.67	1.9		1.67	
Trigger Current			0.5			0.5	
Reset Voltage		0.4	0.7	1.0	0.4	0.7	1.0
Reset Current			0.1			0.1	
Threshold Current	Note 3		0.1	.25		0.1	.25
Control Voltage Level	V_{CC} = 15V	9.6	10	10.4	9.0	10	11
	V_{CC} = 5V	2.9	3.33	3.8	2.6	3.33	4
Output Voltage (low)	V_{CC} = 15V						
	I_{SINK} = 10mA		0.1	0.15		0.1	.25
	I_{SINK} = 50mA		0.4	0.5		0.4	.75
	I_{SINK} = 100mA		2.0	2.2		2.0	2.5
	I_{SINK} = 200mA		2.5			2.5	
	V_{CC} = 5V						
	I_{SINK} = 8mA		0.1	0.25			
	I_{SINK} = 5mA					.25	.35
Output Voltage Drop (low)							
	I_{SOURCE} = 200mA		12.5			12.5	
	V_{CC} = 15V						
	I_{SOURCE} = 100mA						
	V_{CC} = 15V	13.0	13.3		12.75	13.3	
	V_{CC} = 5V	3.0	3.3		2.75	3.3	
Rise Time of Output			100			100	
Fall Time of Output			100			100	

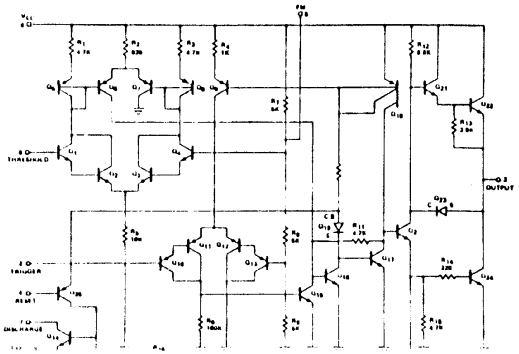
ES

upply Current when output high typically 1mA less.

sted at V_{CC} = 5V and V_{CC} = 15V

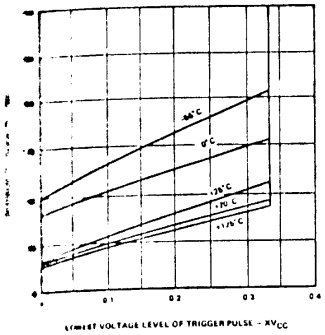
is will determine the maximum value of R_A + R_B. For 15V operation, the max total R = 20 megohm.

IVALENT CIRCUIT (Shown for One Side Only)

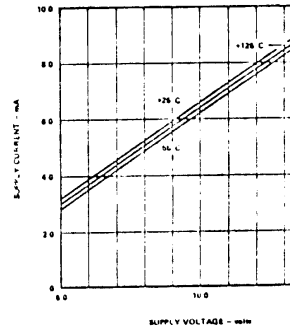


...ACTERISTICS

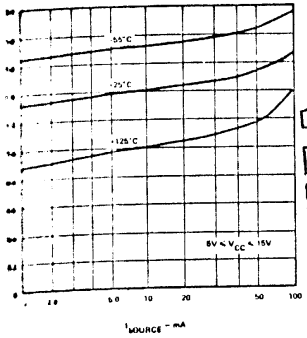
MINIMUM PULSE WIDTH REQUIRED FOR TRIGGERING



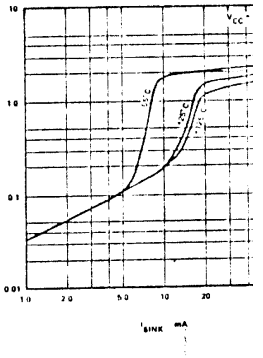
SUPPLY CURRENT vs SUPPLY VOLTAGE



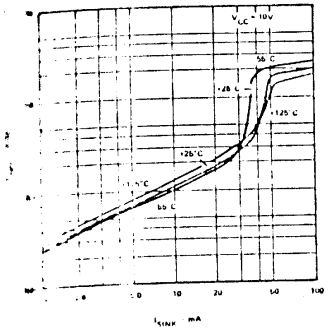
LOW OUTPUT VOLTAGE vs OUTPUT SINK CURRENT



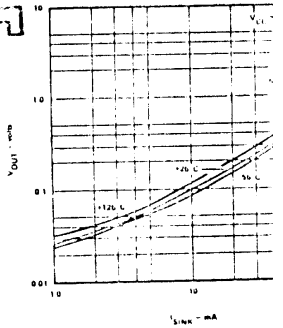
HIGH OUTPUT VOLTAG vs OUTPUT SOURCE CURRENT



LOW OUTPUT VOLTAGE vs OUTPUT SINK CURRENT



LOW OUTPUT VOLTAG vs OUTPUT SINK CURRE



DESCRIPTION

The SA/SE/NE558 and 559 Quad Timers are monolithic timing devices which can be used to produce four entirely independent timing functions. The 558 output sinks current whereas the 559 sources current. These highly stable, general purpose controllers can be used in a monostable mode to produce accurate time delays, from microseconds to hours. In the time delay mode of operation, the time is precisely controlled by one external resistor and one capacitor. Astable operation can be achieved by using two of the four timer sections.

The four timing sections in the 558 and 559 are edge triggered; therefore, when connected in tandem for sequential timing applications, no coupling capacitors are required. Output current capability of 100mA is provided in both devices.

FEATURES

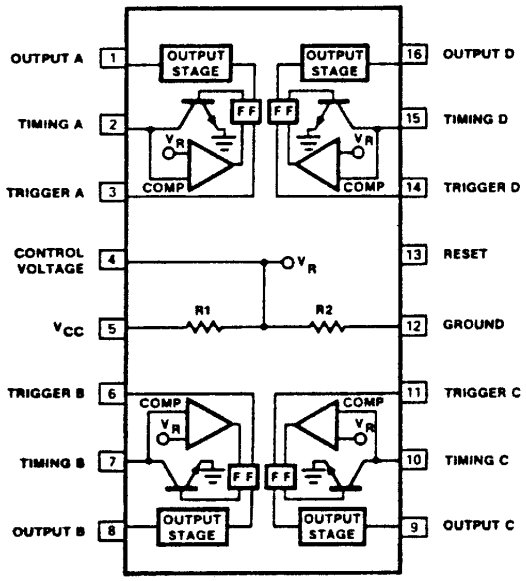
- **100mA output current per section**
- **Edge triggered (no coupling capacitor)**
- **Output independent of trigger conditions**
- **Wide supply voltage range 4.5V to 18V**
- **Timer intervals from microseconds to hours**
- **Time period equals RC**
- **Military qualifications pending**

APPLICATIONS

- **Sequential timing**
- **Time delay generation**
- **Precision timing**
- **Industrial controls**
- **Quad one-shot**

PIN CONFIGURATION

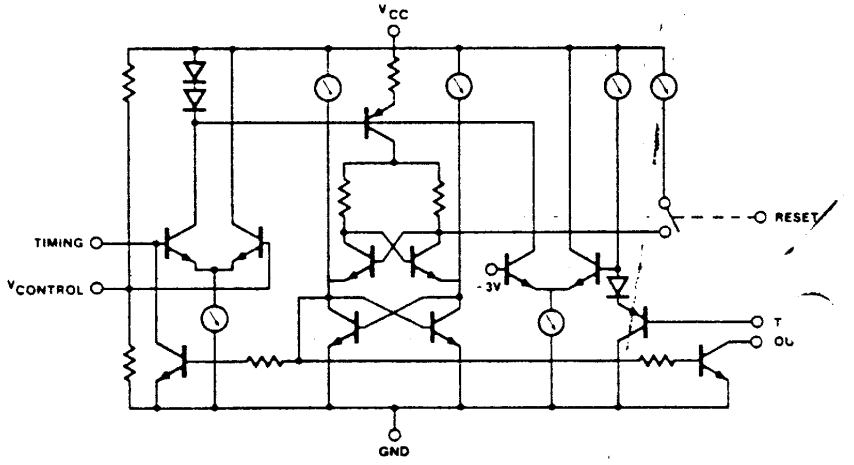
F,N PACKAGE



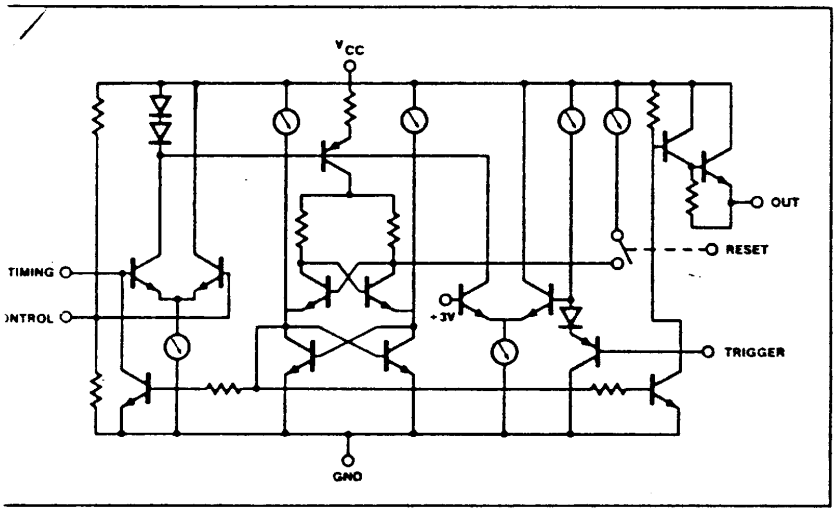
ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

PARAMETER	RATING	UNIT
Supply voltage		
..SE558, SE559	+18	V
NE558, NE559	+16	V
SA558, SA559	+16	V
Power dissipation	1.25	W
Operating temperature range		
NE558, NE559	0 to +70	°C
SA558, SA559	-40 to +85	°C
SE558, SE559	-55 to +125	°C
Storage temperature range	-65 to +150	°C
Lead temperature (soldering, 60sec)	+300	°C

558 EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT



EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT



CTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS T_A = 25°C, V_{CC} = +5V to +15V unless otherwise specified.

PARAMETER	TEST CONDITIONS	SE558/SE559			NE558/NE559 SA558/SA559			UNIT
		Min	Typ	Max	Min	Typ	Max	
Supply voltage		4.5		18	4.5		16	V
Supply current (558) (559) ing accuracy (T = RC)	V_{CC} = Reset = 15V V_{CC} = Reset = 15V R = 2kΩ to 100kΩ C = 1μF		21 9	32 16		27 12	36 18	mA mA
Initial accuracy Drift with temperature Drift with supply voltage			1.0 150 0.1	3		2 150 0.1		% ppm/°C %/V
Trigger voltage[1] Trigger current	V_{CC} = 15V Trigger = 0V	0.8	1.5 5	2.4 30	0.8	1.5 5	2.4 100	V μA
Reset voltage[2] Reset current	Reset	0.8	1.5 50	2.4 300	0.8	1.5 50	2.4	V μA
Threshold voltage Threshold leakage			0.63 15			0.63 15		xVcc nA
Output voltage (558)[3]	I_L = 10mA I_L = 100mA		0.1 0.7	0.2 1.5		0.1 1.0	0.4 2.0	V V
Output voltage (559)[4]	I_L = 10mA I_L = 100mA	13 12.5	13.6 13.3		12.5 12.0	13.3 13.0		V V
Output leakage			10			10		nA
Propagation delay (558) (559)			1.0 0.4			1.0 0.4		μs μs
Risetime of output Falltime of output	I_L = 100mA I_L = 100mA		100 100			100 100		ns ns

trigger functions only on the falling edge of the trigger pulse only after previously
ng high. After reset the trigger must be brought high and then low to implement
gering.
reset below 0.8 volts, outputs set low and trigger inhibited. For reset above 2.4
s, trigger enabled.
558 output structure is open collector which requires a pull up resistor to V_{CC} to
current. The output is normally low sinking current.
559 output structure is a darlington emitter follower which requires a pull down
stor to ground to source current. The output is normally low and sources current
when switched high.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

GENERAL PURPOSE OPERATIONAL AMPLIFIER

μA741

LINEAR INTEGRATED CIRCUITS

DESCRIPTION

The μA741 is a high performance operational amplifier with high open loop gain, internal compensation, high common mode range and exceptional temperature stability. The μA741 is short-circuit protected and allows for nulling of offset voltage.

FEATURES

- INTERNAL FREQUENCY COMPENSATION
- SHORT CIRCUIT PROTECTION
- OFFSET VOLTAGE NULL CAPABILITY
- EXCELLENT TEMPERATURE STABILITY
- HIGH INPUT VOLTAGE RANGE
- NO LATCH-UP

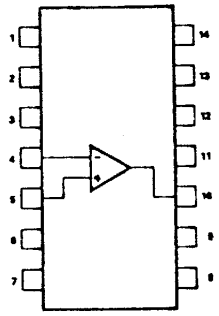
ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS

	μA741C	μA741
Supply Voltage	±18V	±22V
Internal Power Dissipation (Note 1)	500mW	500mW
Differential Input Voltage	±30V	±30V
Input Voltage (Note 2)	±15V	±15V
Voltage between Offset Null and V⁻	±0.5V	±0.5V
Operating Temperature Range	0°C to +70°C	-55°C to +125°C
Storage Temperature Range	-65°C to +150°C	-65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (Solder, 60 sec)	300°C	300°C
Output Short Circuit Duration (Note 3)	Indefinite	Indefinite

1. Rating applies for case temperatures to 125°C; derate linearly at 5.5mW/°C for ambient temperatures above +75°C.
2. For supply voltages less than ±15V, the absolute maximum input voltage is equal to the supply voltage.
3. Short circuit may be to ground or either supply. Rating applies to +125°C case temperature or +75°C ambient temperature.

PIN CONFIGURATIONS (TOP VIEW)

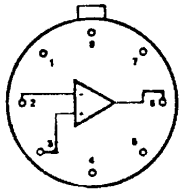
A PACKAGE



1. NC
2. NC
3. Offset Null
4. Inv. Input
5. Non-Inv. Input
6. V⁻
7. NC
8. NC
9. Offset Null
10. Output
11. V⁺
12. NC
13. NC
14. NC

ORDER PART NO. μA741CA

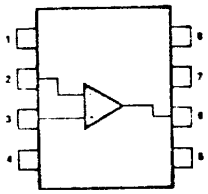
T PACKAGE



1. Offset Null
2. Inverting Input
3. Non-Inverting Input
4. V⁻
5. Offset Null
6. Output
7. V⁺
8. NC

ORDER PART NOS. μA741T/μA741CT

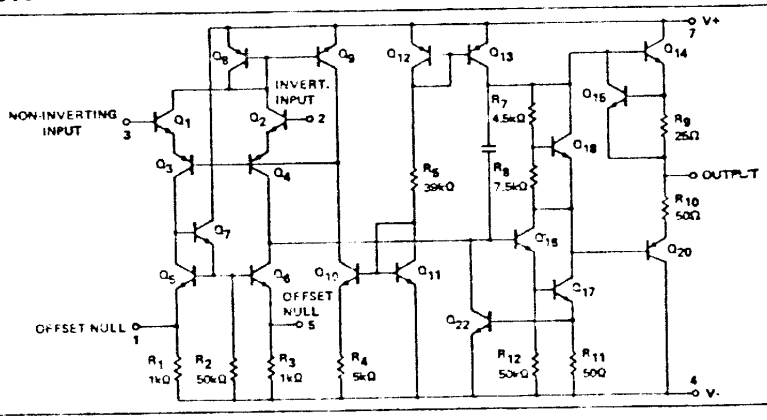
V PACKAGE



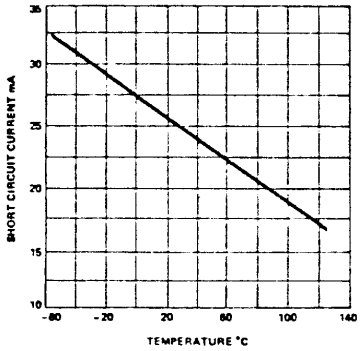
1. Offset Null
2. Inv. Input
3. Non-Inv. Input
4. V⁻
5. Offset Null
6. Output
7. V⁺
8. NC

ORDER PART NO. μA741CV

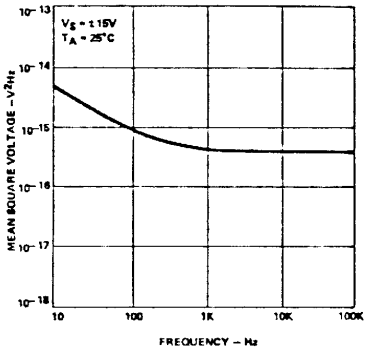
EQUIVALENT CIRCUIT



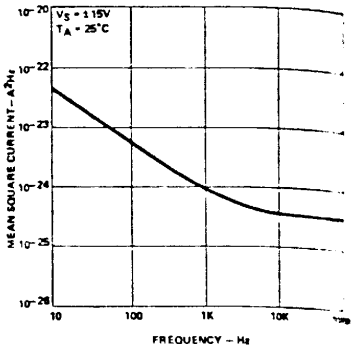
OUTPUT SHORT-CIRCUIT CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



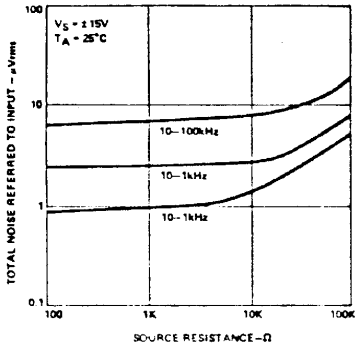
INPUT NOISE VOLTAGE AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



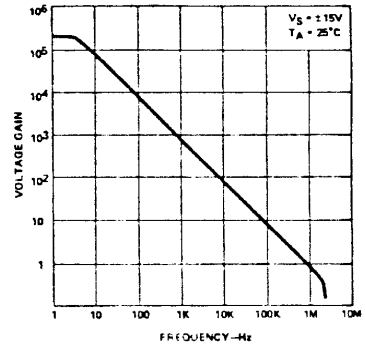
INPUT NOISE CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



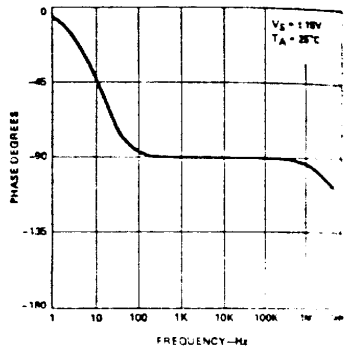
BROADBAND NOISE FOR VARIOUS BANDWIDTHS



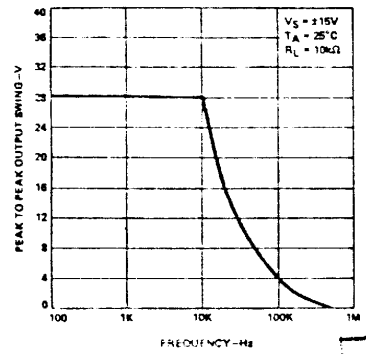
OPEN LOOP VOLTAGE GAIN AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



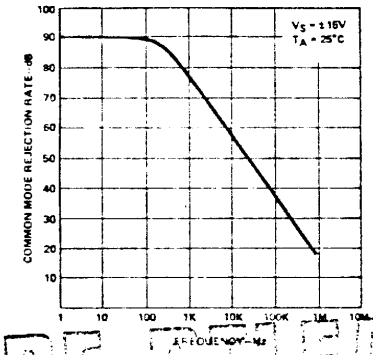
OPEN LOOP PHASE RESPONSE AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



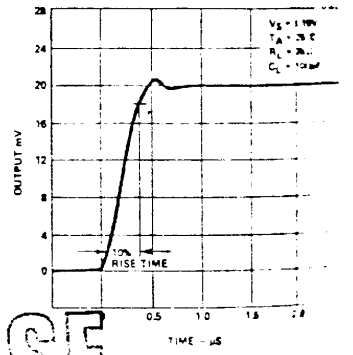
OUTPUT VOLTAGE SWING AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



COMMON MODE REJECTION RATIO AS A FUNCTION OF FREQUENCY



TRANSIENT RESPONSE

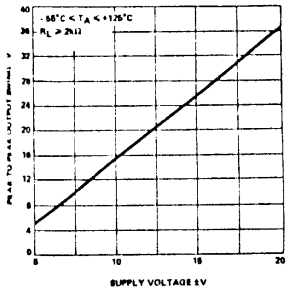


ERISTICS (V_S = ±15V, T_A = 25°C unless otherwise specified)

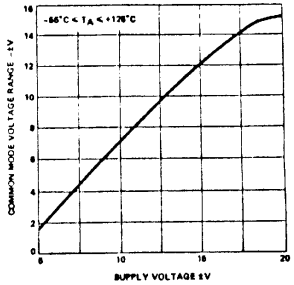
	MIN.	TYP.	MAX.	UNITS	TEST CONDITIONS
μA741C					
		2.0	6.0	mV	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
		20	200	nA	
		80	500	nA	
	0.3	2.0		MΩ	
		1.4		pF	
nge		±15		mV	
	±12	±13		V	
io	70	90		dB	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
io		10	150	μV/V	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
	20,000	200,000			$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
	±12	±14		V	$R_L \geq 10k\Omega$
	±10	±13		V	$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$
		75		Ω	
		25		mA	
		1.4	2.8	mA	
		50	85	mW	
)					$V_{in} = 20mV$, $R_L = 2k\Omega$, $C_L \leq 10$
		0.3		μs	
		5.0		%	
		0.5		V/μs	$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$
pply					
			7.5	mV	
			300	nA	
			800	nA	
	15,000				$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
	±10	±13		V	$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$
μA741					
		1.0	5.0	mV	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
		10	200	nA	
		80	500	nA	
	0.3	2.0		MΩ	
		1.4		pF	
nge		±15		mV	
	50,000	200,000			$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
		75		Ω	
		25		mA	
		1.4	2.8	mA	
		50	85	mW	
)					$V_{in} = 20mV$, $R_L = 2k\Omega$, $C_L \leq 100$
		0.3		μs	
		5.0		%	
		0.5		V/μs	$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$
pply					
		1.0	6.0	mV	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
		7.0	200	nA	$T_A = +125°C$
		20	500	nA	$T_A = -55°C$
		0.03	0.5	μA	$T_A = +125°C$
		0.3	1.5	μA	$T_A = -55°C$
	±12	±13		V	
	70	90		dB	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
)		10	150	μV/V	$R_S \leq 10k\Omega$
	25,000				$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$, $V_{out} = \pm 10V$
	±12	±14		V	$R_L \geq 10k\Omega$
	±10	±13		V	$R_L \geq 2k\Omega$
		1.5	2.5	mA	$T_A = +125°C$
		2.0	3.3	mA	$T_A = -55°C$
		45	75	mW	$T_A = +125°C$
		45	100	mW	$T_A = -55°C$

PICAL CHARA RISTIC CURVES

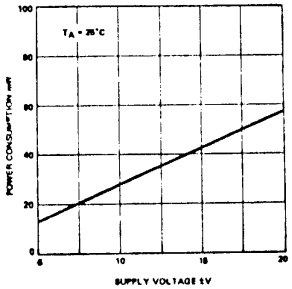
OUTPUT VOLTAGE SWING AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



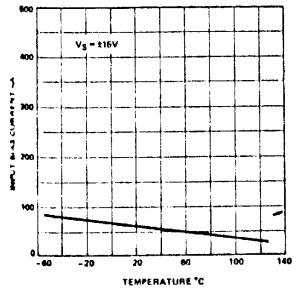
INPUT COMMON MODE VOLTAGE RANGE AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



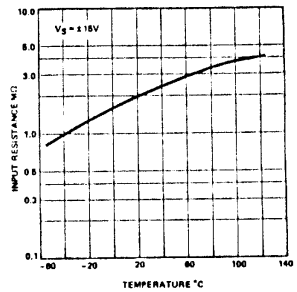
POWER CONSUMPTION AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



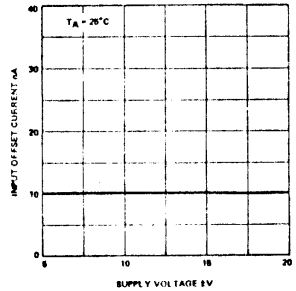
INPUT BIAS CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



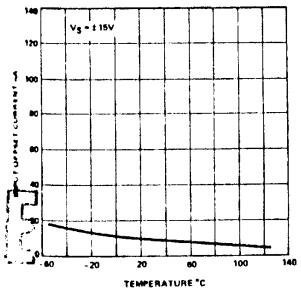
INPUT RESISTANCE AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



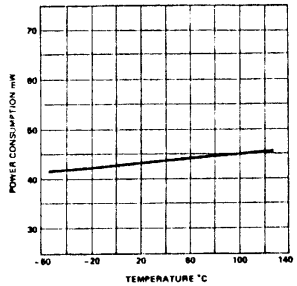
INPUT OFFSET CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF SUPPLY VOLTAGE



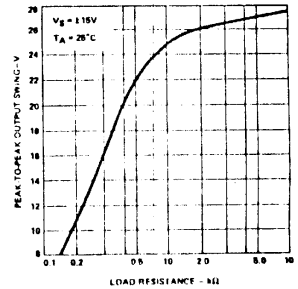
INPUT OFFSET CURRENT AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



POWER CONSUMPTION AS A FUNCTION OF AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



OUTPUT VOLTAGE SWING AS A FUNCTION OF LOAD RESISTANCE



Signetics

64X8X5 CHARACTER GENERATOR

2513

SILICON GATE MOS 2500 SERIES

DESCRIPTION

The Signetics 2513 is a high speed 2560-bit Static ROM organized as 64x8x5. A standard 7x5 dot matrix fits well in the 2513. The product uses +5V, -5V and -12V power supplies, TTL level interface signals and Tri-State Outputs for direct, low cost interfacing with TTL, DTL, CMOS and 2500 Series MOS.

FEATURES

- 450 ns TYPICAL ACCESS TIME
- STATIC OPERATION
- TTL/DTL COMPATIBLE INPUTS
- +5, -5, -12V POWER SUPPLIES
- TRI-STATE OUTPUT CONTROLLED BY CHIP ENABLE FOR BUSSING CAPABILITY
- 2513/CM2140 ASCII FONT STANDARD (7 X 5)
- 24-PIN DIP
- P-MOS SILICON GATE TECHNOLOGY

APPLICATIONS

RASTER SCAN CRT DISPLAYS (ROW OUTPUT)
PRINTER CHARACTER GENERATOR
PANEL DISPLAYS AND BILLBOARDS
MICRO-PROGRAMMING
CODE CONVERSION

PROCESS TECHNOLOGY

The use of Signetics' P channel Silicon Gate Process allows the design and production of higher functional density and operating speed than other techniques.

SILICONE PACKAGING

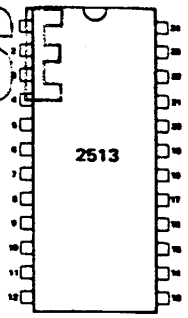
Low cost silicone DIP packaging is implemented and reliability is assured by the use of Signetics unique silicon gate MOS process technology. Unlike the standard metal gate MOS process the silicon material over the gate oxide passivates the MOS transistors. In addition, Signetics proprietary surface passivation and silicone packaging techniques result in an MOS circuit with inherent high reliability, superior moisture resistance, and ionic contamination barriers.

BIPOLAR COMPATIBILITY

All inputs of the 2513 can be driven directly by standard TTL voltage levels. The data output buffers are capable of sinking a minimum of 1.6 mA, sufficient to drive one standard TTL load.

PIN CONFIGURATION (Top View)

N/I PACKAGE



1.	V_{GG}	24.	V_{CC}
2.	NC	23.	NC
3.	NC	22.	Address 9
4.	Out 1	21.	Address 8
5.	Out 2	20.	Address 7
6.	Out 3	19.	Address 6
7.	Out 4	18.	Address 5
8.	Out 5	17.	Address 4
9.	NC	16.	Address 3
10.	Ground	15.	Address 2
11.	Chip Enable	14.	Address 1
12.	V_{DD}	13.	NC

PART IDENTIFICATION TABLE

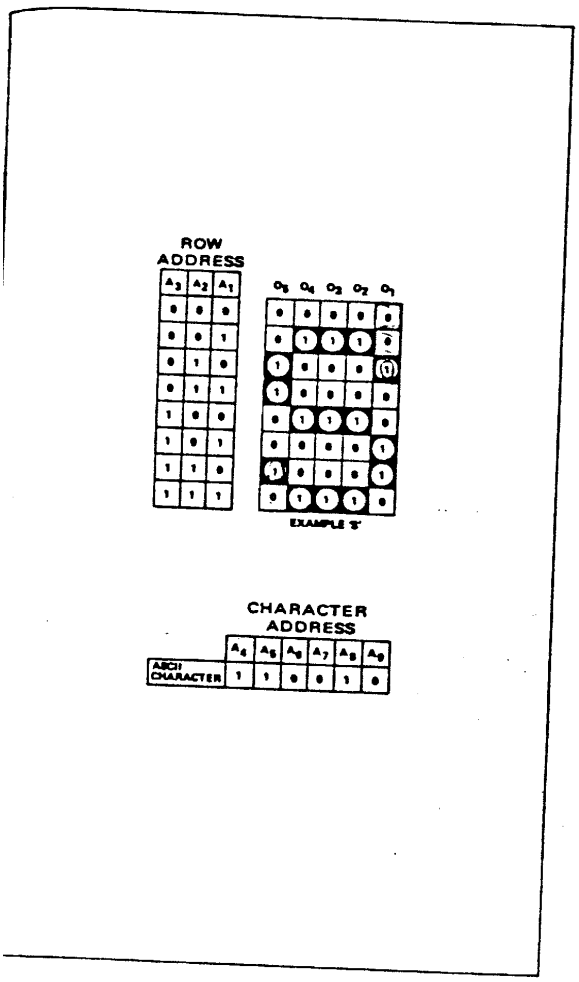
PART	ORGANIZATION	PROGRAM
2513N/I CM2140	64X8X5	ASCII Font
2513N/I CMXXXX	64X7X5 64X8X5	Custom

N PACKAGE = 24 PIN SILICONE DIP

I PACKAGE = 24 PIN CERAMIC DIP

SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ■ 2513

CHARACTER FORMAT



MAXIMUM GUARANTEED RATINGS(1)

Operating Ambient Temperature	0°C to 70°C
Storage Temperature	-65°C to +150°C
Package Power Dissipation(2) @T_A 70°C	730mW
Input(3) and Supply Voltages with respect to V_{CC}	+0.3 to -20V

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

NOTES

1. Stresses above those listed under "Maximum Guaranteed Rating" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or at any other condition above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied.
2. For operating at elevated temperatures the device must be derated based on a +150°C maximum junction temperature and a thermal resistance of 110°C/W junction to ambient.
3. All inputs are protected against static charge.
4. Parameters are valid over operating temperature range unless specified.
5. All voltage measurements are referenced to ground.
6. Manufacturer reserves the right to make design and process changes and improvements.
7. Typical values are at +25°C and nominal supply voltages.
8. Guaranteed input levels are stated for worst case conditions including a ±5% variation in V_{CC} and a temperature variation of 0°C to +70°C. Actual input requirements with respect to V_{CC} are $V_{IH} = V_{CC} - 1.85V$ and $V_{IL} = V_{CC} - 4.15V$.

CHARACTERISTICS

= 0°C to +70°C; V_{CC} = +5V ±5%; V_{DD} = −5V ±5%; V_{GG} = −12V ±5% unless otherwise noted. (Notes 4, 5, 6, 7)

SYMBOL	TEST	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT	CONDITIONS
I_{LI}	Input Load Current		10	500	nA	V_{IN} = -5.5V T_A = 25°C
I_{LO}	Output Leakage Current		10	1000	nA	V_{OUT} = -5.5V T_A = 25°C $V_{CE} = V_{CC}$
I_{DD}	V_{DD} Power Supply Current		12	15	mA	Outputs Open
I_{GG}	V_{GG} Power Supply Current		10	15	mA	Outputs Open $V_{CE} = V_{CC}$
V_{IL}	Input Logic "0"			+0.6	V	Note 8
V_{IH}	Input Logic "1"	+3.4		5.3	V	Note 8

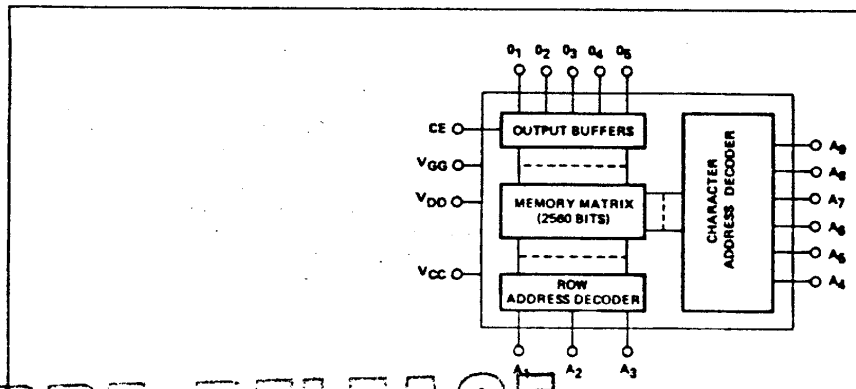
SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ■ 2513

AC CHARACTERISTICS

T_A = 0°C to +70°C; V_{CC} = 5V ±5%; V_{DD} = −5V ±5%; V_{GG} = −12V ±5%; unless otherwise noted.

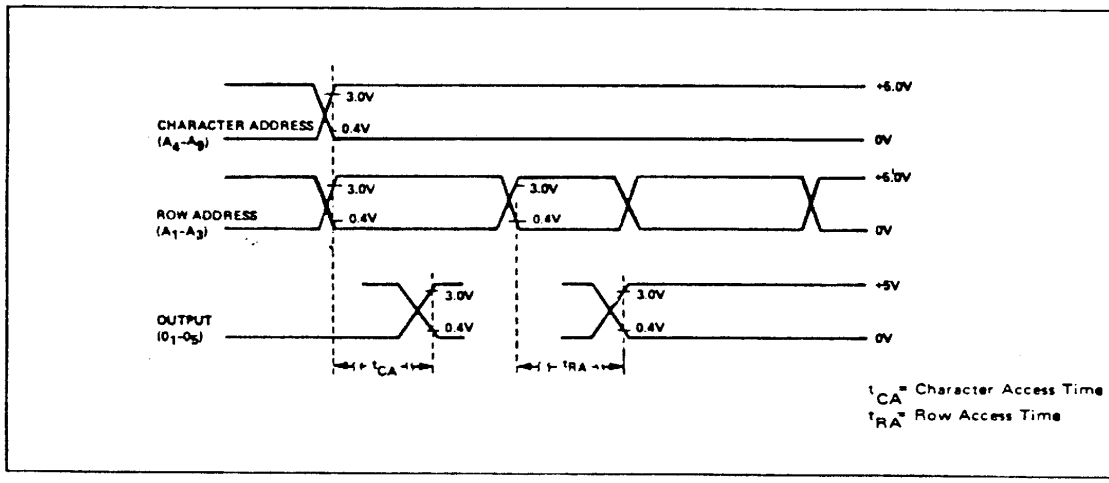
SYMBOL	TEST	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNIT	CONDITIONS
V_{OL}	Output Logic "Zero"	-5		0.4	V	One TTL Load
V_{OH}	Output Logic "One"	3.0			V	One TTL Load
$t_{CA(CM2140)}$	Character Access Time		500	600	ns	See AC Test Setup
t_{RA}	Row Access Time (A_1 - A_3)		450	500	ns	See AC Test Setup
t_{CE}	Chip Enable to Output		150		ns	
C_{IN}	Address Input Capacitance			10	pF	f = 1 MHz, V_{IH} = V_{CC}, 25mV p - p

BLOCK DIAGRAM

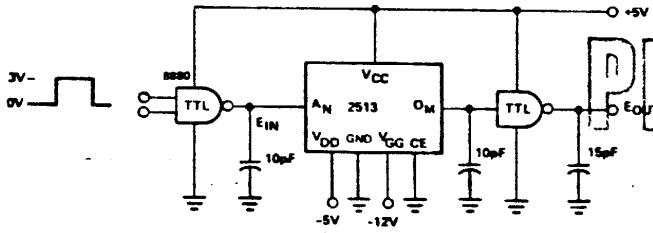


CE	OUTPUT
0	DATA
1	OPEN

TIMING DIAGRAM

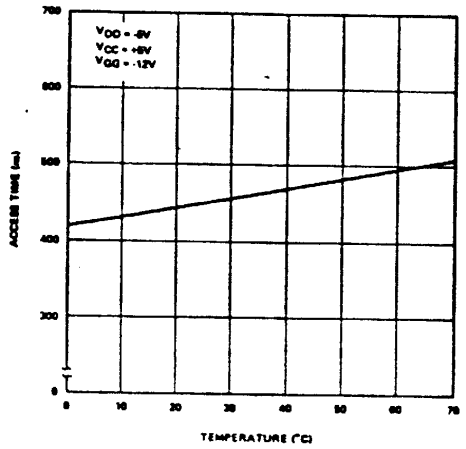


EST SETUP

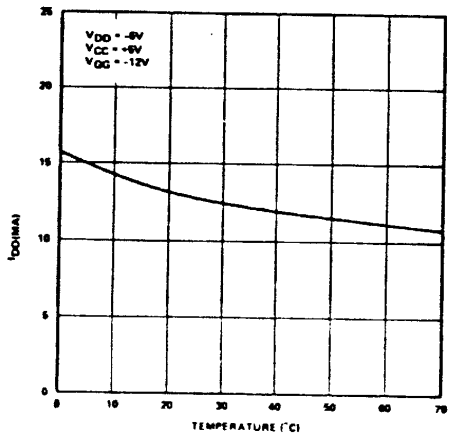


CAL CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

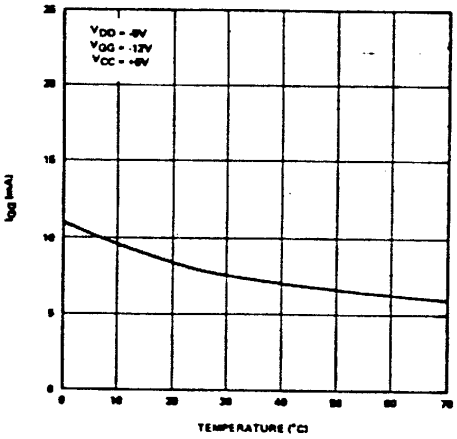
TYPICAL ACCESS TIME
VERSUS TEMPERATURE



V_{DD} POWER SUPPLY CURRENT
VERSUS TEMPERATURE

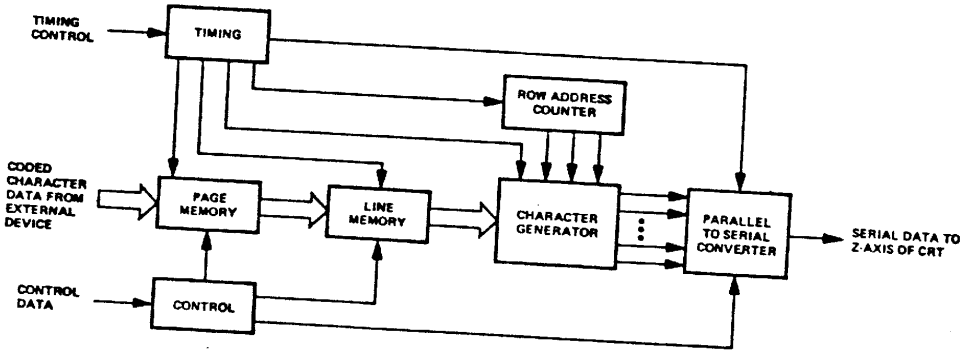


V_{GG} POWER SUPPLY CURRENT
VERSUS TEMPERATURE



SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ■ 2513

APPLICATIONS INFORMATION



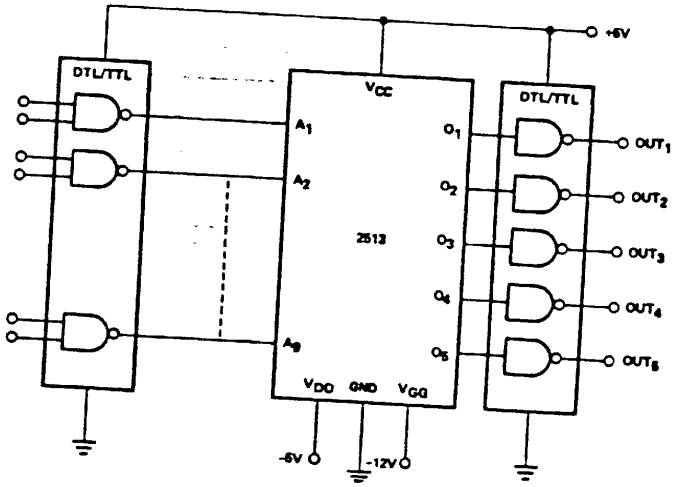
APPLICATION INFORMATION

CHARACTER GENERATOR: The 2513 IS DESIGNED TO PROVIDE THE INFORMATION NEEDED TO CONVERT THE CHARACTER CODES INTO A DOT MATRIX FOR DISPLAY.

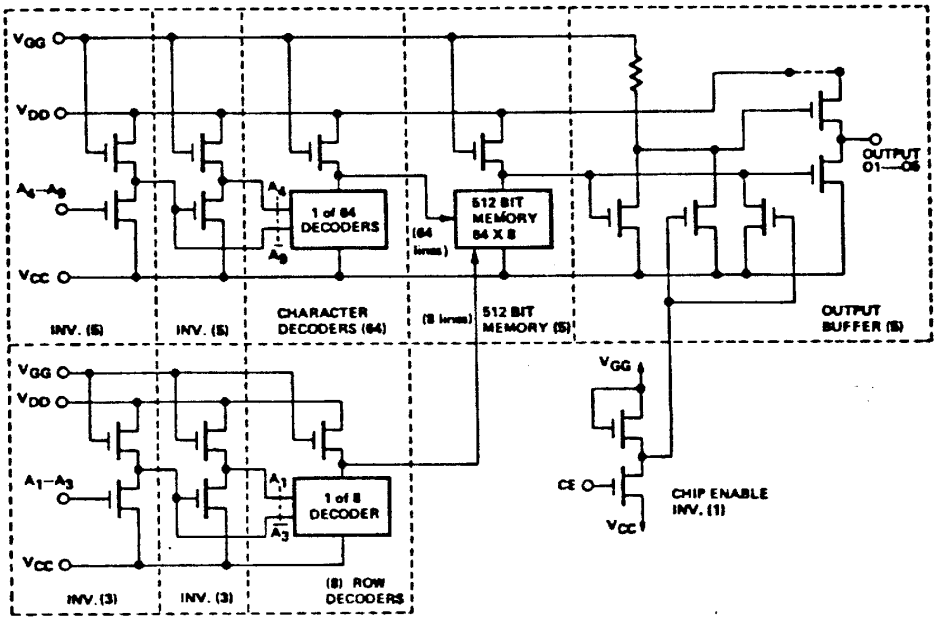
PAGE MEMORY: THIS MEMORY CONTAINS CHARACTER CODES. TYPICALLY, IT CONTAINS THE SAME NUMBER OF CHARACTER CODES AS THE NUMBER OF CHARACTERS ON A FULL SCREEN.

LINE MEMORY: THIS MEMORY CONTAINS THE CHARACTER CODES FOR ONE LINE OF THE CRT DISPLAY.

DTL/TTL INTERFACING



OSS-SECTION



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

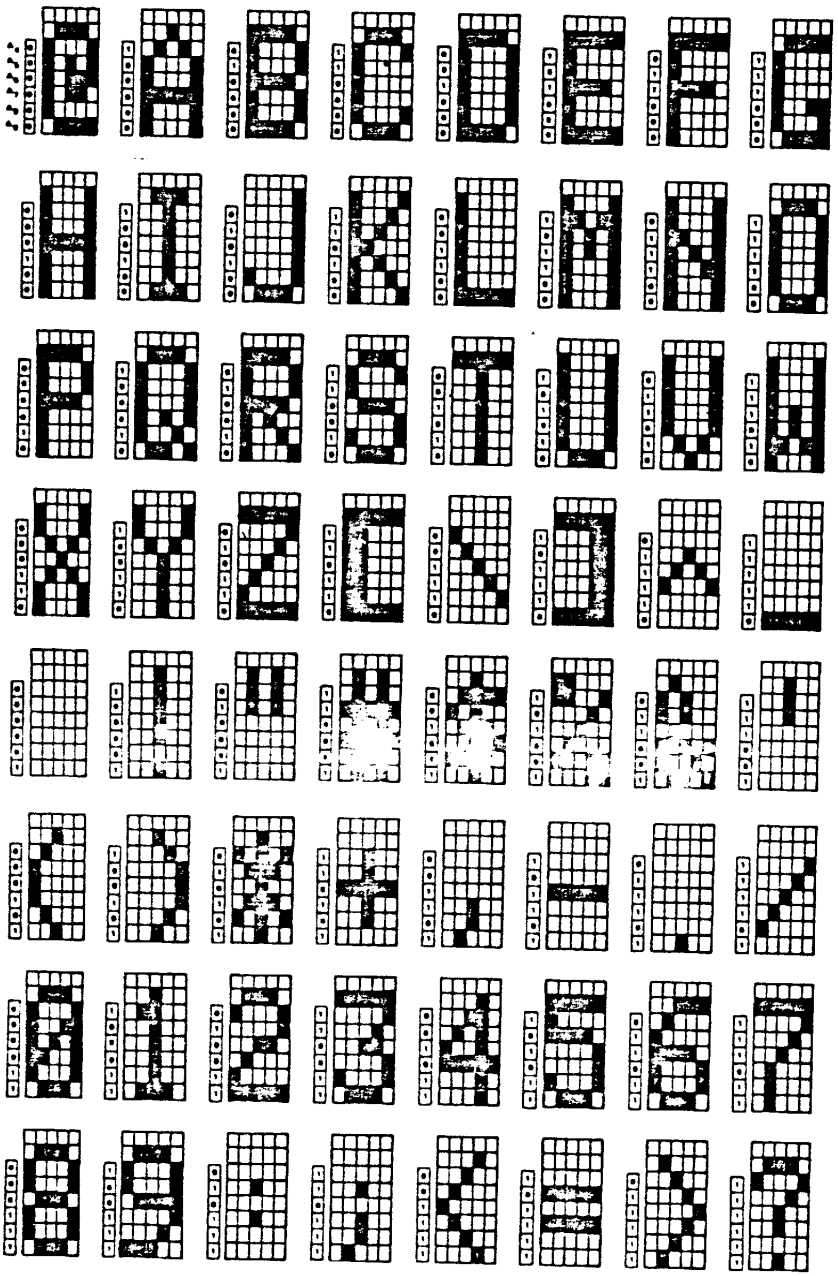
SIGNETICS 64 X 8 X 5 CHARACTER GENERATOR ■ 2513

ASCII CHARACTER FONT

2513N/CM2140

PRE-RELEAS

VERSION



intel

2316A/4316A/8316A*
16K (2K x 8) ROM

- Single +5 Volts Power Supply Voltage
- Guaranteed 850ns Access Time
- Directly TTL Compatible—All Inputs and Outputs
- Three Programmable Chip Select Inputs for Easy Memory Expansion
- Three-State Output—OR-Tie Capability
- Fully Decoded—On Chip Address Decode
- Inputs Protected—All Inputs Have Protection Against Static Charge

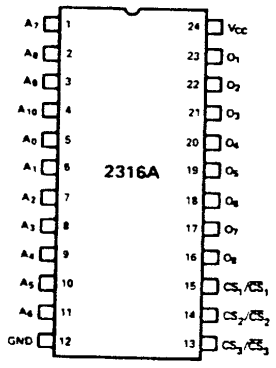
The Intel 2316A is a 16,384 bit static MOS read only memory organized as 2048 words by 8 bits. This ROM is designed for memory applications where high performance, large bit storage, and simple interfacing are important design objectives.

The inputs and outputs are fully TTL compatible. This device operates with a single +5V power supply. The three chip select inputs are programmable. Any combination of active high or low level chip select inputs can be defined by the designer and the desired chip select logic level is fixed during the masking process. These three programmable chip select inputs, as well as OR-tie compatibility on the outputs, facilitates easy memory expansion.

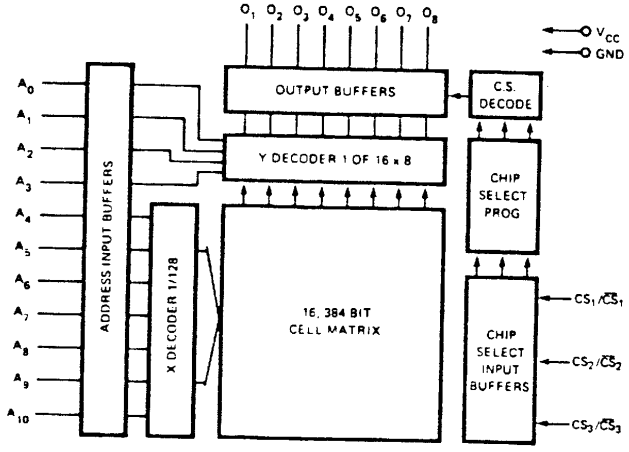
The 2316A read only memory is fabricated with N-channel silicon gate technology. This technology provides the designer with high performance, easy-to-use MOS circuits. Only a single +5V power supply is needed and all devices are directly TTL compatible.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PIN CONFIGURATION



BLOCK DIAGRAM



PIN NAMES

A_0-A_{10}	ADDRESS INPUTS
O_1-O_8	DATA OUTPUTS
CS_1-CS_3	PROGRAMMABLE CHIP SELECT INPUTS

*All 4316A and 8316A specifications are identical to the 2316A specifications.

2316A

A.C. Characteristics

$T_A = 0°C$ to $+70°C$, $V_{CC} = +5V \pm 5\%$ unless otherwise specified

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	LIMITS			UNIT
		MIN.	TYP.(1)	MAX.	
t_A	Address to Output Delay Time		400	850	nS
t_{CO}	Chip Select to Output Enable Delay Time			300	nS
t_{DF}	Chip Deselect to Output Data Float Delay Time	0		300	nS

CONDITIONS OF TEST FOR A.C. CHARACTERISTICS

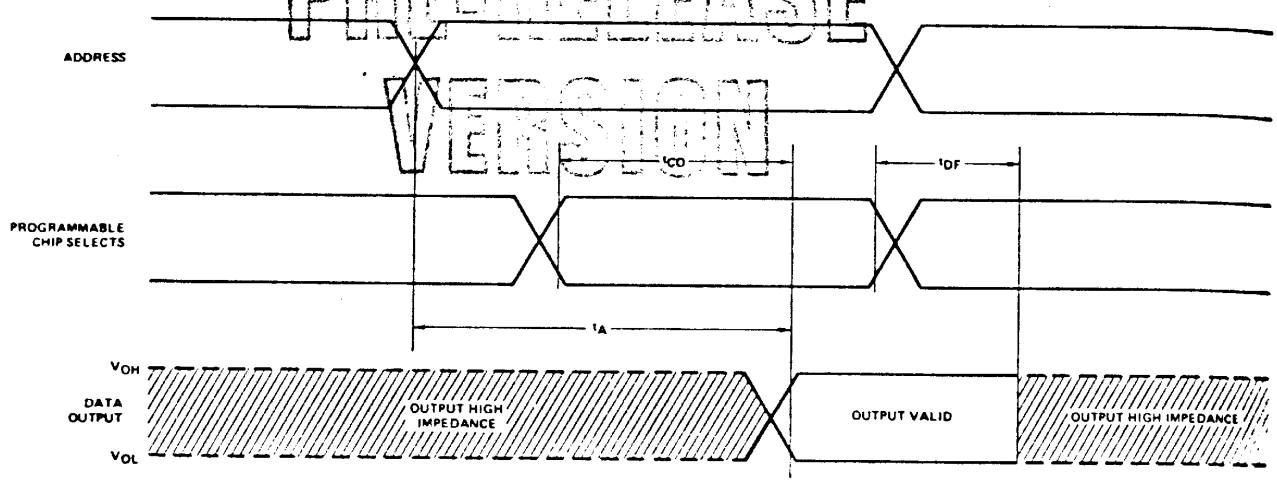
Output Load . . . 1 TTL Gate, and C_{LOAD} = 100 pF
Input Pulse Levels . . . . . 0.8 to 2.0V
Input Pulse Rise and Fall Times .(10% to 90%) 20 nS
Timing Measurement Reference Level
Input 1.5V
Output . . . . . 0.45V to 2.2V

CAPACITANCE(2) $T_A = 25°C, f = 1$ MHz

SYMBOL	TEST	LIMITS	
		TYP.	MAX.
C_{IN}	All Pins Except Pin Under Test Tied to AC Ground	4 pF	10 pF
C_{OUT}	All Pins Except Pin Under Test Tied to AC Ground	8 pF	15 pF

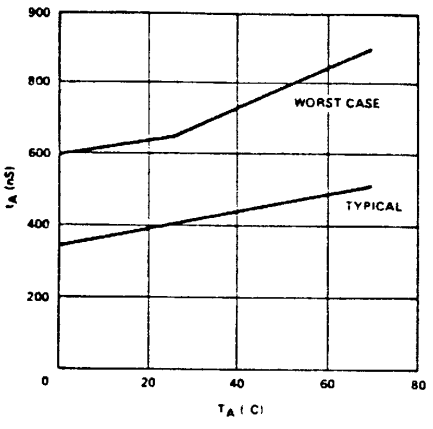
(2) This parameter is periodically sampled and is not 100% tested.

A.C. Waveforms

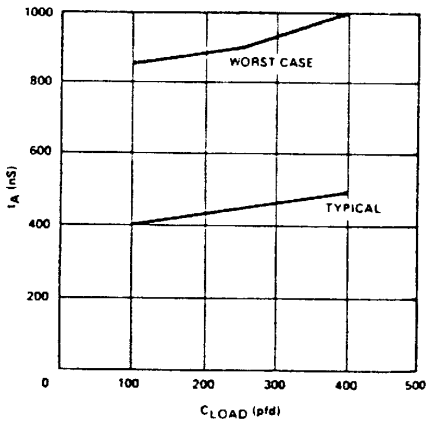


Typical A.C. Characteristics

ACCESS TIME VS. AMBIENT TEMPERATURE



ACCESS TIME VS. LOAD CAPACITANCE



2316A

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Ambient Temperature Under Bias . . . . . -10°C to 80°C
Storage Temperature . . . . . -65°C to +150°C
Voltage On Any Pin With Respect To Ground . . . . . -0.5V to +7V
Power Dissipation . . . . . 1.0 Watt

*COMMENT: Stresses above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

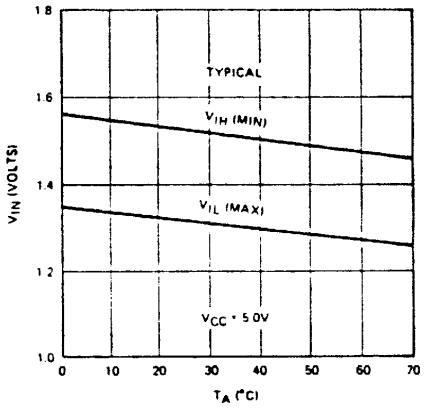
D.C. AND OPERATING CHARACTERISTICS T_A = 0°C to +70°C, V_{CC} = 5V ±5% unless otherwise specified

SYMBOL	PARAMETER	LIMITS MIN.	LIMITS TYP.(1)	LIMITS MAX.	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
I_{LI}	Input Load Current (All Input Pins)		1	10	µA	V_{IN} = 0 to 5.25V
I_{LOH}	Output Leakage Current			10	µA	CS = 2.2V, V_{OUT} = 4.0V
I_{LOL}	Output Leakage Current			-20	µA	CS = 2.2V, V_{OUT} = 0.45V
I_{CC}	Power Supply Current		40	98	mA	All inputs 5.25V Data Out Open
V_{IL}	Input "Low" Voltage	-0.5		0.8	V	
V_{IH}	Input "High" Voltage	2.0		V_{CC}+1.0V	V	
V_{OL}	Output "Low" Voltage			0.45	V	I_{OL} = 2.0 mA
V_{OH}	Output "High" Voltage	2.2			V	I_{OH} = -100 µA

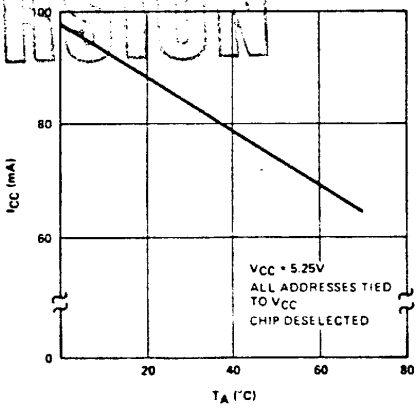
(1) Typical values for T_A = 25°C and nominal supply voltage.

TYPICAL D.C. CHARACTERISTICS

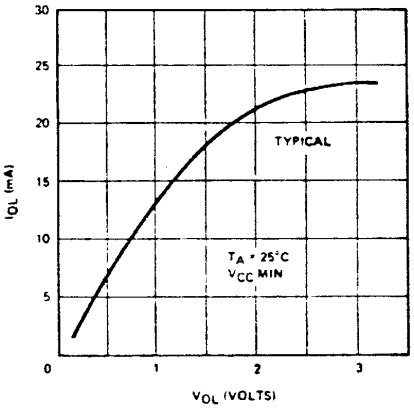
V_{IN} LIMITS VS. TEMPERATURE



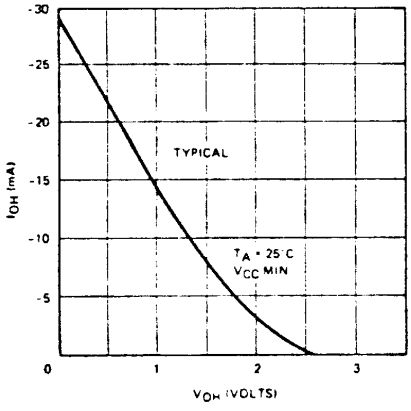
STATIC I_{CC} VS. AMBIENT TEMPERATURE WORST CASE



OUTPUT SINK CURRENT VS. OUTPUT VOLTAGE



OUTPUT SOURCE CURRENT VS. OUTPUT VOLTAGE



REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
A		655	INITIAL RELEASE	

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

This ENGINEERING RELEASE
Please revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.
The NOTICE OF PROPRIETARY PROPERTY
The information contained herein is the
proprietary property of Apple Computer, Inc.
The possessor agrees to the following:
(i) To maintain this document in confidence.
(ii) Not to reproduce or copy it.
(iii) Not to reveal or publish it in whole or part.

ENGINEERING SPECIFICATION

P/N 333-0001

DESCRIPTION: IC, Ram 16,384 X 1, 4116 type.

Part is to have a 200nS, or less access time (trac).

Specification Sheet of a typical RAM is to be filed under Apple P/N 333-0001.

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0001-A SH 1 OF 13

TOLERANCES	DRAWN BY / DATE	apple computer inc.
UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.	C. Brown 3-25-81	
DECIMALS .X ± .XX ± .XXX ±	CHECKED BY / DATE: P. Baum 3/31/81	TITLE: IC, Ram, 16K, 200NS, WO/Logo, WO/burn-in
ANGLES XX.X ±	APPROVED BY / DATE: P. Baum 4/1/81	
FRACTIONS ± DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.	RELEASED BY / DATE: 4/15/81	SIZE A / DRAWING NUMBER 333-0001-A
MATERIAL:		
NEXT ASSY. / FINISH:		SCALE: / SHEET 1 OF 13

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MOSTEK

16,384 X 1-BIT DYNAMIC RAM

MK4116(P/N)-2/3

FEATURES

- Recognized industry standard 16-pin configuration from MOSTEK
- 150ns access time, 375ns cycle (MK 4116-2)
  200ns access time, 375ns cycle (MK 4116-3)
- ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies (+12V, ±5V)
- Low power: 462mW active, 20mW standby (max)
- Output data controlled by $\overline{CAS}$ and unlatched at end of cycle to allow two dimensional chip selection and extended page boundary
- Common I/O capability using "early write" operation
- Read-Modify-Write, $\overline{RAS}$-only refresh, and Page-mode capability
- All inputs TTL compatible,low capacitance, and protected against static charge
- 128 refresh cycles
- ECL compatible on VBB power supply (-5.7V)

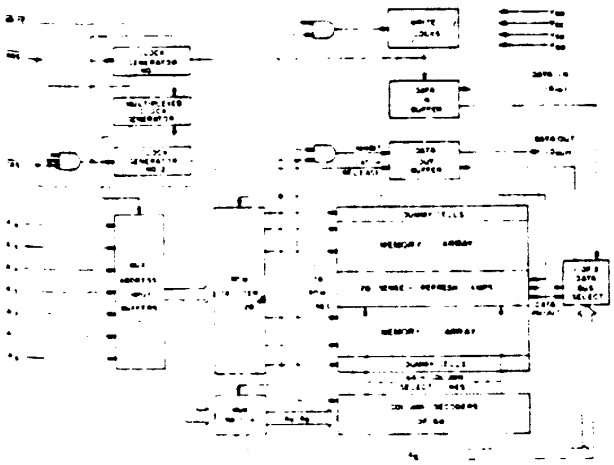
DESCRIPTION

The MK 4116 is a new generation MOS dynamic random access memory circuit organized as 16,384 words by 1 bit. As a state-of-the-art MOS memory device, the MK 4116 (16K RAM) incorporates advanced circuit techniques designed to provide wide operating margins, both internally and to the system user, while achieving performance levels in speed and power previously seen only in MOSTEK's high performance MK 4027 (4K RAM).

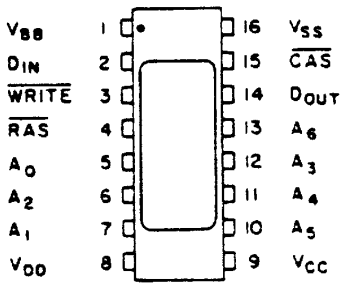
The technology used to fabricate the MK 4116 is MOSTEK's double-poly, N-channel silicon gate, POLY II ® process. This process, coupled with the use of a single transistor dynamic storage cell, provides the maximum possible circuit density and reliability, while maintaining high performance capability. The use of dynamic circuitry throughout, including sense amplifiers, assures that power dissipation is minimized without any sacrifice in speed or operating margin. These factors combine to make the MK 4116 a truly superior RAM product.

Multiplexed address inputs (a feature pioneered by MOSTEK for its 4K RAMS) permits the MK 4116 to be packaged in a standard 16-pin DIP. This recognized industry standard package configuration, while compatible with widely available automated testing and insertion equipment, provides highest possible system bit densities and simplifies system upgrade from 4K to 16K RAMs for new generation applications. Non-critical clock timing requirements allow use of the multiplexing technique while maintaining high performance.

FUNCTIONAL DIAGRAM



PIN CONNECTIONS



PIN NAMES

A_0-A_6	ADDRESS INPUTS
$\overline{CAS}$	COLUMN ADDRESS STROBE
D_{IN}	DATA IN
D_{OUT}	DATA OUT
$\overline{RAS}$	ROW ADDRESS STROBE
$\overline{WRITE}$	READ/WRITE INPUT
V_{BB}	POWER (-5V)
V_{CC}	POWER (+5V)
V_{DD}	POWER (+12V)
V_{SS}	GROUND

P/N 333-

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Voltage on any pin relative to V_{BB}	−0.5V to +20V
Voltage on V_{DD}, V_{CC} supplies relative to V_{SS}	−1.0V to +15.0V
$V_{BB}-V_{SS}$ ($V_{DD}-V_{SS}>0V$)	0V
Operating temperature, T_A (Ambient)	0°C to + 70°C
Storage temperature (Ambient) Ceramic	−55°C to + 150°C
Storage temperature, (Ambient) Plastic	−55°C to +125°C
Short circuit output current	50mA
Power dissipation	1 Watt

*Stresses greater than those listed unde "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may caus permanent damage to the device. This is stress rating only and functional operatio of the device at these or any other cond tions above those indicated in the opera tional sections of this specification is no implied. Exposure to absolute maximur rating conditions for extended periods ma affect reliability.

RECOMMENDED DC OPERATING CONDITIONS

(0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Supply Voltage	V_{DD}	10.8	12.0	13.2	Volts	2
	V_{CC}	4.5	5.0	5.5	Volts	2,3
	V_{SS}	0	0	0	Volts	2
	V_{BB}	−4.5	−5.0	−5.7	Volts	2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IHC}	2.4	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, all inputs except $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IH}	2.2	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input Low (Logic 0) Voltage, all inputs	V_{IL}	−1.0	–	.8	Volts	2

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

(0°C ≤ TA ≤ 70°C) (VDD = 12.0V ± 10%; VCC = 5.0V ±10%; -5.7V ≤ VBB ≤ -4.5V; VSS = 0V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
OPERATING CURRENT Average power supply operating current ($\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; t_{RC} = t_{RC} Min	I_{DD1}		35	mA	4
	I_{CC1}				5
	I_{BB1}		200	μA	
STANDBY CURRENT Power supply standby current ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IHC}, D_{OUT} = High Impedance)	I_{DD2}		1.5	mA	
	I_{CC2}	−10	10	μA	
	I_{BB2}		100	μA	
REFRESH CURRENT Average power supply current, refresh mode ($\overline{RAS}$ cycling, $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC}; t_{RC} = t_{RC} Min	I_{DD3}		25	mA	4
	I_{CC3}	−10	10	μA	
	I_{BB3}		200	μA	
PAGE MODE CURRENT Average power supply current, page-mode operation ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IL}, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; t_{PC} = t_{PC} Min	I_{DD4}		27	mA	4
	I_{CC4}				5
	I_{BB4}		200	μA	
INPUT LEAKAGE Input leakage current, any input (V_{BB} = −5V, 0V ≤ V_{IN} ≤ +7.0V, all other pins not under test = 0 volts)	$I_{I(L)}$	−10	10	μA	
OUTPUT LEAKAGE Output leakage current (D_{OUT} is disabled, 0V ≤ V_{OUT} ≤ +5.5V)	$I_{O(L)}$	−10	10	μA	
OUTPUT LEVELS Output high (Logic 1) voltage (I_{OUT} = −5mA)	V_{OH}	2.4		Volts	3
Output low (Logic 0) voltage (I_{OUT} = 4.2 mA)	V_{OL}		0.4	Volts	

NOTES:

1. T_A is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and higher power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met. See figure 1 for derating curve.
2. All voltages referenced to V_{SS}.
3. Output voltage will swing from V_{SS} to V_{CC} when activated with no current loading. For purposes of maintaining data in standby mode, V_{CC} may be reduced to V_{SS} without affecting refresh operations or data retention. However, the V_{OH} (min) specification is not guaranteed in this mode.
4. I_{DD1}, I_{DD3}, and I_{DD4} depend on cycle rate. See figures 2,3, ar 4 for I_{DD} limits at other cycle rates.
5. I_{CC1} and I_{CC4} depend upon output loading. During readout of high level data V_{CC} is connected through a low impedance (135Ω typ) to data out. At all other times I_{CC} consists of leakage currents only.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND RECOMMENDED AC OPERATING CONDITIONS (6,7,8)

(0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C) [1] (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{CC} = 5.0V ±10%, V_{SS} = 0V, V_{BB} = -5.7V ≤ VBB ≤ -4.5V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MK 4116-2		MK 4116-3		UNITS	NOTES
		MIN	MAX	MIN	MAX		
Random read or write cycle time	tRC	375		375		ns	9
Read-write cycle time	tRWC	375		375		ns	9
Read modify write cycle time	tRMW	320		405		ns	9
Page mode cycle time	tPC	170		225		ns	9
Access time from $\overline{RAS}$	tRAC		150		200	ns	10,12
Access time from $\overline{CAS}$	tCAC		100		135	ns	11,12
Output buffer turn-off delay	tOFF	0	40	0	50	ns	13
Transition time (rise and fall)	tT	3	35	3	50	ns	8
$\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	tRP	100		120		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ pulse width	tRAS	150	10,000	200	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ hold time	tRSH	100		135		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ hold time	tCSH	150		200		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ pulse width	tCAS	100	10,000	135	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{CAS}$ delay time	tRCD	20	50	25	65	ns	14
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	tCRP	-20		-20		ns	
Row Address set-up time	tASR	0		0		ns	
Row Address hold time	tRAH	20		25		ns	
Column Address set-up time	tASC	-10		-10		ns	
Column Address hold time	tCAH	45		55		ns	
Column Address hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	tAR	95		120		ns	
Read command set-up time	tRCS	0		0		ns	
Read command hold time	tRCH	0		0		ns	
Write command hold time	tWCH	45		55		ns	
Write command hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	tWCR	95		120		ns	
Write command pulse width	tWP	45		55		ns	
Write command to $\overline{RAS}$ lead time	tRWL	50		70		ns	
Write command to $\overline{CAS}$ lead time	tCWL	50		70		ns	
Data-in set-up time	tDS	0		0		ns	15
Data-in hold time	tDH	45		55		ns	15
Data-in hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	tDHR	95		120		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ precharge time (for page-mode cycle only)	tCP	60		80		ns	
Refresh period	tREF		2		2	ms	
$\overline{WRITE}$ command set-up time	tWCS	-20		-20		ns	16
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	tCWD	60		80		ns	16
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	tRWD	110		145		ns	16

NOTES (Continued)

6. Several cycles are required after power-up before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose.
7. AC measurements assume tT = 5ns.
8. VIHC (min) or VIH (min) and VIL (max) are reference levels for measuring timing of input signals. Also transition times are measured between VIHC or VIH and VIL.
9. The specifications for tRC (min) tRMW (min) and tRWC (min) are used only to indicate cycle time at which proper operation over the full temperature range (0°C ≤ TA ≤ 70°C) is assured.
10. Assumes that tRCD ≤ tRCD (Max). If tRCD is greater than the maximum recommended value shown in this table, tRAC will increase by the amount that tRCD exceeds the value shown.
11. Assumes that tRCD (max).
12. Measured with a load equivalent to 2 TTL loads and 100pF.
13. tOFF (max) defines the time at which the output achieves the open circuit condition and is not referenced to output voltage levels.
14. Operation within the tRCD (max) limit insures that tRAC (max) can be met. tRCD (max) is specified as a reference point only: if tRCD is greater than the specified tRCD (max) limit, then access time is controlled exclusively by tCAC.
15. These parameters are referenced to CAS leading edge in early write cycles and to WRITE leading edge in delayed write or read-modify-write cycles.
16. tWCS, tCWD and tRWD are restrictive operating parameters in read write and read modify write cycles only. If tWCS ≥ tWCS (min), the cycle is an early write cycle and the data out pin will remain open circuit (high impedance) throughout the entire cycle. If tCWD ≥ tCWD (min) and tRWD ≥ tRWD (min), the cycle is a read-write cycle and the data out will contain data read from the selected cell. If neither of the above sets of conditions is satisfied the condition of the data out (at access time) is indeterminate.
17. Effective capacitance calculated from the equation C = I·Δt / ΔV with ΔV = 3 volts and power supplies at nominal levels.
18. CAS = VIHC to disable DOUT.

AC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

$(0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C)$ $(V_{DD} = 12.0V \pm 10\%; V_{SS} = 0V; V_{BB} = -5.7V \leq V_{BB} \leq -4.5V)$

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Input Capacitance (A_0–A_6), D_{IN}	C_{I1}	4	5	pF	17
Input Capacitance $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	C_{I2}	8	10	pF	17
Output Capacitance (D_{OUT})	C_O	5	7	pF	17,18

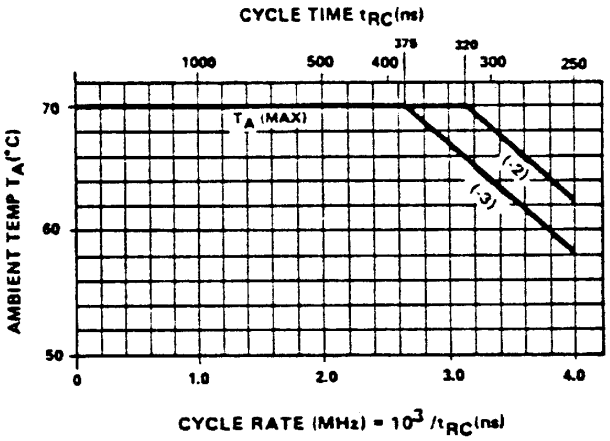


Fig. 1 Maximum ambient temperature versus cycle rate for extended frequency operation. T_A (max) for operation at cycling rates greater than 2.66 MHz ($t_{CYC} < 375ns$) is determined by T_A (max)° C = 70 – 9.0 x (cycle rate MHz –2.66) for -3. T_A (max) °C = 70 – 9.0 x cycle rate MHz –3.125MHz) for -2 only.

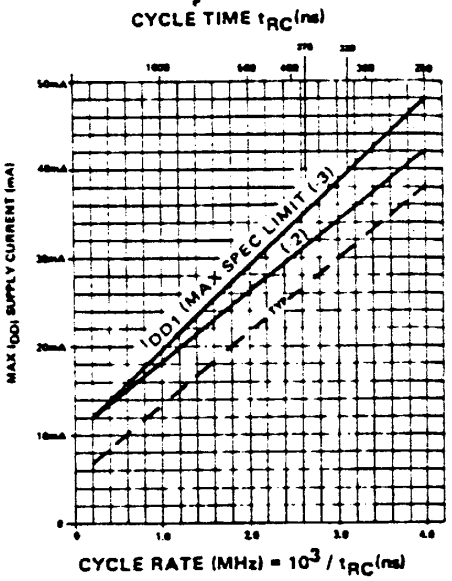


Fig. 2 Maximum I_{DD1} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD1} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD1} (max) mA = 10 + 9.4 x cycle rate (MHz) for -3
I_{DD1} (max) mA = 10 + 8.0 x cycle rate (MHz) for -2

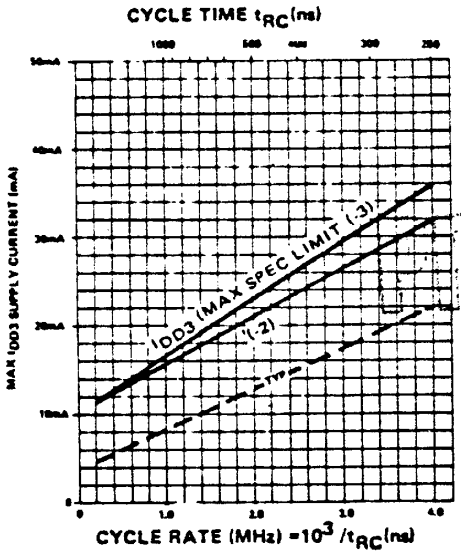


Fig. 3 Maximum I_{DD3} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD3} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD3}(max) mA = 10 + 6.5 x cycle rate (MHz) for -3
I_{DD3}(max) mA = 10 + 5.5 x cycle rate (MHz) for -2

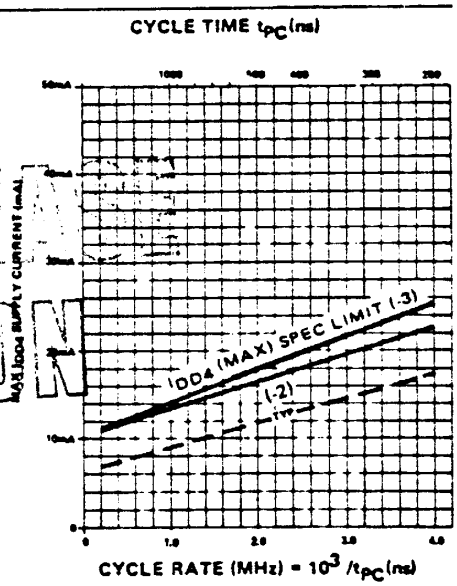
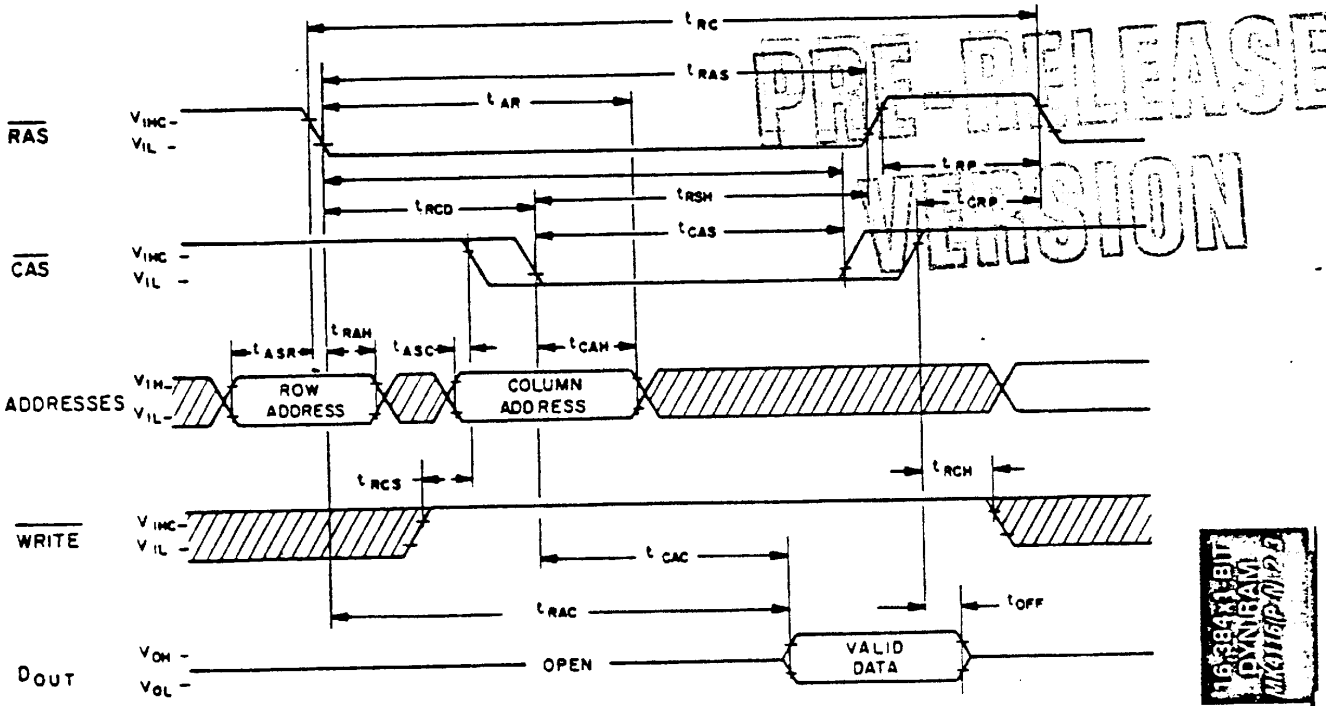


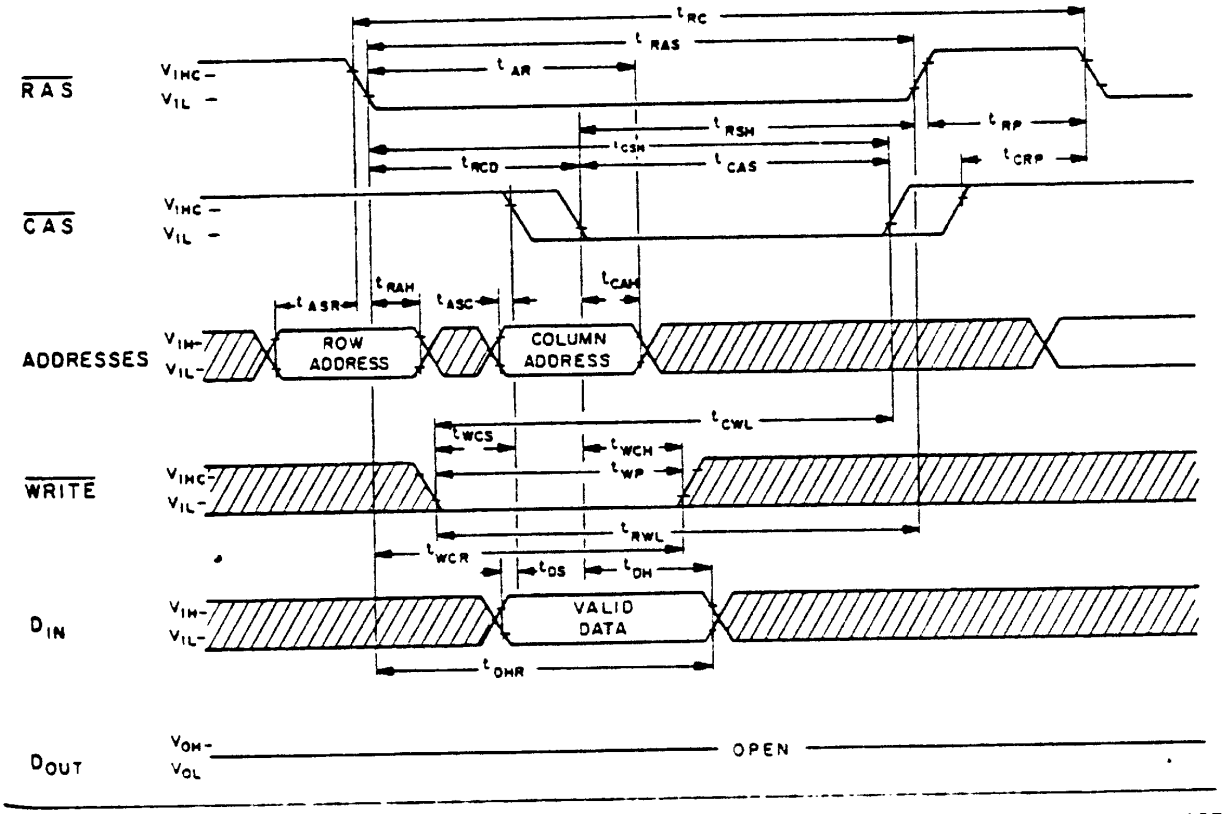
Fig. 4 Maximum I_{DD4} versus cycle rate for device operation in page mode. I_{DD4} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD4} (max) mA = 10 + 3.75 x cycle rate (MHz) for -3
I_{DD4} (max) mA = 10 + 3.2 x cycle rate (MHz) for -2

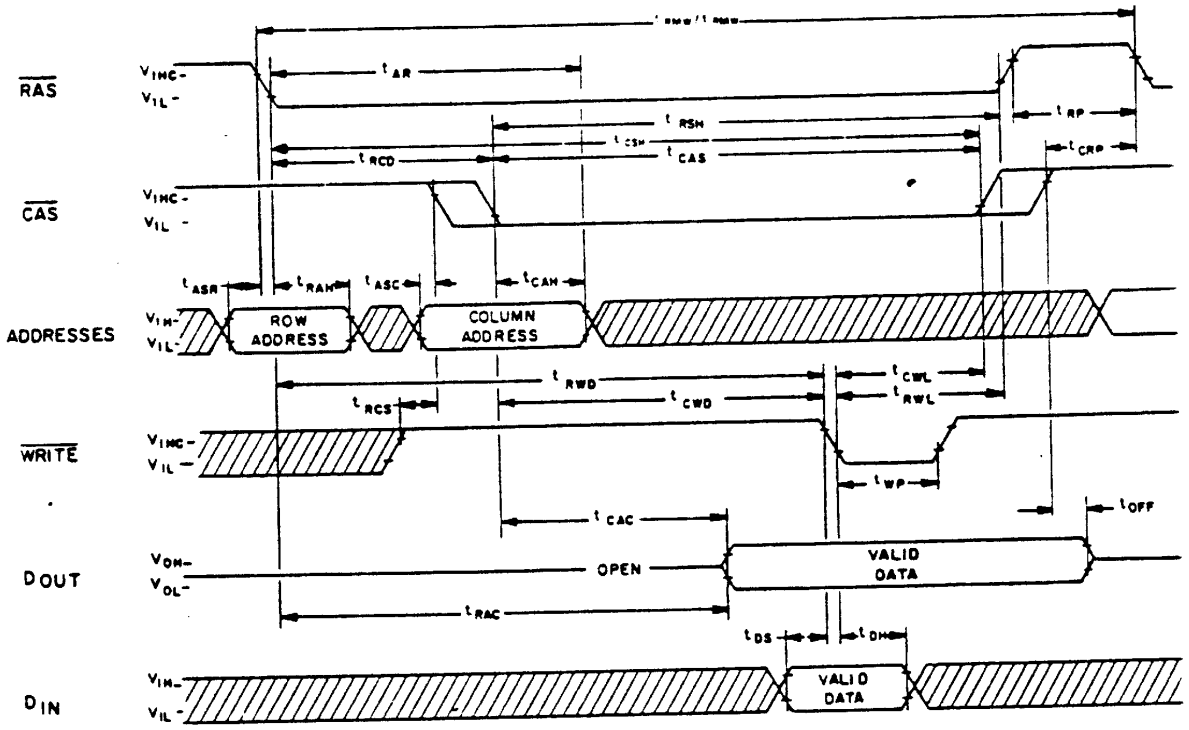
READ CYCLE



WRITE CYCLE (EARLY WRITE)

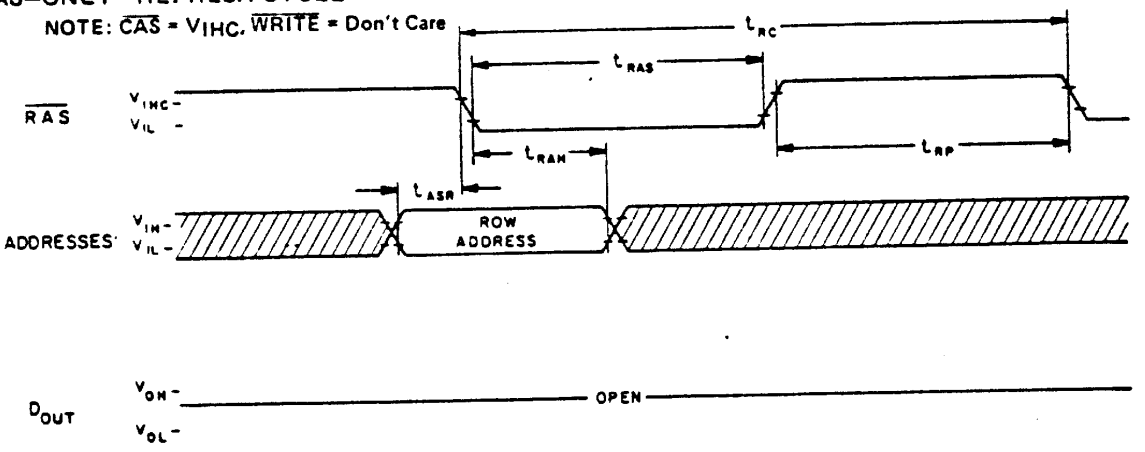


READ–WRITE/READ–MODIFY–WRITE CYCLE



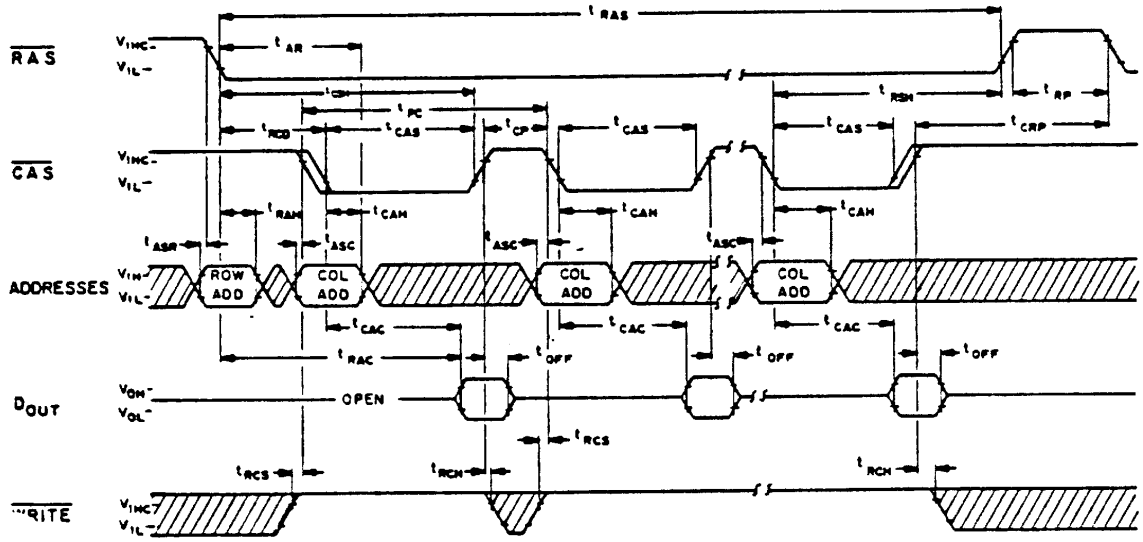
"RAS–ONLY" REFRESH CYCLE

NOTE: CAS = VIHC, WRITE = Don't Care

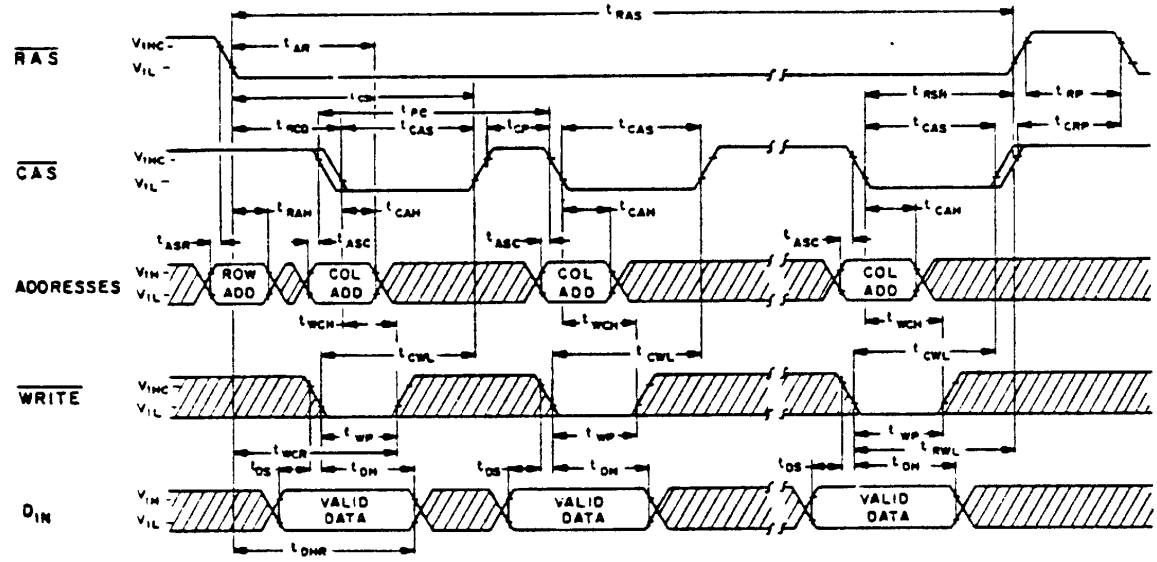


PRE-RELEASE VERSION

AGE MODE READ CYCLE



AGE MODE WRITE CYCLE



DESCRIPTION (continued)

System oriented features include ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies, direct interfacing capability with high performance logic families such as Schottky TTL, maximum input noise immunity to minimize "false triggering" of the inputs (a common cause of soft errors), on-chip address and data registers which eliminate the need for interface registers, and two chip select methods to allow the user to determine the appropriate speed/power characteristics of his memory system. The MK 4116 also incorporates several flexible timing/operating modes. In addition to the usual read, write, and read-modify-write cycles, the MK 4116 is capable of delayed write cycles, page-mode operation and RAS-only refresh. Proper control of the clock inputs(RAS, CAS and WRITE) allows common I/O capability, two dimensional chip selection, and extended page boundaries (when operating in page mode).

ADDRESSING

The 14 address bits required to decode 1 of the 16,384 cell locations within the MK 4116 are multiplexed onto the 7 address inputs and latched into the on-chip address latches by externally applying two negative going TTL-level clocks. The first clock, the Row Address Strobe (RAS), latches the 7 row address bits into the chip. The second clock, the Column Address Strobe (CAS), subsequently latches the 7 column address bits into the chip. Each of these signals, RAS and CAS, triggers a sequence of events which are controlled by different delayed internal clocks. The two clock chains are linked together logically in such a way that the address multiplexing operation is done outside of the critical path timing sequence for read data access. The later events in the CAS clock sequence are inhibited until the occurence of a delayed signal derived from the RAS clock chain. This "gated CAS" feature allows the CAS clock to be externally activated as soon as the Row Address Hold Time specification (t_{RAH}) has been satisfied and the address inputs have been changed from Row address to Column address information.

Note that CAS can be activated at any time after t_{RAH} and it will have no effect on the worst case data access time (t_{RAC}) up to the point in time when the delayed row clock no longer inhibits the remaining sequence of column clocks. Two timing endpoints result from the internal gating of CAS which are called t_{RCD} (min) and t_{RCD} (max). No data storage or reading errors will result if CAS is applied to the MK 4116 at a point in time beyond the t_{RCD} (max) limit. However, access time will then be determined exclusively by the access time from CAS (t_{CAC}) rather than from RAS (t_{RAC}), and access time from RAS will be lengthened by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the t_{RCD} (max) limit.

DATA INPUT/OUTPUT

Data to be written into a selected cell is latched into an on-chip register by a combination of WRITE and CAS while RAS is active. The later of the signals (WRITE or CAS) to make its negative transition is the strobe for the Data In (D_{IN}) register. This permits several options in the write cycle timing. In a write cycle, if the WRITE input is brought low (active) prior to CAS, the D_{IN} is strobed by CAS, and the set-up and hold times are referenced to CAS. If the input data is not available at CAS time or if it is desired that the cycle be a read-write cycle, the WRITE signal will be delayed until after CAS has made its negative transition. In this "delayed write cycle" the data input set-up and hold times are referenced to the negative edge of WRITE rather than CAS. (To illustrate this feature, D_{IN} is referenced to WRITE in the timing diagrams depicting the read-write and page-mode write cycles while the "early write" cycle diagram shows D_{IN} referenced to CAS).

Data is retrieved from the memory in a read cycle by maintaining WRITE in the inactive or high state throughout the portion of the memory cycle in which CAS is active (low). Data read from the selected cell will be available at the output within the specified access time.

DATA OUTPUT CONTROL

The normal condition of the Data Output (D_{OUT}) of the MK 4116 is the high impedance (open-circuit) state. That is to say, anytime CAS is at a high level, the D_{OUT} pin will be floating. The only time the output will turn on and contain either a logic 0 or logic 1 is at access time during a read cycle. D_{OUT} will remain valid from access time until CAS is taken back to the inactive (high level) condition.

If the memory cycle in progress is a read, read-modify write, or a delayed write cycle, then the data output will go from the high impedance state to the active condition, and at access time will contain the data read from the selected cell. This output data is the same polarity (not inverted) as the input data. Once having gone active, the output will remain valid until CAS is taken to the precharge (logic 1) state,whether or not RAS goes into precharge.

If the cycle in progress is an "early-write" cycle (WRITE active before CAS goes active), then the output pin will maintain the high impedance state throughout the entire cycle. Note that with this type of output configuration, the user is given full control of the D_{OUT} pin simply by controlling the placement of WRITE command during a write cycle, and the pulse width of the Column Address Strobe during read operations. Note also that even though data is not latched at the output, data can remain valid from access time until the beginning of a subsequent cycle without paying any penalty in overall memory cycle time (stretching the cycle).

This type of output operation results in some very significant system implications.

Common I/O Operation – If all write operations are handled in the "early write" mode, then D_{IN} can be connected directly to D_{OUT} for a common I/O data bus.

Data Output Control – D_{OUT} will remain valid during a read cycle from t_{CAC} until CAS goes back to a high level (precharge), allowing data to be valid from one cycle up until a new memory cycle begins with no penalty in cycle time. This also makes the RAS/CAS clock timing relationship very flexible.

Two Methods of Chip Selection – Since D_{OUT}

is not latched, $\overline{CAS}$ is not required to turn off the outputs of unselected memory devices in a matrix. This means that both $\overline{CAS}$ and/or $\overline{RAS}$ can be decoded for chip selection. If both $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ are decoded, then a two dimensional (X,Y) chip select array can be realized.

Extended Page Boundary — Page-mode operation allows for successive memory cycles at multiple column locations of the same row address. By decoding $\overline{CAS}$ as a page cycle select signal, the page boundary can be extended beyond the 128 column locations in a single chip. (See page-mode operation).

OUTPUT INTERFACE CHARACTERISTICS

The three state data output buffer presents the data output pin with a low impedance to V_{CC} for a logic 1 and a low impedance to V_{SS} for a logic 0. The effective resistance to V_{CC} (logic 1 state) is 420 Ω maximum and 135Ω typically. The resistance to V_{SS} (logic 0 state) is 95 Ω maximum and 35 Ω typically. The separate V_{CC} pin allows the output buffer to be powered from the supply voltage of the logic to which the chip is interfaced. During battery ndby operation, the V_{CC} pin may have power moved without affecting the MK 4116 refresh operation. This allows all system logic except the $\overline{RAS}$ timing circuitry and the refresh address logic to be turned off during battery standby to conserve power.

PAGE MODE OPERATION

The "Page Mode" feature of the MK 4116 allows for successive memory operations at multiple column locations of the same row address with increased speed without an increase in power. This is done by strobing the row address into the chip and maintaining the $\overline{RAS}$ signal at a logic 0 throughout all successive memory cycles in which the row address is common. This "page-mode" of operation will not dissipate the power associated with the negative going edge of $\overline{RAS}$. Also, the time required for strobing in a new row address is eliminated, thereby decreasing the access and cycle times.

The page boundary of a single MK 4116 is limited to the 128 column locations determined by all combinations of the 7 column address bits. However, in system applications which utilize more than 16,384 data words, (more than one 16K memory block), the page boundary can be extended by using $\overline{CAS}$ rather than $\overline{RAS}$ as the chip select signal. $\overline{RAS}$ is applied to all devices to latch the row address into each device and then $\overline{CAS}$ is decoded and serves as a page cycle select signal. Only those devices which receive both $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ signals will execute a read or write cycle.

REFRESH

Refresh of the dynamic cell matrix is accomplished performing a memory cycle at each of the 128 v addresses within each 2 millisecond time interval. Although any normal memory cycle will perform the refresh operation, this function is most easily accomplished with "$\overline{RAS}$-only" cycles. $\overline{RAS}$-only refresh results in a substantial reduction in operating power. This reduction in power is reflected in the I_{DD3} specification.

POWER CONSIDERATIONS

Most of the circuitry used in the MK 4116 is dynamic and most of the power drawn is the result of an address strobe edge. Consequently, the dynamic power is primarily a function of operating frequency rather than active duty cycle (refer to the MK 4116 current waveforms in figure 5). This current characteristic of the MK 4116 precludes inadvertent burn out of the device in the event that the clock inputs become shorted to ground due to system malfunction.

Although no particular power supply noise restriction exists other than the supply voltages remain within the specified tolerance limits, adequate decoupling should be provided to suppress high frequency noise resulting from the transient current of the device. This insures optimum system performance and reliability. Bulk capacitance requirements are minimal since the MK 4116 draws very little steady state (DC) current.

In system applications requiring lower power dissipation, the operating frequency (cycle rate) of the MK 4116 can be reduced and the (guaranteed maximum) average power dissipation of the device will be lowered in accordance with the I_{DD1} (max) spec limit curve illustrated in figure 2. NOTE: The MK 4116 family is guaranteed to have a maximum IDD1 requirement of 35mA @ 375ns cycle (320ns cycle for the -2) with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C. A lower operating frequency, for example 1 microsecond cycle, results in a reduced maximum Idd1 requirement of under 20mA with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C.

It is possible the MK4116 family (-2 and 3 speed selections for example) at frequencies higher than specified, provided all AC operating parameters are met. Operation at shorter cycle times (<tRC min) results in higher power dissipation and, therefore, a reduction in ambient temperature is required. Refer to Figure 1 for derating curve.

NOTE. Additional power supply tolerance has been included on the VBB supply to allow direct interface capability with both -5V systems -5.2V ECL systems.

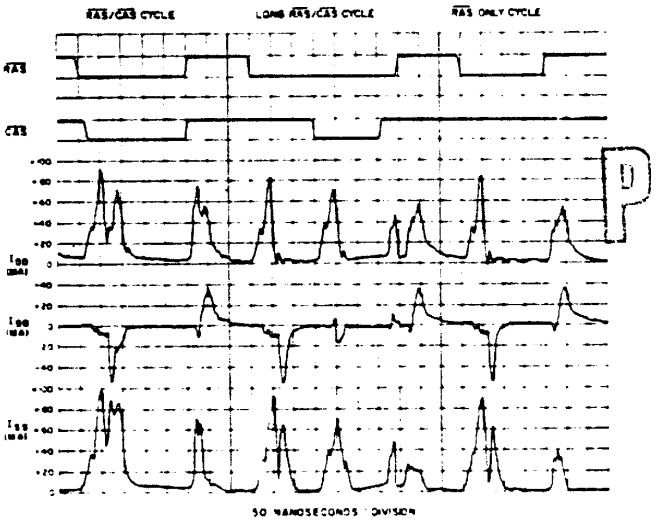


Fig. 5 Typical Current Waveforms

Although $\overline{RAS}$ and/or $\overline{CAS}$ can be decoded and used as a chip select signal for the MK 4116, overall system power is minimized if the Row Address Strobe ($\overline{RAS}$) is used for this purpose. All unselected devices (those which do not receive a $\overline{RAS}$) will remain in a low power (standby) mode regardless of the state of $\overline{CAS}$.

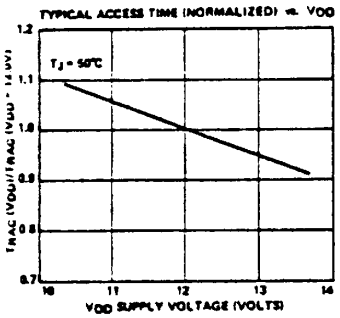
POWER UP

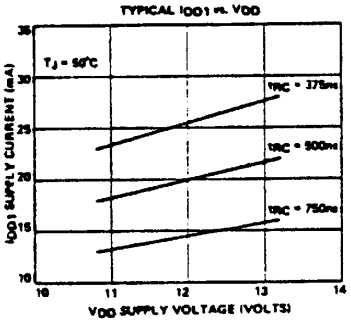
The MK 4116 requires no particular power supply sequencing so long as the Absolute Maximum Rating Conditions are observed. However, in order to insure compliance with the Absolute Maximum Ratings, MOSTEK recommends sequencing of power supplies such that V_{BB} is applied first and removed last. V_{BB} should never be more positive than V_{SS} when power is applied to V_{DD}.

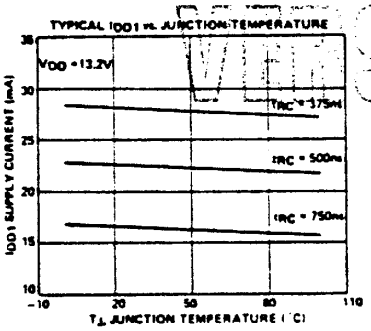
Under system failure conditions in which one or more supplies exceed the specified limits significant additional margin against catastrophic device failure may be achieved by forcing $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ to the inactive state (high level).

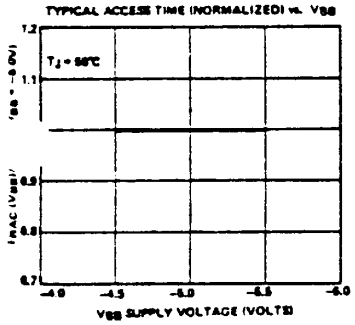
After power is applied to the device, the MK 4116 requires several cycles before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose.

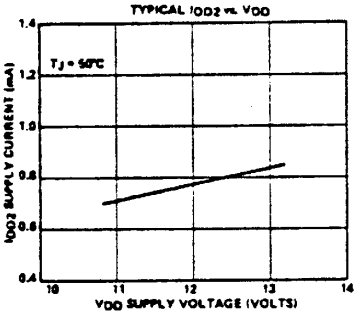
TYPICAL CHARACTERISTICS

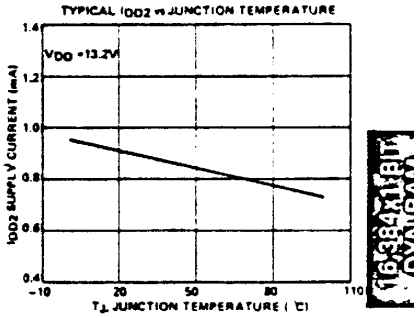


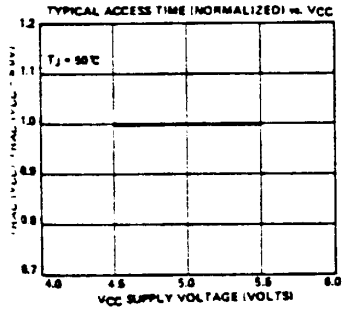


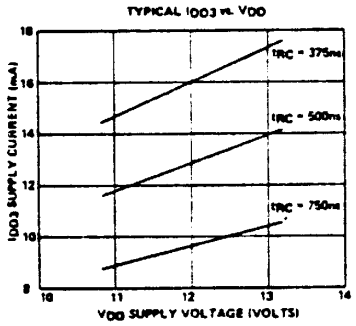


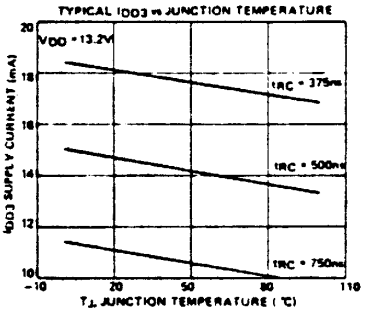


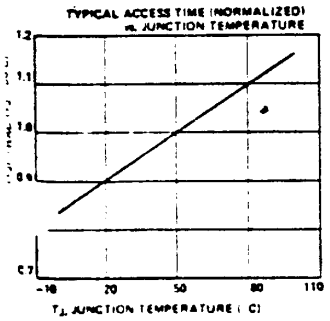


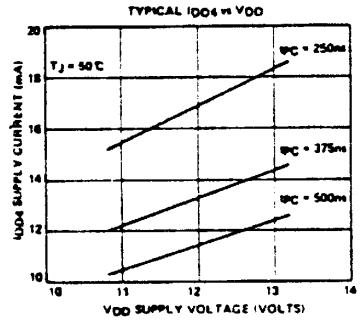


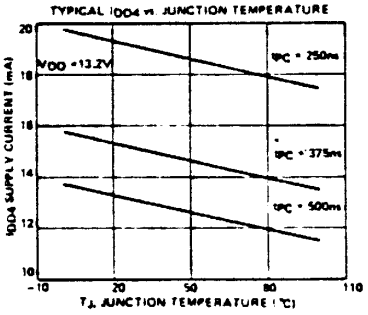


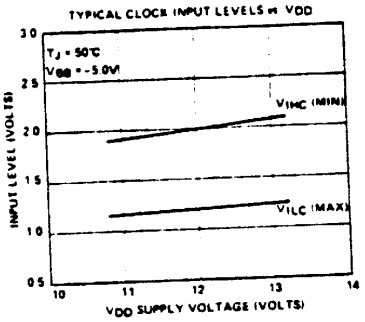


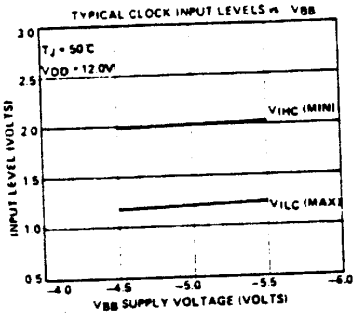


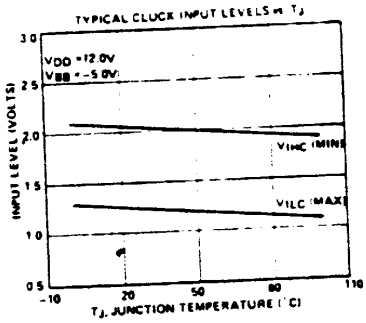


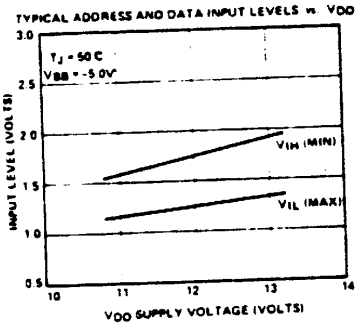


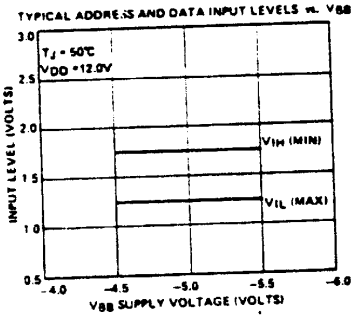


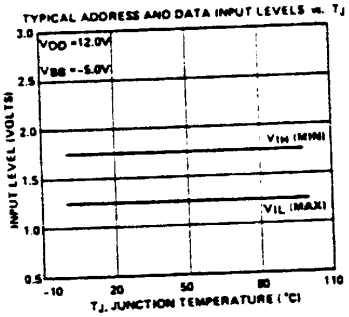












REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
A		655	INITIAL RELEASE	

ENGINEERING SPECIFICATION

P/N 333-0002

DESCRIPTION: IC, Ram 32,768 X 1, MK4332.

Part is to have a 200nS. or less assess time (trac).

Specification Sheet of a MK4332 RAM is to be filed under Apple P/N 333-0002.

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0002-A

SH 1 OF 13

TOLERANCES UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES. DECIMALS .X ± ___ .XX ± ___ .XXX ± ___ ANGLES XX.X ± ___ FRACTIONS ± ___ DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.	DRAWN BY C. Brown DATE 3-15-81	apple computer inc.
	CHECKED BY P. Brown DATE 3/30/81	
	APPROVED BY P Quinn DATE 4/1/81	TITLE IC, Ram, 32K, 200NS, WO/Logo, WO/burn-in
	RELEASED BY DATE 4/15/81	SIZE A / DRAWING NUMBER 333-0002-A
MATERIAL:		
NEXT ASSY. / FINISH:		SCALE: / SHEET 1 OF 13

PRELIMINARY

MOSTEK®

32,768 x 1-BIT DYNAMIC RAM

MK4332(P)-3

FEATURES

- Utilizes two industry standard MK 4116 devices in an 18-pin package configuration
- 200ns access time, 375ns cycle (MK 4116-3)
- Separate $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ Clocks
- ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies (+12V,±5V)
- Low power: 482mW active, 40mW standby (max)
- Output data controlled by $\overline{CAS}$ and unlatched at end of cycle to allow two dimensional chip selection and extended page boundary
- Common I/O capability using "early write" operation
- Read-Modify-Write, $\overline{RAS}$-only refresh, and Page-mode capability
- All inputs TTL compatible,low capacitance, and protected against static charge
- 128 refresh cycles for each MK 4116 device in the dual density configuration
- Pin compatible to MK 4116 and MK 4164

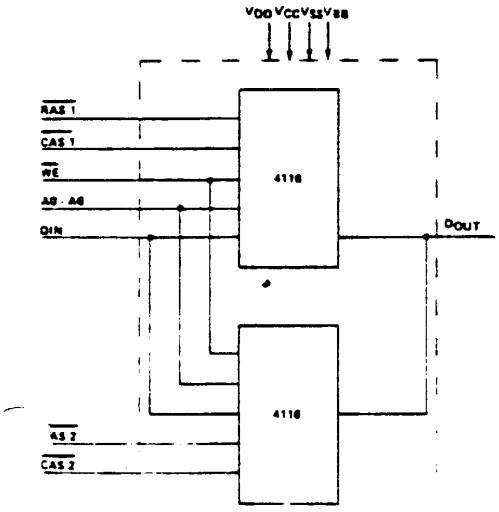
DESCRIPTION

The MK 4332 is a new generation MOS dynamic random access memory circuit organized as 32,768 words by 1 bit. As a state-of-the-art MOS memory device, the MK4332 (32K RAM) incorporates advanced circuit techniques designed to provide wide operating margins, both internally and to the system user .

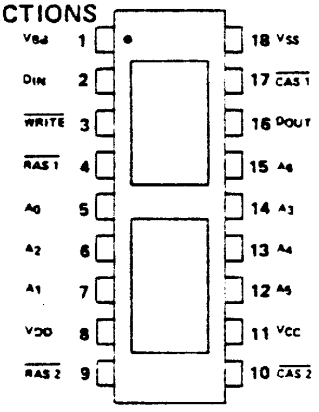
The technology used to fabricate the MK 4332 is MOSTEK's double-poly, N-channel silicon gate, POLY II⊖ process. This process, coupled with the use of a single transistor dynamic storage cell, provides the maximum possible circuit density and reliability, while maintaining high performance capability. The use of dynamic circuitry throughout, including sense amplifiers, assures that power dissipation is minimized without any sacrifice in speed or operating margin. These factors combine to make the MK 4332 a truly superior RAM product.

Multiplexed address inputs (a feature pioneered by MOSTEK for its 4K RAMS) permits the MK 4332 to be packaged in a standard 18-pin DIP. This standard package configuration, is compatible with widely available automated testing and insertion equipment, and it provides the highest possible system bit densities and simplifies system upgrade from 16K to 64K RAMs for new generation applications. Non-critical clock timing requirements allow use of the multiplexing technique while maintaining high performance.

FUNCTIONAL DIAGRAM



PIN CONNECTIONS



PIN NAMES

A0-A6	ADDRESS INPUTS
CAS	COLUMN ADDRESS STROBE
DIN	DATA IN
DOUT	DATA OUT
RAS	ROW ADDRESS STROBE
WE	READ/WRITE INPUT
VBB	POWER (-5V)
VCC	POWER (+5V)
VDD	POWER (+12V)
VSS	GROUND

P/N

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Voltage on any pin relative to V_{BB} ..... −0.5V to +20V
Voltage on V_{DD}, V_{CC} supplies relative to V_{SS} ..... −1.0V to +15.0V
$V_{BB}-V_{SS}$ ($V_{DD}-V_{SS}>0V$) 0V
Operating temperature, T_A (Ambient) ..... 0°C to + 70°C
Storage temperature (Ambient) ..... −65°C to + 150°C
Short circuit output current 50mA
Power dissipation ..... 1 Watt

*Stresses greater than those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect reliability.

RECOMMENDED DC OPERATING CONDITIONS[6]

($0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C$)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Supply Voltage	V_{DD} V_{CC} V_{SS} V_{BB}	10.8 4.5 0 −4.5	12.0 5.0 0 −5.0	13.2 5.5 0 −5.7	Volts Volts Volts Volts	2 2,3 2 2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IHC}	2.4	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input High (Logic 1) Voltage, all inputs except $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ $\overline{WRITE}$	V_{IH}	2.2	–	7.0	Volts	2
Input Low (Logic 0) Voltage, all inputs	V_{IL}	−1.0	–	.8	Volts	2

DC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

($0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C$) (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{CC} = 5.0V ± 10%; −5.7V ≤ V_{BB} ≤ −4.5V; V_{SS} = 0V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MIN	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
OPERATING CURRENT Average power supply operating current ($\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; t_{RC} = t_{RC} Min)	I_{DD1} I_{CC1} I_{BB1}		36.5 300	mA µA	4,19 5 19
STANDBY CURRENT Power supply standby current ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IHC}, D_{OUT} = High Impedance)	I_{DD2} I_{CC2} I_{BB2}	−20	3.0 20 200	mA µA µA	
REFRESH CURRENT Average power supply current, refresh mode ($\overline{RAS}$ cycling, $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC}; t_{RC} = t_{RC} Min)	I_{DD3} I_{CC3} I_{BB3}	−20	26.5 20 300	mA µA µA	4, 19 19
PAGE MODE CURRENT Average power supply current, page-mode operation ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IL}, $\overline{CAS}$ cycling; t_{PC} = t_{PC} Min)	I_{DD4} I_{CC4} I_{BB4}		28.5 300	mA µA	4,19 5 19
INPUT LEAKAGE Input leakage current, any input (V_{BB} = −5V, 0V ≤ V_{IN} ≤ +7.0V, all other pins not under test = 0 volts)	$I_{I(L)}$	−20	20	µA	
OUTPUT LEAKAGE Output leakage current (D_{OUT} is disabled, 0V ≤ V_{OUT} ≤ +5.5V)	$I_{O(L)}$	−20	20	µA	
OUTPUT LEVELS Output high (Logic 1) voltage (I_{OUT} = −5mA) Output low (Logic 0) voltage (I_{OUT} = 4.2 mA)	V_{OH} V_{OL}	2.4	 0.4	Volts Volts	3

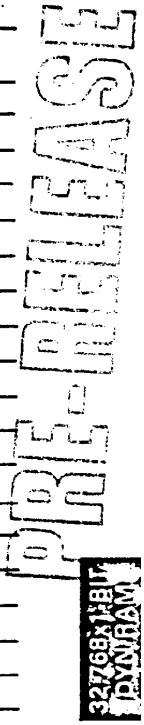
NOTES:

1. T_A is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and higher power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met. See figure 1 for derating curve.
2. All voltages referenced to V_{SS}.
3. Output voltage will swing from V_{SS} to V_{CC} when activated with no current loading. For purposes of maintaining data in standby mode, V_{CC} may be reduced to V_{SS} without affecting refresh operations or data retention. However, the V_{OH} (min) specification is not guaranteed in this mode.
4. I_{DD1}, I_{DD3}, and I_{DD4} depend on cycle rate. See figures 2,3, and 4 for I_{DD} limits at other cycle rates.
5. I_{CC1} and I_{CC4} depend upon output loading. During readout of high level data V_{CC} is connected through a low impedance (135 Ω typ) to data out. At all other times I_{CC} consists of leakage currents only.

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS AND RECOMMENDED AC OPERATING CONDITIONS (6,7,8)

(0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C)[1] (V_{DD} = 12.0V ± 10%; V_{CC} = 5.0V ±10%, V_{SS} = 0V, -5.7V≤ V_{BB} ≤ -4.5V)

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	MK 4332 MIN	MK 4332 MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Random read or write cycle time	t_{RC}	375		ns	9
Read-write cycle time	t_{RWC}	375		ns	9
Read modify write cycle time	t_{RMW}	405		ns	9
Page mode cycle time	t_{PC}	225		ns	9
Access time from $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RAC}		200	ns	10,12
Access time from $\overline{CAS}$	t_{CAC}		135	ns	11,12
Output buffer turn-off delay	t_{OFF}	0	50	ns	13
Transition time (rise and fall)	t_T	3	50	ns	8
$\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	t_{RP}	120		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ pulse width	t_{RAS}	200	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ hold time	t_{RSH}	135		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ hold time	t_{CSH}	200		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ pulse width	t_{CAS}	135	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{CAS}$ delay time	t_{RCD}	25	65	ns	14
[illegible] to $\overline{RAS}$ precharge time	t_{CRP}	−20		ns	
[illegible] Address set-up time	t_{ASR}	0		ns	
Row Address hold time	t_{RAH}	25		ns	
Column Address set-up time	t_{ASC}	−10		ns	
Column Address hold time	t_{CAH}	55		ns	
Column Address hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{AR}	120		ns	
Read command set-up time	t_{RCS}	0		ns	
Read command hold time	t_{RCH}	0		ns	
Write command hold time	t_{WCH}	55		ns	
Write command hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{WCR}	120		ns	
Write command pulse width	t_{WP}	55		ns	
Write command to $\overline{RAS}$ lead time	t_{RWL}	70		ns	
Write command to $\overline{CAS}$ lead time	t_{CWL}	70		ns	
Data-in set-up time	t_{DS}	0		ns	15
Data-in hold time	t_{DH}	55		ns	15
Data-in hold time referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{DHR}	120		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ precharge time (for page-mode cycle only)	t_{CP}	80		ns	
Refresh period	t_{REF}		2	ms	
$\overline{WRITE}$ command set-up time	t_{WCS}	−20		ns	16
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	t_{CWD}	80		ns	16
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ delay	t_{RWD}	145		ns	16



NOTES (Continued)

6 Several cycles are required after power-up before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose.

7 AC measurements assume t_T = 5ns.

8 V_{IHC} (min) or V_{IH} (min) and V_{IL} (max) are reference levels for measuring timing of input signals. Also, transition times are measured between V_{IHC} or V_{IH} and V_{IL}.

9 The specifications for t_{RC} (min), t_{RMW} (min) and t_{RWC} (min) are used only to indicate cycle time at which proper operation over the full temperature range (0°C ≤ T_A ≤ 70°C) is assured.

10 Assumes that $t_{RCD} \leq t_{RCD}$ (max). If t_{RCD} is greater than the maximum recommended value shown in this table, t_{RAC} will increase by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the value shown.

11 Assumes that $t_{RCD} \leq t_{RCD}$ (max).

12 Measured with a load equivalent to 2 TTL loads and 100pF.

13 t_{OFF} [illegible] is the time at which the output achieves the open circuit condition and is not referenced to output voltage levels.

14 Operation within the t_{RCD} (max) limit insures that t_{RAC} (max) can be met. t_{RCD} (max) is specified as a reference point only. If t_{RCD} is greater than the specified t_{RCD} (max) limit, then access time is controlled exclusively by t_{CAC}.

15 These parameters are referenced to $\overline{CAS}$ leading edge in early write cycles and to $\overline{WRITE}$ leading edge in delayed write or read modify write cycles.

16 t_{WCS}, t_{CWD} and t_{RWD} are restrictive operating parameters in read write and read modify write cycles only. If $t_{WCS} \geq t_{WCS}$ (min), the cycle is an early write cycle and the data out pin will remain open circuit (high impedance) throughout the entire cycle. If $t_{CWD} \geq t_{CWD}$ (min) and $t_{RWD} \geq t_{RWD}$ (min), the cycle is a read write cycle and the data out will contain data read from the selected cell. If neither of the above sets of conditions is satisfied the condition of the data out (at access time) is indeterminate.

17 Effective capacitance calculated from the equation $C = \frac{I\Delta t}{\Delta V}$ with ΔV = 3 volts and power supplies at nominal levels.

18 $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC} to initiate D_{OUT}.

19 One 16K RAM is active while the other is in standby mode.

AC ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

$(0°C \leq T_A \leq 70°C)$ $(V_{DD} = 12.0V \pm 10\%; V_{SS} = 0V; -5.7V \leq V_{BB} \leq -4.5V)$

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	TYP	MAX	UNITS	NOTES
Input Capacitance (A_0–A_6), D_{IN}	C_{I1}	8	10	pF	17
Input Capacitance $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$,	C_{I2}	8	10	pF	17
Output Capacitance (D_{OUT})	C_O	10	14	pF	17, 18
Input Capacitance $\overline{WRITE}$	C_{I3}	16	20	pF	17

AC Characteristics and Timing Diagrams of MK4116-3.

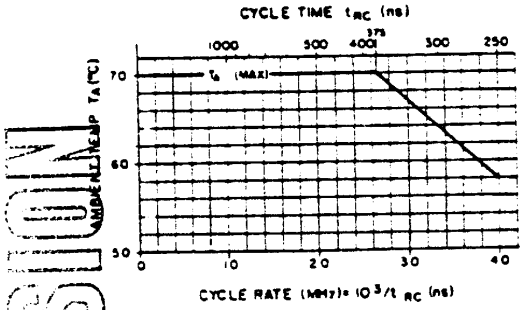


Fig. 1 Maximum ambient temperature versus cycle rate for extended frequency operation. T_A (max) for operation at cycling rates greater than 2.66 MHz ($t_{CYC} < 375$ns) is determined by T_A (max)° C = 70–9.0 x (cycle rate MHz –2.66) for -3.

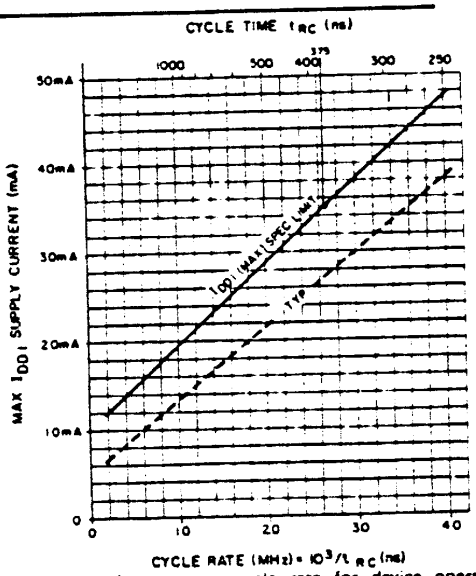


Fig. 2 Maximum I_{DD1} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD1} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD1} (max) mA = 10 + 9.4 x cycle rate [MHz] for -3

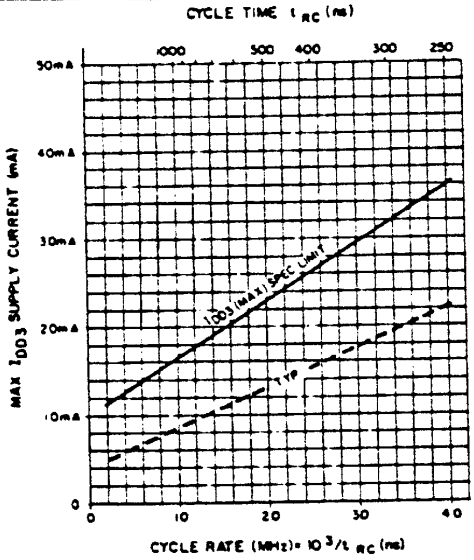


Fig. 3 Maximum I_{DD3} versus cycle rate for device operation at extended frequencies. I_{DD3} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD3} (max) mA = 10 + 6.5 x cycle rate [MHz] for -3

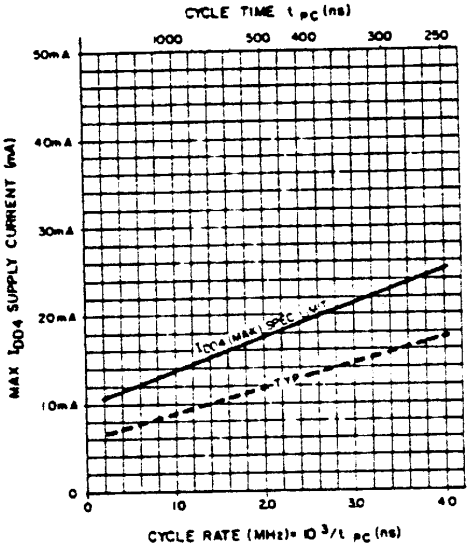
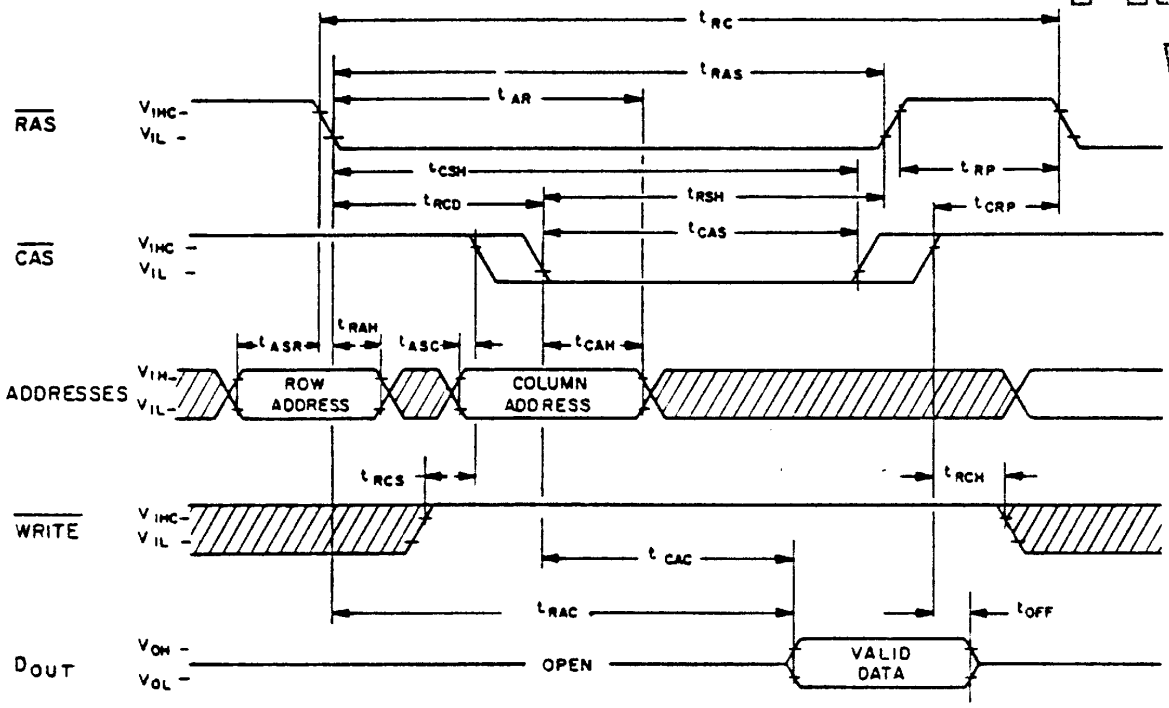


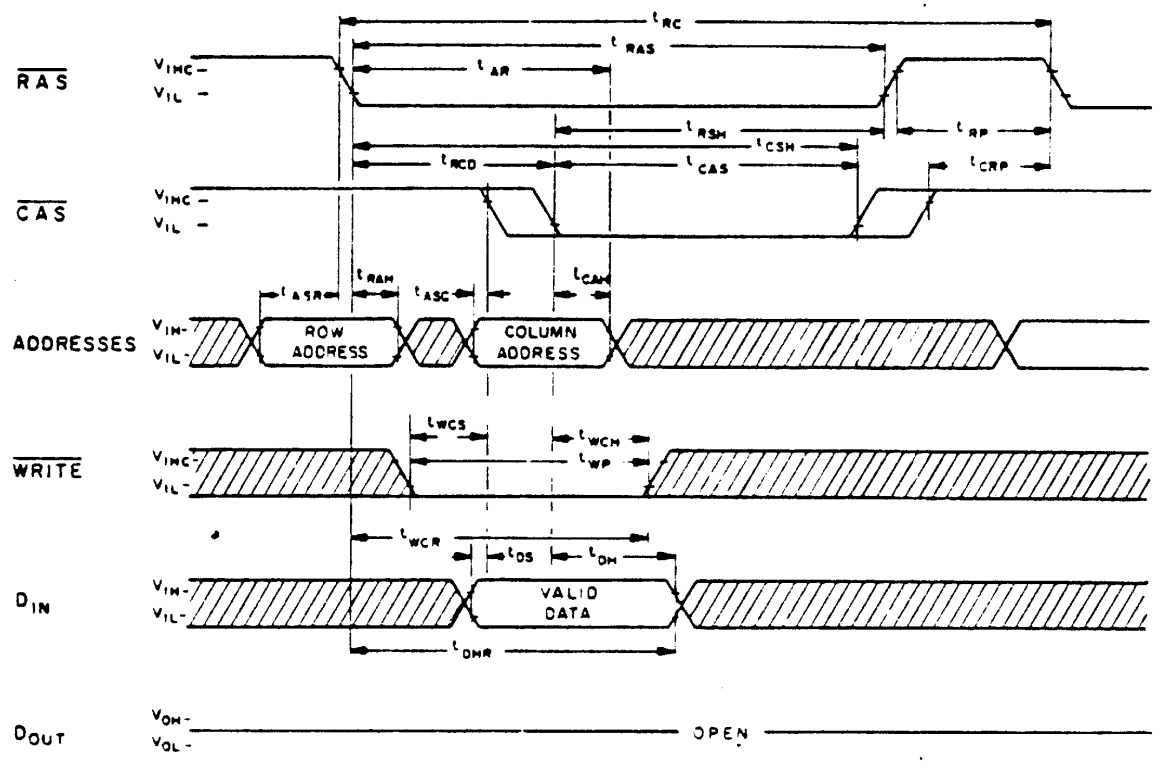
Fig. 4 Maximum I_{DD4} versus cycle rate for device operation in page mode. I_{DD4} (max) curve is defined by the equation:

I_{DD4} (max) mA = 10 + 3.75 x cycle rate [MHz] for -3

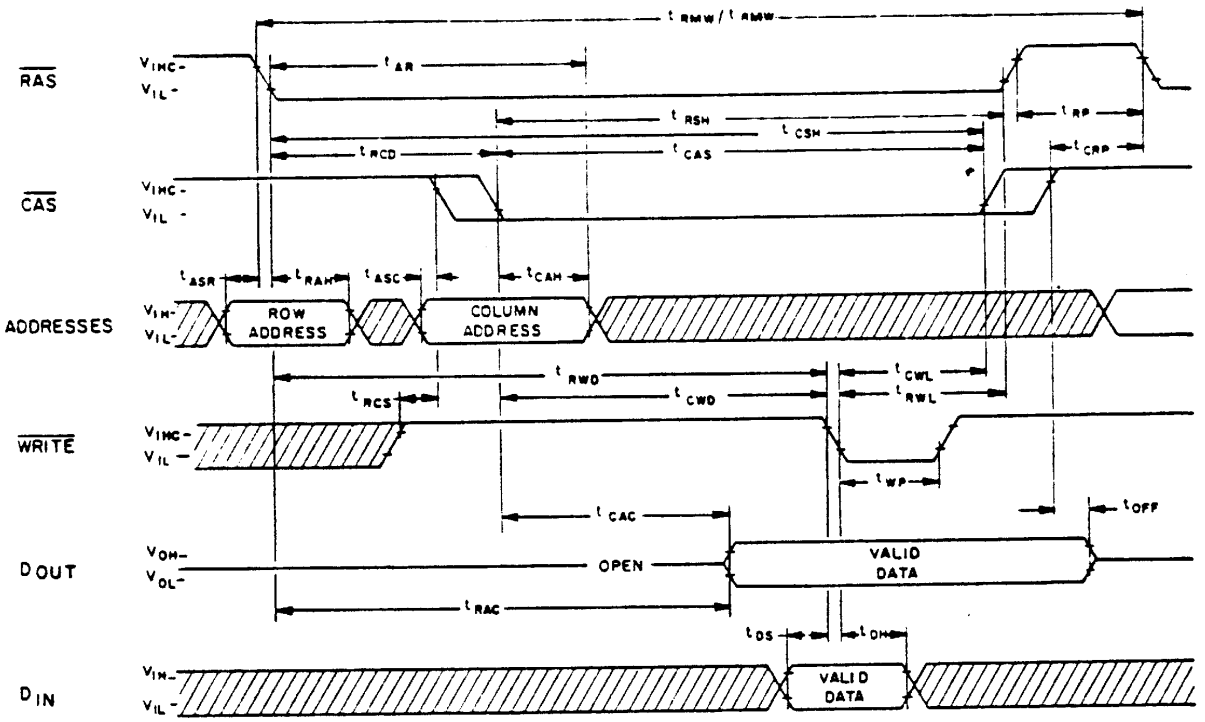
READ CYCLE



WRITE CYCLE (EARLY WRITE)

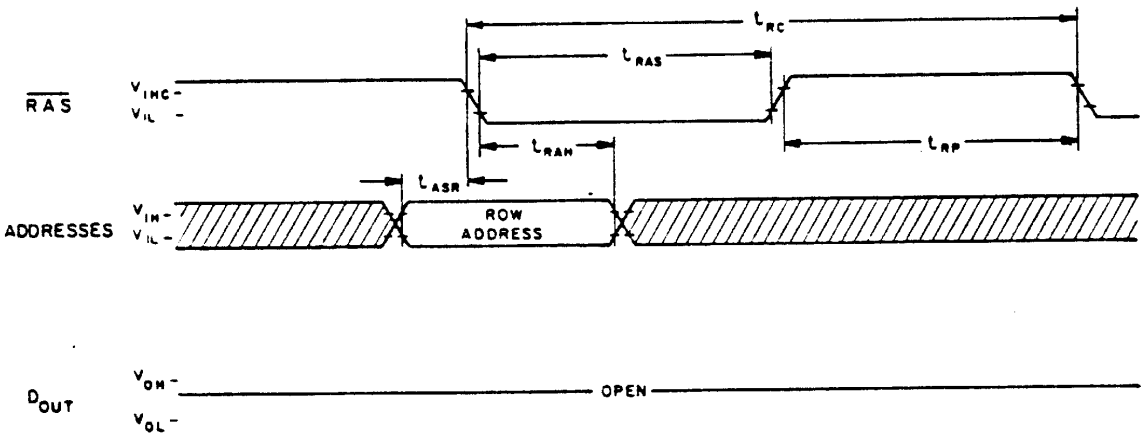


READ–WRITE/READ–MODIFY–WRITE CYCLE

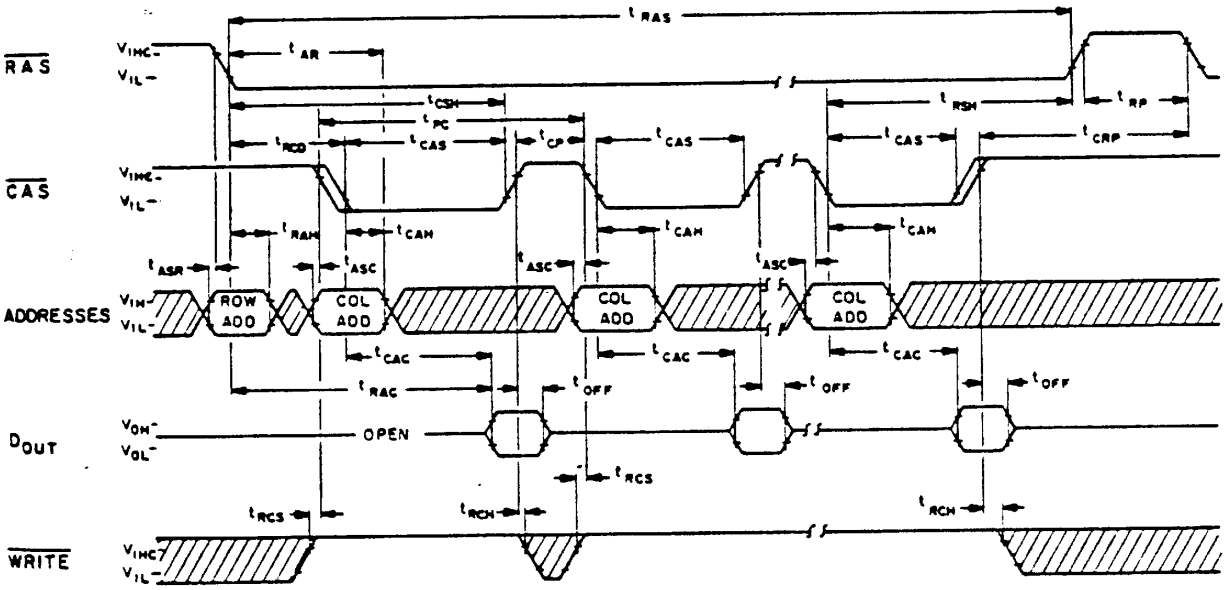


"RAS–ONLY" REFRESH CYCLE

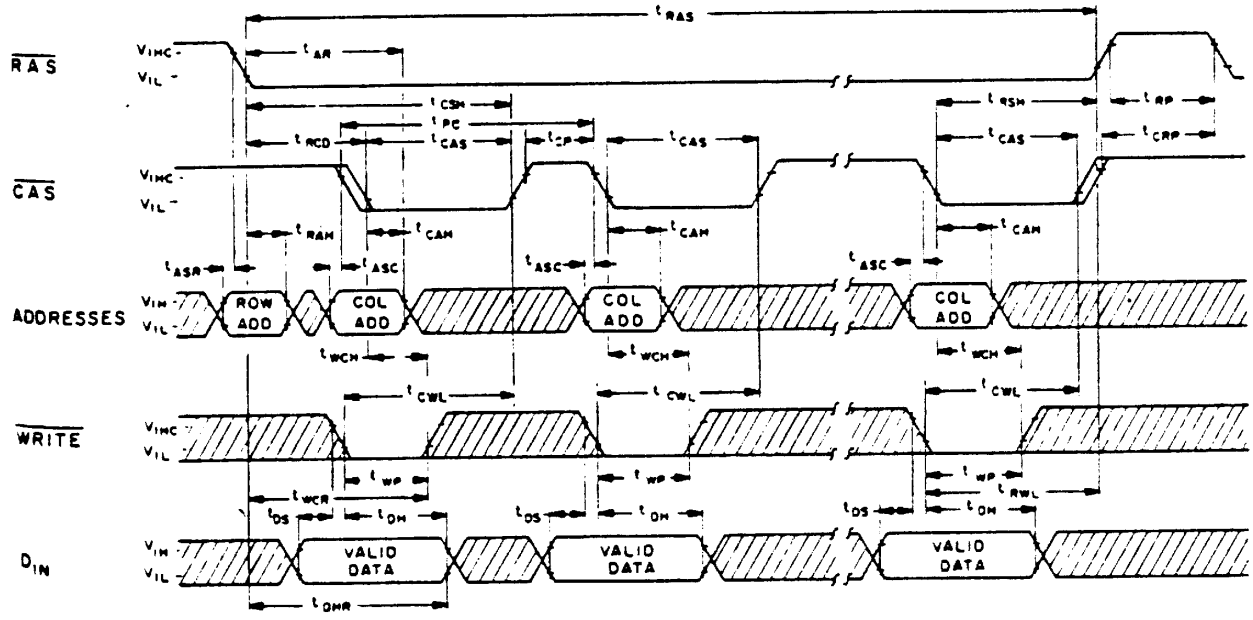
NOTE: $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC}, $\overline{WRITE}$ = Don't Care



PAGE MODE READ CYCLE



PAGE MODE WRITE CYCLE



DESCRIPTION (continued)

System oriented features include ± 10% tolerance on all power supplies, direct interfacing capability with high performance logic families such as Schottky TTL, maximum input noise immunity to minimize "false triggering" of the inputs (a common cause of soft errors), on-chip address and data registers which eliminate the need for interface registers, and two chip select methods. The MK 4332 also incorporates several flexible timing/operating modes. In addition to the usual read, write, and read-modify-write cycles, the MK 4332 is capable of delayed write cycles, page mode operation and RAS-only refresh. Proper control of the clock inputs(RAS, CAS and WRITE) allows common I/O capability, two dimensional chip selection, and extended page boundaries (when operating in page mode).

ADDRESSING

User access of a unique memory location is accomplished by multiplexing 14 address bits onto 7 address inputs and by proper control of the RAS and CAS clocks in a manner identical to operation of the MK 4116 in a memory array board. The 14 address bits required to decode 1 of the 16,384 cell locations within each MK 4116 are multiplexed onto the 7 address inputs and latched into the on-chip address latches by externally applying two negative going TTL-level clocks. The first clock, the Row Address Strobe (RAS), latches the 7 row address bits into the chip. The second clock, the Column Address Strobe (CAS), subsequently latches the 7 column address bits into the chip. Each of these signals, RAS and CAS, triggers a sequence of events which are controlled by different delayed internal clocks. The two clock chains are linked together logically in such a way that the address multiplexing operation is done outside of the critical path timing sequence for read data access. The later events in the CAS clock sequence are inhibited until the occurence of a delayed signal derived from the RAS clock chain. This "gated CAS" feature allows the CAS clock to be externally activated as soon as the Row Address Hold Time specification (t_{RAH}) has been satisfied and the address inputs have been changed from Row address to Column address information.

Note that CAS can be activated at any time after t_{RAH} and it will have no effect on the worst case data access time (t_{RAC}) up to the point in time when the delayed row clock no longer inhibits the remaining sequence of column clocks. Two timing endpoints result from the internal gating of CAS which are called t_{RCD} (min) and t_{RCD} (max). No data storage or reading errors will result if CAS is applied to the MK 4332 at a point in time beyond the t_{RCD} (max) limit. However, access time will then be determined exclusively by the access time from CAS (t_{CAC}) rather than from RAS (t_{RAC}), and access time from RAS will be lengthened by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the t_{RCD} (max) limit.

DATA INPUT/OUTPUT

Data to be written into a selected cell is latched into an on-chip register by a combination of WRITE and CAS while RAS is active. The later of the signals (WRITE or CAS) to make its negative transition is the strobe for the Data In (DIN) register. This permits several options in the write cycle timing. In a write cycle, if the WRITE input is brought low (active) prior to CAS, the DIN is strobed by CAS, and the set-up and hold times are referenced to CAS. If the input data is not available at CAS time or if it is desired that the cycle be a read-write cycle, the WRITE signal will be delayed until after CAS has made its negative transition. In this "delayed write cycle" the data input set-up and hold times are referenced to the negative edge of WRITE rather than CAS. (To illustrate this feature, DIN is referenced to WRITE in the timing diagrams depicting the read-write and page-mode write cycles while the "early write" cycle diagram shows DIN referenced to CAS).

Data is retrieved from the memory in a read cycle by maintaining WRITE in the inactive or high state throughout the portion of the memory cycle in which CAS is active (low). Data read from the selected cell will be available at the output within the specified access time.

DATA OUTPUT CONTROL

The normal condition of the Data Output (DOUT) of the MK 4332 is the high impedance (open-circuit) state. That is to say, anytime CAS is at a high level, the DOUT pin will be floating. The only time the output will turn on and contain either a logic 0 or logic 1 is at access time during a read cycle. DOUT will remain valid from access time until CAS is taken back to the inactive (high level) condition.

Since the outputs to both 16K devices are tied together, care must be taken with the timing relationships of the two devices. Both devices cannot be activated at the same time as a data output conflict can occur.

If the memory cycle in progress is a read, read-modify write, or a delayed write cycle, then the data output will go from the high impedance state to the active condition, and at access time will contain the data read from the selected cell. This output data is the same polarity (not inverted) as the input data. Once having gone active, the output will remain valid until CAS is taken to the precharge (logic 1) state,whether or not RAS goes into precharge.

If the cycle in progress is an "early-write" cycle (WRITE active before CAS goes active), then the output pin will maintain the high impedance state throughout the entire cycle. Note that with this type of output configuration, the user is given full control of the DOUT pin simply by controlling the placement of WRITE command during a write cycle, and the pulse width of the Column Address Strobe during read operations. Note also that even though data is not latched at the output, data can remain valid from access time until the beginning of a subsequent cycle without paying any penalty in overall memory cycle time (stretching the cycle).

This type of output operation results in some very significant system implications.

Common I/O Operation – If all write operations are handled in the "early write" mode, then DIN can be connected directly to DOUT for a common I/O data bus.

Data Output Control – DOUT will remain valid during a read cycle from t_{CAC} until CAS goes back to a high level (precharge), allowing data to be valid from one cycle up until a new memory cycle begins

with no penalty in cycle time. This also makes the $\overline{RAS}/\overline{CAS}$ clock timing relationship very flexible.

Two Methods of Chip Selection – Since DOUT is not latched, $\overline{CAS}$ is not required to turn off the outputs of unselected memory devices in a matrix. This means that both $\overline{CAS}$ and/or $\overline{RAS}$ can be decoded for chip selection. If both $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ are decoded, then a two dimensional (X,Y) chip select array can be realized.

Extended Page Boundary – Page-mode operation allows for successive memory cycles at multiple column locations of the same row address. By decoding $\overline{CAS}$ as a page cycle select signal, the page boundary can be extended beyond the 128 column locations in a single chip. (See page-mode operation).

OUTPUT INTERFACE CHARACTERISTICS

The three state data output buffer presents the data output pin with a low impedance to V_{CC} for a logic 1 and a low impedance to V_{SS} for a logic 0. The effective resistance to V_{CC} (logic 1 state) is 420 Ω maximum and 135Ω typically. The resistance to V_{SS} (logic 0 state) is 95 Ω maximum and 35 Ω typically. The separate V_{CC} pin allows the output buffer to be powered from the supply voltage of the logic to which the chip is interfaced. During battery standby operation, the V_{CC} pin may have power removed without affecting the MK 4332 refresh operation. This allows all system logic except the $\overline{RAS}$ timing circuitry and the refresh address logic to be turned off during battery standby to conserve power.

PAGE MODE OPERATION

The "Page Mode" feature of the MK 4332 allows for successive memory operations at multiple column locations of the same row address with increased speed without an increase in power. This is done by strobing the row address into the chip and maintaining the $\overline{RAS}$ signal at a logic 0 throughout all successive memory cycles in which the row address is common. This "page-mode" of operation will not dissipate the power associated with the negative going edge of $\overline{RAS}$. Also, the time required for strobing in a new row address is eliminated, thereby decreasing the access and cycle times.

The page boundary of a single MK 4116 is limited to the 128 column locations determined by all combinations of the 7 column address bits. However, the page boundary of the MK4332 can be extended by using $\overline{CAS}$ rather than $\overline{RAS}$ as the chip select signal. $\overline{RAS}$ is applied to all devices to latch the row address into each device and then $\overline{CAS}$ is decoded and serves as a page cycle select signal. Only those devices which receive both $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ signals will execute a read or write cycle.

REFRESH

Refresh of the MK4116 is accomplished by performing a memory cycle at each of the 128 row addresses within each 2 millisecond time interval. Each MK4116 in the MK4332 Assembly must receive all 128 refresh cycles within the 2ms time interval in order to completely refresh all 32,768 memory cells.

Although any normal memory cycle will perform the refresh operation, this function is most easily accomplished with "$\overline{RAS}$-only" cycles. $\overline{RAS}$-only refresh resuls in a substantial reduction in operating power. This reduction in power is reflected in the I_{DD3} specification.

POWER CONSIDERATIONS

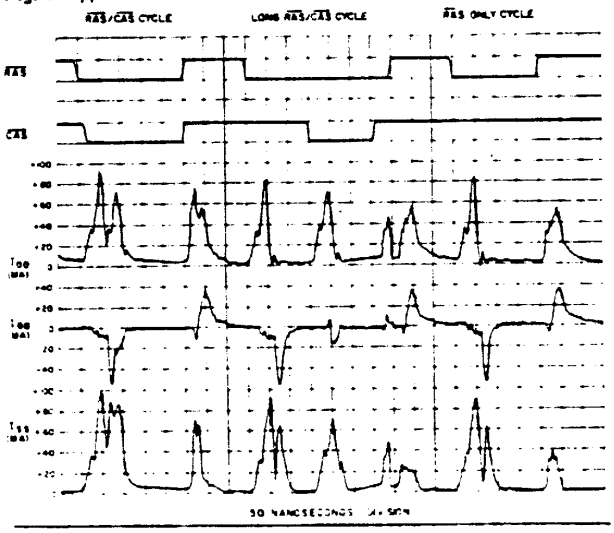
Most of the circuitry used in the MK 4332 is dynamic and most of the power drawn is the result of an address strobe edge. Consequently, the dynamic power is primarily a function of operating frequency rather than active duty cycle (refer to the MK 4116 current waveforms in figure 5). This current characteristic of the MK 4332 precludes inadvertent burn out of the device in the event that the clock inputs become shorted to ground due to system malfunction.

Although no particular power supply noise restriction exists other than the supply voltages remain within the specified tolerance limits, adequate decoupling should be provided to suppress high frequency noise resulting from the transient current of the device. This insures optimum system performance and reliability. Bulk capacitance requirements are minimal since the MK 4332 draws very little steady state (DC) current.

In system applications requiring lower power dissipation the operating frequency (cycle rate) of the MK 4332 can be reduced and the (guaranteed maximum) average power dissipation of the device will be lowered in accordance with the I_{DD1} (max) spec limit curve illustrated in figure 2. NOTE: The MK 4332 family is guaranteed to have a maximum I_{DD1} requirement of 36.5mA @ 375ns cycle with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C. A lower operating frequency, for example 1 microsecond cycle, results in a reduced maximum I_{DD1} requirement of under 20mA with an ambient temperature range from 0° to 70°C.

NOTE: Additional power supply tolerance has been included on the V_{BB} supply to allow direct interface capability with both −5V systems −5.2V ECL systems.

Fig. 5 Typical Current Waveforms for the MK 4116



Although $\overline{RAS}$ and/or $\overline{CAS}$ can be decoded and used as a chip select signal for the MK 4116, overall system power is minimized if the Row Address Strobe ($\overline{RAS}$) is used for this purpose. All unselected devices (those which do not receive a $\overline{RAS}$) will remain in a low power (standby) mode regardless of the state of $\overline{CAS}$.

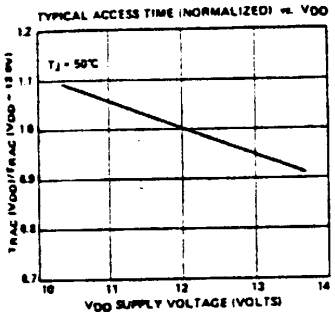
POWER UP

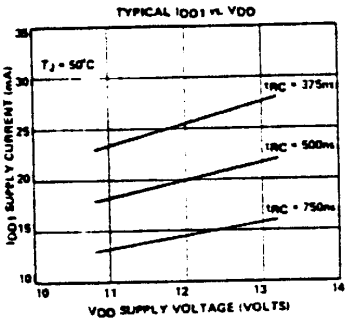
The MK 4332 requires no particular power supply sequencing so long as the Absolute Maximum Rating Conditions are observed. However, in order to insure compliance with the Absolute Maximum Ratings, MOSTEK recommends sequencing of power supplies such that V_{BB} is applied first and removed last. V_{BB} should never be more positive than V_{SS} when power is applied to V_{DD}.

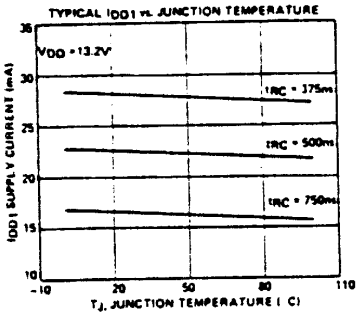
Under system failure conditions in which one or more supplies exceed the specified limits significant additional margin against catastrophic device failure may be achieved by forcing $\overline{RAS}$ and $\overline{CAS}$ to the inactive state (high level).

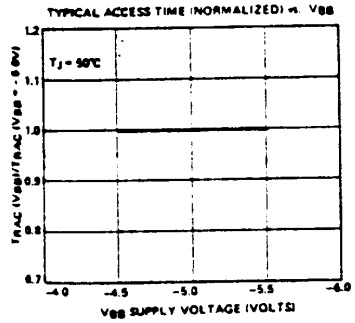
After power is applied to the device, the MK 4332 requires several cycles before proper device operation is achieved. Any 8 cycles which perform refresh are adequate for this purpose. Each MK 4116 device must receive the 8 initialization cycles.

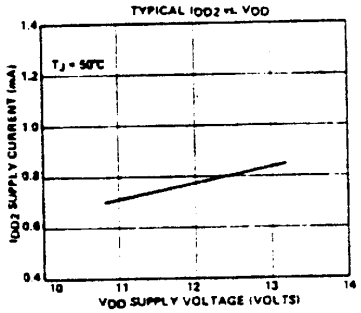
TYPICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF THE MK 4116

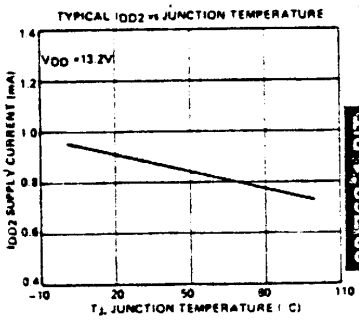


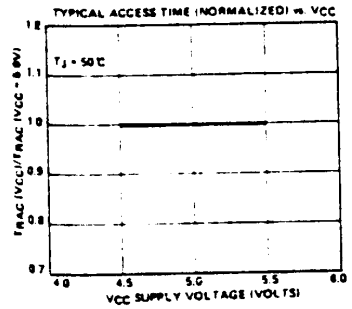


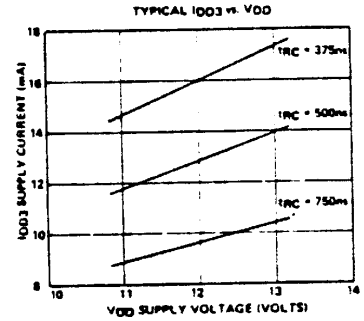


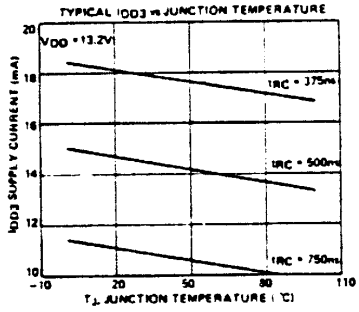


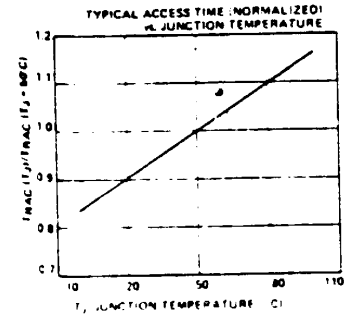


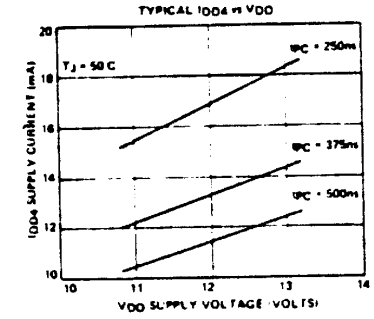


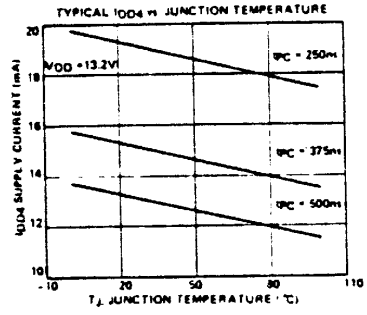


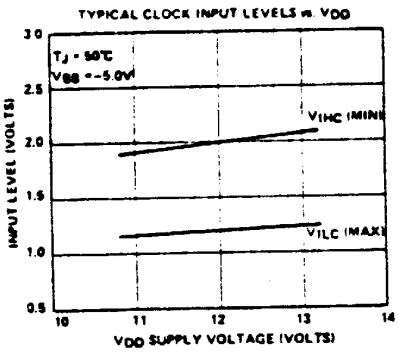


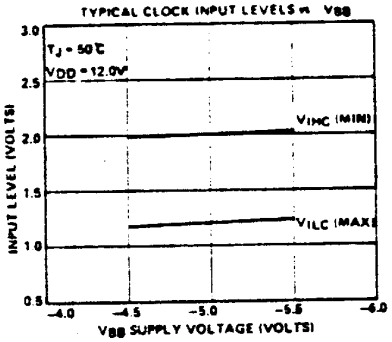


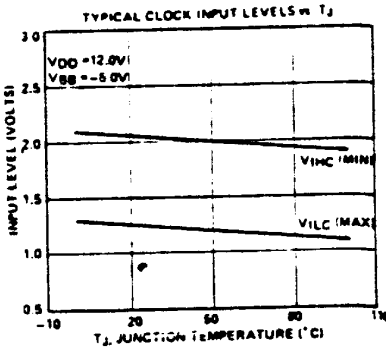


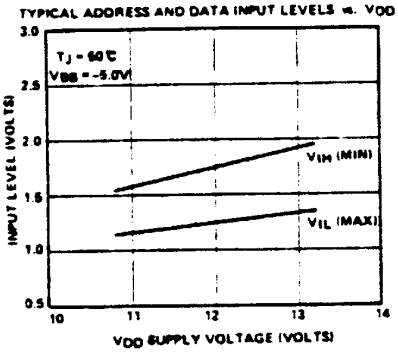


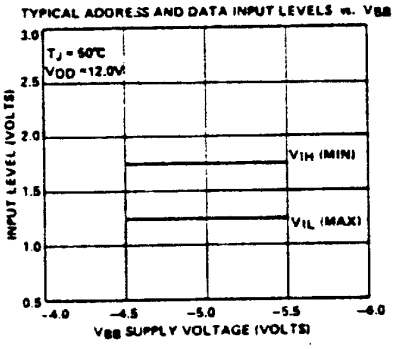


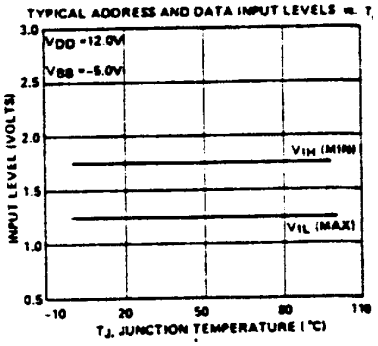












REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
A		655	INITIAL RELEASE	

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENGINEERING SPECIFICATION

P/N 333-0007

DESCRIPTION: IC, Ram, 65,536 X 1, 4164 type, 128 cycle, refresh.

Part is to have a 200nS, or less access time (trac).

Specification Sheet of a typical 4164 RAM is to be filied under Apple P/N 333-0007.

DRAWING NUMBER 333-0007-A

SH 1 OF 7

TOLERANCES UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES. DECIMALS .X ± ___ .XX ± ___ .XXX ± ___ ANGLES XX.X ± ___ FRACTIONS ± ___ DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS.	DRAWN BY C Brown DATE 3-25-81	apple computer inc.	
	CHECKED BY P. Bern DATE 3/30/81	TITLE IC, Ram, 64K, 200NS, 128 cycle, refresh, WO/Logo, WO/burn-in	
	APPROVED BY P. Conn DATE 4/1/81		
	RELEASED BY DATE 4/15/81	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 333-0007-A
NEXT ASSY.	MATERIAL: / FINISH:	SCALE:	SHEET 1 OF 7

THIS IS NEC'S

NEC Microcomputers, Inc.

VERSION

NEC

μPD4164-1
μPD4164-2
μPD4164-3

PRELIMINARY

65,536 x 1 BIT DYNAMIC RANDOM ACCESS MEMORY

DESCRIPTION

The NEC μPD4164 is a 65,536 words by 1 bit Dynamic N-Channel MOS RAM designed to operate from a single +5V power supply. The negative-voltage substrate bias is internally generated — its operation is both automatic and transparent.

The μPD4164 utilizes a double-poly-layer N-channel silicon gate process which provides high storage cell density, high performance and high reliability.

The μPD4164 uses a single transistor dynamic storage cell and advanced dynamic circuitry throughout, including the 512 sense amplifiers, which assures that power dissipation is minimized. Refresh characteristics have been chosen to maximize yield (low cost to user) while maintaining compatibility between Dynamic RAM generations.

The μPD4164 three-state output is controlled by $\overline{CAS}$, independent of $\overline{RAS}$. After a valid read or read-modify-write cycle, data is held on the output by holding $\overline{CAS}$ low. The data out pin is returned to the high impedance state by returning $\overline{CAS}$ to a high state. The μPD4164 hidden refresh feature allows $\overline{CAS}$ to be held low to maintain output data while $\overline{RAS}$ is used to execute $\overline{RAS}$ only refresh cycles.

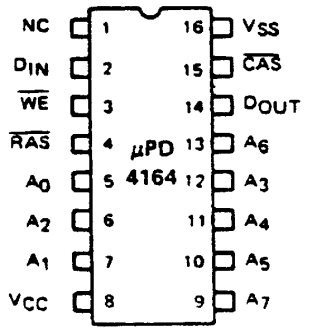
Refreshing is accomplished by performing $\overline{RAS}$ only refresh cycles, hidden refresh cycles, or normal read or write cycles on the 128 address combinations of A_0 through A_6 during a 2 ms period.

Multiplexed address inputs permit the μPD4164 to be packaged in the standard 16 pin dual-in-line package. The 16 pin package provides the highest system bit densities and is compatible with widely available automated handling equipment.

FEATURES

- High Memory Density
- Multiplexed Address Inputs
- Single +5V Supply
- On Chip Substrate Bias Generator
- Access Time: μPD4164-1 — 250 ns
  μPD4164-2 — 200 ns
  μPD4164-3 — 150 ns
- Read, Write Cycle Time: μPD4164-1 — 410 ns
  μPD4164-2 — 335 ns
  μPD4164-3 — 270 ns
- Low Power Dissipation: 250 mW (Active); 28 mW (Standby)
- Non-Latched Output is Three-State, TTL Compatible
- Read, Write, Read-Write; Read-Modify-Write, RAS Only Refresh, and Page Mode Capability
- All Inputs TTL Compatible, and Low Input Capacitance
- 128 Refresh Cycles (A_0-A_6 Pins for Refresh Address)
- CAS Controlled Output Allows Hidden Refresh
- Available in Both Ceramic and Plastic 16 Pin Packages

PIN CONFIGURATION



PIN NAMES

A_0-A_7	Address Inputs
$\overline{RAS}$	Row Address Strobe
$\overline{CAS}$	Column Address Strobe
$\overline{WE}$	Write Enable
D_{IN}	Data Input
D_{OUT}	Data Output
V_{CC}	Power Supply (+5V)
V_{SS}	Ground
NC	No Connection

μPD4164

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS*

Operating Temperature	0°C to +70°C
Storage Temperature (Ceramic Package)	-55°C to +150°C
(Plastic Package)	-55°C to +125°C
Supply Voltages On Any Pin Except V_{CC}	-1 to +7 Volts ①
Supply Voltage V_{CC}	-0.5 to +7 Volts ①
Short Circuit Output Current	50 mA
Power Dissipation	1 Watt

Note: ① Relative to V_{SS}

COMMENT: Stress above those listed under "Absolute Maximum Ratings" may cause permanent damage to the device. This is a stress rating only and functional operation of the device at these or any other conditions above those indicated in the operational sections of this specification is not implied. Exposure to absolute maximum rating conditions for extended periods may affect device reliability.

*T_a = 25°C

DC CHARACTERISTICS

T_a = 0° to 70°C ① ; V_{CC} = +5V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V

PARAMETER	SYMBOL		LIMITS MIN	LIMITS TYP	LIMITS MAX	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
Supply Voltage	V_{CC}		4.5	5.0	5.5	V	All Voltages Referenced to V_{SS}
	V_{SS}		0	0	0	V	
High Level Input Voltage, ($\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WE}$)	V_{IHC}		2.4		5.5	V	
High Level Input Voltage, All Inputs Except $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, $\overline{WE}$	V_{IH}		2.4		5.5	V	
Low Level Input Voltage, All Inputs	V_{IL}		-2.0		0.8	V	
Operating Current Average Power Supply Operating Current $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$ Cycling; t_{RC} = t_{RC} (Min.)	I_{CC1}	μPD4164-1			45	mA	②
		μPD4164-2			50		
		μPD4164-3			60		
Standby Current Power Supply Standby Current ($\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IHC}, D_{OUT} = Hi-Impedance)	I_{CC2}				5.0	mA	
Refresh Current Average Power Supply Current, Refresh Mode: $\overline{RAS}$ Cycling, $\overline{CAS}$ = V_{IHC}, t_{RC} = t_{RC} (Min.)	I_{CC3}	μPD4164-1			35	mA	②
		μPD4164-2			40		
		μPD4164-3			45		
Page Mode Current Average Power Supply Current, Page Mode Operation $\overline{RAS}$ = V_{IL}; $\overline{CAS}$ Cycling t_{PC} = t_{PC} (Min.)	I_{CC4}	μPD4164-1			35	mA	②
		μPD4164-2			40		
		μPD4164-3			45		
Input Leakage Current Any Input V_{IN} = 0 to +5.5 Volts, All Other Pins Not Under Test = 0V	$I_{I(L)}$		-10		10	μA	
Output Leakage Current D_{OUT} is Disabled, V_{OUT} = 0 to +5.5 Volts	$I_{O(L)}$		-10		10	μA	
Output Levels High Level Output Voltage (I_{OUT} = 5 mA)	V_{OH}		2.4		V_{CC}	V	
Low Level Output Voltage (I_{OUT} = 4.2 mA)	V_{OL}		0		0.4	V	

Notes: ① T_a is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and high power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met.

② I_{CC1}, I_{CC3} and I_{CC4} depend on output loading and cycle rates. Specified rates are obtained with the output open.

PRELIMINARY VERSION

AC CHARACTERISTICS

T_a = 0° to +70°C ①; V_{CC} = +5V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V ③ ④

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	LIMITS μPD4164-1 MIN	μPD4164-1 MAX	μPD4164-2 MIN	μPD4164-2 MAX	μPD4164-3 MIN	μPD4164-3 MAX	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
Random Read or Write Cycle Time	t_{RC}	410		335		270		ns	⑤
Read-Write Cycle Time	t_{RWC}	465		335		270		ns	⑥
Page Mode Cycle Time	t_{PC}	275		225		170		ns	
Access Time from $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RAC}		250		200		150	ns	⑧ ⑨
Access Time from $\overline{CAS}$	t_{CAC}		165		135		100	ns	⑦ ⑧
Output Buffer Turn-Off Delay	t_{OFF}	0	60	0	50	0	40	ns	⑩
Transition Time (Rise and Fall)	t_T	3	50	3	50	3	50	ns	④
$\overline{RAS}$ Precharge Time	t_{RP}	150		120		100		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ Pulse Width	t_{RAS}	250	10,000	200	10,000	150	10,000	ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ Hold Time	t_{RSH}	165		135		100		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Pulse Width	t_{CAS}	165	10,000	135	10,000	100	10,000	ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Hold Time	t_{CSH}	250		200		150		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{CAS}$ Delay Time	t_{RCD}	35	85	30	65	25	50	ns	⑪
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{RAS}$ Precharge Time	t_{CRP}	0		0		0		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Precharge Time	t_{CPN}	35		30		25		ns	
$\overline{CAS}$ Precharge Time (For Page Mode Cycle Only)	t_{CP}	100		80		80		ns	
$\overline{RAS}$ Precharge $\overline{CAS}$ Hold Time	t_{RPC}	0		0		0		ns	
Row Address Set-Up Time	t_{ASR}	0		0		0		ns	
Row Address Hold Time	t_{RAH}	25		20		15		ns	
Column Address Set-Up Time	t_{ASC}	0		0		0		ns	
Column Address Hold Time	t_{CAH}	75		55		45		ns	
Column Address Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{AR}	160		120		95		ns	
Read Command Set-Up Time	t_{RCS}	0		0		0		ns	
Read Command Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{RRH}	30		25		20		ns	⑫
Read Command Hold Time	t_{RCH}	0		0		0		ns	⑬
Write Command Hold Time	t_{WCH}	75		55		45		ns	
Write Command Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{WCR}	160		120		95		ns	
Write Command Pulse Width	t_{WP}	75		55		45		ns	
Write Command to $\overline{RAS}$ Lead Time	t_{RWL}	100		55		45		ns	
Write Command to $\overline{CAS}$ Lead Time	t_{CWL}	100		55		45		ns	
Data-In Set-Up Time	t_{DS}	0		0		0		ns	⑭
Data-In Hold Time	t_{DH}	75		55		45		ns	⑭
Data-In Hold Time Referenced to $\overline{RAS}$	t_{DHR}	160		120		95		ns	
Refresh Period	t_{REF}		2		2		2	ms	
$\overline{WRITE}$ Command Set-Up Time	t_{WCS}	-20		-20		-20		ns	⑮
$\overline{CAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ Delay	t_{CWD}	115		80		60		ns	⑮
$\overline{RAS}$ to $\overline{WRITE}$ Delay	t_{RWD}	200		145		110		ns	⑮

Notes:
① T_a is specified here for operation at frequencies to $t_{RC} \geq t_{RC}$ (min). Operation at higher cycle rates with reduced ambient temperatures and higher power dissipation is permissible, however, provided AC operating parameters are met.
② An initial pause of 100 μs is required after power-up followed by any 8 $\overline{RAS}$ cycles before proper device operation is achieved.
③ AC measurements assume t_T = 5 ns.
④ V_{IHC} (min) or V_{IH} (min) and V_{IL} (max) are reference levels for measuring timing of input signals. Also, transition times are measured between V_{IHC} or V_{IH} and V_{IL}.
⑤ The specifications for t_{RC} (min) and t_{RWC} (min) are used only to indicate cycle times at which proper operation over the full temperature range (0°C ≤ T_a ≤ 70°C) is assured.
⑥ Assumes that $t_{RCS} \leq t_{RCD}$ (max). If t_{RCS} is greater than the maximum recommended value shown in this table, t_{RAC} will increase by the amount that t_{RCD} exceeds the value shown.
⑦ Assumes that $t_{RCD} \geq t_{RCD}$ (max).
⑧ Measured with a load equivalent to 2 TTL loads and 100 pF.
⑨ t_{OFF} (max) defines the time at which the output achieves the open circuit condition and is not referenced to output voltage levels.
⑩ Operation within the t_{RCD} (max) limit ensures that t_{RAC} (max) can be met. t_{RCD} (max) is specified as a reference point only. If t_{RCD} is greater than the specified t_{RCD} (max) limit, then access time is controlled exclusively by t_{CAC}.
⑪ These parameters are referenced to $\overline{CAS}$ leading edge in early write cycles and to $\overline{WRITE}$ leading edge in delayed write or read-modify-write cycles.
⑫ t_{WCS}, t_{CWD} and t_{RWD} are restrictive operating parameters in read-write and read-modify-write cycles only. If $t_{WCS} \geq t_{WCS}$ (min), the cycle is an early write cycle and the data output will remain open circuit throughout the entire cycle. If $t_{CWD} \geq t_{CWD}$ (min) and $t_{RWD} \geq t_{RWD}$ (min), the cycle is a read-write and the data output will contain data read from the selected cell. If neither of the above conditions are met the condition of the data out (at access time and until $\overline{CAS}$ goes back to V_{IH}) is indeterminate.
⑬ Either t_{RRH} or t_{RCH} must be satisfied for a read cycle.

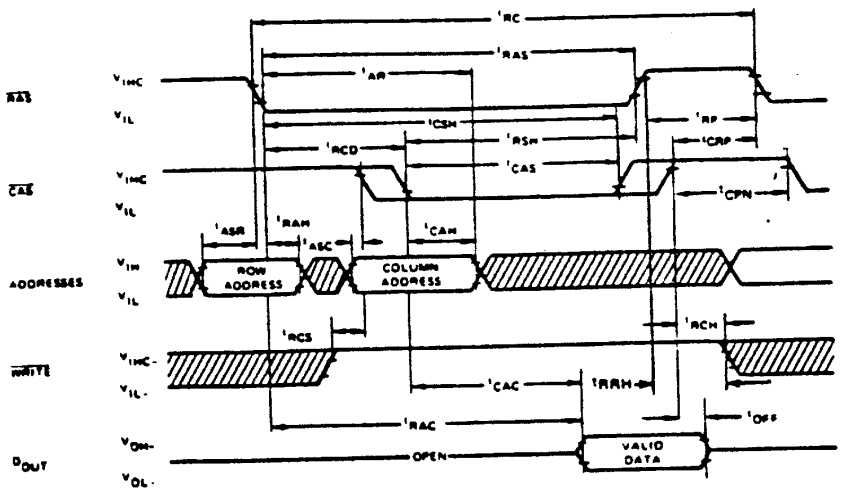
PRELIMINARY VERSION

P9

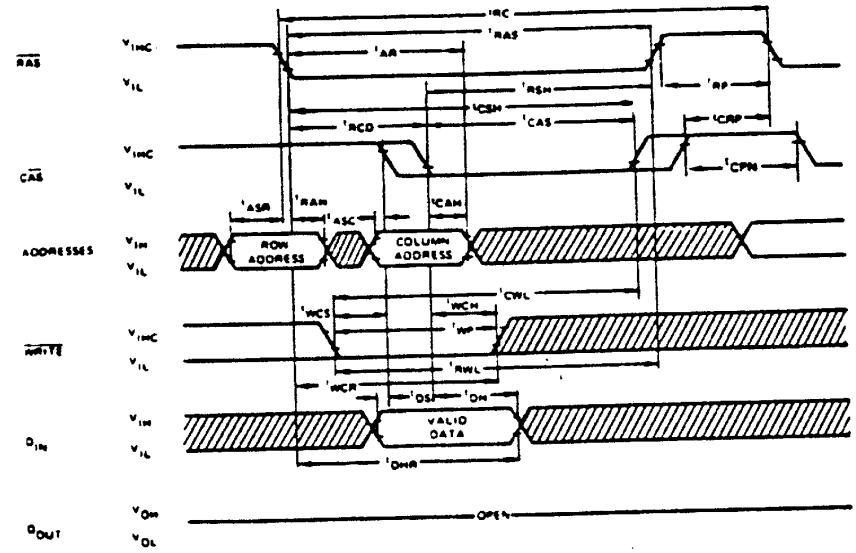
μPD4164

TIMING WAVEFORMS

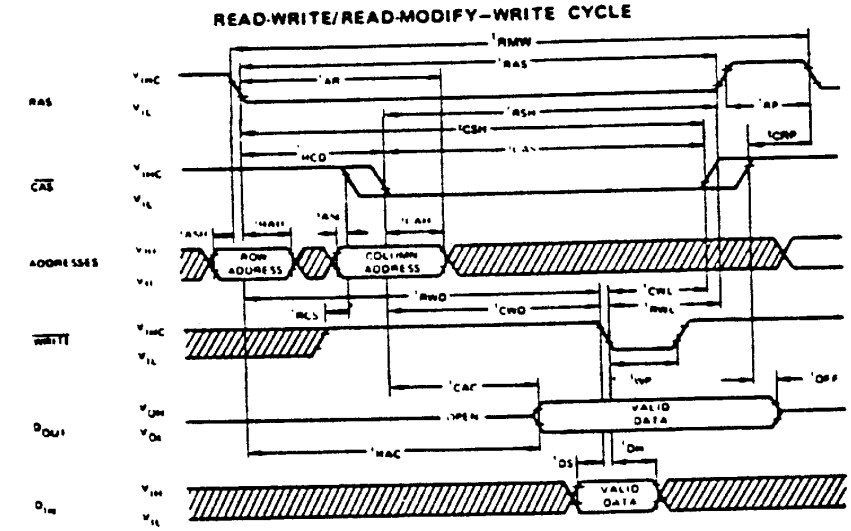
READ CYCLE



WRITE CYCLE (EARLY WRITE)

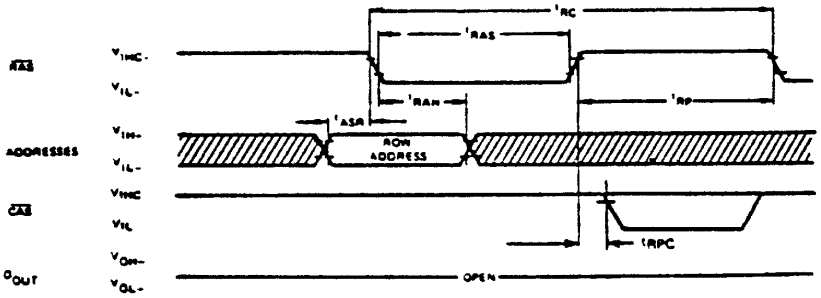


READ-WRITE/READ-MODIFY-WRITE CYCLE

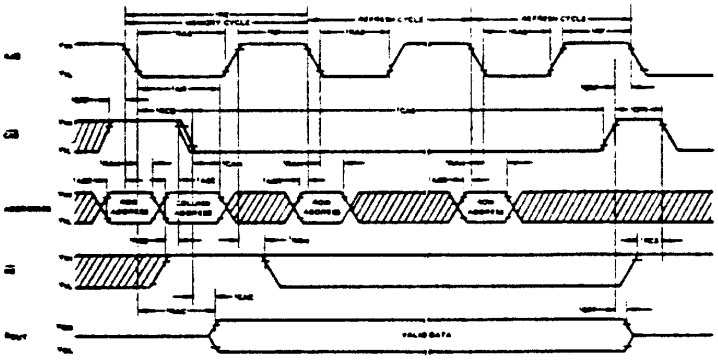


TIMING WAVEFORMS
(CONT.)

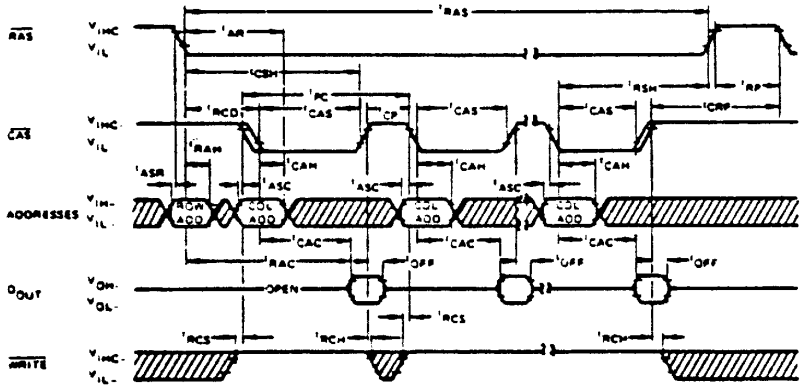
"RAS-ONLY" REFRESH CYCLE



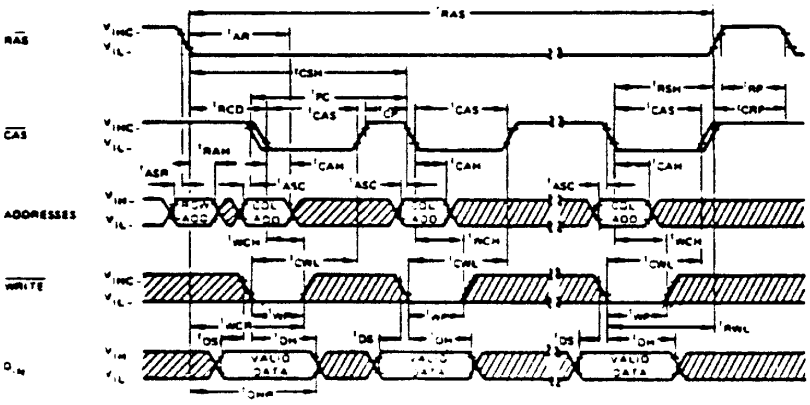
HIDDEN REFRESH CYCLE



PAGE MODE READ CYCLE



PAGE MODE WRITE CYCLE



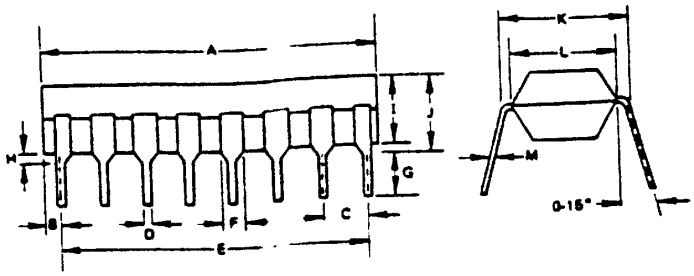
μPD4164

CAPACITANCE

T_a = 0° to +70°C; V_{CC} = +5V ± 10%; V_{SS} = 0V

PARAMETER	SYMBOL	LIMITS MIN	LIMITS TYP	LIMITS MAX	UNIT	TEST CONDITIONS
Input Capacitance (A_0-A_7), D_{IN}	C_{I1}		5	6	pF	
Input Capacitance $\overline{RAS}$, $\overline{CAS}$, WRITE	C_{I2}			10	pF	
Output Capacitance (D_{OUT})	C_O			7	pF	

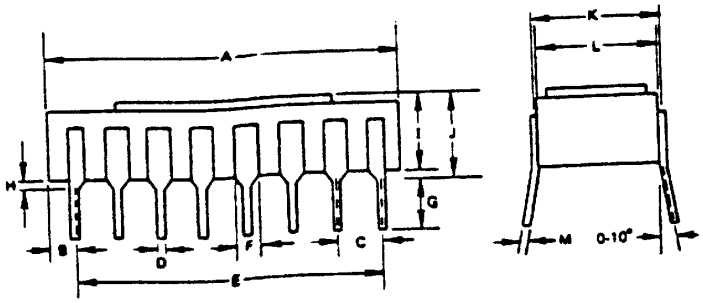
PACKAGE OUTLINES μPD4164C



Plastic

ITEM	MILLIMETERS	INCHES
A	19.4 MAX.	0.76 MAX.
B	0.83	0.03
C	2.54	0.10
D	0.5	0.02
E	17.78	0.70
F	1.3	0.051
G	2.54 MIN.	0.10 MIN.
H	0.5 MIN.	0.02 MIN.
I	4.05 MAX.	0.16 MAX.
J	4.55 MAX.	0.18 MAX.
K	7.62	0.30
L	6.4	0.25
M	$0.25^{+0.10}_{-0.05}$	0.01

μPD4164D



Ceramic

ITEM	MILLIMETERS	INCHES
A	20.6 MAX.	0.81 MAX.
B	1.38	0.05
C	2.54	0.10
D	0.5	0.02
E	17.78	0.70
F	1.3	0.051
G	3.5 MIN.	0.14 MIN.
H	0.5 MIN.	0.02 MIN.
I	4.6 MAX.	0.18 MAX.
J	5.1 MAX.	0.20 MAX.
K	7.6	0.30
L	7.3	0.29
M	0.27	0.01

4164DS-9-80-CAT

Bidirectional Transceiver

General Description

The DP7304B/DP8304B are 8-bit TRI-STATE® Schottky transceivers. They provide bidirectional drive for bus-oriented microprocessor and digital communications systems. Straight through bidirectional transceivers are featured, with 16 mA drive capability on the A ports and 48 mA bus drive capability on the B ports. PNP inputs are incorporated to reduce input loading.

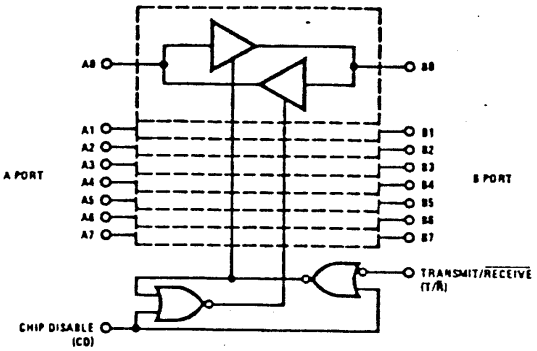
Transmit/Receive inputs determine the direction of logic signals through the bidirectional transceiver. The Chip Disable input disables both A and B ports by placing them in a TRI-STATE condition.

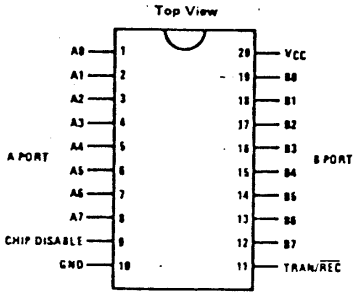
The output high voltage (V_{OH}) is specified at V_{CC} - 1.15 V minimum to allow interfacing with MOS, CMOS, TTL, ROM, RAM, or microprocessors.

Features

- 8 Bit Bidirectional Data Flow Reduced System Package Count
- Bidirectional TRI-STATE Inputs/Outputs Interface with Bus-Oriented Systems
- PNP Inputs Reduce Input-Loading
- Output High Voltage Interfaces with TTL, MOS, and CMOS
- 48 mA/300 pF Bus Drive Capability
- Pinouts Simplify System Interconnections
- Transmit/Receive and Chip Disable Simplify Control Logic
- Compact 20-Pin Dual-In-Line Package
- Low I_{CC} Power (8 mA per bidirectional bit)

Logic and Connection Diagrams





Dual-In-Line Package
Order Numbers: DP8304BN, DP8304BJ, DP7304BJ
See NS Package J20A or N20A

Logic Table

Inputs		Resulting Conditions	
Chip Disable	Transmit/Receive	A Port	B Port
0	0	OUT	IN
0	1	IN	OUT
1	X	TRI-STATE	TRI-STATE

X = Don't Care

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENGINEERING RELEASE:
This revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.
NOTICE OF PROPRIETARY PROPERTY
The information contained herein is the proprietary property of Apple Computer, Inc.
The possessor agrees to the following:
(I) To maintain this document in confidence.
(II) Not to reproduce or copy it.
(III) Not to reveal or publish it in whole or pa

P/N 315-8304-00
ECO 449
DATE 6/80
INITIATED BY
APPROVED BY
RELEASED BY 7-3-80

SHEET 1 OF 4

Absolute Maximum Ratings (Note 1)

Supply Voltage	7V
Input Voltage	5.5V
Output Voltage	5.5V
Storage Temperature	−65°C to +150°C
Lead Temperature (soldering, 10 seconds)	300°C
Power Dissipation	
Cavity Package (J)	730 mW at 125°C
Molded Package (N)	600 mW at 70°C

Recommended Operating Conditions

	Min	Max	Units
Supply Voltage (V_{CC})			
DP7304B	4.5	5.5	V
DP8304B	4.75	5.25	V
Temperature (T_A)			
DP7304B	−55	125	°C
DP8304B	0	70	°C

Electrical Characteristics (Notes 2 and 3)

Parameter		Conditions		Min	Typ	Max	Units
A Port (A0-A7)							
V_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V		2.0			V
V_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V	DP8304B			0.8	V
			DP7304B			0.7	V
V_{OH}	Logical "1" Output Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V,	I_{OH} = −0.4 mA	V_{CC}−1.15	V_{CC}−0.7		V
			I_{OH} = −3 mA	2.7	3.95		V
V_{OL}	Logical "0" Output Voltage	CD = T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V	I_{OL} = 16 mA (8304B)		0.35	0.5	V
			I_{OL} = 8 mA (both)		0.3	0.4	V
I_{OS}	Output Short Circuit Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V, V_O = 0V, V_{CC} = max, Note 4		−10	−38	−75	mA
I_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V, V_{IH} = 2.7V			0.1	80	μA
I_I	Input Current at Maximum Input Voltage	CD = 2.0V, V_{CC} = max, V_{IH} = 5.25V				1	mA
I_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V, V_{IL} = 0.4V			−70	−200	μA
V_{CLAMP}	Input Clamp Voltage	CD = 2.0V, I_{IN} = −12 mA			−0.7	−1.5	V
I_{OD}	Output/Input TRI-STATE Current	CD = 2.0V	V_{IN} = 0.4V			−200	μA
			V_{IN} = 4.0V			80	μA
B Port (B0-B7)							
V_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V		2.0			V
V_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V	DP8304B			0.8	V
			DP7304B			0.7	V
V_{OH}	Logical "1" Output Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V	I_{OH} = −0.4 mA	V_{CC}−1.15	V_{CC}−0.8		V
			I_{OH} = −5 mA	2.7	3.9		V
			I_{OH} = −10 mA	2.4	3.6		V
V_{OL}	Logical "0" Output Voltage	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V	I_{OL} = 20 mA		0.3	0.4	V
			I_{OL} = 48 mA		0.4	0.5	V
I_{OS}	Output Short Circuit Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 2.0V, V_O = 0V, V_{CC} = max, Note 4		−25	−50	−150	mA
I_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V, V_{IH} = 2.7V			0.1	80	μA
I_I	Input Current at Maximum Input Voltage	CD = 2.0V, V_{CC} = max, V_{IH} = 5.25V				1	mA
I_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Current	CD = 0.8V, T/$\overline{R}$ = 0.8V, V_{IL} = 0.4V			−70	−200	μA
V_{CLAMP}	Input Clamp Voltage	CD = 2.0V, I_{IN} = −12 mA			−0.7	−1.5	V
I_{OD}	Output/Input TRI-STATE Current	CD = 2.0V	V_{IN} = 0.4V			−200	μA
			V_{IN} = 4.0V			+200	μA

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

315-8304-00 SHT 2

Electrical Characteristics (cont'd.) (Notes 2 and 3)

Parameter		Conditions		Min	Typ	Max	Units
Control Inputs CD, T/R							
V_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Voltage			2.0			V
V_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Voltage					0.8	V
I_{IH}	Logical "1" Input Current	V_{IH} = 2.7V			0.5	20	μA
I_I	Input Current at Maximum Input Voltage	V_{CC} = max, V_{IH} = 5.25V				1.0	mA
I_{IL}	Logical "0" Input Current	V_{IL} = 0.4V	T/R̄		−0.1	−0.25	mA
			CD		−0.25	−0.5	mA
V_{CLAMP}	Input Clamp Voltage	I_{IN} = −12 mA			−0.8	−1.5	V
Power Supply Current							
I_{CC}	Power Supply Current	CD = 2.0V, V_{IN} = 0.4V, V_{CC} = max			60	100	mA
		CD = V_{INA} = 0.4V, T/R = 2V, V_{CC} = max			80	130	mA

Switching Characteristics V_{CC} = 5V, T_A = 25°C

Parameter		Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
A Port Data/Mode Specifications						
t_{PDHLA}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "0" from B Port to A Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure A), R1 = 1k, R2 = 5k, C1 = 30 pF		14	18	ns
t_{PDLHA}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "1" from B Port to A Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure A) R1 = 1k, R2 = 5k, C1 = 30 pF		13	18	ns
t_{PLZA}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		11	15	ns
t_{PHZA}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 2.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		8	15	ns
t_{PZLA}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "0" from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 0.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 1k, C4 = 30 pF		27	35	ns
t_{PZHA}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "1" from CD to A Port	B0 to B7 = 2.4V, T/R = 0.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 5k, C4 = 30 pF		19	25	ns
B Port Data/Mode Specifications						
t_{PDHLB}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "0" from A Port to B Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure A) R1 = 100Ω, R2 = 1k, C1 = 300 pF R1 = 667Ω, R2 = 5k, C1 = 45 pF		18 11	23 18	ns ns
t_{PDLHB}	Propagation Delay to a Logical "1" from A Port to B Port	CD = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure A) R1 = 100Ω, R2 = 1k, C1 = 300 pF R1 = 667Ω, R2 = 5k, C1 = 45 pF		16 11	23 18	ns ns
t_{PLZB}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		13	18	ns
t_{PHZB}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 2.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 1k, C4 = 15 pF		8	15	ns
t_{PZLB}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "0" from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 0.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C) S3 = 1, R5 = 100Ω, C4 = 300 pF S3 = 1, R5 = 667Ω, C4 = 45 pF		32 16	40 22	ns ns
t_{PZHB}	Propagation Delay from TRI-STATE to a Logical "1" from CD to B Port	A0 to A7 = 2.4V, T/R = 2.4V (figure C) S3 = 0, R5 = 1k, C4 = 300 pF S3 = 0, R5 = 5k, C4 = 45 pF		26 14	35 22	ns ns

Switching Characteristics (cont'd.) V_{CC} = 5 V, T_A = 25°C

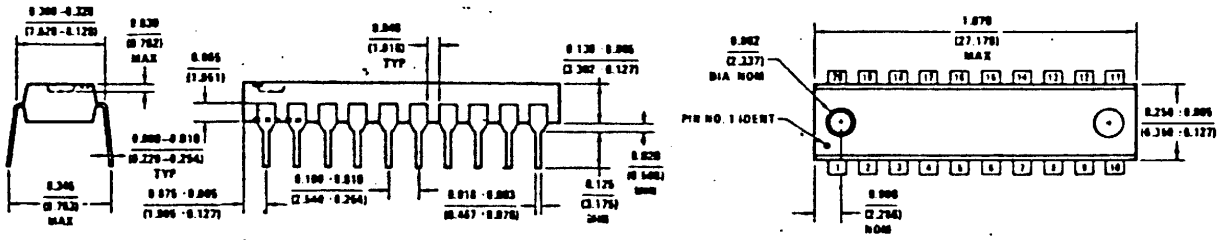
Parameter		Conditions	Min	Typ	Max	Units
Transmit/Receive Mode Specifications						
t_{PHZR}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from T/R to A Port	CD = 0.4 V (figure B) S1 = 1, R4 = 100 Ω, C3 = 300 pF S2 = 0, R3 = 1k, C2 = 15 pF		7	12	ns
t_{PLZR}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from T/R to A Port	CD = 0.4 V (figure B) S1 = 0, R4 = 1k, C3 = 300 pF S2 = 1, R3 = 1k, C2 = 15 pF		10	14	ns
t_{PHZT}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "1" to TRI-STATE from T/R to B Port	CD = 0.4 V (figure B) S1 = 0, R4 = 1k, C3 = 15 pF S2 = 1, R3 = 5k, C2 = 30 pF		16	22	ns
t_{PLZT}	Propagation Delay from a Logical "0" to TRI-STATE from T/R to B Port	CD = 0.4 V (figure B) S1 = 1, R4 = 1k, C3 = 15 pF S2 = 0, R3 = 1k, C2 = 30 pF		17	22	ns
t_{PRL}	Propagation Delay from Transmit Mode to a Logical "0," T/R to A Port	$t_{PRL} = t_{PHZT} + t_{PDHLA}$		25	40	ns
t_{PRH}	Propagation Delay from Transmit Mode to a Logical "1," T/R to A Port	$t_{PRH} = t_{PLZT} + t_{PDLHA}$		30	40	ns
t_{PTL}	Propagation Delay from Receive Mode to a Logical "0," T/R to B Port	$t_{PTL} = t_{PHZR} + t_{PDHLB}$		25	35	ns
t_{PTH}	Propagation Delay from Receive Mode to a Logical "1," T/R to B Port	$t_{PTH} = t_{PLZR} + t_{PDLHB}$		26	35	ns

Note 1: "Absolute Maximum Ratings" are those values beyond which the safety of the device cannot be guaranteed. They are not meant to imply that the devices should be operated at these limits. The tables of "Electrical Characteristics" provide conditions for actual device operation.

Note 2: Unless otherwise specified, min/max limits apply across the supply and temperature range listed in the table of Recommended Operating Conditions. All typical values given are for V_{CC} = 5 V and T_A = 25°C.

Note 3: All currents into device pins are positive; all currents out of device pins are negative. All voltages are referenced to ground unless otherwise specified.

Note 4: Only one output at a time should be shorted.



20-Lead Molded DIP (N)

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

REV.	ZONE	ECO #	REVISION	APPD
00		352	INITIAL RELEASE	
B			PRE-PRODUCTION RELEASE - Sh. 9 all unspecified XY locations were "0"	
B		500	ECO RELEASE; Sh. 3 - added part identification.	

ENGINEERING RELEASE.
This revision supersedes all previous versions.
Please destroy all old copies.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B

SH 1 OF 9

TOLERANCES
UNLESS OTHERWISE SPECIFIED DIMENSIONS ARE IN INCHES.
DECIMALS .X ± —
.XX ± —
.XXX ± —
ANGLES XX.X ± —
FRACTIONS ± —
DIMENSIONS IN PARENTHESIS ARE IN MILLIMETERS

DRAWN BY Dave Lowe DATE 3-17-80
CHECKED BY [signature] DATE 3/18/80
APPROVED BY DATE
RELEASED BY DATE

apple computer inc.

TITLE KEYBOARD, ENCODER

605-0105

MATERIAL: N.A.

SIZE A

DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B

NEXT ASSY.

FINISH: N.A.

SCALE: N.A.

SHEET 1 OF 9

ELECTRICAL SPECS

Minimum Ratings

1) VDD & VGG (w/respect to Vcc): -20V to + 0.3V
2) Logic input voltages (w/respect to Vcc): -20 to +03V
3) Storage temp: -65°C to 150°C
4) Operating temp range: 0°C to +70°C

NOTE: Exceeding these ratings could cause permanent damage. Functional operation of this device at these conditions is not inplied - operating ranges are specified under "standard conditions" listed next.

STANDARD CONDITIONS

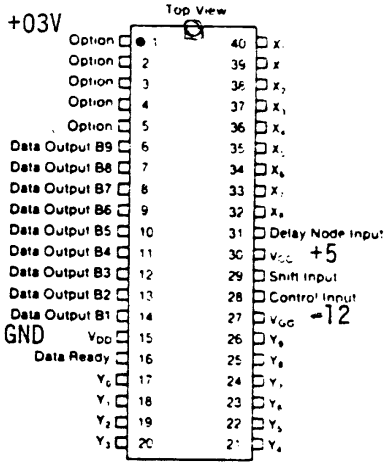
Vcc = +5 volts ± 0.5 volts

VGG = 12 volts ± 1.0 volts VDD = GND

(Vcc = substrate voltage)

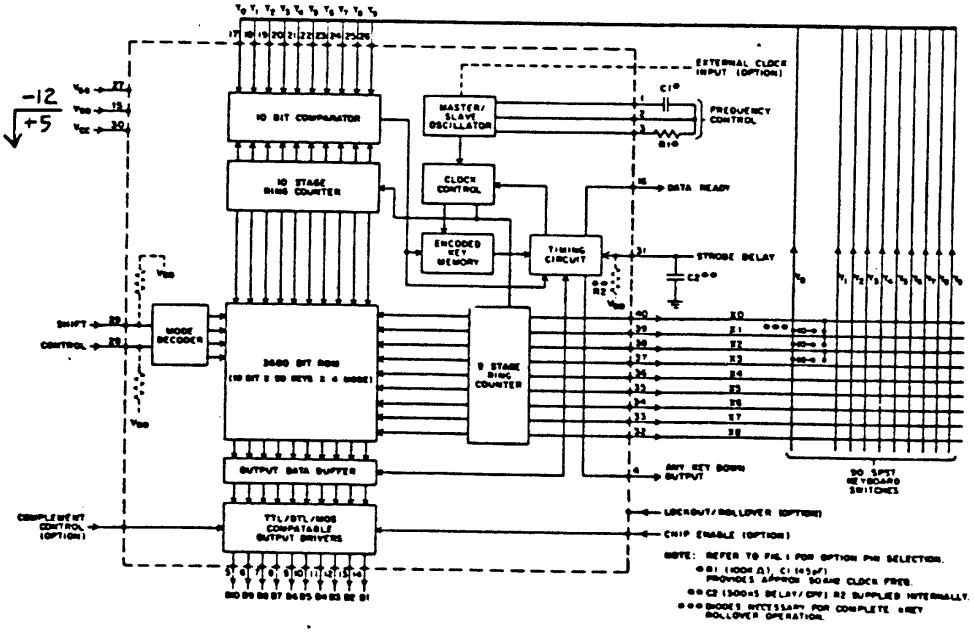
Operating temperature (Ta) = 0°C to +70°C

PIN CONFIGURATION
40 LEAD DUAL IN LINE



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BLOCK DIAGRAM



apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B
	SCALE:	SHEET 2 OF 9

CUSTOM CODING INFORMATION

The custom coding information for the Keyboard Encoder ROM should be transmitted in the form of 80 column punched cards. Each ROM pattern requires 92 cards (1 title card, 1 circuit option card and 90 ROM pattern cards). (See Note 1)
If it is not possible to supply punched cards, then the Truth Table should be completed (See Note 1). However, there would be a substantial savings in both the coding charge and turn-around time if punched cards were used. Upon receipt of the punched cards or the Truth Table, vendor will prepare a computer-generated Truth Table which will be returned to the used for verification.

OPTIONS USED: Pins 1, 2, & 3 External Clock
Pin 4 AKO

PART IDENTIFICATION

Part shall be marked with part number and revision.

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE: N.A.	SHEET 3 OF 9

ELECTRICAL CHARACTERISTICS

Characteristics	Sym	Min	Typ**	Max	Units	Conditions
Clock Frequency	f	10	50	100	kHz	See Block diagram footnote' for typical R-C values
External Clock Width		7	—	—	μs	
Data & Clock Input (Shift, Control, Complement Control, Lockout/Rollover, Chip Enable & External Clock)						
Logic "0" Level	V_{IL}	V_{EE}	—	+0.8	V	
Logic "1" Level	V_{IH}	$V_{CC}-1.5$	—	$V_{CC}+0.3$	V	
Shift & Control Input Current	I_{SC}	75	95	120	μA	$V_I = +5V$
X Output (X_0-X_9)						
Logic "1" Output Current	I_{XH}	40	170	400	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}$ (See Note 2)
		600	1300	2500	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-1.3V$
		900	1600	3500	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-2.0V$
		1500	3800	6000	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-5V$
		3000	6000	10000	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-10V$
Logic "0" Output Current	I_{XL}	8	15	50	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}$
		6	11	35	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-1.3V$
		5	10	30	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-2.0V$
		2	5	15	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-5V$
		—	0.5	5	μA	$V_{OUT} = V_{CC}-10V$
Y Input (Y_0-Y_9)						
Trip Level	V_t	$V_{CC}-5$	$V_{CC}-3$	$V_{CC}-2$	V	Y Input Going Positive (See Note 2)
Hysteresis	ΔV_t	0.5	0.9	1.4	V	(See Note 1)
Selected Y Input Current	I_{YH}	18	36	100	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}$
		14	28	90	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-1.3V$
		13	25	80	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-2.0V$
		6	12	60	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-5V$
		—	1	30	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-10V$
Unselected Y Input Current	I_{YL}	9	18	50	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}$
		7	14	45	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-1.3V$
		6	13	40	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-2.0V$
		3	6	30	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-5V$
		—	0.5	15	μA	$V_{IN} = V_{CC}-10V$
Input Capacitance	C_{IN}	—	3	10	pF	at 0V (All Inputs)
X-Y Precharge Characteristics	ϕP	1500	3500	5000	μA	$V = V_{CC}$
		200	600	1500	μA	$V = V_{CC}-5$ (See Note 2)
Switch Characteristics						
Minimum Switch Closure	—	—	—	—	—	See Timing Diagram
Contact Closure Resistance	Z_{CL}	—	—	300	Ω	
	Z_{CH}	1×10^7	—	—	Ω	
Strobe Delay						
Trip Level (Pin 31)	V_{ST}	$V_{CC}-4$	$V_{CC}-3$	$V_{CC}-2$	V	
Hysteresis	V_{HY}	0.5	0.9	1.4	V	(See Note 1)
Quiescent Voltage (Pin 31)		−3	−5	−9	V	With Internal Switched Resistor
Data Output (B1-B10), Any Key Down Output, Data Ready						
Logic "0"	—	—	—	0.4	V	$I_{OL} = 1.6mA$
Logic "1"	—	$V_{CC}-1$	—	—	V	$I_{OH} = 1.0mA$
	—	$V_{CC}-2$	—	—	V	$I_{OH} = 2.2mA$
Power						
I_{CC}	—	—	8	12	mA	$V_{CC} = +5V$
I_{EE}	—	—	8	12	mA	$V_{EE} = -12V$

**Typical values are at +25° C and nominal voltages

NOTE
1 Hysteresis is defined as the amount of return required to unlatch an input
2 Precharge of X outputs and Y inputs occurs during each scanned clock cycle

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE:	SHEET 4 OF 9

OPERATION

The Encoder contains (see Block Diagram), a 3600 bit ROM, 9-stage and 10-stage ring counters, a 10 bit comparator, timing circuitry, a 90 bit memory to store the location of encoded keys for n key rollover operation, an externally controllable delay network for eliminating the effect of contact bounce, an output data buffer, and TTL/DTL/MOS compatible output drivers.

The ROM portion of the chip is a 360 by 10 bit memory arranged into four 90-word by 10-bit groups. The appropriate levels on the Shift and Control Inputs selects one of the four 90-word groups; the 90-individual word locations are addressed by the two ring counters. Thus, the ROM address is formed by combining the Shift and Control Inputs with the two ring counters.

The external outputs of the 9-stage ring counter and the external inputs to the 10-bit comparator are wired to the keyboard to form an X-Y matrix with the 90-keyboard switches as the crosspoints. In the standby condition, when no key is depressed, the two ring counters are clocked and sequentially address the ROM, thereby scanning the key switches for key closures.

When a key is depressed, a single path is completed between one output of the 9-stage ring counter (X0 thru X8) and one input of the 10-bit comparator (Y_0-Y_9). After a number of clock cycles, a condition will occur where a level on the selected path to the comparator matches a level on the corresponding comparator input from the 10-stage ring counter.

N KEY ROLLOVER

— When a match occurs, and the key has not been encoded, the switch bounce delay network is enabled. If the key is still depressed at the end of the selected delay time, the code for the depressed key is transferred to the output data buffer, the data ready signal appears, a one is stored in the encoded key memory and the scan sequence is resumed. If a match occurs at another key location, the sequence is repeated thus encoding the next key. If the match occurs for an already encoded key, the match is not recognized. The code of the last key encoded remains in the output data buffer.

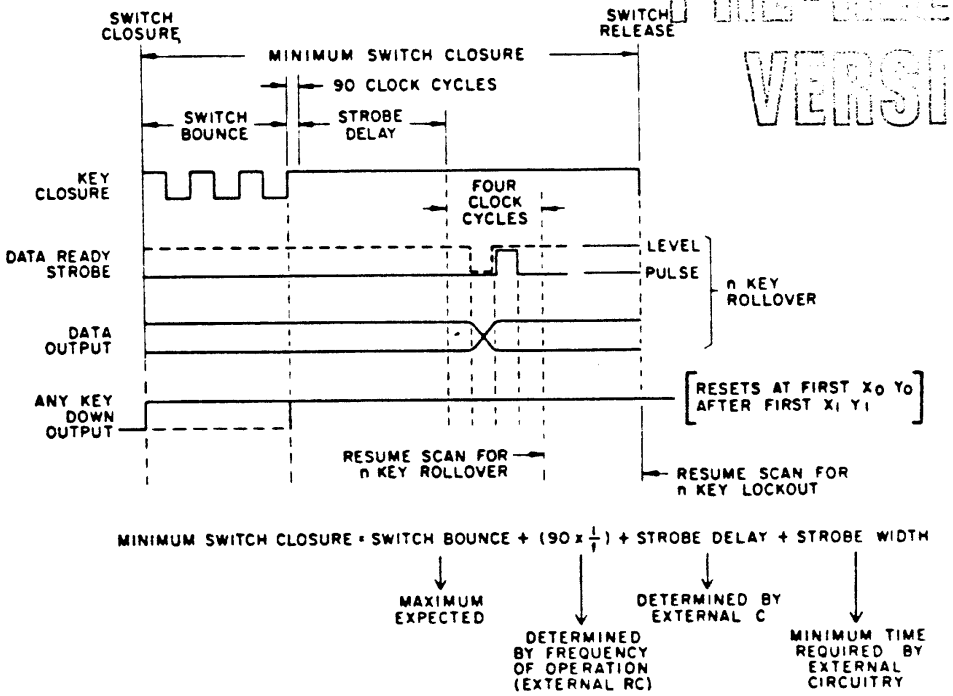
N KEY LOCKOUT

— When a match occurs, the delay network is enabled. If the key is still depressed at the end of the selected delay time, the code for the depressed key is transferred to the output data buffer, the data ready signal appears and the remaining keys are locked out by halting the scan sequence. The scan sequence is resumed upon key release. The output data buffer stores the code of the last key encoded.

SPECIAL PATTERNS

— Since the selected coding of each key and all the options are defined during the manufacture of the chip, the coding and options can be changed to fit any particular application of the keyboard. Up to 360 codes of up to 10 bits can be programmed into the Encoder ROM covering most popular codes such as ASCII, EBCDIC, Selectric, etc., as well as many specialized codes. The ASCII code in conjunction with internal oscillator, 10 data outputs and any key down output, is available as a standard pattern (See Figure 2).

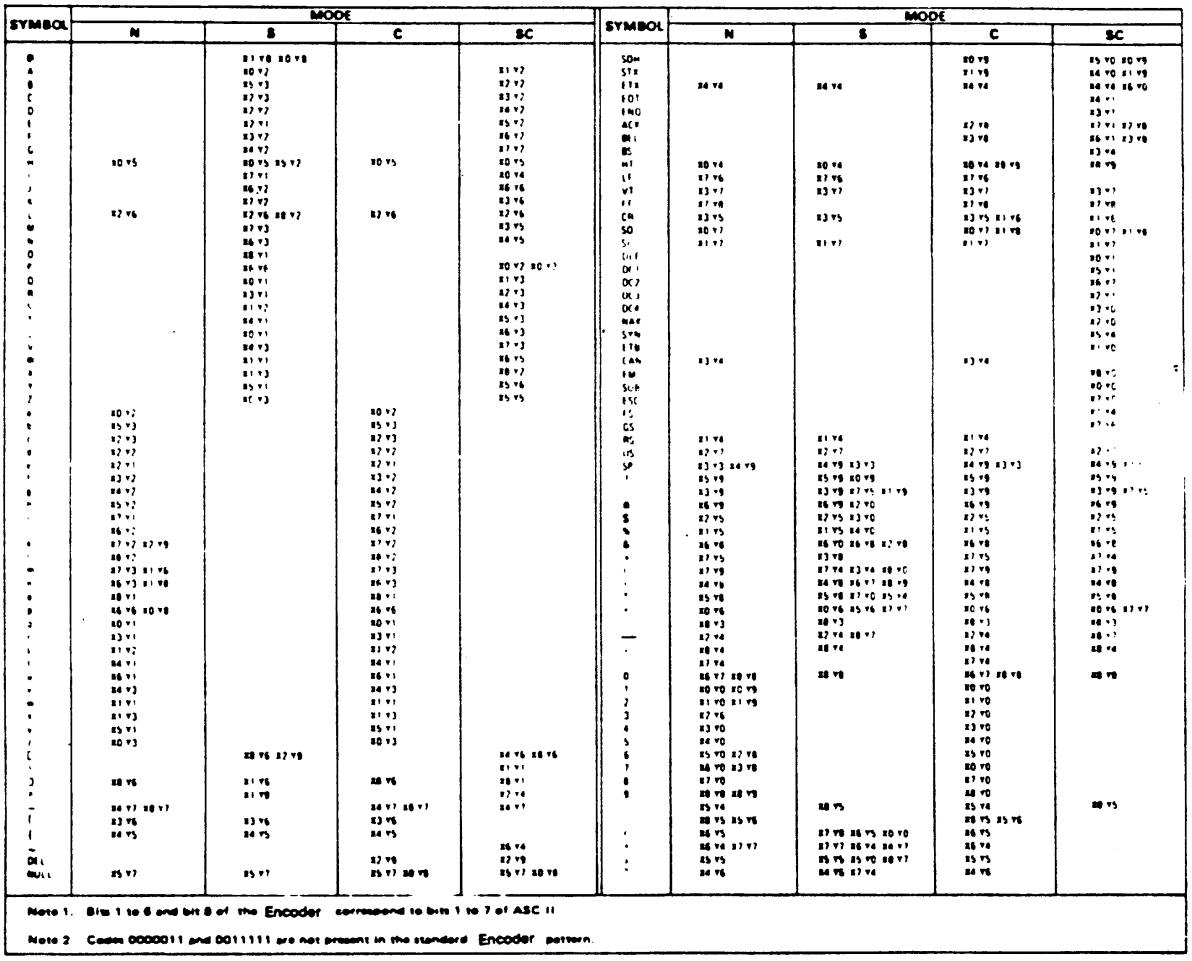
TIMING DIAGRAM



MINIMUM SWITCH CLOSURE = SWITCH BOUNCE + (90 x $\frac{1}{f}$) + STROBE DELAY + STROBE WIDTH

- SWITCH BOUNCE: MAXIMUM EXPECTED
- (90 x $\frac{1}{f}$): DETERMINED BY FREQUENCY OF OPERATION (EXTERNAL RC)
- STROBE DELAY: DETERMINED BY EXTERNAL C
- STROBE WIDTH: MINIMUM TIME REQUIRED BY EXTERNAL CIRCUITRY

apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B
	SCALE:	SHEET 5 OF 9



SYMBOL	MODE N	MODE S	MODE C	MODE SC
@		B1 Y8 B0 Y8		
A		B0 Y2		B1 Y2
B		B5 Y3		B2 Y2
C		B7 Y3		B3 Y2
D		B7 Y2		B6 Y2
E		B7 Y1		B5 Y2
F		B3 Y2		B6 Y7
G		B4 Y2		B7 Y7
H	B0 Y5	B0 Y5 B5 Y2	B0 Y5	B0 Y5
I		B7 Y1		B0 Y4
J		B6 Y2		B6 Y6
K		B7 Y2		B3 Y6
L	B2 Y6	B2 Y6 B0 Y2	B2 Y6	B2 Y6
M		B7 Y3		B3 Y5
N		B6 Y3		B4 Y5
O		B0 Y1		
P		B5 Y6		B0 Y2 B0 Y3
Q		B0 Y1		B1 Y3
R		B3 Y1		B2 Y3
S		B1 Y2		B4 Y3
T		B4 Y1		B5 Y3
U		B0 Y1		B6 Y3
V		B0 Y3		B7 Y3
W		B1 Y1		B5 Y5
X		B1 Y3		B0 Y7
Y		B5 Y1		B5 Y6
Z		B0 Y3		B5 Y5
[	B0 Y2		B0 Y2	
\	B5 Y3		B5 Y3	
]	B2 Y3		B2 Y3	
^	B2 Y2		B2 Y2	
_	B2 Y1		B2 Y1	
`	B3 Y2		B3 Y2	
a	B4 Y2		B4 Y2	
b	B5 Y2		B5 Y2	
c	B7 Y1		B7 Y1	
d	B6 Y2		B6 Y2	
e	B7 Y2 B2 Y8		B7 Y2	
f	B0 Y2		B0 Y2	
g	B7 Y3 B1 Y6		B7 Y3	
h	B6 Y3 B1 Y8		B6 Y3	
i	B0 Y1		B0 Y1	
j	B6 Y6 B0 Y8		B6 Y6	
k	B0 Y1		B0 Y1	
l	B3 Y1		B3 Y1	
m	B1 Y2		B1 Y2	
n	B4 Y1		B4 Y1	
o	B6 Y1		B6 Y1	
p	B4 Y3		B4 Y3	
q	B1 Y1		B1 Y1	
r	B1 Y3		B1 Y3	
s	B5 Y1		B5 Y1	
t	B0 Y3		B0 Y3	
u		B0 Y6 B2 Y8		B4 Y6 B0 Y6
v				B1 Y1
w	B0 Y6	B1 Y6	B0 Y6	B0 Y1
x		B1 Y8		B2 Y4
y	B4 Y7 B0 Y7		B4 Y7 B0 Y7	B6 Y7
z	B3 Y6	B3 Y6	B3 Y6	
{	B4 Y5	B4 Y5	B4 Y5	
|				B5 Y4
}				B2 Y8
~		B2 Y8		B5 Y7 B0 Y8
DEL	B5 Y7	B5 Y7	B5 Y7 B0 Y8	
NULL				

SYMBOL	MODE N	MODE S	MODE C	MODE SC
SOH			B0 Y8	B5 Y0 B0 Y8
STX			B1 Y8	B4 Y0 B1 Y8
ETX	B4 Y8	B4 Y8	B4 Y8	B4 Y8 B6 Y0
EOT				B4 Y1
ENQ				B3 Y1
ACK			B2 Y8	B7 Y1 B2 Y8
BEL			B3 Y8	B6 Y1 B3 Y8
BS				B3 Y4
HT	B0 Y4	B0 Y4	B0 Y4 B0 Y8	B0 Y8
LF	B7 Y6	B7 Y6	B7 Y6	
VT	B3 Y7	B3 Y7	B3 Y7	B3 Y7
FF	B7 Y8		B7 Y8	B7 Y8
CR	B3 Y5	B3 Y5	B3 Y5 B1 Y6	B1 Y6
SO	B0 Y7		B0 Y7 B1 Y8	B0 Y7 B1 Y8
SI	B1 Y7	B1 Y7	B1 Y7	B1 Y7
DLE				B0 Y1
DC1				B5 Y1
DC2				B6 Y7
DC3				B2 Y1
DC4				B3 Y0
NAK				B7 Y0
SYN				B5 Y4
ETB				B1 Y0
CAN	B3 Y4		B3 Y4	
EM				B0 Y0
SUB				B0 Y0
ESC				B7 Y7
FS				B7 Y4
GS				B7 Y4
RS	B1 Y4	B1 Y4	B1 Y4	
US	B2 Y1	B2 Y1	B2 Y1	B2 Y1
SP	B3 Y3 B4 Y8	B4 Y8 B3 Y3	B4 Y8 B3 Y3	B4 Y5 B1 Y1
!	B5 Y8	B5 Y8 B0 Y8	B5 Y8	B5 Y4
"	B3 Y8	B3 Y8 B7 Y5 B1 Y8	B3 Y8	B3 Y8 B7 Y5
#	B6 Y8	B6 Y8 B2 Y0	B6 Y8	B6 Y8
$	B2 Y5	B2 Y5 B3 Y0	B2 Y5	B2 Y5
%	B1 Y5	B1 Y5 B4 Y0	B1 Y5	B1 Y5
&	B6 Y8	B6 Y0 B6 Y8 B2 Y8	B6 Y8	B6 Y8
'	B7 Y5	B3 Y8	B7 Y5	B7 Y4
(	B7 Y8	B7 Y4 B3 Y4 B0 Y0	B7 Y8	B7 Y8
)	B4 Y8	B4 Y8 B6 Y7 B8 Y8	B4 Y8	B4 Y8
*	B5 Y8	B5 Y8 B7 Y0 B5 Y4	B5 Y8	B5 Y8
+	B0 Y6	B0 Y6 B5 Y6 B7 Y7	B0 Y6	B0 Y6 B7 Y7
,	B8 Y3	B8 Y3	B8 Y3	B8 Y3
-	B7 Y4	B7 Y4 B8 Y7	B7 Y4	B8 Y7
.	B8 Y4	B8 Y4	B8 Y4	B8 Y4
/	B7 Y4		B7 Y4	
0	B6 Y7 B8 Y8	B8 Y8	B6 Y7 B8 Y8	B8 Y8
1	B0 Y0 B0 Y8		B0 Y0	
2	B1 Y0 B1 Y8		B1 Y0	
3	B7 Y5		B2 Y0	
4	B3 Y0		B3 Y0	
5	B4 Y0		B4 Y0	
6	B5 Y0 B7 Y8		B5 Y0	
7	B6 Y0 B3 Y8		B0 Y0	
8	B7 Y0		B7 Y0	
9	B8 Y8 B8 Y8		B8 Y0	
:	B5 Y4	B8 Y5	B5 Y4	B8 Y5
;	B8 Y5 B5 Y6		B8 Y5 B5 Y6	
<	B6 Y5	B7 Y8 B6 Y5 B0 Y0	B6 Y5	
=	B6 Y4 B7 Y7	B7 Y7 B6 Y4 B8 Y7	B6 Y4	
>	B5 Y5	B5 Y5 B5 Y0 B8 Y7	B5 Y5	
?	B4 Y6	B4 Y6 B7 Y4	B4 Y6	

Note 1. Bits 1 to 6 and bit 8 of the Encoder correspond to bits 1 to 7 of ASC II

Note 2 Codes 0000011 and 0011111 are not present in the standard Encoder pattern.

Fig.2 STANDARD Encoder CODE ASSIGNMENTS ASCII CODE

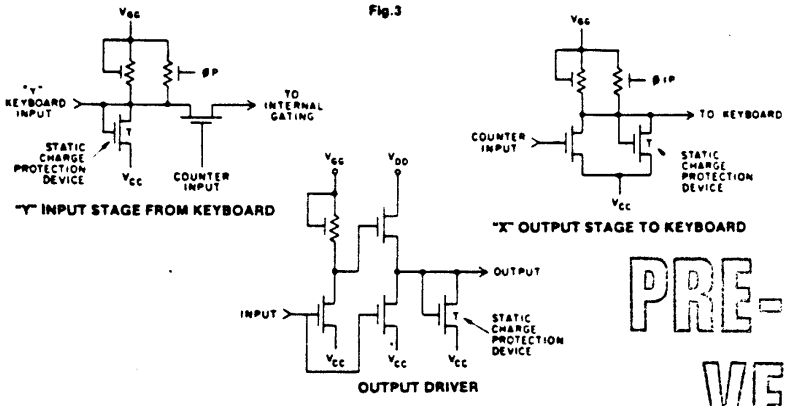
OPTIONS PROVIDED WITH STANDARD ENCODER

- Device Marking: Encoder
- Internal Oscillator on Pin Nos. 1, 2, 3.
- Any Key Output on Pin No. 4.
  Any Key Output True (Logic 1) During Key Depression.
- Output Data Bit B10 on Pin No. 5.
- N-Key Rollover Only.
- True Outputs Only.
- Pulse Data Ready Signal
- Internal Resistor to V_{DD} on Shift/Control Pin
- Plastic Package

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE:	SHEET 6 OF 9

Fig.3



NOTE. Output driver capable of driving one TTL load with no external resistor
Capable of driving two TTL loads using an external 6.8KΩ resistor to V_{cc}.

TYPICAL CHARACTERISTIC CURVES

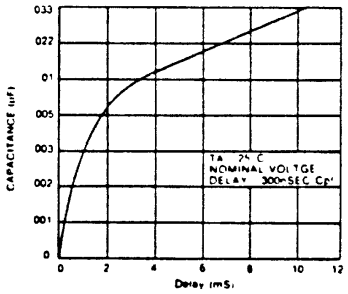


Fig.4 STROBE DELAY vs. C_1

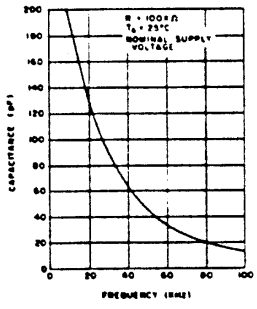


Fig.5 OSCILLATOR FREQUENCY vs. C_2

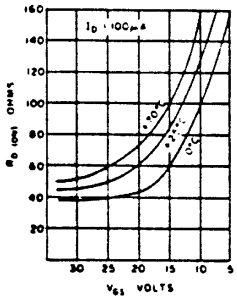


Fig.6 TYPICAL OUTPUT ON RESISTANCE (R_{DON}) vs. GATE BIAS VOLTAGE (V_{GS})

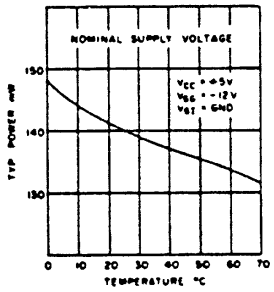


Fig.7 TYPICAL POWER CONSUMPTION (mW)

apple computer inc.	SIZE A	DRAWING NUMBER 331-0931-B
	SCALE:	SHEET 7 OF 9

LOC XY	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX
		NORMAL			SHIFT			CONTROL			SHT/CTR	
00	3	110011011	1B3	#	110001010	0A3	3	110011011	1B3	#	110001010	0A3
01	4	001011011	1B4	$	001001010	0A4	4	001011011	1B4	$	001001010	0A4
02	5	101011011	1B5	%	101001010	0A5	5	101011011	1B5	%	101001010	0A5
03	6	011011011	1B6	&	011001010	0A6	6	011011011	1B6	&	011001010	0A6
04	7	111011011	1B7	'	111001010	0A7	7	111011011	1B7	'	111001010	0A7
05	8	000111011	1B8	(	000101010	0A8	8	000111011	1B8	(	000101010	0A8
06	9	100111011	1B9	)	100101010	0A9	9	100111011	1B9	)	100101010	0A9
07	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0	Ø	000011011	1B0
08	:	010111011	1BA	*	010101010	0AA	:	010111011	1BA	*	010101010	0AA
09	-	101101010	0AD	=	101111011	1BD	-	101101010	0AD	=	101111011	1BD
10	Q	100010111	1D1	Q	100010101	151	DC1	100010001	111	DC1	100010001	111
11	W	111010111	1D7	W	111010101	157	ETB	111010001	117	ETB	111010001	117
12	E	101000110	0C5	E	101000100	045	ENQ	101000000	105	ENQ	101000000	005
13	R	010010111	1D2	R	010010101	152	DC2	010010001	112	DC2	010010001	112
14	T	001010111	1D4	T	001010101	154	DC4	001010001	114	DC4	001010001	114
15	Y	100110111	1D9	Y	100110101	159	EM	100110001	119	EM	100110001	119
16	U	101010111	1D5	U	101010101	155	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115
17	I	100100110	0C9	I	100100100	049	HT	100100000	009	HT	100100000	009
18	O	111100110	0CF	O	111100100	04F	SI	111100000	00F	SI	111100000	00F
19	P	000010111	1D0	@	000000101	140	DLE	000010001	110	NUL	000000000	000
20	D	001000110	0C4	D	001000100	044	EOT	001000000	004	EOT	001000000	004
21	F	011000110	0C6	F	011000100	046	ACK	011000000	006	ACK	011000000	006
22	G	111000110	0C7	G	111000100	047	BEL	111000000	007	BEL	111000000	007
23	H	000100110	0C8	H	000100100	048	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008
24	J	010100110	0CA	J	010100100	04A	LF	010100000	00A	LF	010100000	00A
25	K	110100110	0CB	K	110100100	04B	VT	110100000	00B	VT	110100000	00B
26	L	001100110	0CC	L	001100100	04C	FF	001100000	00C	FF	001100000	00C
27	;	110111011	1BB	+	110101010	0AB	;	110111011	1BB	+	110101010	0AB
28	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008	BS	000100000	008
29	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115	NAK	101010001	115
30	Z	010110111	1DA	Z	010110101	15A	SUB	010110001	11A	SUB	010110001	11A
31	X	000110111	1D8	X	000110101	158	CAN	000110001	118	CAN	000110001	118
32	C	110000110	0C3	C	110000100	043	ETX	110000000	003	ETX	110000000	003
33	V	011010111	1D6	V	011010101	156	SYN	011010001	116	SYN	011010001	116
34	B	010000110	0C2	B	010000100	042	STX	010000000	002	STX	010000000	002

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE:	SHEET 8 OF 9

LOC XY	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX	ASCII	BBBBBBBBB 123456789	HEX
		NORMAL			SHIFT			CONTROL			SHT/CTR	
35	N	011100110	0CE	^	011110100	05E	SO	011100000	00E	RS	011110001	11E
36	M	101100110	0CD	]	101110100	05D	CR	101100000	00D	GS	101110001	11D
37	,	001101010	0AC	<	001111011	1BC	,	001101010	0AC	<	001111011	1BC
38	.	011101010	0AE	>	011111011	1BE	.	011101010	0AE	>	011111011	1BE
39	/	111101010	0AF	?	111111011	1BF	/	111101010	0AF	?	111111011	1BF
40	S	110010111	1D3	S	110010101	153	DC3	110010001	113	DC3	110010001	113
41	2	010011011	1B2	"	010001010	0A2	2	010011011	1B2	"	010001010	0A2
42	1	100011011	1B1	!	100001010	0A1	1	100011011	1B1	!	100001010	0A1
43	ESC	110110001	11B	ESC	110110001	11B	ESC	110110001	11B	ESC	110110001	11B
44	A	100000110	0C1	A	100000100	041	SOH	100000000	001	SOH	100000000	001
45	SP	000001010	0A0	SP	000001010	0A0	SP	000001010	0A0	SP	000001010	0A0
49	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D
56	0	000011011	1B0	0	000011011	1B0	0	000011011	1B0	0	000011011	1B0
57	4	001011011	1B4	4	001011011	1B4	4	001011011	1B4	4	001011011	1B4
58	8	000111011	1B8	8	000111011	1B8	8	000111011	1B8	8	000111011	1B8
59	+	110101010	0AB	+	110101010	0AB	+	110101010	0AB	+	110101010	0AB
66	1	100011011	1B1	1	100011011	1B1	1	100011011	1B1	1	100011011	1B1
67	5	101011011	1B5	5	101011011	1B5	5	101011011	1B5	5	101011011	1B5
68	9	100111011	1B9	9	100111011	1B9	9	100111011	1B9	9	100111011	1B9
69	-	101101010	0AD	-	101101010	0AD	-	101101010	0AD	-	101101010	0AD
76	2	010011011	1B2	2	010011011	1B2	2	010011011	1B2	2	010011011	1B2
77	6	011011011	1B6	6	011011011	1B6	6	011011011	1B6	6	011011011	1B6
78	.	011101010	0AE	.	011101010	0AE	.	011101010	0AE	.	011101010	0AE
79	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D	CR	101100000	00D
86	3	110011011	1B3	3	110011011	1B3	3	110011011	1B3	3	110011011	1B3
87	7	111011011	1B7	7	111011011	1B7	7	111011011	1B7	7	111011011	1B7
88	,	001101010	0AC	,	001101010	0AC	,	001101010	0AC	,	001101010	0AC

NOTES:

1. Pin option assisgnments Pin 1, Pin 2, Pin 3 = Internal Oscillator Pin 4 = AKO.
2. Non-specified X-Y locations to be filled as follows: B1 B2 B3 B4 B5 B6 B7 B8 B9 B10
   HEX 2A0 (negative logic) 0 0 0 0 0 1 0 1 0 1
3. Output to be negative logic, ie "1" = low output (0.4V), "0" = high output (2.4V)
4. ASCII bit weight: B1 = Pin 14 (LSB), B2 = Pin 13, B3 = Pin 12, B4 = Pin 11, B5 = Pin 10, B6 = Pin 9, B7 = Pin 8, B8 = Pin 7, B9 = Pin 6 (MSB)
5. Reference document 050-0021 (Logic, Number Pad Style Keyboard).
6. B10 = "0" in all locations.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

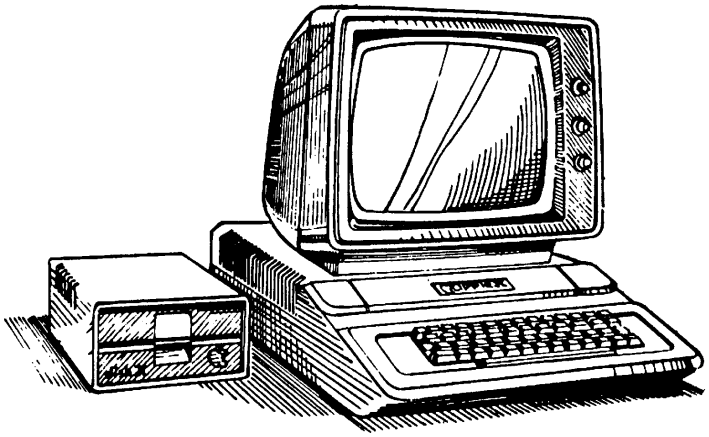
SIZE	DRAWING NUMBER
A	331-0931-B
SCALE:	SHEET 9 OF 9

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
6502 INSTRUCTIONS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

6502 MICROPROCESSOR INSTRUCTIONS

ADC	Add Memory to Accumulator with Carry	LDA Load Accumulator with Memory
AND	"AND" Memory with Accumulator	LDX Load Index X with Memory
ASL	Shift Left One Bit (Memory or Accumulator)	LDY Load Index Y with Memory
		LSR Shift Right one Bit (Memory or Accumulator)
BCC	Branch on Carry Clear	NOP No Operation
BCS	Branch on Carry Set	ORA "OR" Memory with Accumulator
BEQ	Branch on Result Zero	PHA Push Accumulator on Stack
BIT	Test Bits in Memory with Accumulator	PHP Push Processor Status on Stack
BMI	Branch on Result Minus	PLA Pull Accumulator from Stack
BNE	Branch on Result not Zero	PLP Pull Processor Status from Stack
BPL	Branch on Result Plus	ROL Rotate One Bit Left (Memory or Accumulator)
BRK	Force Break	
BVC	Branch on Overflow Clear	ROR Rotate One Bit Right (Memory or
BVS	Branch on Overflow Set	Accumulator)
CLC	Clear Carry Flag	RTI Return from Interrupt
CLD	Clear Decimal Mode	RTS Return from Subroutine
CLI	Clear Interrupt Disable Bit	SBC Subtract Memory from Accumulator with Borrow
CLV	Clear Overflow Flag	SEC Set Carry Flag
CMP	Compare Memory and Accumulator	SED Set Decimal Mode
CPX	Compare Memory and Index X	SEI Set Interrupt Disable Status
CPY	Compare Memory and Index Y	STA Store Accumulator in Memory
DEC	Decrement Memory by One	STX Store Index X in Memory
DEX	Decrement Index X by One	STY Store Index Y in Memory
DEY	Decrement Index Y by One	TAX Transfer Accumulator to Index X
EOR	"Exclusive-Or" Memory with Accumulator	TAY Transfer Accumulator to Index Y
		TSX Transfer Stack Pointer to Index X
INC	Increment Memory by One	TXA Transfer Index X to Accumulator
INX	Increment Index X by One	TXS Transfer Index X to Stack Pointer
INY	Increment Index Y by One	TYA Transfer Index Y to Accumulator
JMP	Jump to New Location	
JSR	Jump to New Location Saving Return Address	

THE FOLLOWING NOTATION APPLIES TO THIS SUMMARY:

A	Accumulator
X, Y	Index Registers
M	Memory
C	Borrow
P	Processor Status Register
S	Stack Pointer
∧	Change
—	No Change
+	Add
∧	Logical AND
-	Subtract
∨	Logical Exclusive Or
→	Transfer From Stack
→	Transfer To Stack
→	Transfer To
→	Transfer To
∨	Logical OR
PC	Program Counter
PCH	Program Counter High
PCL	Program Counter Low
OPER	Operand
#	Immediate Addressing Mode

FIGURE 1 ASL-SHIFT LEFT ONE BIT OPERATION

FIGURE 2 ROTATE ONE BIT LEFT (MEMORY OR ACCUMULATOR)

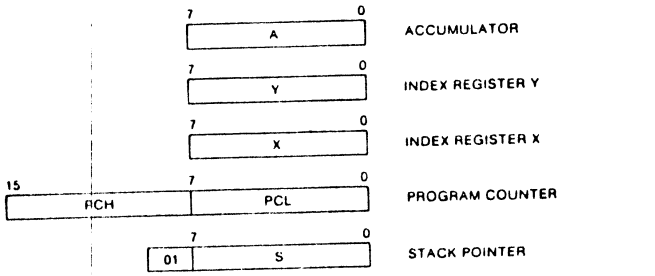
FIGURE 3

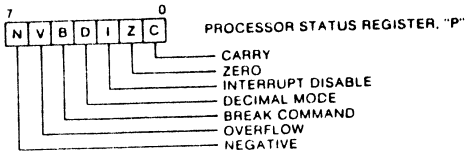
NOTE 1 BIT -- TEST BITS

Bit 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A ∧ M is zero then Z=1, otherwise Z=0

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PROGRAMMING MODEL





INSTRUCTION CODES

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
ADC Add memory to accumulator with carry	A+M+C → A C	Immediate	ADC #Oper	69	2	√√√ - - √
		Zero Page	ADC Oper	65	2	
		Zero Page X	ADC Oper,X	75	2	
		Absolute	ADC Oper	6D	3	
		Absolute X	ADC Oper,X	7D	3	
		Absolute Y	ADC Oper,Y	79	3	
		(Indirect X)	ADC (Oper,X)	61	2	
		(Indirect) Y	ADC (Oper),Y	71	2	
AND "AND" memory with accumulator	A∧M → A	Immediate	AND #Oper	29	2	√√ - - - - -
		Zero Page	AND Oper	25	2	
		Zero Page X	AND Oper,X	35	2	
		Absolute	AND Oper	2D	3	
		Absolute X	AND Oper,X	3D	3	
		Absolute Y	AND Oper,Y	39	3	
		(Indirect X)	AND (Oper,X)	21	2	
		(Indirect) Y	AND (Oper),Y	31	2	
ASL Shift left one bit (Memory or Accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator	ASL A	0A	1	√√√ - - -
		Zero Page	ASL Oper	06	2	
		Zero Page X	ASL Oper,X	16	2	
		Absolute	ASL Oper	0E	3	
		Absolute X	ASL Oper,X	1E	3	
BCC Branch on carry clear	Branch on C=0	Relative	BCC Oper	90	2	- - - - - -
BCS Branch on carry set	Branch on C=1	Relative	BCS Oper	B0	2	- - - - - -
BEQ Branch on result zero	Branch on Z=1	Relative	BEQ Oper	F0	2	- - - - - -
BIT Test bits in memory with accumulator	A∧M, M_7 → N, M_6 → V	Zero Page	BIT* Oper	24	2	M_7 √ - - - M_6
		Absolute	BIT* Oper	2C	3	
BMI Branch on result minus	Branch on N=1	Relative	BMI Oper	30	2	- - - - - -
BNE Branch on result not zero	Branch on Z=0	Relative	BNE Oper	D0	2	- - - - - -
BPL Branch on result plus	Branch on N=0	Relative	BPL oper	10	2	- - - - - -
BRK Force Break	Forced interrupt PC+2 ↓ P ↓	Implied	BRK*	00	1	- - - 1 - -
BVC Branch on overflow clear	Branch on V=0	Relative	BVC Oper	50	2	- - - - - -

Note 1: Bits 6 and 7 are transferred to the status register. If the result of A ∧ M is zero then Z = 1, otherwise Z = 0

Note 2: A BRK command cannot be masked by setting I.

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
EOR Exclusive-Or memory with accumulator	A ∨ M → A	Immediate	EOR #Oper	49	2	√- - - - -
		Zero Page	EOR Oper	45	2	
		Zero Page,X	EOR Oper,X	55	2	
		Absolute	EOR Oper	4D	3	
		Absolute,X	EOR Oper,X	5D	3	
		Absolute,Y	EOR Oper,Y	59	3	
		(Indirect,X)	EOR (Oper,X)	41	2	
		(Indirect),Y	EOR (Oper),Y	51	2	
INC Increment memory by one	M + 1 → M	Zero Page	INC Oper	E6	2	√√- - - -
		Zero Page,X	INC Oper,X	F6	2	
		Absolute	INC Oper	EE	3	
		Absolute,X	INC Oper,X	FE	3	
INX Increment index X by one	X + 1 → X	Implied	INX	E8	1	√√- - - -
INY Increment index Y by one	Y + 1 → Y	Implied	INY	C8	1	√√- - - -
JMP Jump to new location	(PC+1) → PCL (PC+2) → PCH	Absolute	JMP Oper	4C	3	- - - - - -
		Indirect	JMP (Oper)	6C	3	
JSR Jump to new location saving return address	PC+2 ↓ (PC+1) → PCL (PC+2) → PCH	Absolute	JSR Oper	20	3	- - - - - -
LDA Load accumulator with memory	M → A	Immediate	LDA #Oper	A9	2	√√- - - -
		Zero Page	LDA Oper	A5	2	
		Zero Page,X	LDA Oper,X	B5	2	
		Absolute	LDA Oper	AD	3	
		Absolute,X	LDA Oper,X	BD	3	
		Absolute,Y	LDA Oper,Y	B9	3	
		(Indirect,X)	LDA (Oper,X)	A1	2	
		(Indirect),Y	LDA (Oper),Y	B1	2	
LDX Load index X with memory	M → X	Immediate	LDX #Oper	A2	2	√√- - - -
		Zero Page	LDX Oper	A6	2	
		Zero Page,Y	LDX Oper,Y	B6	2	
		Absolute	LDX Oper	AE	3	
		Absolute,Y	LDX Oper,Y	BE	3	
LDY Load index Y with memory	M → Y	Immediate	LDY #Oper	A0	2	√√- - - -
		Zero Page	LDY Oper	A4	2	
		Zero Page,X	LDY Oper,X	B4	2	
		Absolute	LDY Oper	AC	3	
		Absolute,X	LDY Oper,X	BC	3	

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
BVS Branch on overflow set	Branch on V=1	Relative	BVS Oper	70	2	- - - - - -
CLC Clear carry flag	0 → C	Implied	CLC	18	1	- - - 0 - -
CLD Clear decimal mode	0 → D	Implied	CLD	D8	1	- 0 - - - -
CLI - - -	0 → I	Implied	CLI	58	1	- - 0 - - -
CLV Clear overflow flag	0 → V	Implied	CLV	B8	1	0 - - - - -
CMP Compare memory and accumulator	A - M	Immediate	CMP #Oper	C9	2	√√√- - -
		Zero Page	CMP Oper	C5	2	
		Zero Page,X	CMP Oper,X	D5	2	
		Absolute	CMP Oper	CD	3	
		Absolute,X	CMP Oper,X	DD	3	
		Absolute,Y	CMP Oper,Y	D9	3	
		(Indirect,X)	CMP (Oper,X)	C1	2	
		(Indirect),Y	CMP (Oper),Y	D1	2	
CPX Compare memory and index X	X - M	Immediate	CPX #Oper	E0	2	√√√- - -
		Zero Page	CPX Oper	E4	2	
		Absolute	CPX Oper	EC	3	
CPY Compare memory and index Y	Y - M	Immediate	CPY #Oper	C0	2	√√√- - -
		Zero Page	CPY Oper	C4	2	
		Absolute	CPY Oper	CC	3	
DEC Decrement memory by one	M - 1 → M	Zero Page	DEC Oper	C6	2	√√- - - -
		Zero Page,X	DEC Oper,X	D6	2	
		Absolute	DEC Oper	CE	3	
		Absolute,X	DEC Oper,X	DE	3	
DEX Decrement index X by one	X - 1 → X	Implied	DEX	CA	1	√√- - - -
DEY Decrement index Y by one	Y - 1 → Y	Implied	DEY	88	1	√√- - - -

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
RTI Return from interrupt	P ↑ PC ↑	Implied	RTI	40	1	From Stack
RTS Return from subroutine	PC ↑, PC+1 → PC	Implied	RTS	60	1	------
SBC Subtract memory from accumulator with borrow	A - M - $\overline{C}$ → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	SBC #Oper SBC Oper SBC Oper,X SBC Oper SBC Oper,X SBC Oper,Y SBC (Oper,X) SBC (Oper),Y	E9 E5 F5 ED FD F9 E1 F1	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	√√√--√
SEC Set carry flag	1 → C	Implied	SEC	38	1	------1-
SED Set decimal mode	1 → D	Implied	SED	F8	1	------1-
SEI Set interrupt disable status	1 → I	Implied	SEI	78	1	------1-
STA Store accumulator in memory	A → M	Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	STA Oper STA Oper,X STA Oper STA Oper,X STA Oper,Y STA (Oper,X) STA (Oper),Y	85 95 80 90 99 81 91	2 2 3 3 3 2 2	------
STX Store index X in memory	X → M	Zero Page Zero Page,Y Absolute	STX Oper STX Oper,Y STX Oper	86 96 8E	2 2 3	------
STY Store index Y in memory	Y → M	Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute	STY Oper STY Oper,X STY Oper	84 94 8C	2 2 3	------
TAX Transfer accumulator to index X	A → X	Implied	TAX	AA	1	√√------
TAY Transfer accumulator to index Y	A → Y	Implied	TAY	A8	1	√√------
TSX Transfer stack pointer to index X	S → X	Implied	TSX	BA	1	√√------

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No Bytes	"P" Status Reg N Z C I D V
LSR Shift right one bit (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 1)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	LSR A LSR Oper LSR Oper,X LSR Oper LSR Oper,X	4A 46 56 4E 5E	1 2 2 3 3	0√√---
NOP No operation	No Operation	Implied	NOP	EA	1	------
ORA "OR" memory with accumulator	A ∨ M → A	Immediate Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X Absolute,Y (Indirect,X) (Indirect),Y	ORA #Oper ORA Oper ORA Oper,X ORA Oper ORA Oper,X ORA Oper,Y ORA (Oper,X) ORA (Oper),Y	09 05 15 00 10 19 01 11	2 2 2 3 3 3 2 2	√√-----
PHA Push accumulator on stack	A ↓	Implied	PHA	48	1	------
PHP Push processor status on stack	P ↓	Implied	PHP	08	1	------
PLA Pull accumulator from stack	A ↑	Implied	PLA	68	1	√√-----
PLP Pull processor status from stack	P ↑	Implied	PLP	28	1	From Stack
ROL Rotate one bit left (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 2)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page,X Absolute Absolute,X	ROL A ROL Oper ROL Oper,X ROL Oper ROL Oper,X	2A 26 36 2E 3E	1 2 2 3 3	√√√---
ROR Rotate one bit right (memory or accumulator)	(See Figure 3)	Accumulator Zero Page Zero Page X Absolute Absolute,X	ROR A ROR Oper ROR Oper,X ROR Oper ROR Oper,X	6A 66 76 6E 7E	1 2 2 3 3	√√√---

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

HEX OPERATION CODES

00 — BRK	20 — NOP	40 — RTI	60 — RTS	80 — NOP	A0 — LDY — Immediate	C0 — CPY — Immediate	E0 — CPX — Immediate
01 — ORA — (Indirect, X)	21 — AND — (Indirect, X)	41 — EOR — (Indirect, X)	61 — ADC — (Indirect, X)	81 — STA — (Indirect, X)	A1 — LDA — (Indirect, X)	C1 — CMP — (Indirect, X)	E1 — SBC — (Indirect, X)
02 — NOP	22 — NOP	42 — NOP	62 — NOP	82 — NOP	A2 — LDX — Immediate	C2 — NOP	E2 — NOP
03 — NOP	23 — NOP	43 — NOP	63 — NOP	83 — NOP	A3 — NOP	C3 — NOP	E3 — NOP
04 — NOP	24 — BIT — Zero Page	44 — NOP	64 — NOP	84 — STY — Zero Page	A4 — LDY — Zero Page	C4 — CPY — Zero Page	E4 — CPX — Zero Page
05 — ORA — Zero Page	25 — AND — Zero Page	45 — EOR — Zero Page	65 — ADC — Zero Page	85 — STA — Zero Page	A5 — LDA — Zero Page	C5 — CMP — Zero Page	E5 — SBC — Zero Page
06 — ASL — Zero Page	26 — ROL — Zero Page	46 — LSR — Zero Page	66 — ROR — Zero Page	86 — STX — Zero Page	A6 — LDX — Zero Page	C6 — DEC — Zero Page	E6 — INC — Zero Page
07 — NOP	27 — NOP	47 — NOP	67 — NOP	87 — NOP	A7 — NOP	C7 — NOP	E7 — NOP
08 — PHP	28 — PLP	48 — PHA	68 — PLA	88 — DEY	A8 — TAY	C8 — INY	E8 — INX
09 — ORA — Immediate	29 — AND — Immediate	49 — EOR — Immediate	69 — ADC — Immediate	89 — NOP	A9 — LDA — Immediate	C9 — CMP — Immediate	E9 — SBC — Immediate
0A — ASL — Accumulator	2A — ROL — Accumulator	4A — LSR — Accumulator	6A — ROR — Accumulator	8A — TXA	AA — TAX	CA — DEX	EA — NOP
0B — NOP	2B — NOP	4B — NOP	6B — NOP	8B — NOP	AB — NOP	CB — NOP	EB — NOP
0C — NOP	2C — BIT — Absolute	4C — JMP — Absolute	6C — JMP — Indirect	8C — STY — Absolute	AC — LDY — Absolute	CC — CPY — Absolute	EC — CPX — Absolute
0D — ORA — Absolute	2D — AND — Absolute	4D — EOR — Absolute	6D — ADC — Absolute	8D — STA — Absolute	AD — LDA — Absolute	CD — CMP — Absolute	ED — SBC — Absolute
0E — ASL — Absolute	2E — ROL — Absolute	4E — LSR — Absolute	6E — ROR — Absolute	8E — STX — Absolute	AE — LDX — Absolute	CE — DEC — Absolute	EE — INC — Absolute
0F — NOP	2F — NOP	4F — NOP	6F — NOP	8F — NOP	AF — NOP	CF — NOP	EF — NOP
10 — BPL	30 — BMI	50 — BVC	70 — BVS	90 — BCC	B0 — BCS	D0 — BNE	F0 — BEQ
11 — ORA — (Indirect, Y)	31 — AND — (Indirect, Y)	51 — EOR (Indirect, Y	71 — ADC — (Indirect, Y	91 — STA — (Indirect, Y	B1 — LDA — (Indirect, Y	D1 — CMP — (Indirect, Y	F1 — SBC — (Indirect, Y
12 — NOP	32 — NOP	52 — NOP	72 — NOP	92 — NOP	B2 — NOP	D2 — NOP	F2 — NOP
13 — NOP	33 — NOP	53 — NOP	73 — NOP	93 — NOP	B3 — NOP	D3 — NOP	F3 — NOP
14 — NOP	34 — NOP	54 — NOP	74 — NOP	94 — STY — Zero Page, X	B4 — LDY — Zero Page, X	D4 — NOP	F4 — NOP
15 — ORA — Zero Page, X	35 — AND — Zero Page, X	55 — EOR — Zero Page, X	75 — ADC — Zero Page, X	95 — STA — Zero Page, X	B5 — LDA — Zero Page, X	D5 — CMP — Zero Page, X	F5 — SBC — Zero Page, X
16 — ASL — Zero Page, X	36 — ROL — Zero Page, X	56 — LSR — Zero Page, X	76 — ROR — Zero Page, X	96 — STX — Zero Page, Y	B6 — LDX — Zero Page, Y	D6 — DEC — Zero Page, X	F6 — INC — Zero Page, X
17 — NOP	37 — NOP	57 — NOP	77 — NOP	97 — NOP	B7 — NOP	D7 — NOP	F7 — NOP
18 — CLC	38 — SEC	58 — CLI	78 — SEI	98 — TYA	B8 — CLV	D8 — CLD	F8 — SED
19 — ORA — Absolute, Y	39 — AND — Absolute, Y	59 — EOR — Absolute, Y	79 — ADC — Absolute, Y	99 — STA — Absolute, Y	B9 — LDA — Absolute, Y	D9 — CMP — Absolute, Y	F9 — SBC — Absolute, Y
1A — NOP	3A — NOP	5A — NOP	7A — NOP	9A — TXS	BA — TSX	DA — NOP	FA — NOP
1B — NOP	3B — NOP	5B — NOP	7B — NOP	9B — NOP	BB — NOP	DB — NOP	FB — NOP
1C — NOP	3C — NOP	5C — NOP	7C — NOP	9C — NOP	BC — LDY — Absolute, X	DC — NOP	FC — NOP
1D — ORA — Absolute, X	3D — AND — Absolute, X	5D — EOR — Absolute, X	7D — ADC — Absolute, X	9D — STA — Absolute, X	BD — LDA — Absolute, X	DD — CMP — Absolute, X	FD — SBC — Absolute, X
1E — ASL — Absolute, X	3E — ROL — Absolute, X	5E — LSR — Absolute, X	7E — ROR — Absolute, X	9E — NOP	BE — LDX — Absolute, Y	DE — DEC — Absolute, X	FE — INC — Absolute, X
1F — NOP	3F — NOP	5F — NOP	7F — NOP	9F — NOP	BF — NOP	DF — NOP	FF — NOP

Name Description	Operation	Addressing Mode	Assembly Language Form	HEX OP Code	No. Bytes	"P" Status Reg. N Z C I D V
TXA Transfer index X to accumulator	X → A	Implied	TXA	8A	1	√√----
TXS Transfer index X to stack pointer	X → S	Implied	TXS	9A	1	------
TYA Transfer index Y to accumulator	Y → A	Implied	TYA	98	1	√√----

8D — STA — Absolute
8E — STX — Absolute
8F — NOP
90 — BCC
91 — STA — (Indirect), Y
92 — NOP
93 — NOP
94 — STY — Zero Page, X
95 — STA — Zero Page, X
96 — STX — Zero Page, Y
97 — NOP
98 — TYA
99 — STA — Absolute, Y
9A — TXS
9B — NOP
9C — NOP
9D — STA — Absolute, X
9E — NOP
9F — NOP
A0 — LDY — Immediate
A1 — LDA — (Indirect, X)
A2 — LDX — Immediate
A3 — NOP
A4 — LDY — Zero Page
A5 — LDA — Zero Page
A6 — LDX — Zero Page
A7 — NOP
A8 — TAY
A9 — LDA — Immediate
AA — TAX
AB — NOP
AC — LDY — Absolute
AD — Absolute
AE — LDX — Absolute
AF — NOP
B0 — BCS
B1 — LDA — (Indirect), Y
B2 — NOP
B3 — NOP

B4 — LDY — Zero Page, X
B5 — LDA — Zero Page, X
B6 — LDX — Zero Page, Y
B7 — NOP
B8 — CLV
B9 — LDA — Absolute, Y
BA — TSX
BB — NOP
BC — LDY — Absolute, X
BD — LDA — Absolute, X
BE — LDX — Absolute, Y
BF — NOP
C0 — CPY — Immediate
C1 — CMP — (Indirect, X)
C2 — NOP
C3 — NOP
C4 — CPY — Zero Page
C5 — CMP — Zero Page
C6 — DEC — Zero Page
C7 — NOP
C8 — INY
C9 — CMP — Immediate
CA — DEX
CB — NOP
CC — CPY — Absolute
CD — CMP — Absolute
CE — DEC — Absolute
CF — NOP
D0 — BNE
D1 — CMP — (Indirect), Y
D2 — NOP
D3 — NOP
D4 — NOP
D5 — CMP — Zero Page, X
D6 — DEC — Zero Page, X
D7 — NOP
D8 — CLD
D9 — CMP — Absolute, Y
DA — NOP

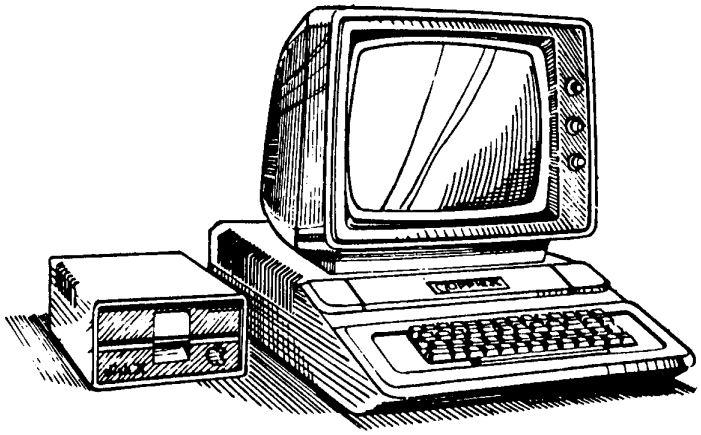
DB — NOP
DC — NOP
DD — CMP — Absolute, X
DE — DEC — Absolute, X
DF — NOP
E0 — CPX — Immediate
E1 — SBC — (Indirect, X)
E2 — NOP
E3 — NOP
E4 — CPX — Zero Page
E5 — SBC — Zero Page
E6 — INC — Zero Page
E7 — NOP
E8 — INX
E9 — SBC — Immediate
EA — NOP
EB — NOP
EC — CPX — Absolute
ED — SBC — Absolute
EE — INC — Absolute
EF — NOP
F0 — BEQ
F1 — SBC — (Indirect), Y
F2 — NOP
F3 — NOP
F4 — NOP
F5 — SBC — Zero Page, X
F6 — INC — Zero Page, X
F7 — NOP
F8 — SED
F9 — SBC — Absolute, Y
FA — NOP
FB — NOP
FC — NOP
FD — SBC — Absolute, X
FE — INC — Absolute, X
FF — NOP

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
ROM LISTING -- AUTOSTART MONITOR (1978)



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

AUTOSTART ROM LISTING

```
0000                    2 ********************************
0000                    3 *
0000                    4 * APPLE II
0000                    5 * MONITOR II
0000                    6 *
0000                    7 * COPYRIGHT 1978 BY
0000                    8 * APPLE COMPUTER, INC.
0000                    9 *
0000                   10 * ALL RIGHTS RESERVED
0000                   11 *
0000                   12 * STEVE WOZNIAK
0000                   13 *
0000                   14 ********************************
0000                   15 *
0000                   16 * MODIFIED NOV 1978
0000                   17 * BY JOHN A
0000                   18 *
0000                   19 ********************************
F800                   20          ORG $F800
F800                   21          OBJ $2000
F800                   22 ********************************
F800                   23 LOC0     EQU $00
F800                   24 LOC1     EQU $01
F800                   25 WNDLFT   EQU $20
F800                   26 WNDWDTH  EQU $21
F800                   27 WNDTOP   EQU $22
F800                   28 WNDBTM   EQU $23
F800                   29 CH       EQU $24
F800                   30 CV       EQU $25
F800                   31 GBASL    EQU $26
F800                   32 GBASH    EQU $27
F800                   33 BASL     EQU $28
F800                   34 BASH     EQU $29
F800                   35 BAS2L    EQU $2A
F800                   36 BAS2H    EQU $2B
F800                   37 H2       EQU $2C
F800                   38 LMNEM    EQU $2C
F800                   39 V2       EQU $2D
F800                   40 RMNEM    EQU $2D
F800                   41 MASK     EQU $2E
F800                   42 CHKSUM   EQU $2E
F800                   43 FORMAT   EQU $2E
F800                   44 LASTIN   EQU $2F
F800                   45 LENGTH   EQU $2F
F800                   46 SIGN     EQU $2F
F800                   47 COLOR    EQU $30
F800                   48 MODE     EQU $31
F800                   49 INVFLG   EQU $32
F800                   50 PROMPT   EQU $33
F800                   51 YSAV     EQU $34
F800                   52 YSAV1    EQU $35
F800                   53 CSWL     EQU $36
F800                   54 CSWH     EQU $37
F800                   55 KSWL     EQU $38
F800                   56 KSWH     EQU $39
F800                   57 PCL      EQU $3A
F800                   58 PCH      EQU $3B
F800                   59 A1L      EQU $3C
F800                   60 A1H      EQU $3D
F800                   61 A2L      EQU $3E
F800                   62 A2H      EQU $3F
F800                   63 A3L      EQU $40
F800                   64 A3H      EQU $41
F800                   65 A4L      EQU $42
F800                   66 A4H      EQU $43
F800                   67 A5L      EQU $44
F800                   68 A5H      EQU $45
```



```
F800                   69 ACC      EQU $45    ; NOTE OVERLAP WITH A5H!
F800                   70 XREG     EQU $46
F800                   71 YREG     EQU $47
F800                   72 STATUS   EQU $48
F800                   73 SPNT     EQU $49
F800                   74 RNDL     EQU $4E
F800                   75 RNDH     EQU $4F
F800                   76 PICK     EQU $95
F800                   77 IN       EQU $0200
F800                   78 BRKV     EQU $3F0   ; NEW VECTOR FOR BRK
F800                   79 SOFTEV   EQU $3F2   ; VECTOR FOR WARM START
F800                   80 PWREDUP  EQU $3F4   ; THIS MUST = EOR #$A5 OF SOFTEV+1
F800                   81 AMPERV   EQU $3F5   ; APPLESOFT & EXIT VECTOR
F800                   82 USRADR   EQU $03F8
F800                   83 NMI      EQU $03FB
F800                   84 IRQLOC   EQU $3FE
F800                   85 LINE1    EQU $400
F800                   86 MSLOT    EQU $07F8
F800                   87 IOADR    EQU $C000
F800                   88 KBD      EQU $C000
F800                   89 KBDSTRB  EQU $C010
F800                   90 TAPEOUT  EQU $C020
F800                   91 SPKR     EQU $C030
F800                   92 TXTCLR   EQU $C050
F800                   93 TXTSET   EQU $C051
F800                   94 MIXCLR   EQU $C052
F800                   95 MIXSET   EQU $C053
F800                   96 LOWSCR   EQU $C054
F800                   97 HISCR    EQU $C055
F800                   98 LORES    EQU $C056
F800                   99 HIRES    EQU $C057
F800                  100 SETANO   EQU $C058
F800                  101 CLRANO   EQU $C059
F800                  102 SETAN1   EQU $C05A
F800                  103 CLRAN1   EQU $C05B
F800                  104 SETAN2   EQU $C05C
F800                  105 CLRAN2   EQU $C05D
F800                  106 SETAN3   EQU $C05E
F800                  107 CLRAN3   EQU $C05F
F800                  108 TAPEIN   EQU $C060
F800                  109 PADDLO   EQU $C064
F800                  110 PTRIG    EQU $C070
F800                  111 CLRROM   EQU $CFFF
F800                  112 BASIC    EQU $E000
F800                  113 BASIC2   EQU $E003
F800                  114          PAGE
F800: 4A              115 PLOT     LSR A
F801: 08              116          PHP
F802: 20 47 F8        117          JSR GBASCALC
F805: 28              118          PLP
F806: A9 0F           119          LDA #$0F
F808: 90 02           120          BCC RTMASK
F80A: 69 E0           121          ADC #$E0
F80C: 85 2E           122 RTMASK   STA MASK
F80E: B1 26           123 PLOT1    LDA (GBASL),Y
F810: 45 30           124          EOR COLOR
F812: 25 2E           125          AND MASK
F814: 51 26           126          EOR (GBASL),Y
F816: 91 26           127          STA (GBASL),Y
F818: 60              128          RTS
F819: 20 00 F8        129 HLINE    JSR PLOT
F81C: C4 2C           130 HLINE1   CPY H2
F81E: B0 11           131          BCS RTS1
F820: C8              132          INY
F821: 20 0E F8        133          JSR PLOT1
F824: 90 F6           134          BCC HLINE1
F826: 69 01           135 VLINEZ   ADC #$01
F828: 48              136 VLINE    PHA
F829: 20 00 F8        137          JSR PLOT
F82C: 68              138          PLA
F82D: C5 2D           139          CMP V2
F82F: 90 F5           140          BCC VLINEZ
F831: 60              141 RTS1     RTS
```

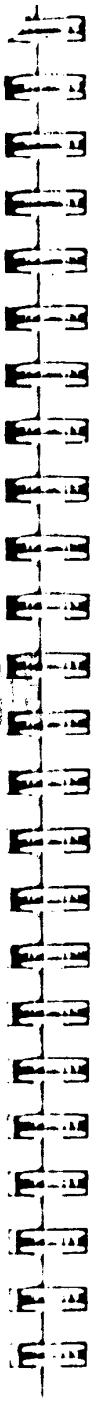
```
FB32  A0 2F      142 CLRSCR  LDY #$2F
FB34  D0 02      143         BNE CLRSC2
FB36  A0 27      144 CLRTOP  LDY #$27
FB38  84 25      145 CLRSC2  STY V2
FB3A  A0 27      146         LDY #$27
FB3C  A9 00      147 CLRSC3  LDA #$00
FB3E  85 30      148         STA COLOR
FB40  20 28 FB   149         JSR VLINE
FB43  88         150         DEY
FB44  10 F6      151         BPL CLRSC3
FB46  60         152         RTS
                 153         PAGE
FB47  48         154 GBASCALC PHA
FB48  4A         155         LSR A
FB49  29 03      156         AND #$03
FB4B  09 04      157         ORA #$04
FB4D  85 27      158         STA GBASH
FB4F  68         159         PLA
FB50  29 18      160         AND #$18
FB52  90 02      161         BCC GBCALC
FB54  69 7F      162         ADC #$7F
FB56  85 26      163 GBCALC  STA GBASL
FB58  0A         164         ASL A
FB59  0A         165         ASL A
FB5A  05 26      166         ORA GBASL
FB5C  85 26      167         STA GBASL
FB5E  60         168         RTS
FB5F  A5 30      169         LDA COLOR
FB61  18         170         CLC
FB62  69 03      171         ADC #$03
FB64  29 0F      172 SETCOL  AND #$0F
FB66  85 30      173         STA COLOR
FB68  0A         174         ASL A
FB69  0A         175         ASL A
FB6A  0A         176         ASL A
FB6B  0A         177         ASL A
FB6C  05 30      178         ORA COLOR
FB6E  85 30      179         STA COLOR
FB70  60         180         RTS
FB71  4A         181 SCRN    LSR A
FB72  08         182         PHP
FB73  20 47 FB   183         JSR GBASCALC
FB76  B1 26      184         LDA (GBASL),Y
FB78  28         185         PLP
FB79  90 04      186         BCC RTMSKZ
FB7B  4A         187         LSR A
FB7C  4A         188         LSR A
FB7D  4A         189         LSR A
FB7E  4A         190         LSR A
FB7F  29 0F      191 RTMSKZ  AND #$0F
FB81  60         192         RTS
                 193         PAGE
FB82  A5 3A      194 INSDS1  LDX PCL
FB84  A4 3B      195         LDY PCH
FB86  20 96 FD   196         JSR PRYX2
FB89  20 48 F9   197         JSR PRBLNK
FB8C  A1 3A      198 INSDS2  LDA (PCL,X)
FB8E  AB         199         TAY
FB8F  4A         200         LSR A
FB90  90 09      201         BCC IEVEN
FB92  6A         202         ROR A
FB93  B0 10      203         BCS ERR
FB95  C9 A2      204         CMP #$A2
FB97  F0 0C      205         BEQ ERR
FB99  29 87      206         AND #$87
FB9B  4A         207 IEVEN   LSR A
FB9C  AA         208         TAX
FB9D  BD 62 F9   209         LDA FMT1-$B0,X
FBA0  20 79 FB   210         JSR SCRN2
FBA3  D0 04      211         BNE GETFMT
FBA5  A0 80      212 ERR     LDY #$80
FBA7  A9 00      213         LDA #$00
FBA9  AA         214 GETFMT  TAX
FBAA  BD 46 F9   215         LDA FMT2,X
FBAD  85 2E      216         STA FORMAT
FBAF  29 03      217         AND #$03
FBB1  85 2F      218         STA LENGTH
FBB3  98         219         TYA
FBB4  29 8F      220         AND #$8F
FBB6  AA         221         TAX
FBB7  98         222         TYA
FBB8  A0 03      223         LDY #$03
FBBA  E0 8A      224         CPX #$8A
FBBC  F0 0B      225         BEQ MNNDX3
FBBE  4A         226 MNNDX1  LSR A
FBBF  90 08      227         BCC MNNDX3
FBC1  4A         228         LSR A
FBC2  4A         229 MNNDX2  LSR A
FBC3  09 20      230         ORA #$20
FBC5  88         231         DEY
FBC6  D0 FA      232         BNE MNNDX2
FBC8  C8         233         INY
FBC9  88         234 MNNDX3  DEY
FBCA  D0 F2      235         BNE MNNDX1
FBCC  60         236         RTS
FBCD  FF FF FF   237         DFB $FF,$FF,$FF
FBD0             238         PAGE
FBD0  20 B2 FB   239 INSTDSP JSR INSDS1
FBD3  48         240         PHA
FBD4  B1 3A      241 PRNTOP  LDA (PCL),Y
FBD6  20 DA FD   242         JSR PRBYTE
FBD9  A2 01      243         LDX #$01
FBDB  20 4A F9   244 PRNTBL  JSR PRBL2
FBDE  C4 2F      245         CPY LENGTH
FBE0  C8         246         INY
FBE1  90 F1      247         BCC PRNTOP
FBE3  A2 03      248         LDX #$03
FBE5  C0 04      249         CPY #$04
FBE7  90 F2      250         BCC PRNTBL
FBE9  68         251         PLA
FBEA  AB         252         TAY
FBEB  99 C0 F9   253         LDA MNEML,Y
FBEE  85 2C      254         STA LMNEM
FBF0  B9 00 FA   255         LDA MNEMR,Y
FBF3  85 2D      256         STA RMNEM
FBF5  A9 00      257 NXTCOL  LDA #$00
FBF7  A0 05      258         LDY #$05
FBF9  06 2D      259 PRMN2   ASL RMNEM
FBFB  26 2C      260         ROL LMNEM
FBFD  2A         261         ROL A
FBFE  88         262         DEY
FBFF  D0 F8      263         BNE PRMN2
FC01  69 BF      264         ADC #$BF
FC03  20 ED FD   265         JSR COUT
FC06  CA         266         DEX
FC07  D0 EC      267         BNE NXTCOL
FC09  20 4B F9   268         JSR PRBLNK
FC0C  A4 2F      269         LDY LENGTH
FC0E  A2 06      270         LDX #$06
FC10  E0 03      271 PRADR1  CPX #$03
FC12  F0 1C      272         BEQ PRADR5
FC14  06 2E      273 PRADR2  ASL FORMAT
FC16  90 0E      274         BCC PRADR3
FC18  BD B3 F9   275         LDA CHAR1-1,X
FC1B  20 ED FD   276         JSR COUT
FC1E  BD B9 F9   277         LDA CHAR2-1,X
FC21  F0 03      278         BEQ PRADR3
FC23  20 ED FD   279         JSR COUT
FC26  CA         280 PRADR3  DEX
FC27  D0 E7      281         BNE PRADR1
FC29  60         282         RTS
FC2A  BB         283 PRADR4  DEY
FC2B  30 E7      284         DMI PRADR2
FC2D  20 DA FD   285         JSR PRBYTE
FC30  A5 2E      286 PRADR5  LDA FORMAT
FC32  C9 E8      287         CMP #$E8
```

```
F934- B1 3A      288          LDA (PCL),Y
F936- 90 F2      289          BCC PRADR4
F938-            290          PAGE
F938- 20 56 F9   291 RELADR   JSR PCADJ3
F93B- AA         292          TAX
F93C- E8         293          INX
F93D- D0 01      294          BNE PRNTYX
F93F- C8         295          INY
F940- 98         296 PRNTYX   TYA
F941- 20 DA FD   297 PRNTAX   JSR PRBYTE
F944- 8A         298 PRNTX    TXA
F945- 4C DA FD   299          JMP PRBYTE
F948- A2 03      300 PRBLNK   LDX #$03
F94A- A9 A0      301 PRBL2    LDA #$A0
F94C- 20 ED FD   302 PRBL3    JSR COUT
F94F- CA         303          DEX
F950- D0 FB      304          BNE PRBL2
F952- 60         305          RTS
F953- 38         306 PCADJ    SEC
F954- A5 2F      307 PCADJ2   LDA LENGTH
F956- A4 3B      308 PCADJ3   LDY PCH
F958- AA         309          TAX
F959- 10 01      310          BPL PCADJ4
F95B- 88         311          DEY
F95C- 65 3A      312 PCADJ4   ADC PCL
F95E- 90 01      313          BCC RTS2
F960- C8         314          INY
F961- 60         315 RTS2     RTS
F962- 04         316 FMT1     DFB $04
F963- 20         317          DFB $20
F964- 54         318          DFB $54
F965- 30         319          DFB $30
F966- 0D         320          DFB $0D
F967- 80         321          DFB $80
F968- 04         322          DFB $04
F969- 90         323          DFB $90
F96A- 03         324          DFB $03
F96B- 22         325          DFB $22
F96C- 54         326          DFB $54
F96D- 33         327          DFB $33
F96E- 0D         328          DFB $0D
F96F- 80         329          DFB $80
F970- 04         330          DFB $04
F971- 90         331          DFB $90
F972- 04         332          DFB $04
F973- 20         333          DFB $20
F974- 54         334          DFB $54
F975- 33         335          DFB $33
F976- 0D         336          DFB $0D
F977- 80         337          DFB $80
F978- 04         338          DFB $04
F979- 90         339          DFB $90
F97A- 04         340          DFB $04
F97B- 20         341          DFB $20
F97C- 54         342          DFB $54
F97D- 3B         343          DFB $3B
F97E- 0D         344          DFB $0D
F97F- 80         345          DFB $80
F980- 04         346          DFB $04
F981- 90         347          DFB $90
F982- 00         348          DFB $00
F983- 22         349          DFB $22
F984- 44         350          DFB $44
F985- 33         351          DFB $33
F986- 0D         352          DFB $0D
F987- C8         353          DFB $C8
F988- 44         354          DFB $44
F989- 00         355          DFB $00
F98A- 11         356          DFB $11
F98B- 22         357          DFB $22
F98C- 44         358          DFB $44
F98D- 33         359          DFB $33
F98E- 0D         360          DFB $0D

F98F- C8         361          DFB $C8
F990- 44         362          DFB $44
F991- A9         363          DFB $A9
F992- 01         364          DFB $01
F993- 22         365          DFB $22
F994- 44         366          DFB $44
F995- 33         367          DFB $33
F996- 0D         368          DFB $0D
F997- 80         369          DFB $80
F998- 04         370          DFB $04
F999- 90         371          DFB $90
F99A- 01         372          DFB $01
F99B- 22         373          DFB $22
F99C- 44         374          DFB $44
F99D- 33         375          DFB $33
F99E- 0D         376          DFB $0D
F99F- 80         377          DFB $80
F9A0- 04         378          DFB $04
F9A1- 90         379          DFB $90
F9A2- 26         380          DFB $26
F9A3- 31         381          DFB $31
F9A4- 87         382          DFB $87
F9A5- 9A         383          DFB $9A
F9A6- 00         384 FMT2     DFB $00
F9A7- 21         385          DFB $21
F9A8- 81         386          DFB $81
F9A9- 82         387          DFB $82
F9AA- 00         388          DFB $00
F9AB- 00         389          DFB $00
F9AC- 59         390          DFB $59
F9AD- 4D         391          DFB $4D
F9AE- 91         392          DFB $91
F9AF- 92         393          DFB $92
F9B0- 86         394          DFB $86
F9B1- 4A         395          DFB $4A
F9B2- 85         396          DFB $85
F9B3- 9D         397          DFB $9D
F9B4- AC         398 CHAR1    DFB $AC
F9B5- A9         399          DFB $A9
F9B6- AC         400          DFB $AC
F9B7- A3         401          DFB $A3
F9B8- A8         402          DFB $A8
F9B9- A4         403          DFB $A4
F9BA- D9         404 CHAR2    DFB $D9
F9BB- 00         405          DFB $00
F9BC- D8         406          DFB $D8
F9BD- A4         407          DFB $A4
F9BE- A4         408          DFB $A4
F9BF- 00         409          DFB $00
F9C0- 1C         410 MNEML    DFB $1C
F9C1- 8A         411          DFB $8A
F9C2- 1C         412          DFB $1C
F9C3- 23         413          DFB $23
F9C4- 5D         414          DFB $5D
F9C5- 8B         415          DFB $8B
F9C6- 1B         416          DFB $1B
F9C7- A1         417          DFB $A1
F9C8- 9D         418          DFB $9D
F9C9- 8A         419          DFB $8A
F9CA- 1D         420          DFB $1D
F9CB- 23         421          DFB $23
F9CC- 9D         422          DFB $9D
F9CD- 8B         423          DFB $8B
F9CE- 1D         424          DFB $1D
F9CF- A1         425          DFB $A1
F9D0- 00         426          DFB $00
F9D1- 29         427          DFB $29
F9D2- 19         428          DFB $19
F9D3- AE         429          DFB $AE
F9D4- 69         430          DFB $69
F9D5- A8         431          DFB $A8
F9D6- 19         432          DFB $19
F9D7- 23         433          DFB $23
```

```
F9D8  24          DFB  $24
F9D9  53          DFB  $53
F9DA  1B          DFB  $1B
F9DB  23          DFB  $23
F9DC  24          DFD  $24
F9DD  53          DFB  $53
F9DE  19          DFB  $19
F9DF  A1          DFB  $A1
F9E0  00          DFB  $00
F9E1  1A          DFB  $1A
F9E2  5B          DFD  $5B
F9E3  5B          DFB  $5B
F9E4  A5          DFB  $A5
F9E5  69          DFB  $69
F9E6  24          DFB  $24
F9E7  24          DFB  $24
F9E8  AE          DFB  $AE
F9E9  AE          DFB  $AE
F9EA  A8          DFD  $A8
F9EB  AD          DFB  $AD
F9EC  29          DFD  $29
F9ED  00          DFB  $00
F9EE  7C          DFB  $7C
F9EF  00          DFB  $00
F9F0  15          DFB  $15
F9F1  9C          DFB  $9C
F9F2  6D          DFB  $6D
F9F3  9C          DFB  $9C
F9F4  A5          DFB  $A5
F9F5  69          DFB  $69
F9F6  29          DFD  $29
F9F7  53          DFB  $53
F9F8  84          DFB  $84
F9F9  13          DFB  $13
F9FA  34          DFB  $34
F9FB  11          DFB  $11
F9FC  A5          DFB  $A5
F9FD  69          DFB  $69
F9FE  23          DFB  $23
F9FF  A0          DFB  $A0
FA00  D8          DFB  $D8
FA01  62          DFD  $62
FA02  5A          DFB  $5A
FA03  48          DFB  $48
FA04  26          DFB  $26
FA05  62          DFB  $62
FA06  94          DFB  $94
FA07  88          DFB  $88
FA08  54          DFB  $54
FA09  44          DFD  $44
FA0A  C8          DFB  $C8
FA0B  54          DFB  $54
FA0C  68          DFB  $68
FA0D  44          DFB  $44
FA0E  E8          DFB  $E8
FA0F  94          DFB  $94
FA10  00          DFB  $00
FA11  84          DFB  $84
FA12  08          DFB  $08
FA13  84          DFB  $84
FA14  74          DFB  $74
FA15  84          DFB  $84
FA16  28          DFB  $28
FA17  6E          DFB  $6E
FA18  74          DFB  $74
FA19  F4          DFB  $F4
FA1A  CC          DFB  $CC
FA1B  4A          DFB  $4A
FA1C  72          DFB  $72
FA1D  F2          DFB  $F2
FA1E  A4          DFB  $A4
FA1F  8A          DFB  $8A
FA20  00          DFB  $00

                  MNEMR
```

```
FA21  AA          DFB  $AA
FA22  A2          DFB  $A2
FA23  A2          DFB  $A2
FA24  74          DFB  $74
FA25  74          DFB  $74
FA26  74          DFB  $74
FA27  72          DFB  $72
FA28  44          DFB  $44
FA29  68          DFB  $68
FA2A  B2          DFB  $B2
FA2B  32          DFB  $32
FA2C  B2          DFB  $B2
FA2D  00          DFB  $00
FA2E  22          DFB  $22
FA2F  00          DFB  $00
FA30  1A          DFB  $1A
FA31  1A          DFB  $1A
FA32  26          DFB  $26
FA33  26          DFB  $26
FA34  72          DFB  $72
FA35  72          DFB  $72
FA36  88          DFB  $88
FA37  C8          DFB  $C8
FA38  C4          DFB  $C4
FA39  CA          DFB  $CA
FA3A  26          DFB  $26
FA3B  48          DFB  $48
FA3C  44          DFB  $44
FA3D  44          DFB  $44
FA3E  A2          DFD  $A2
FA3F  C8          DFB  $C8
FA40              PAGE
FA40              IRQ   STA ACC
FA42  B5 45       PLA
FA43  48          PHA
FA44  0A          ASL A
FA45  0A          ASL A
FA46  0A          ASL A
FA47  30 03       BMI BREAK
FA49  6C FE 03    JMP (IRQLOC)
FA4C  28          BREAK PLP
FA4D  20 4C FF    JSR SAVI
FA50  68          PLA
FA51  85 3A       STA PCL
FA53  68          PLA
FA54  85 3B       STA PCH
FA56  6C F0 03    JMP (BRKV) ;BRKV WRITTEN OVER BY DISK BOOT
FA59  20 B2 FB    OLDBRK JSR INSDS1
FA5C  20 DA FA    JSR RGDSP1
FA5F  4C 65 FF    JMP MON
FA62  D8          RESET CLD
FA63  20 84 FE    JSR SETNORM
FA66  20 2F FB    JSR INIT
FA69  20 93 FE    JSR SETVID
FA6C  20 89 FE    JSR SETKBD
FA6F  AD 58 C0    INITAN LDA SETANO ; AN0 = TTL HI
FA72  AD 5A C0    LDA SETAN1 ; AN1 = TTL HI
FA75  AD 5D C0    LDA CLRAN2 ; AN2 = TTL LO
FA78  AD 5F C0    LDA CLRAN3 ; AN3 = TTL LO
FA7B  AD FF CF    LDA CLRROM ; TURN OFF EXTNSN ROM
FA7E  2C 10 C0    BIT KBDSTRB ; CLEAR KEYBOARD
FA81  D8          NEWMON CLD
FA82  20 3A FF    JSR BELL   ; CAUSES DELAY IF KEY BOUNCES
FA85  AD F3 03    LDA SOFTEV+1 ; IS RESET HI
FA88  49 A5       EOR #$A5   ; A FUNNY COMPLEMENT OF THE
FA8A  CD F4 03    CMP PWREDUP ; PWR UP BYTE ???
FA8D  D0 17       BNE PWRUP  ; NO SO PWRUP
FA8F  AD F2 03    LDA SOFTEV ; YES SEE IF COLD START
FA92  D0 0F       BNE NOFIX  ; HAS BEEN DONE YET?
FA94  A9 E0       LDA #$E0   ; ??
FA96  CD F3 03    CMP SOFTEV+1 ; ??
FA99  D0 08       BNE NOFIX  ; YES SO REENTER SYSTEM
FA9B  A0 03       FIXSEV LDY #3 ; NO SO POINT AT WARM START
```

```
FA9D: 8C F2 03     580          STY SOFTEV ; FOR NEXT RESET
FAA0: 4C 00 E0     581          JMP BASIC  ; AND DO THE COLD START
FAA3: 6C F2 03     582 NOFIX    JMP (SOFTEV) ; SOFT ENTRY VECTOR
FAA6:              583 ******************************
FAA6: 20 60 FB     584 PWRUP    JSR APPLEII
FAA9:              585 SETPG3   EQU *       ; SET PAGE 3 VECTORS
FAA9: A2 05        586          LDX #5
FAAB: BD FC FA     587 SETPLP   LDA PWRCON-1,X ; WITH CNTRL B ADRS
FAAE: 9D EF 03     588          STA BRKV-1,X ; OF CURRENT BASIC
FAB1: CA           589          DEX
FAB2: D0 F7        590          BNE SETPLP
FAB4: A9 C8        591          LDA #$C8   ; LOAD HI SLOT +1
FAB6: 85 00        592          STX LOC0   ; SETPG3 MUST RETURN X=0
FAB8: 85 01        593          STA LOC1   ; SET PTR H
FABA: A0 07        594 SLOOP    LDY #7     ; Y IS BYTE PTR
FABC: C6 01        595          DEC LOC1
FABE: A5 01        596          LDA LOC1
FAC0: C9 C0        597          CMP #$C0   ; AT LAST SLOT YET?
FAC2: F0 D7        598          BEQ FIXSEV ; YES AND IT CANT BE A DISK
FAC4: 8D F8 07     599          STA MSLOT
FAC7: B1 00        600 NXTBYT   LDA (LOC0),Y ; FETCH A SLOT BYTE
FAC9: D9 01 FB     601          CMP DISKID-1,Y ; IS IT A DISK ??
FACC: D0 EC        602          BNE SLOOP  ; NO SO NEXT SLOT DOWN
FACE: 88           603          DEY
FACF: 88           604          DEY        ; YES SO CHECK NEXT BYTE
FAD0: 10 F5        605          BPL NXTBYT ; UNTIL 4 CHECKED
FAD2: 6C 00 00     606          JMP (LOC0)
FAD5: EA           607          NOP
FAD6: EA           608          NOP
FAD7:              609 * REGDSP MUST ORG $FAD7
FAD7: 20 BE FD     610 REGDSP   JSR CROUT
FADA: A9 45        611 RGDSP1   LDA #$45
FADC: 85 40        612          STA A3L
FADE: A9 00        613          LDA #$00
FAE0: 85 41        614          STA A3H
FAE2: A2 FB        615          LDX #$FB
FAE4: A9 A0        616 RDSP1    LDA #$A0
FAE6: 20 ED FD     617          JSR COUT
FAE9: BD 1E FA     618          LDA RTBL-251,X
FAEC: 20 ED FD     619          JSR COUT
FAEF: A9 BD        620          LDA #$BD
FAF1: 20 ED FD     621          JSR COUT
FAF4:              622 * LDA ACC+5,X
FAF4: B5 4A        623          DFB $B5,$4A
FAF6: 20 DA FD     624          JSR PRBYTE
FAF9: E8           625          INX
FAFA: 30 E8        626          BMI RDSP1
FAFC: 60           627          RTS
FAFD: 59 FA        628 PWRCON   DW  OLDBRK
FAFF: 00 E0 45     629          DFB $00,$E0,$45
FB02: 20 FF 00
FB05: FF           630 DISKID   DFB $20,$FF,$00,$FF
FB06: 03 FF 3C     631          DFB $03,$FF,$3C
FB09: C1 D0 D0     632 TITLE    DFB $C1,$D0,$D0
FB0C: CC C5 A0     633          DFB $CC,$C5,$A0
FB0F: DD DB        634          DFB $DD,$DB
FB11:              635 XLTBL    EQU *
FB11: C4 C2 C1     636          DFB $C4,$C2,$C1
FB14: FF C3        637          DFB $FF,$C3
FB16: FF FF FF     638          DFB $FF,$FF,$FF
FB19:              639 *  MUST ORG $FB19
FB19: C1 DB D9     640 RTBL     DFB $C1,$DB,$D9
FB1C: D0 D3        641          DFB $D0,$D3
FB1E: AD 70 C0     642 PREAD    LDA PTRIG
FB21:              643          LST ON
FB21: A0 00        644          LDY #$00
FB23: EA           645          NOP
FB24: EA           646          NOP
FB25: BD 64 C0     647 PREAD2   LDA PADDL0,X
FB28: 10 04        648          BPL RTS2D
FB2A: C8           649          INY
FB2B: D0 F8        650          BNE PREAD2
FB2D: 88           651          DEY
```

```
FB2E: 60           652 RTS2D    RTS
FB2F: A9 00          2 INIT     LDA #$00
FB31: 85 48          3          STA STATUS
FB33: AD 56 C0       4          LDA LORES
FB36: AD 54 C0       5          LDA LOWSCR
FB39: AD 51 C0       6 SETTXT   LDA TXTSET
FB3C: A9 00          7          LDA #$00
FB3E: F0 0D          8          BEQ SETWND
FB40: AD 50 C0       9 SETGR    LDA TXTCLR
FB43: AD 53 C0      10          LDA MIXSET
FB46: 20 36 FB      11          JSR CLRTOP
FB49: A9 14         12          LDA #$14
FB4B: 85 22         13 SETWND   STA WNDTOP
FB4D: A9 00         14          LDA #$00
FB4F: 85 20         15          STA WNDLFT
FB51: A9 28         16          LDA #$28
FB53: 85 21         17          STA WNDWDTH
FB55: A9 18         18          LDA #$18
FB57: 85 23         19          STA WNDBTM
FB59: A9 17         20          LDA #$17
FB5B: 85 25         21 TABV     STA CV
FB5D: 4C 22 FC      22          JMP VTAB
FB60: 20 58 FC      23 APPLEII  JSR HOME   ; CLEAR THE SCRN
FB63: A0 08         24          LDY #8
FB65: B9 08 FB      25 STITLE   LDA TITLE-1,Y ; GET A CHAR
FB68: 99 0E 04      26          STA LINE1+14,Y
FB6B: 88            27          DEY
FB6C: D0 F7         28          BNE STITLE
FB6E: 60            29          RTS
FB6F: AD F3 03      30 SETPWRC  LDA SOFTEV+1
FB72: 49 A5         31          EOR #$A5
FB74: 8D F4 03      32          STA PWREDUP
FB77: 60            33          RTS
FB78:               34 VIDWAIT  EQU *      ; CHECK FOR A PAUSE
FB78: C9 8D         35          CMP #$8D   ; ONLY WHEN I HAVE A CR
FB7A: D0 18         36          BNE NOWAIT ; NOT SO, DO REGULAR
FB7C: AC 00 C0      37          LDY KBD    ; IS KEY PRESSED?
FB7F: 10 13         38          BPL NOWAIT ; NO
FB81: C0 93         39          CPY #$93   ; IS IT CTL S ?
FB83: D0 0F         40          BNE NOWAIT ; NO SO IGNORE
FB85: 2C 10 C0      41          BIT KBDSTRB ; CLEAR STROBE
FB88: AC 00 C0      42 KBDWAIT  LDY KBD    ; WAIT TILL NEXT KEY TO RESUME
FB8B: 10 FB         43          BPL KBDWAIT ; WAIT FOR KEYPRESS
FB8D: C0 83         44          CPY #$83   ; IS IT CONTROL C ?
FB8F: F0 03         45          BEQ NOWAIT ; YES SO LEAVE IT
FB91: 2C 10 C0      46          BIT KBDSTRB ; CLR STROBE
FB94: 4C FD FB      47 NOWAIT   JMP VIDOUT ; DO AS BEFORE
FB97:               48          PAGE
FB97: 38            49 ESCOLD   SEC        ; INSURE CARRY SET
FB98: 4C 2C FC      50          JMP ESC1
FB9B: A8            51 ESCNOW   TAY        ; USE CHAR AS INDEX
FB9C: B9 48 FA      52          LDA XLTBL-$C9,Y ; XLATE IJKM TO CBAD
FB9F: 20 97 FB      53          JSR ESCOLD ; DO THIS CURSOR MOTION
FBA2: 20 0C FD      54          JSR RDKEY  ; AND GET NEXT
FBA5: C9 CE         55 ESCNEW   CMP #$CE   ;IS THIS AN N ?
FBA7: B0 EE         56          BCS ESCOLD ; N OR GREATER DO IT
FBA9: C9 C9         57          CMP #$C9   ; LESS THAN I ?
FBAB: 90 EA         58          BCC ESCOLD ; YES SO OLD WAY
FBAD: C9 CC         59          CMP #$CC   ; IS IT A L ?
FBAF: F0 E6         60          BEQ ESCOLD ; DO NORMAL
FBB1: D0 E8         61          BNE ESCNOW ; GO DO IT
FBB3: EA            62          NOP
FBB4: EA            63          NOP
FBB5: EA            64          NOP
FBB6: EA            65          NOP
FBB7: EA            66          NOP
FBB8: EA            67          NOP
FBB9: EA            68          NOP
FBBA: EA            69          NOP
```

```
FBBB: EA          70          NOP
FBBC: EA          71          NOP
FBBD: EA          72          NOP
FBBE: EA          73          NOP
FBBF: EA          74          NOP
FBC0: EA          75          NOP
FBC1:             76 *    MUST ORG $FBC1
FBC1: 4B          77 BASCALC PHA
FBC2: 4A          78          LSR A
FBC3: 29 03       79          AND #$03
FBC5: 09 04       80          ORA #$04
FBC7: 85 29       81          STA BASH
FBC9: 68          82          PLA
FBCA: 29 18       83          AND #$18
FBCC: 90 02       84          BCC BASCLC2
FBCE: 69 7F       85          ADC #$7F
FBD0: 85 28       86 BASCLC2 STA BASL
FBD2: 0A          87          ASL A
FBD3: 0A          88          ASL A
FBD4: 05 28       89          ORA BASL
FBD6: 85 28       90          STA BASL
FBD8: 60          91          RTS
FBD9: C9 87       92 BELL1   CMP #$87
FBDB: D0 12       93          BNE RTS2B
FBDD: A9 40       94          LDA #$40
FBDF: 20 A8 FC    95          JSR WAIT
FBE2: A0 C0       96          LDY #$C0
FBE4: A9 0C       97 BELL2   LDA #$0C
FBE6: 20 A8 FC    98          JSR WAIT
FBE9: AD 30 C0    99          LDA SPKR
FBEC: 88         100          DEY
FBED: D0 F5      101          BNE BELL2
FBEF: 60         102 RTS2B   RTS
FBF0:            103          PAGE
FBF0: A4 24      104 STORADV LDY CH
FBF2: 91 28      105          STA (BASL),Y
FBF4: E6 24      106 ADVANCE INC CH
FBF6: A5 24      107          LDA CH
FBF8: C5 21      108          CMP WNDWDTH
FBFA: B0 66      109          BCS CR
FBFC: 60         110 RTS3    RTS
FBFD: C9 A0      111 VIDOUT  CMP #$A0
FBFF: B0 EF      112          BCS STORADV
FC01: A8         113          TAY
FC02: 10 EC      114          BPL STORADV
FC04: C9 8D      115          CMP #$8D
FC06: F0 5A      116          BEQ CR
FC08: C9 8A      117          CMP #$8A
FC0A: F0 5A      118          BEQ LF
FC0C: C9 88      119          CMP #$88
FC0E: D0 C9      120          BNE BELL1
FC10: C6 24      121 BS      DEC CH
FC12: 10 EB      122          BPL RTS3
FC14: A5 21      123          LDA WNDWDTH
FC16: 85 24      124          STA CH
FC18: C6 24      125          DEC CH
FC1A: A5 22      126 UP      LDA WNDTOP
FC1C: C5 25      127          CMP CV
FC1E: B0 0B      128          BCS RTS4
FC20: C6 25      129          DEC CV
FC22: A5 25      130 VTAB    LDA CV
FC24: 20 C1 FB   131 VTABZ   JSR BASCALC
FC27: 65 20      132          ADC WNDLFT
FC29: 85 28      133          STA BASL
FC2B: 60         134 RTS4    RTS
FC2C: 49 C0      135 ESC1    EOR #$C0    ; ESC @ ?
FC2E: F0 28      136          BEQ HOME    ; IF SO DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30: 69 FD      137          ADC #$FD    ; ESC-A OR B CHECK
FC32: 90 C0      138          BCC ADVANCE ; A, ADVANCE
FC34: F0 DA      139          BEQ BS      ; B, BACKSPACE
FC36: 69 FD      140          ADC #$FD    ; ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38: 90 2C      141          BCC LF      ; C, DOWN
FC3A: F0 DE      142          BEQ UP      ; D, GO UP
```



```
FC3C: 69 FD      143          ADC #$FD    ; ESC-E OR F CHECK
FC3E: 90 5C      144          BCC CLREOL  ; E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40: D0 E9      145          BNE RTS4    ; ELSE NOT F, RETURN
FC42: A4 24      146 CLREOP  LDY CH      ; ESC F IS CLR TO END OF PAGE
FC44: A5 25      147          LDA CV
FC46: 48         148 CLEOP1  PHA
FC47: 20 24 FC   149          JSR VTABZ
FC4A: 20 9E FC   150          JSR CLEOLZ
FC4D: A0 00      151          LDY #$00
FC4F: 68         152          PLA
FC50: 69 00      153          ADC #$00
FC52: C5 23      154          CMP WNDBTM
FC54: 90 F0      155          BCC CLEOP1
FC56: B0 CA      156          BCS VTAB
FC58: A5 22      157 HOME    LDA WNDTOP
FC5A: 85 25      158          STA CV
FC5C: A0 00      159          LDY #$00
FC5E: 84 24      160          STY CH
FC60: F0 E4      161          BEQ CLEOP1
FC62:            162          PAGE
FC62: A9 00      163 CR      LDA #$00
FC64: 85 24      164          STA CH
FC66: E6 25      165 LF      INC CV
FC68: A5 25      166          LDA CV
FC6A: C5 23      167          CMP WNDBTM
FC6C: 90 B6      168          BCC VTABZ
FC6E: C6 25      169          DEC CV
FC70: A5 22      170 SCROLL  LDA WNDTOP
FC72: 48         171          PHA
FC73: 20 24 FC   172          JSR VTABZ
FC76: A5 28      173 SCRL1   LDA BASL
FC78: 85 2A      174          STA BAS2L
FC7A: A5 29      175          LDA BASH
FC7C: 85 2B      176          STA BAS2H
FC7E: A4 21      177          LDY WNDWDTH
FC80: 88         178          DEY
FC81: 68         179          PLA
FC82: 69 01      180          ADC #$01
FC84: C5 23      181          CMP WNDBTM
FC86: B0 0D      182          BCS SCRL3
FC88: 48         183          PHA
FC89: 20 24 FC   184          JSR VTABZ
FC8C: B1 28      185 SCRL2   LDA (BASL),Y
FC8E: 91 2A      186          STA (BAS2L),Y
FC90: 88         187          DEY
FC91: 10 F9      188          BPL SCRL2
FC93: 30 E1      189          BMI SCRL1
FC95: A0 00      190 SCRL3   LDY #$00
FC97: 20 9E FC   191          JSR CLEOLZ
FC9A: B0 B6      192          BCS VTAB
FC9C: A4 24      193 CLREOL  LDY CH
FC9E: A9 A0      194 CLEOLZ  LDA #$A0
FCA0: 91 28      195 CLEOL2  STA (BASL),Y
FCA2: C8         196          INY
FCA3: C4 21      197          CPY WNDWDTH
FCA5: 90 F9      198          BCC CLEOL2
FCA7: 60         199          RTS
FCA8: 38         200 WAIT    SEC
FCA9: 48         201 WAIT2   PHA
FCAA: E9 01      202 WAIT3   SBC #$01
FCAC: D0 FC      203          BNE WAIT3
FCAE: 68         204          PLA
FCAF: E9 01      205          SBC #$01
FCB1: D0 F6      206          BNE WAIT2
FCB3: 60         207          RTS
FCB4: E6 42      208 NXTA4   INC A4L
FCB6: D0 02      209          BNE NXTA1
FCB8: E6 43      210          INC A4H
FCBA: A5 3C      211 NXTA1   LDA A1L
FCBC: C5 3E      212          CMP A2L
FCBE: A5 3D      213          LDA A1H
FCC0: E5 3F      214          SBC A2H
FCC2: E6 3C      215          INC A1L
```

```
FCC4: D0 02       216          BNE RTS4B
FCC6: E6 3D       217          INC A1H
FCC8: 60          218 RTS4B    RTS
FCC9              219          PAGE
FCC9: A0 4B       220 HEADR    LDY #$4B
FCCB: 20 DB FC    221          JSR ZERDLY
FCCE: D0 F9       222          BNE HEADR
FCD0: 69 FE       223          ADC #$FE
FCD2: B0 F5       224          BCS HEADR
FCD4: A0 21       225          LDY #$21
FCD6: 20 DB FC    226 WRBIT    JSR ZERDLY
FCD9: C8          227          INY
FCDA: C8          228          INY
FCDB: 88          229 ZERDLY   DEY
FCDC: D0 FD       230          BNE ZERDLY
FCDE: 90 05       231          BCC WRTAPE
FCE0: A0 32       232          LDY #$32
FCE2: 88          233 ONEDLY   DEY
FCE3: D0 FD       234          BNE ONEDLY
FCE5: AC 20 C0    235 WRTAPE   LDY TAPEOUT
FCE8: A0 2C       236          LDY #$2C
FCEA: CA          237          DEX
FCEB: 60          238          RTS
FCEC: A2 08       239 RDBYTE   LDX #$08
FCEE: 48          240 RDBYT2   PHA
FCEF: 20 FA FC    241          JSR RD2BIT
FCF2: 68          242          PLA
FCF3: 2A          243          ROL A
FCF4: A0 3A       244          LDY #$3A
FCF6: CA          245          DEX
FCF7: D0 F5       246          BNE RDBYT2
FCF9: 60          247          RTS
FCFA: 20 FD FC    248 RD2BIT   JSR RDBIT
FCFD: 88          249 RDBIT    DEY
FCFE: AD 60 C0    250          LDA TAPEIN
FD01: 45 2F       251          EOR LASTIN
FD03: 10 FB       252          BPL RDBIT
FD05: 45 2F       253          EOR LASTIN
FD07: 85 2F       254          STA LASTIN
FD09: C0 80       255          CPY #$80
FD0B: 60          256          RTS
FD0C: A4 24       257 RDKEY    LDY CH
FD0E: B1 28       258          LDA (BASL),Y
FD10: 48          259          PHA
FD11: 29 3F       260          AND #$3F
FD13: 09 40       261          ORA #$40
FD15: 91 28       262          STA (BASL),Y
FD17: 68          263          PLA
FD18: 6C 38 00    264          JMP (KSWL)
FD1B: E6 4E       265 KEYIN    INC RNDL
FD1D: D0 02       266          BNE KEYIN2
FD1F: E6 4F       267          INC RNDH
FD21: 2C 00 C0    268 KEYIN2   BIT KBD      ; READ KEYBOARD
FD24: 10 F5       269          BPL KEYIN
FD26: 91 28       270          STA (BASL),Y
FD28: AD 00 C0    271          LDA KBD
FD2B: 2C 10 C0    272          BIT KBDSTRB
FD2E: 60          273          RTS
FD2F: 20 0C FD    274 ESC      JSR RDKEY
FD32: 20 A5 FB    275          JSR ESCNEW
FD35: 20 0C FD    276 RDCHAR   JSR RDKEY
FD38: C9 9B       277          CMP #$9B
FD3A: F0 F3       278          BEQ ESC
FD3C: 60          279          RTS
FD3D              280          PAGE
FD3D: A5 32       281 NOTCR    LDA INVFLG
FD3F: 48          282          PHA
FD40: A9 FF       283          LDA #$FF
FD42: 85 32       284          STA INVFLG
FD44: BD 00 02    285          LDA IN,X
FD47: 20 ED FD    286          JSR COUT
FD4A: 68          287          PLA
FD4B: 85 32       288          STA INVFLG
```



```
FD4D: BD 00 02    289          LDA IN,X
FD50: C9 88       290          CMP #$88
FD52: F0 1D       291          BEQ BCKSPC
FD54: C9 98       292          CMP #$98
FD56: F0 0A       293          BEQ CANCEL
FD58: E0 F8       294          CPX #$F8
FD5A: 90 03       295          BCC NOTCR1
FD5C: 20 3A FF    296          JSR BELL
FD5F: E8          297 NOTCR1   INX
FD60: D0 13       298          BNE NXTCHAR
FD62: A9 DC       299 CANCEL   LDA #$DC
FD64: 20 ED FD    300          JSR COUT
FD67: 20 8E FD    301 GETLNZ   JSR CROUT
FD6A: A5 33       302 GETLN    LDA PROMPT
FD6C: 20 ED FD    303          JSR COUT
FD6F: A2 01       304          LDX #$01
FD71: 8A          305 BCKSPC   TXA
FD72: F0 F3       306          BEQ GETLNZ
FD74: CA          307          DEX
FD75: 20 35 FD    308 NXTCHAR  JSR RDCHAR
FD78: C9 95       309          CMP #$95
FD7A: D0 02       310          BNE CAPTST
FD7C: B1 28       311          LDA (BASL),Y
FD7E: C9 E0       312 CAPTST   CMP #$E0
FD80: 90 02       313          BCC ADDINP
FD82: 29 DF       314          AND #$DF    ; SHIFT TO UPPER CASE
FD84: 9D 00 02    315 ADDINP   STA IN,X
FD87: C9 8D       316          CMP #$8D
FD89: D0 B2       317          BNE NOTCR
FD8B: 20 9C FC    318          JSR CLREOL
FD8E: A9 8D       319 CROUT    LDA #$8D
FD90: D0 5B       320          BNE COUT
FD92: A4 3D       321 PRA1     LDY A1H
FD94: A6 3C       322          LDX A1L
FD96: 20 8E FD    323 PRYX2    JSR CROUT
FD99: 20 40 F9    324          JSR PRNTYX
FD9C: A0 00       325          LDY #$00
FD9E: A9 AD       326          LDA #$AD
FDA0: 4C ED FD    327          JMP COUT
FDA3              328          PAGE
FDA3: A5 3C       329 XAMB     LDA A1L
FDA5: 09 07       330          ORA #$07
FDA7: 85 3E       331          STA A2L
FDA9: A5 3D       332          LDA A1H
FDAB: 85 3F       333          STA A2H
FDAD: A5 3C       334 MODBCHK  LDA A1L
FDAF: 29 07       335          AND #$07
FDB1: D0 03       336          BNE DATAOUT
FDB3: 20 92 FD    337 XAM      JSR PRA1
FDB6: A9 A0       338 DATAOUT  LDA #$A0
FDB8: 20 ED FD    339          JSR COUT
FDBB: B1 3C       340          LDA (A1L),Y
FDBD: 20 DA FD    341          JSR PRBYTE
FDC0: 20 BA FC    342          JSR NXTA1
FDC3: 90 E8       343          BCC MODBCHK
FDC5: 60          344 RTS4C    RTS
FDC6: 4A          345 XAMPM    LSR A
FDC7: 90 EA       346          BCC XAM
FDC9: 4A          347          LSR A
FDCA: 4A          348          LSR A
FDCB: A5 3E       349          LDA A2L
FDCD: 90 02       350          BCC ADD
FDCF: 49 FF       351          EOR #$FF
FDD1: 65 3C       352 ADD      ADC A1L
FDD3: 48          353          PHA
FDD4: A9 BD       354          LDA #$BD
FDD6: 20 ED FD    355          JSR COUT
FDD9: 68          356          PLA
FDDA: 48          357 PRBYTE   PHA
FDDB: 4A          358          LSR A
FDDC: 4A          359          LSR A
FDDD: 4A          360          LSR A
FDDE: 4A          361          LSR A
```

```
FDDF: 20 E5 FD      342          JSR PRHEXZ
FDE2: 68            343          PLA
FDE3: 29 0F         344 PRHEX    AND #$0F
FDE5: 09 B0         345 PRHEXZ   ORA #$B0
FDE7: C9 BA         346          CMP #$BA
FDE9: 90 02         347          BCC COUT
FDEB: 69 06         348          ADC #$06
FDED: 6C 36 00      349 COUT     JMP (CSWL)
FDF0: C9 A0         350 COUT1    CMP #$A0
FDF2: 90 02         351          BCC COUTZ
FDF4: 25 32         352          AND INVFLG
FDF6: 84 35         353 COUTZ    STY YSAV1
FDF8: 48            354          PHA
FDF9: 20 78 F8      355          JSR VIDWAIT ; GO CHECK FOR PAUSE
FDFC: 68            356          PLA
FDFD: A4 35         357          LDY YSAV1
FDFF: 60            358          RTS
FE00: C6 34         359          PAGE
FE02: F0 9F         360 BL1      DEC YBAV
FE04: CA            361          BEQ XAMB
FE05: D0 16         362 BLANK    DEX
FE07: C9 BA         363          BNE SETMDZ
FE09: D0 08         364          CMP #$BA
FE0B: 85 31         365          BNE XAMPM
FE0D: A5 3E         366 STOR     STA MODE
FE0F: 91 40         367          LDA A2L
FE11: E6 40         368          STA (A3L),Y
FE13: D0 02         369          INC A3L
FE15: E6 41         370          BNE RTS5
FE17: 60            371          INC A3H
FE18: A4 34         372 RTS5     RTS
FE1A: B9 FF 01      373 SETMODE  LDY YSAV
FE1D: 85 31         374          LDA IN-1,Y
FE1F: 60            375 SETMDZ   STA MODE
FE20: A2 01         376          RTS
FE22: B5 3E         377 LT       LDX #$01
FE24: 95 42         378 LT2      LDA A2L,X
FE26: 95 44         379          STA A4L,X
FE28: CA            380          STA A5L,X
FE29: 10 F7         381          DEX
FE2B: 60            382          BPL LT2
FE2C: 91 3C         383          RTS
FE2E: 91 42         384 MOVE     LDA (A1L),Y
FE30: 20 B4 FC      385          STA (A4L),Y
FE33: 90 F7         386          JSR NXTA4
FE35: 60            387          BCC MOVE
FE36: B1 3C         388          RTS
FE38: D1 42         389 VFY      LDA (A1L),Y
FE3A: F0 1C         390          CMP (A4L),Y
FE3C: 20 92 FD      391          BEQ VFYOK
FE3F: B1 3C         392          JSR PRA1
FE41: 20 DA FD      393          LDA (A1L),Y
FE44: A9 A0         394          JSR PRBYTE
FE46: 20 ED FD      395          LDA #$A0
FE49: A9 A8         396          JSR COUT
FE4B: 20 ED FD      397          LDA #$A8
FE4E: B1 42         398          JSR COUT
FE50: 20 DA FD      399          LDA (A4L),Y
FE53: A9 A9         400          JSR PRBYTE
FE55: 20 ED FD      401          LDA #$A9
FE58: 20 B4 FC      402          JSR COUT
FE5B: 90 D9         403 VFYOK    JSR NXTA4
FE5D: 60            404          BCC VFY
FE5E: 20 75 FE      405 LIST     RTS
FE61: A9 14         406          JSR A1PC
FE63: 48            407 LIST2    LDA #$14
FE64: 20 D0 FB      408          PHA
FE67: 20 53 F9      409          JSR INSTDSP
FE6A: 85 3A         410          JSR PCADJ
FE6C: 84 3B         411          STA PCL
FE6E: 68            412          STY PCH
FE6F: 38            413          PLA
                    414          SEC

FE70: E9 01         435          SBC #$01
FE72: D0 EF         436          BNE LIST2
FE74: 60            437          RTS
FE75:               438          PAGE
FE75: BA            439 A1PC     TXA
FE76: F0 07         440          BEQ A1PCRTS
FE78: B5 3C         441 A1PCLP   LDA A1L,X
FE7A: 95 3A         442          STA PCL,X
FE7C: CA            443          DEX
FE7D: 10 F9         444          BPL A1PCLP
FE7F: 60            445 A1PCRTS  RTS
FE80: A0 3F         446 SETINV   LDY #$3F
FE82: D0 02         447          BNE SETIFLG
FE84: A0 FF         448 SETNORM  LDY #$FF
FE86: 84 32         449 SETIFLG  STY INVFLG
FE88: 60            450          RTS
FE89: A9 00         451 SETKBD   LDA #$00
FE8B: 85 3E         452 INPORT   STA A2L
FE8D: A2 38         453 INPRT    LDX #KSWL
FE8F: A0 1B         454          LDY #KEYIN
FE91: D0 08         455          BNE IOPRT
FE93: A9 00         456 SETVID   LDA #$00
FE95: 85 3E         457 OUTPORT  STA A2L
FE97: A2 36         458 OUTPRT   LDX #CSWL
FE99: A0 F0         459          LDY #COUT1
FE9B: A5 3E         460 IOPRT    LDA A2L
FE9D: 29 0F         461          AND #$0F
FE9F: F0 06         462          BEQ IOPRT1
FEA1: 09 C0         463          ORA #IOADR/256
FEA3: A0 00         464          LDY #$00
FEA5: F0 02         465          BEQ IOPRT2
FEA7: A9 FD         466 IOPRT1   LDA #COUT1/256
FEA9:               467 IOPRT2   EQU *
FEA9: 94 00         468          STY LOC0,X ; $94,$00
FEAB: 95 01         469          STA LOC1,X ; $95,$01
FEAD: 60            470          RTS
FEAE: EA            471          NOP
FEAF: EA            472          NOP
FEB0: 4C 00 E0      473 XBASIC   JMP BASIC
FEB3: 4C 03 E0      474 BASCONT  JMP BASIC2
FEB6: 20 75 FE      475 GO       JSR A1PC
FEB9: 20 3F FF      476          JSR RESTORE
FEBC: 6C 3A 00      477          JMP (PCL)
FEBF: 4C D7 FA      478 REGZ     JMP REGDSP
FEC2: 60            479 TRACE    RTS
FEC3:               480 * TRACE IS GONE
FEC3: EA            481          NOP                 ; STEP IS GONE
FEC4: 60            482 STEPZ    RTS
FEC5: EA            483          NOP
FEC6: EA            484          NOP
FEC7: EA            485          NOP
FEC8: EA            486          NOP
FEC9: EA            487          NOP
FECA: 4C FB 03      488 USR      JMP USRADR
FECD:               489          PAGE
FECD: A9 40         490 WRITE    LDA #$40
FECF: 20 C9 FC      491          JSR HEADR
FED2: A2 27         492          LDY #$27
FED4: A2 00         493 WR1      LDX #$00
FED6: 41 3C         494          EOR (A1L,X)
FED8: 48            495          PHA
FED9: A1 3C         496          LDA (A1L,X)
FEDB: 20 ED FE      497          JSR WRBYTE
FEDE: 20 BA FC      498          JSR NXTA1
FEE1: A0 1D         499          LDY #$1D
FEE3: 68            500          PLA
FEE4: 90 EE         501          BCC WR1
FEE6: A0 22         502          LDY #$22
FEE8: 20 ED FE      503          JSR WRBYTE
FEEB: F0 4D         504          BEQ BELL
FEED: A2 10         505 WRBYTE   LDX #$10
FEEF: 0A            506 WRBYT2   ASL A
FEF0: 20 D6 FC      507          JSR WRBIT
```

```
FFEC: 17          DFB $17
FFED: 17          DFB $17
FFEE: 2B          DFB $2B
FFEF: 1F          DFB $1F
FFF0: B3          DFB $B3
FFF1: 7F          DFB $7F
FFF2: 5D          DFB $5D
FFF3: CC          DFB $CC
FFF4: B5          DFB $B5
FFF5: FC          DFB $FC
FFF6: 17          DFB $17
FFF7: 17          DFB $17
FFF8: F5          DFB $F5
FFF9: 03          DFB $03
FFFA: FB 03       DW  NMI
FFFC: 62 FA       DW  RESET
FFFE: 40 FA       DW  IRQ

ENDASM
```

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MONITOR ROM LISTING

```
***************************
*                         *
*        APPLE II         *
*     SYSTEM MONITOR      *
*                         *
*   COPYRIGHT 1977 BY     *
*  APPLE COMPUTER, INC.   *
*                         *
*   ALL RIGHTS RESERVED   *
*                         *
*       S. WOZNIAK        *
*        A. BAUM          *
*                         *
***************************
           TITLE      "APPLE II SYSTEM MONITOR"
LOC0       EPZ   $00
LOC1       EPZ   $01
WNDLFT     EPZ   $20
WNDWDTH    EPZ   $21
WNDTOP     EPZ   $22
WNDBTM     EPZ   $23
CH         EPZ   $24
CV         EPZ   $25
GBASL      EPZ   $26
GBASH      EPZ   $27
BASL       EPZ   $28
BASH       EPZ   $29
BAS2L      EPZ   $2A
BAS2H      EPZ   $2B
H2         EPZ   $2C
LMNEM      EPZ   $2C
RTNL       EPZ   $2C
V2         EPZ   $2D
RMNEM      EPZ   $2D
RTNH       EPZ   $2D
MASK       EPZ   $2E
CHKSUM     EPZ   $2E
FORMAT     EPZ   $2E
LASTIN     EPZ   $2F
LENGTH     EPZ   $2F
SIGN       EPZ   $2F
COLOR      EPZ   $30
MODE       EPZ   $31
INVFLG     EPZ   $32
PROMPT     EPZ   $33
YSAV       EPZ   $34
YSAV1      EPZ   $35
CSWL       EPZ   $36
CSWH       EPZ   $37
KSWL       EPZ   $38
KSWH       EPZ   $39
PCL        EPZ   $3A
PCH        EPZ   $3B
XQT        EPZ   $3C
A1L        EPZ   $3C
A1H        EPZ   $3D
A2L        EPZ   $3E
A2H        EPZ   $3F
A3L        EPZ   $40
A3H        EPZ   $41
A4L        EPZ   $42
A4H        EPZ   $43
A5L        EPZ   $44
A5H        EPZ   $45
ACC        EPZ   $45
XREG       EPZ   $46
YREG       EPZ   $47
STATUS     EPZ   $48
```

```
FEF3: D0 FA          508          BNE WRBYT2
FEF5: 60             509          RTS
FEF6: 20 00 FE       510 CRMON    JSR BL1
FEF9: 68             511          PLA
FEFA: 68             512          PLA
FEFB: D0 6C          513          BNE MONZ
FEFD: 20 FA FC       514 READ     JSR RD2BIT
FF00: A9 16          515          LDA #$16
FF02: 20 C9 FC       516          JSR HEADR
FF05: B5 2E          517          STA CHKSUM
FF07: 20 FA FC       518          JSR RD2BIT
FF0A: A0 24          519 RD2      LDY #$24
FF0C: 20 FD FC       520          JSR RDBIT
FF0F: B0 F9          521          BCS RD2
FF11: 20 FD FC       522          JSR RDBIT
FF14: A0 3B          523          LDY #$3B
FF16: 20 EC FC       524 RD3      JSR RDBYTE
FF19: 81 3C          525          STA (A1L,X)
FF1B: 45 2E          526          EOR CHKSUM
FF1D: 85 2E          527          STA CHKSUM
FF1F: 20 BA FC       528          JSR NXTA1
FF22: A0 35          529          LDY #$35
FF24: 90 F0          530          BCC RD3
FF26: 20 EC FC       531          JSR RDBYTE
FF29: C5 2E          532          CMP CHKSUM
FF2B: F0 0D          533          BEQ BELL
FF2D: A9 C5          534 PREAR    LDA #$C5
FF2F: 20 ED FD       535          JSR COUT
FF32: A9 D2          536          LDA #$D2
FF34: 20 ED FD       537          JSR COUT
FF37: 20 ED FD       538          JSR COUT
FF3A: A9 87          539 BELL     LDA #$87
FF3C: 4C ED FD       540          JMP COUT
FF3F:                541          PAGE
FF3F: A5 48          542 RESTORE  LDA STATUS
FF41: 48             543          PHA
FF42: A5 45          544          LDA A5H
FF44: A6 46          545 RESTR1   LDX XREG
FF46: A4 47          546          LDY YREG
FF48: 28             547          PLP
FF49: 60             548          RTS
FF4A: 85 45          549 SAVE     STA A5H
FF4C: 86 46          550 SAV1     STX XREG
FF4E: 84 47          551          STY YREG
FF50: 08             552          PHP
FF51: 68             553          PLA
FF52: 85 48          554          STA STATUS
FF54: BA             555          TSX
FF55: 86 49          556          STX SPNT
FF57: D8             557          CLD
FF58: 60             558          RTS
FF59: 20 84 FE       559 QLDRST   JSR SETNORM
FF5C: 20 2F FB       560          JSR INIT
FF5F: 20 93 FE       561          JSR SETVID
FF62: 20 89 FE       562          JSR SETKBD
FF65:                563          PAGE
FF65: D8             564 MON      CLD
FF66: 20 3A FF       565          JSR BELL
FF69: A9 AA          566 MONZ     LDA #$AA
FF6B: 85 33          567          STA PROMPT
FF6D: 20 67 FD       568          JSR GETLNZ
FF70: 20 C7 FF       569          JSR ZMODE
FF73: 20 A7 FF       570 NXTITM   JSR GETNUM
FF76: 84 34          571          STY YSAV
FF78: A0 17          572          LDY #$17
FF7A:                573 CHRSRCH  DEY
FF7B: 30 E8          574          BMI MON
FF7D: D9 CC FF       575          CMP CHRTBL,Y
FF80: D0 F8          576          BNE CHRSRCH
FF82: 20 BE FF       577          JSR TOSUB
FF85: A4 34          578          LDY YSAV
FF87: 4C 73 FF       579          JMP NXTITM
FF8A: A2 03          580 DIG      LDX #$03
```



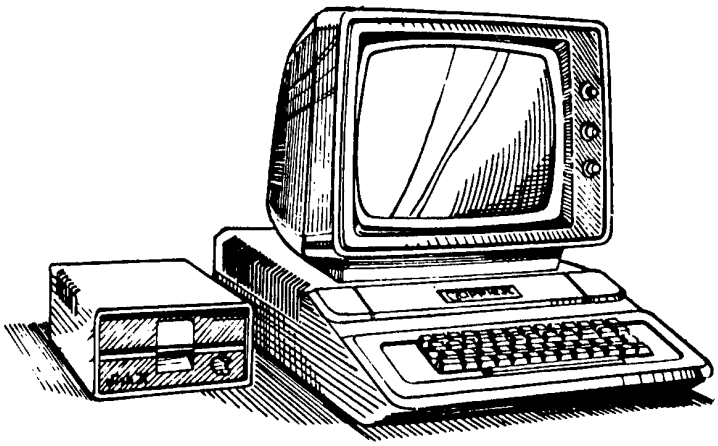
```
FFBC: 0A             581          ASL A
FFBD: 0A             582          ASL A
FFBE: 0A             583          ASL A
FFBF: 0A             584          ASL A
FF90: 0A             585 NXTBIT   ASL A
FF91: 26 3E          586          ROL A2L
FF93: 26 3F          587          ROL A2H
FF95: CA             588          DEX
FF96: 10 F8          589          BPL NXTBIT
FF98: A5 31          590 NXTBAS   LDA A1L
FF9A: D0 06          591          BNE NXTBS2
FF9C:                592 *
FF9C: B5 3F          593          LDA A2H,X
FF9E:                594 *
FF9E: 95 3D          595          STA A1H,X
FFA0:                596 *
FFA0: 95 41          597          STA A3H,X
FFA2: E8             598 NXTBS2   INX
FFA3: F0 F3          599          BEQ NXTBAS
FFA5: D0 06          600          BNE NXTCHR
FFA7: A2 00          601 GETNUM   LDX #$00
FFA9: B6 3E          602          STX A2L
FFAB: B6 3F          603          STX A2H
FFAD: B9 00 02       604 NXTCHR   LDA IN,Y
FFB0: C8             605          INY
FFB1: 49 B0          606          EOR #$B0
FFB3: C9 0A          607          CMP #$0A
FFB5: 90 D3          608          BCC DIG
FFB7: 69 88          609          ADC #$88
FFB9: C9 FA          610          CMP #$FA
FFBB: B0 CD          611          BCS DIG
FFBD: 60             612          RTS
FFBE: A9 FE          613 TOSUB    LDA #<QD/256
FFC0: 48             614          PHA
FFC1: B9 E3 FF       615          LDA SUBTBL,Y
FFC4: 48             616          PHA
FFC5: A5 31          617          LDA MODE
FFC7: A0 00          618 ZMODE    LDY #$00
FFC9: B4 31          619          STY MODE
FFCB: 60             620          RTS
FFCC:                621 PAGE
FFCC: BC             622 CHRTBL   DFB $BC
FFCD: B2             623          DFB $B2
FFCE: BE             624          DFB $BE
FFCF: B2             625          DFB $B2
FFD0: EF             626          DFB $EF
FFD1: C4             627          DFB $C4
FFD2: B2             628          DFB $B2
FFD3: A9             629          DFB $A9
FFD4: B8             630          DFB $B8
FFD5: A6             631          DFB $A6
FFD6: A4             632          DFB $A4
FFD7: 06             633          DFB $06
FFD8: 95             634          DFB $95
FFD9: 07             635          DFB $07
FFDA: 02             636          DFB $02
FFDB: 05             637          DFB $05
FFDC: F0             638          DFB $F0
FFDD: 00             639          DFB $00
FFDE: E8             640          DFB $E8
FFDF: 93             641          DFB $93
FFE0: A7             642          DFB $A7
FFE1: C6             643          DFB $C6
FFE2: 99             644          DFB $99
FFE3: B2             645 SUBTBL   DFB $B2
FFE4: C9             646          DFB $C9
FFE5: BE             647          DFB $BE
FFE6: C1             648          DFB $C1
FFE7: 35             649          DFB $35
FFE8: BC             650          DFB $BC
FFE9: C4             651          DFB $C4
FFEA: 96             652          DFB $96
FFEB: AF             653          DFB $AF
```

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX A
ROM LISTING -- MONITOR (1977)



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

```
                        69  SPNT     EPZ  $49
                        70  RNDL     EPZ  $4E
                        71  RNDH     EPZ  $4F
                        72  ACL      EPZ  $50
                        73  ACH      EPZ  $51
                        74  XTNDL    EPZ  $52
                        75  XTNDH    EPZ  $53
                        76  AUXL     EPZ  $54
                        77  AUXH     EPZ  $55
                        78  PICK     EPZ  $95
                        79  IN       EQU  $0200
                        80  USRADR   EQU  $03F8
                        81  NMI      EQU  $03FB
                        82  IRQLOC   EQU  $03FE
                        83  IOADR    EQU  $C000
                        84  KBD      EQU  $C000
                        85  KBDSTRB  EQU  $C010
                        86  TAPEOUT  EQU  $C020
                        87  SPKR     EQU  $C030
                        88  TXTCLR   EQU  $C050
                        89  TXTSET   EQU  $C051
                        90  MIXCLR   EQU  $C052
                        91  MIXSET   EQU  $C053
                        92  LOWSCR   EQU  $C054
                        93  HISCR    EQU  $C055
                        94  LORES    EQU  $C056
                        95  HIRES    EQU  $C057
                        96  TAPEIN   EQU  $C060
                        97  PADDL0   EQU  $C064
                        98  PTRIG    EQU  $C070
                        99  BASIC    EQU  $E000
                       100  BASIC2   EQU  $E003
                       101          ORG  $F800          ROM START ADDRESS
F800:  4A              102  PLOT     LSR  A             Y-COORD/2
F801:  08              103          PHP                SAVE LSB IN CARRY
F802:  20 47 F8        104          JSR  GBASCALC      CALC BASE ADR IN GBASL,H
F805:  28              105          PLP                RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F806:  A9 0F           106          LDA  #$0F          MASK $0F IF EVEN
F808:  90 02           107          BCC  RTMASK
F80A:  69 E0           108          ADC  #$E0          MASK $F0 IF ODD
F80C:  85 2E           109  RTMASK   STA  MASK
F80E:  B1 26           110  PLOT1    LDA  (GBASL),Y     DATA
F810:  45 30           111          EOR  COLOR          XOR  COLOR
F812:  25 2E           112          AND  MASK           AND MASK
F814:  51 26           113          EOR  (GBASL),Y      XOR DATA
F816:  91 26           114          STA  (GBASL),Y      TO DATA
F818:  60              115          RTS
F819:  20 00 F8        116  HLINE    JSR  PLOT          PLOT SQUARE
F81C:  C4 2C           117  HLINE1   CPY  H2            DONE?
F81E:  B0 11           118          BCS  RTS1          YES, RETURN
F820:  C8              119          INY                NO, INCR INDEX (X-COORD)
F821:  20 0E F8        120          JSR  PLOT1         PLOT NEXT SQUARE
F824:  90 F6           121          BCC  HLINE1        ALWAYS TAKEN
F826:  69 01           122  VLINEZ   ADC  #$01          NEXT Y-COORD
F828:  48              123  VLINE    PHA                SAVE ON STACK
F829:  20 00 F8        124          JSR  PLOT          PLOT SQUARE
F82C:  68              125          PLA
F82D:  C5 2D           126          CMP  V2            DONE?
F82F:  90 F5           127          BCC  VLINEZ         NO,LOOP.
F831:  60              128  RTS1     RTS
F832:  A0 2F           129  CLRSCR   LDY  #$2F          MAX Y, FULL SCRN CLR
F834:  D0 02           130          BNE  CLRSC2        ALWAYS TAKEN
F836:  A0 27           131  CLRTOP   LDY  #$27          MAX Y, TOP SCRN CLR
F838:  84 2D           132  CLRSC2   STY  V2            STORE AS BOTTOM COORD
                       133  *                       FOR VLINE CALLS
F83A:  A0 27           134          LDY  #$27          RIGHTMOST X-COORD (COLUMN)
F83C:  A9 00           135  CLRSC3   LDA  #$0           TOP COORD FOR VLINE CALLS
F83E:  85 30           136          STA  COLOR         CLEAR COLOR (BLACK)
F840:  20 28 F8        137          JSR  VLINE         DRAW VLINE
F843:  88              138          DEY                NEXT LEFTMOST X-COORD
F844:  10 F6           139          BPL  CLRSC3        LOOP UNTIL DONE.
F846:  60              140          RTS
F847:  48              141  GBASCALC PHA                FOR INPUT 000DEFGH
F848:  4A              142          LSR  A
```



```
F849:  29 03           143          AND  #$03
F84B:  09 04           144          ORA  #$04          GENERATE GBASH=000001FG
F84D:  85 27           145          STA  GBASH
F84F:  68              146          PLA                AND GBASL=HDEDE000
F850:  29 18           147          AND  #$18
F852:  90 02           148          BCC  GBCALC
F854:  69 7F           149          ADC  #$7F
F856:  85 26           150  GBCALC   STA  GBASL
F858:  0A              151          ASL  A
F859:  0A              152          ASL  A
F85A:  05 26           153          ORA  GBASL
F85C:  85 26           154          STA  GBASL
F85E:  60              155          RTS
F85F:  A5 30           156  NXTCOL   LDA  COLOR         INCREMENT COLOR BY 3
F861:  18              157          CLC
F862:  69 03           158          ADC  #$03
F864:  29 0F           159  SETCOL   AND  #$0F          SETS COLOR=17*A MOD 16
F866:  85 30           160          STA  COLOR
F868:  0A              161          ASL  A             BOTH HALF BYTES OF COLOR EQ
F869:  0A              162          ASL  A
F86A:  0A              163          ASL  A
F86B:  0A              164          ASL  A
F86C:  05 30           165          ORA  COLOR
F86E:  85 30           166          STA  COLOR
F870:  60              167          RTS
F871:  4A              168  SCRN     LSR  A             READ SCREEN Y-COORD/2
F872:  08              169          PHP                SAVE LSB (CARRY)
F873:  20 47 F8        170          JSR  GBASCALC      CALC BASE ADDRESS
F876:  B1 26           171          LDA  (GBASL),Y     GET BYTE
F878:  28              172          PLP                RESTORE LSB FROM CARRY
F879:  90 04           173  SCRN2    BCC  RTMSKZ        IF EVEN, USE LO H
F87B:  4A              174          LSR  A
F87C:  4A              175          LSR  A
F87D:  4A              176          LSR  A             SHIFT HIGH HALF BYTE DOWN
F87E:  4A              177          LSR  A
F87F:  29 0F           178  RTMSKZ   AND  #$0F          MASK 4-BITS
F881:  60              179          RTS
F882:  A6 3A           180  INSDS1   LDX  PCL           PRINT PCL,H
F884:  A4 3B           181          LDY  PCH
F886:  20 96 FD        182          JSR  PRYX2
F889:  20 48 F9        183          JSR  PRBLNK        FOLLOWED BY A BLANK
F88C:  A1 3A           184          LDA  (PCL,X)       GET OP CODE
F88E:  A8              185  INSDS2   TAY
F88F:  4A              186          LSR  A             EVEN/ODD TEST
F890:  90 09           187          BCC  IEVEN
F892:  6A              188          ROR  A             BIT 1 TEST
F893:  B0 10           189          BCS  ERR           XXXXXX11 INVALID OP
F895:  C9 A2           190          CMP  #$A2
F897:  F0 0C           191          BEQ  ERR           OPCODE $99 INVALID
F899:  29 87           192          AND  #$87          MASK BITS
F89B:  4A              193  IEVEN    LSR  A             LSB INTO CARRY FOR L/R TEST
F89C:  AA              194          TAX
F89D:  BD 62 F9        195          LDA  FMT1,X        GET FORMAT INDEX BYTE
F8A0:  20 79 F8        196          JSR  SCRN2         R/L H-BYTE ON CARRY
F8A3:  D0 04           197          BNE  GETFMT
F8A5:  A0 80           198  ERR      LDY  #$80          SUBSTITUTE $80 FOR INVALID O
F8A7:  A9 00           199          LDA  #$0           SET PRINT FORMAT INDEX TO 0
F8A9:  AA              200  GETFMT   TAX
F8AA:  BD A6 F9        201          LDA  FMT2,X        INDEX INTO PRINT FORMAT TABL
F8AD:  85 2E           202          STA  FORMAT        SAVE FOR ADR FIELD FORMATTIN
F8AF:  29 03           203          AND  #$03          MASK FOR 2-BIT LENGTH
                       204  *          (P=1 BYTE, 1=2 BYTE, 2=3 BYTE)
F8B1:  85 2F           205          STA  LENGTH
F8B3:  98              206          TYA                OPCODE
F8B4:  29 8F           207          AND  #$8F          MASK FOR 1XXX1010 TEST
F8B6:  AA              208          TAX                 SAVE IT
F8B7:  98              209          TYA                OPCODE TO A AGAIN
F8B8:  A0 03           210          LDY  #$03
F8BA:  E0 8A           211          CPX  #$8A
F8BC:  F0 0B           212          BEQ  MNNDX3
F8BE:  4A              213  MNNDX1   LSR  A
F8BF:  90 08           214          BCC  MNNDX3        FORM INDEX INTO MNEMONIC TAB
F8C1:  4A              215          LSR  A
```

```
F8C2: 4A        216 MNNDX2  LSR  A            1) 1XXX1010=>00101XXX
F8C3: 09 20     217         ORA  #$20        2) XXXYYY01=>00111XXX
F8C5: 88        218         DEY                3) XXXYYY10=>00110XXX
F8C6: D0 FA     219         BNE  MNNDX2      4) XXXYY100=>00100XXX
F8C8: C8        220         INY                5) XXXXX000=>000XXXXX
F8C9: 88        221 MNNDX3  DEY
F8CA: D0 F2     222         BNE  MNNDX1
F8CC: 60        223         RTS
F8CD: FF FF FF  224         DFB  $FF,$FF,$FF
F8D0: 20 82 F8  225 INSTDSP JSR  INSDS1      GEN FMT, LEN BYTES
F8D3: 48        226         PHA              SAVE MNEMONIC TABLE INDEX
F8D4: B1 3A     227 PRNTOP  LDA  (PCL),Y
F8D6: 20 DA FD  228         JSR  PRBYTE
F8D9: A2 01     229         LDX  #$01        PRINT 2 BLANKS
F8DB: 20 4A F9  230 PRNTBL  JSR  PRBL2
F8DE: C4 2F     231         CPY  LENGTH      PRINT INST (1-3 BYTES)
F8E0: C8        232         INY              IN A 12 CHR FIELD
F8E1: 90 F1     233         BCC  PRNTOP
F8E3: A2 03     234         LDX  #$03        CHAR COUNT FOR MNEMONIC PRINT
F8E5: C0 04     235         CPY  #$04
F8E7: 90 F2     236         BCC  PRNTBL
F8E9: 68        237         PLA              RECOVER MNEMONIC INDEX
F8EA: A8        238         TAY
F8EB: B9 C0 F9  239         LDA  MNEML,Y
F8EE: 85 2C     240         STA  LMNEM       FETCH 3-CHAR MNEMONIC
F8F0: B9 00 FA  241         LDA  MNEMR,Y       (PACKED IN 2-BYTES)
F8F3: 85 2D     242         STA  RMNEM
F8F5: A9 00     243 PRMN1   LDA  #$00
F8F7: A0 05     244         LDY  #$05
F8F9: 06 2D     245 PRMN2   ASL  RMNEM       SHIFT 5 BITS OF
F8FB: 26 2C     246         ROL  LMNEM         CHARACTER INTO A
F8FD: 2A        247         ROL  A               (CLEARS CARRY)
F8FE: 88        248         DEY
F8FF: D0 F8     249         BNE  PRMN2
F901: 69 BF     250         ADC  #$BF        ADD "?" OFFSET
F903: 20 ED FD  251         JSR  COUT        OUTPUT A CHAR OF MNEM
F906: CA        252         DEX
F907: D0 EC     253         BNE  PRMN1
F909: 20 48 F9  254         JSR  PRBLNK      OUTPUT 3 BLANKS
F90C: A4 2F     255         LDY  LENGTH
F90E: A2 06     256         LDX  #$06        CNT FOR 6 FORMAT BITS
F910: E0 03     257 PRADR1  CPX  #$03
F912: F0 1C     258         BEQ  PRADR5      IF X=3 THEN ADDR.
F914: 06 2E     259 PRADR2  ASL  FORMAT
F916: 90 0E     260         BCC  PRADR3
F918: BD B3 F9  261         LDA  CHAR1-1,X
F91B: 20 ED FD  262         JSR  COUT
F91E: BD B9 F9  263         LDA  CHAR2-1,X
F921: F0 03     264         BEQ  PRADR3
F923: 20 ED FD  265         JSR  COUT
F926: CA        266 PRADR3  DEX
F927: D0 E7     267         BNE  PRADR1
F929: 60        268         RTS
F92A: 88        269 PRADR4  DEY
F92B: 30 E7     270         BMI  PRADR2
F92D: 20 DA FD  271         JSR  PRBYTE
F930: A5 2E     272 PRADR5  LDA  FORMAT
F932: C9 E8     273         CMP  #$E8        HANDLE REL ADR MODE
F934: B1 3A     274         LDA  (PCL),Y     SPECIAL (PRINT TARGET,
F936: 90 F2     275         BCC  PRADR4        NOT OFFSET)
F938: 20 56 F9  276 RELADR  JSR  PCADJ3
F93B: AA        277         TAX              PCL,PCH+OFFSET+1 TO A,Y
F93C: E8        278         INX
F93D: D0 01     279         BNE  PRNTYX      +1 TO Y,X
F93F: C8        280         INY
F940: 98        281 PRNTYX  TYA
F941: 20 DA FD  282 PRNTAX  JSR  PRBYTE      OUTPUT TARGET ADR
F944: 8A        283 PRNTX   TXA                OF BRANCH AND RETURN
F945: 4C DA FD  284         JMP  PRBYTE
F948: A2 03     285 PRBLNK  LDX  #$03        BLANK COUNT
F94A: A9 A0     286 PRBL2   LDA  #$A0        LOAD A SPACE
F94C: 20 ED FD  287 PRBL3   JSR  COUT        OUTPUT A BLANK
F94F: CA        288         DEX
```



```
F950: D0 F8     289         BNE  PRBL2       LOOP UNTIL COUNT=0
F952: 60        290         RTS
F953: 38        291 PCADJ   SEC              0=1-BYTE,1=2-BYTE,
F954: A5 2F     292 PCADJ2  LDA  LENGTH         2=3-BYTE
F956: A4 3B     293 PCADJ3  LDY  PCH
F958: AA        294         TAX              TEST DISPLACEMENT SIGN
F959: 10 01     295         BPL  PCADJ4        (FOR REL BRANCH)
F95B: 88        296         DEY              EXTEND NEG BY DECR PCH
F95C: 65 3A     297 PCADJ4  ADC  PCL
F95E: 90 01     298         BCC  RTS2        PCL+LENGTH(OR DISPL)+1 TO A
F960: C8        299         INY                CARRY INTO Y (PCH)
F961: 60        300 RTS2    RTS
                301 *        FMT1 BYTES:        XXXXXXY0 INSTRS
                302 *        IF Y=0             THEN LEFT HALF BYTE
                303 *        IF Y=1             THEN RIGHT HALF BYTE
                304 *                                (X=INDEX)
F962: 04 20 54
F965: 30 0D     305 FMT1    DFB  $04,$20,$54,$
F967: 80 04 90
F96A: 03 22     306         DFB  $80,$04,$90,$
F96C: 54 33 0D
F96F: 80 04     307         DFB  $54,$33,$0D,$
F971: 90 04 20
F974: 54 33     308         DFB  $90,$04,$20,$
F976: 0D 80 04
F979: 90 04     309         DFB  $0D,$80,$04,$
F97B: 20 54 3B
F97E: 0D 80     310         DFB  $20,$54,$3B,$
F980: 04 90 00
F983: 22 44     311         DFB  $04,$90,$00,$
F985: 33 0D C8
F988: 44 00     312         DFB  $33,$0D,$C8,$
F98A: 11 22 44
F98D: 33 0D     313         DFB  $11,$22,$44,$
F98F: C8 44 A9
F992: 01 22     314         DFB  $C8,$44,$A9,$
F994: 44 33 0D
F997: 80 04     315         DFB  $44,$33,$0D,$
F999: 90 01 22
F99C: 44 33     316         DFB  $90,$01,$22,$
F99E: 0D 80 04
F9A1: 90        317         DFB  $0D,$80,$04,$
F9A2: 26 31 87
F9A5: 9A        318         DFB  $26,$31,$87,$ZZXXXY01 INSTR'S
F9A6: 00        319 FMT2    DFB  $00           ERR
F9A7: 21        320         DFB  $21           IMM
F9A8: 81        321         DFB  $81           Z-PAGE
F9A9: 82        322         DFB  $82           ABS
F9AA: 00        323         DFB  $00           IMPLIED
F9AB: 00        324         DFB  $00           ACCUMULATOR
F9AC: 59        325         DFB  $59           (ZPAG,X)
F9AD: 4D        326         DFB  $4D           (ZPAG),Y
F9AE: 91        327         DFB  $91           ZPAG,X
F9AF: 92        328         DFB  $92           ABS,X
F9B0: 86        329         DFB  $86           ABS,Y
F9B1: 4A        330         DFB  $4A           (ABS)
F9B2: 85        331         DFB  $85           ZPAG,Y
F9B3: 9D        332         DFB  $9D           RELATIVE
F9B4: AC A9 AC
F9B7: A3 A6 A4  333 CHAR1   ASC  ",),#($"
F9BA: D9 00 D8
F9BD: A4 A4 00  334 CHAR2   DFB  $D9,$00,$D8,$
                335 *CHAR2: "Y",0,"X$$",0
                336 *       MNEML          IS OF FORM:
                337 *       (A)  XXXXX000
                338 *       (B)  XXXY100
                339 *       (C)  1XXX1010
                340 *       (D)  XXXYYY10
                341 *       (E)  XXXYYY01
                342 *              (X=INDEX)
F9C0: 1C 8A 1C
F9C3: 23 5D 8B  343 MNEML   DFB  $1C,$8A,$1C,$
F9C6: 1B A1 9D
```

```
FB02:  20 56 F9 474          JSR  PCADJ3
FB05:  85 3A    475          STA  PCL
FB07:  98       476          TYA
FB08:  38       477          SEC
FB09:  B0 A2    478          BCS  PCINC2
FB0B:  20 4A FF 479 NBRNCH   JSR  SAVE       NORMAL RETURN AFTER
FB0E:  38       480          SEC               XEQ USER OF
FB0F:  B0 9E    481          BCS  PCINC3     GO UPDATE PC
FB11:  EA       482 INITBL   NOP
FB12:  EA       483          NOP             DUMMY FILL FOR
FB13:  4C 0B FB 484          JMP  NBRNCH       XEQ AREA
FB16:  4C FD FA 485          JMP  BRANCH
FB19:  C1       486 RTBL     DFB  $C1
FB1A:  D8       487          DFB  $D8
FB1B:  D9       488          DFB  $D9
FB1C:  D0       489          DFB  $D0
FB1D:  D3       490          DFB  $D3
FB1E:  AD 70 C0 491 PREAD    LDA  PTRIG      TRIGGER PADDLES
FB21:  A0 00    492          LDY  #$00       INIT COUNT
FB23:  EA       493          NOP             COMPENSATE FOR 1ST COUNT
FB24:  EA       494          NOP
FB25:  BD 64 C0 495 PREAD2   LDA  PADDL0,X   COUNT Y-REG EVERY
FB28:  10 04    496          BPL  RTS2D        12 USEC
FB2A:  C8       497          INY
FB2B:  D0 F8    498          BNE  PREAD2       EXIT AT 255 MAX
FB2D:  88       499          DEY
FB2E:  60       500 RTS2D    RTS
FB2F:  A9 00    501 INIT     LDA  #$00       CLR STATUS FOR DEBUG
FB31:  85 48    502          STA  STATUS       SOFTWARE
FB33:  AD 56 C0 503          LDA  LORES
FB36:  AD 54 C0 504          LDA  LOWSCR     INIT VIDEO MODE
FB39:  AD 51 C0 505 SETTXT   LDA  TXTSET     SET FOR TEXT MODE
FB3C:  A9 00    506          LDA  #$00         FULL SCREEN WINDOW
FB3E:  F0 0B    507          BEQ  SETWND
FB40:  AD 50 C0 508 SETGR    LDA  TXTCLR     SET FOR GRAPHICS MODE
FB43:  AD 53 C0 509          LDA  MIXSET       LOWER 4 LINES AS
FB46:  20 36 F8 510          JSR  CLRTOP       TEXT WINDOW
FB49:  A9 14    511          LDA  #$14
FB4B:  85 22    512 SETWND   STA  WNDTOP     SET FOR 40 COL WINDOW
FB4D:  A9 00    513          LDA  #$00         TOP IN A-REG,
FB4F:  85 20    514          STA  WNDLFT       BTTM AT LINE 24
FB51:  A9 28    515          LDA  #$28
FB53:  85 21    516          STA  WNDWDTH
FB55:  A9 18    517          LDA  #$18
FB57:  85 23    518          STA  WNDBTM       VTAB TO ROW 23
FB59:  A9 17    519          LDA  #$17
FB5B:  85 25    520 TABV     STA  CV         VTABS TO ROW IN A-REG
FB5D:  4C 22 FC 521          JMP  VTAB
FB60:  20 A4 FB 522 MULPM    JSR  MD1        ABS VAL OF AC AUX
FB63:  A0 10    523 MUL      LDY  #$10       INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB65:  A5 50    524 MUL2     LDA  ACL        ACX * AUX + XTND
FB67:  4A       525          LSR  A            TO AC, XTND
FB68:  90 0C    526          BCC  MUL4       IF NO CARRY,
FB6A:  18       527          CLC               NO PARTIAL PROD.
FB6B:  A2 FE    528          LDX  #$FE
FB6D:  B5 54    529 MUL3     LDA  XTNDL+2,X  ADD MPLCND (AUX)
FB6F:  75 56    530          ADC  AUXL+2,X     TO PARTIAL PROD
FB71:  95 54    531          STA  XTNDL+2,X    (XTND).
FB73:  E8       532          INX
FB74:  D0 F7    533          BNE  MUL3
FB76:  A2 03    534 MUL4     LDX  #$03
FB78:  76       535 MUL5     DFB  #$76
FB79:  50       536          DFB  #$50
FB7A:  CA       537          DEX
FB7B:  10 FB    538          BPL  MUL5
FB7D:  88       539          DEY
FB7E:  D0 E5    540          BNE  MUL2
FB80:  60       541          RTS
FB81:  20 A4 FB 542 DIVPM    JSR  MD1        ABS VAL OF AC, AUX.
FB84:  A0 10    543 DIV      LDY  #$10       INDEX FOR 16 BITS
FB86:  06 50    544 DIV2     ASL  ACL
FB88:  26 51    545          ROL  ACH
FB8A:  26 52    546          ROL  XTNDL      XTND/AUX
FB8C:  26 53    547          ROL  XTNDH        TO AC.
FB8E:  38       548          SEC
FB8F:  A5 52    549          LDA  XTNDL
FB91:  E5 54    550          SBC  AUXL         MOD TO XTND.
FB93:  AA       551          TAX
FB94:  A5 53    552          LDA  XTNDH
FB96:  E5 55    553          SBC  AUXH
FB98:  90 06    554          BCC  DIV3
FB9A:  86 52    555          STX  XTNDL
FB9C:  85 53    556          STA  XTNDH
FB9E:  E6 50    557          INC  ACL
FBA0:  88       558 DIV3     DEY
FBA1:  D0 E3    559          BNE  DIV2
FBA3:  60       560          RTS
FBA4:  A0 00    561 MD1      LDY  #$00       ABS VAL OF AC, AUX
FBA6:  84 2F    562          STY  SIGN         WITH RESULT SIGN
FBA8:  A2 54    563          LDX  #AUXL        IN LSB OF SIGN.
FBAA:  20 AF FB 564          JSR  MD2
FBAD:  A2 50    565          LDX  #ACL
FBAF:  B5 01    566 MD2      LDA  LOC1,X     X SPECIFIES AC OR AUX
FBB1:  10 0D    567          BPL  MDRTS
FBB3:  38       568          SEC
FBB4:  98       569 MD3      TYA
FBB5:  F5 00    570          SBC  LOC0,X     COMPL SPECIFIED REG
FBB7:  95 00    571          STA  LOC0,X       IF NEG.
FBB9:  98       572          TYA
FBBA:  F5 01    573          SBC  LOC1,X
FBBC:  95 01    574          STA  LOC1,X
FBBE:  E6 2F    575          INC  SIGN
FBC0:  60       576 MDRTS    RTS
FBC1:  48       577 BASCALC  PHA             CALC BASE ADR IN BASL,H
FBC2:  4A       578          LSR  A            FOR GIVEN LINE NO.
FBC3:  29 03    579          AND  #$03         0<=LINE NO.<=$17
FBC5:  09 04    580          ORA  #$04       ARG=000ABCDE, GENERATE
FBC7:  85 29    581          STA  BASH         BASH=000001CD
FBC9:  68       582          PLA               AND
FBCA:  29 18    583          AND  #$18         BASL=EABAB000
FBCC:  90 02    584          BCC  BSCLC2
FBCE:  69 7F    585          ADC  #$7F
FBD0:  85 28    586 BSCLC2   STA  BASL
FBD2:  0A       587          ASL  A
FBD3:  0A       588          ASL  A
FBD4:  05 28    589          ORA  BASL
FBD6:  85 28    590          STA  BASL
FBD8:  60       591          RTS
FBD9:  C9 87    592 BELL1    CMP  #$87       BELL CHAR? (CNTRL-G)
FBDB:  D0 12    593          BNE  RTS2B        NO, RETURN
FBDD:  A9 40    594          LDA  #$40       DELAY .01 SECONDS
FBDF:  20 A8 FC 595          JSR  WAIT
FBE2:  A0 C0    596          LDY  #$C0
FBE4:  A9 0C    597 BELL2    LDA  #$0C       TOGGLE SPEAKER AT
FBE6:  20 A8 FC 598          JSR  WAIT         1 KHZ FOR .1 SEC.
FBE9:  AD 30 C0 599          LDA  SPKR
FBEC:  88       600          DEY
FBED:  D0 F5    601          BNE  BELL2
FBEF:  60       602 RTS2B    RTS
FBF0:  A4 24    603 STOADV   LDY  CH         CURSER H INDEX TO Y-REG
FBF2:  91 28    604          STA  (BASL),Y   STOR CHAR IN LINE
FBF4:  E6 24    605 ADVANCE  INC  CH         INCREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FBF6:  A5 24    606          LDA  CH           (MOVE RIGHT)
FBF8:  C5 21    607          CMP  WNDWDTH    BEYOND WINDOW WIDTH?
FBFA:  B0 66    608          BCS  CR           YES CR TO NEXT LINE
FBFC:  60       609 RTS3     RTS               NO, RETURN
FBFD:  C9 A0    610 VIDOUT   CMP  #$A0       CONTROL CHAR?
FBFF:  B0 EF    611          BCS  STOADV       NO, OUTPUT IT.
FC01:  A8       612          TAY             INVERSE VIDEO?
FC02:  10 EC    613          BPL  STOADV       YES, OUTPUT IT.
FC04:  C9 8D    614          CMP  #$8D       CR?
FC06:  F0 5A    615          BEQ  CR           YES.
FC08:  C9 8A    616          CMP  #$8A       LINE FEED?
FC0A:  F0 5A    617          BEQ  LF           IF SO, DO IT.
FC0C:  C9 88    618          CMP  #$88       BACK SPACE? (CNTRL-H)
FC0E:  D0 C9    619          BNE  BELL1        NO, CHECK FOR BELL.
```


162

```
F9C9:  8A 1D 23 344          DFB   $1B,$A1,$9D,$
F9CC:  9D 3B 1D              DFB   $9D,$3B,$1D,$
F9CF:  A1 00 29 345          DFB   $19,$A1      (A) FORMAT ABOVE
F9D2:  19 AE 69              DFB   $19,$AE,$69,$
F9D5:  A8 15 23 346          DFB   $00,$1A,$58,$
F9D8:  24 53 1B              DFB   $24,$24      (B) FORMAT
F9DB:  23 24 53 347          DFB   $24,$53,$1B,$
F9DE:  19 A1 00 348          DFB   $19,$A1      (A) FORMAT ABOVE
F9E1:  00 1A 5B
F9E3:  5B A5 69 349
F9E6:  24 24 A8 350          DFB   $00,$1A,$58,$
F9E9:  AE AE A8 351          DFB   $24,$24      (B) FORMAT
F9EC:  AC 29 00 352          DFB   $24,$53,$1B,$
F9EF:  15 9C 6D              DFB   $1B,$A1,$9D,$
F9F2:  9C A5 69 353          DFB   $A9,$AE,$A8,$
F9F5:  29 53 354             DFB   $29,$53      (D) FORMAT
F9F8:  84 13 34 355          DFB   $84,$13,$34,$
F9FB:  11 A5 69 356          DFB   $23,$A0      (E) FORMAT
F9FE:  23 A0
FA00:  D8 62 5A              DFB   $D8,$62,$5A,$
FA03:  48 26 62 357  MNEMR
FA06:  94 88 54              DFB   $94,$88,$54,$
FA09:  44 C8 54 358
FA0C:  68 44 E8 358          DFB   $68,$44,$E6,$
FA0F:  94 00 84 359          DFB   $00,$84,$74,$
FA12:  08 84 74
FA15:  B4 28 6E 360          DFB   $08,$84,$74,$
FA18:  74 F4 CC 361          DFB   $74,$F4,$CC,$
FA1B:  4A 72 F2 361          DFB   $A4,$8A      (A) FORMAT
FA1E:  A4 8A 362
FA20:  00 AA A2
FA23:  A2 74 74 363          DFB   $00,$AA,$A2,$
FA26:  74 72 364             DFB   $74,$72      (B) FORMAT
FA28:  44 68 B2
FA2B:  32 B2 00 365          DFB   $44,$68,$B2,$
FA2E:  22 00 366             DFB   $22,$00      (C) FORMAT
FA30:  1A 1A 26
FA33:  26 72 72 367          DFB   $1A,$1A,$26,$
FA36:  88 C8 368             DFB   $88,$C8      (D) FORMAT
FA38:  C4 CA 26
FA3B:  48 44 44 369          DFB   $C4,$CA,$26,$
FA3E:  A2 C8 370             DFB   $A2,$C8      (E) FORMAT
FA40:  FF FF FF 371          DFB   $FF,$FF,$FF
FA43:  20 D0 F8 372  STEP    JSR   INSTDSP      DISASSEMBLE ONE INST
FA46:  68            373     PLA                   AT (PCL,H)
FA47:  85 2C         374     STA   RTNL            ADJUST TO USER
FA49:  68            375     PLA                      STACK, SAVE
FA4A:  85 2D         376     STA   RTNH               RTN ADR.
FA4C:  A2 03         377     LDX   #$03
FA4E:  BC 10 FB 378  XQINIT  LDA   INITBL-1,X   INIT XEQ AREA
FA51:  95 3C         379     STA   XQT,X
FA53:  CA            380     DEX
FA54:  D0 F8         381     BNE   XQINIT
FA56:  A1 2A         382     LDA   (PCL,X)      USER OPCODE BYTE
FA58:  F0 42         383     BEQ   XSRK            SPECIAL IF BREAK
FA5A:  A4 2F         384     LDY   LENGTH       LEN FROM DISASSEMBLY
FA5C:  C9 20         385     CMP   #$20
FA5E:  F0 59         386     BEQ   XJSR         HANDLE JSR, RTS, JMP,
FA60:  C9 60         387     CMP   #$60            JMP ( ), RTI SPECIAL
FA62:  F0 45         388     BEQ   XRTS
FA64:  C9 4C         389     CMP   #$4C
FA66:  F0 5C         390     BEQ   XJMP
FA68:  C9 6C         391     CMP   #$6C
FA6A:  F0 59         392     BEQ   XJMPAT
FA6C:  C9 40         393     CMP   #$40
FA6E:  F0 35         394     BEQ   XRTI
FA70:  29 1F         395     AND   #$1F
FA72:  49 14         396     EOR   #$14
FA74:  C9 04         397     CMP   #$04
FA76:  F0 02         398     BEQ   XQ2          (PCL),Y
FA78:  B1 3A         399     LDA   (PCL),Y
FA7A:  99 3C 00 400  XQ1     STA   XQTN2,Y      COPY USER INST TO XEQ AREA
                                                   WITH TRAILING NOPS
                                                CHANGE REL BRANCH
                                                   DISP TO 4 FOR
```



```
FA7D:  88            401     DEY
FA7E:  10 F8         402     BPL   XQ1          JMP TO BRANCH OR
FA80:  20 3F FF 403          JSR   RESTORE        NBRANCH FROM XEQ.
FA83:  4C 3C 00 404          JMP   XQTN2        RESTORE USER REG CONTENTS.
FA86:  85 45         405     STA   ACC          XEQ USER OP FROM RAM
FA88:  68            406     PLA                   (RETURN TO NBRANCH)
FA89:  85 48         407     STA   PHA
FA8B:  68            408     PLA
FA8C:  0A            409     ASL   A
FA8D:  0A            410     ASL   A
FA8E:  0A            411     ASL   A            **IRQ HANDLER
FA8F:  30 03         412     BMI   BREAK
FA91:  6C FE 03      413     JMP   (IRQLOC)     TEST FOR BREAK
FA94:  2A            414     ROL   A             USER ROUTINE VECTOR IN RAM
FA95:  20 4C FF      415     JSR   SAV1         SAVE REG'S ON BREAK
FA98:  68            416     PLA                   INCLUDING PC
FA99:  85 3A         417     STA   PCL
FA9B:  68            418     PLA
FA9C:  85 3B         419     STA   PCH
FA9E:  20 82 F8      420     JSR   INSDS1       PRINT USER PC.
FAA1:  20 DA FA      421     JSR   RGDSP1          AND REG'S
FAA4:  4C 65 FF      422     JMP   MON          GO TO MONITOR
FAA7:  18            423     CLC
FAA8:  68            424     PLA                SIMULATE RTI BY EXPECTING
FAA9:  85 48         425     STA   STATUS          STATUS FROM STACK, THEN RO
FAAB:  68            426     PLA                RTS SIMULATION
FAAC:  85 3A         427     STA   PCL             EXTRACT PC FROM STACK
FAAE:  68            428     PLA                   AND UPDATE PC BY 1 (LEN+0
FAAF:  A5 2F         429     LDA   LENGTH       UPDATE PC BY LEN
FAB1:  20 56 F9      430     JSR   PCADJ3
FAB4:  84 3B         431     STY   PCH
FAB6:  18            432     CLC
FAB7:  90 14         433     BCC   NEWPCL
FAB9:  18            434     CLC                UPDATE PC AND PUSH
FABA:  20 54 F9      435     JSR   PCADJ2          ONTO STACK FOR
FABD:  AA            436     TAX                   JSR SIMULATE
FABE:  98            437     TYA
FABF:  48            438     PHA
FAC0:  8A            439     TXA
FAC1:  48            440     PHA
FAC2:  A0 02         441     LDY   #$02
FAC4:  1D            442     CLC
FAC5:  B1 3A         443     LDA   (PCL),Y      LOAD PC FOR JMP,
FAC7:  AA            444     TAX                   (JMF) SIMULATE.
FAC8:  88            445     DEY
FAC9:  B1 3A         446     LDA   (PCL),Y
FACB:  86 3B         447     STX   PCH
FACD:  85 3A         448     STA   PCL
FACF:  B0 F3         449     BCS   XJMP
FAD1:  A5 2D         450     LDA   RTNH
FAD3:  48            451     PHA
FAD4:  A5 2C         452     LDA   RTNL
FAD6:  48            453     PHA
FAD7:  20 0E FD      454     JSR   CROUT        DISPLAY USER REG
FADA:  A9 45         455     LDA   #ACC            CONTENTS WITH
FADC:  85 40         456     STA   A3L             LABELS
FADE:  A9 00         457     LDA   #ACC/256
FAE0:  85 41         458     STA   A3H
FAE2:  A2 FB         459     LDX   #$FB
FAE4:  A9 A0         460     LDA   #$A0
FAE6:  20 ED FD      461     JSR   COUT
FAE9:  BD 1E FA      462     LDA   RTBL-$FB,X
FAEC:  20 ED FD      463     JSR   COUT
FAEF:  A9 BD         464     LDA   #$BD
FAF1:  20 ED FD      465     JSR   COUT
FAF4:  B5 4A         466     LDA   ACC+5,X
FAF6:  20 DA FD      467     JSR   PRBYTE
FAF9:  E8            468     INX
FAFA:  30 E8         469     BMI   ROSP1
FAFC:  60            470     RTS
FAFD:  18            471     CLC
FAFE:  A0 01         472     LDY   #$01         BRANCH TAKEN,
FB00:  B1 3A         473     LDA   (PCL),Y      ADD LEN+2 TO PC
```

```
FD24:  10 F5     766          BPL   KEYIN        LOOP
FD26:  91 28     767          STA   (BASL),Y     REPLACE FLASHING SCREEN
FD28:  AD 00 C0  768          LDA   KBD          GET KEYCODE
FD2B:  2C 10 C0  769          BIT   KBDSTRB      CLR KEY STROBE
FD2E:  60        770          RTS
FD2F:  20 0C FD  771 ESC      JSR   RDKEY        GET KEYCODE
FD32:  20 2C FC  772          JSR   ESC1           HANDLE ESC FUNC.
FD35:  20 0C FD  773 RDCHAR   JSR   RDKEY        READ KEY
FD38:  C9 9B     774          CMP   #$9B         ESC?
FD3A:  F0 F3     775          BEQ   ESC            YES, DON'T RETURN
FD3C:  60        776          RTS
FD3D:  A5 32     777 NOTCR    LDA   INVFLG
FD3F:  48        778          PHA
FD40:  A9 FF     779          LDA   #$FF
FD42:  85 32     780          STA   INVFLG       ECHO USER LINE
FD44:  BD 00 02  781          LDA   IN,X           NON INVERSE
FD47:  20 ED FD  782          JSR   COUT
FD4A:  68        783          PLA
FD4B:  85 32     784          STA   INVFLG
FD4D:  BD 00 02  785          LDA   IN,X
FD50:  C9 88     786          CMP   #$88         CHECK FOR EDIT KEYS
FD52:  F0 1D     787          BEQ   BCKSPC         BS, CTRL-X.
FD54:  C9 98     788          CMP   #$98
FD56:  F0 0A     789          BEQ   CANCEL
FD58:  E0 F8     790          CPX   #$F8         MARGIN?
FD5A:  90 03     791          BCC   NOTCR1
FD5C:  20 3A FF  792          JSR   BELL           YES, SOUND BELL
FD5F:  E8        793 NOTCR1   INX                ADVANCE INPUT INDEX
FD60:  D0 13     794          BNE   NXTCHAR
FD62:  A9 DC     795 CANCEL   LDA   #$DC         BACKSLASH AFTER CANCELLED LIN
FD64:  20 ED FD  796          JSR   COUT
FD67:  20 8E FD  797 GETLNZ   JSR   CROUT        OUTPUT CR
FD6A:  A5 33     798 GETLN    LDA   PROMPT
FD6C:  20 ED FD  799          JSR   COUT         OUTPUT PROMPT CHAR
FD6F:  A2 01     800          LDX   #$01         INIT INPUT INDEX
FD71:  8A        801 BCKSPC   TXA                  WILL BACKSPACE TO 0
FD72:  F0 F3     802          BEQ   GETLNZ
FD74:  CA        803          DEX
FD75:  20 35 FD  804 NXTCHAR  JSR   RDCHAR
FD78:  C9 95     805          CMP   #PICK        USE SCREEN CHAR
FD7A:  D0 02     806          BNE   CAPTST         FOR CTRL-U
FD7C:  B1 28     807          LDA   (BASL),Y
FD7E:  C9 E0     808 CAPTST   CMP   #$E0
FD80:  90 02     809          BCC   ADDINP       CONVERT TO CAPS
FD82:  29 DF     810          AND   #$DF
FD84:  9D 00 02  811 ADDINP   STA   IN,X         ADD TO INPUT BUF
FD87:  C9 8D     812          CMP   #$8D
FD89:  D0 B2     813          BNE   NOTCR
FD8B:  20 9C FC  814          JSR   CLREOL       CLR TO EOL IF CR
FD8E:  A9 8D     815 CROUT    LDA   #$8D
FD90:  D0 5B     816          BNE   COUT
FD92:  A4 3D     817 PRA1     LDY   A1H          PRINT CR,A1 IN HEX
FD94:  A6 3C     818          LDX   A1L
FD96:  20 8E FD  819 PRYX2    JSR   CROUT
FD99:  20 40 F9  820          JSR   PRNTYX
FD9C:  A0 00     821          LDY   #$00
FD9E:  A9 AD     822          LDA   #$AD         PRINT '-'
FDA0:  4C ED FD  823          JMP   COUT
FDA3:  A5 3C     824 XAM8     LDA   A1L
FDA5:  09 07     825          ORA   #$07         SET TO FINISH AT
FDA7:  85 3E     826          STA   A2L            MOD 8=7
FDA9:  A5 3D     827          LDA   A1H
FDAB:  85 3F     828          STA   A2H
FDAD:  A5 3C     829 MOD8CHK  LDA   A1L
FDAF:  29 07     830          AND   #$07
FDB1:  D0 03     831          BNE   DATAOUT
FDB3:  20 92 FD  832 XAM      JSR   PRA1
FDB6:  A9 A0     833 DATAOUT  LDA   #$A0
FDB8:  20 ED FD  834          JSR   COUT         OUTPUT BLANK
FDBB:  B1 3C     835          LDA   (A1L),Y
FDBD:  20 DA FD  836          JSR   PRBYTE       OUTPUT BYTE IN HEX
FDC0:  20 BA FC  837          JSR   NXTA1
FDC3:  90 E8     838          BCC   MOD8CHK      CHECK IF TIME TO,
FDC5:  60        839 RTS4C    RTS                  PRINT ADDR
FDC6:  4A        840 XAMPM    LSR   A            DETERMINE IF MON
FDC7:  90 EA     841          BCC   XAM            MODE IS XAM
FDC9:  4A        842          LSR   A              ADD, OR SUB
FDCA:  4A        843          LSR   A
FDCB:  A5 3E     844          LDA   A2L
FDCD:  90 02     845          BCC   ADD
FDCF:  49 FF     846          EOR   #$FF         SUB: FORM 2'S COMPLEMENT
FDD1:  65 3C     847 ADD      ADC   A1L
FDD3:  48        848          PHA
FDD4:  A9 BD     849          LDA   #$BD
FDD6:  20 ED FD  850          JSR   COUT         PRINT '=', THEN RESULT
FDD9:  68        851          PLA
FDDA:  48        852 PRBYTE   PHA                PRINT BYTE AS 2 HEX
FDDB:  4A        853          LSR   A              DIGITS, DESTROYS A-REG
FDDC:  4A        854          LSR   A
FDDD:  4A        855          LSR   A
FDDE:  4A        856          LSR   A
FDDF:  20 E5 FD  857          JSR   PRHEXZ
FDE2:  68        858          PLA
FDE3:  29 0F     859 PRHEX    AND   #$0F         PRINT HEX DIG IN A-REG
FDE5:  09 B0     860 PRHEXZ   ORA   #$B0           LSB'S
FDE7:  C9 BA     861          CMP   #$BA
FDE9:  90 02     862          BCC   COUT
FDEB:  69 06     863          ADC   #$06
FDED:  6C 36 00  864 COUT     JMP   (CSWL)       VECTOR TO USER OUTPUT ROUTIN
FDF0:  C9 A0     865 COUT1    CMP   #$A0
FDF2:  90 02     866          BCC   COUTZ        DON'T OUTPUT CTRL'S INVERSE
FDF4:  25 32     867          AND   INVFLG       MASK WITH INVERSE FLAG
FDF6:  84 35     868 COUTZ    STY   YSAV1        SAV Y-REG
FDF8:  48        869          PHA                SAV A-REG
FDF9:  20 FD FB  870          JSR   VIDOUT       OUTPUT A-REG AS ASCII
FDFC:  68        871          PLA                RESTORE A-REG
FDFD:  A4 35     872          LDY   YSAV1          AND Y-REG
FDFF:  60        873          RTS                  THEN RETURN
FE00:  C6 34     874 BL1      DEC   YSAV
FE02:  F0 9F     875          BEQ   XAM8
FE04:  CA        876 BLANK    DEX                BLANK TO MON
FE05:  D0 16     877          BNE   SETMDZ       AFTER BLANK
FE07:  C9 BA     878          CMP   #$BA         DATA STORE MODE?
FE09:  D0 BB     879          BNE   XAMPM          NO, XAM, ADD OR SUB
FE0B:  85 31     880 STOR     STA   MODE         KEEP IN STORE MODE
FE0D:  A5 3E     881          LDA   A2L
FE0F:  91 40     882          STA   (A3L),Y      STORE AS LOW BYTE AS (A3)
FE11:  E6 40     883          INC   A3L
FE13:  D0 02     884          BNE   RTS5         INCR A3, RETURN
FE15:  E6 41     885          INC   A3H
FE17:  60        886 RTS5     RTS
FE18:  A4 34     887 SETMODE  LDY   YSAV         SAVE CONVERTED ':', '+',
FE1A:  B9 FF 01  888          LDA   IN-1,Y         '-', '.' AS MODE.
FE1D:  85 31     889 SETMDZ   STA   MODE
FE1F:  60        890          RTS
FE20:  A2 01     891 LT       LDX   #$01
FE22:  B5 3E     892 LT2      LDA   A2L,X        COPY A2 (2 BYTES) TO
FE24:  95 42     893          STA   A4L,X          A4 AND A5
FE26:  95 44     894          STA   A5L,X
FE28:  CA        895          DEX
FE29:  10 F7     896          BPL   LT2
FE2B:  60        897          RTS
FE2C:  B1 3C     898 MOVE     LDA   (A1L),Y      MOVE (A1 TO A2) TO
FE2E:  91 42     899          STA   (A4L),Y        (A4)
FE30:  20 B4 FC  900          JSR   NXTA4
FE33:  90 F7     901          BCC   MOVE
FE35:  60        902          RTS
FE36:  B1 3C     903 VFY      LDA   (A1L),Y      VERIFY (A1 TO A2) WITH
FE38:  D1 42     904          CMP   (A4L),Y        (A4)
FE3A:  F0 1C     905          BEQ   VFYOK
FE3C:  20 92 FD  906          JSR   PRA1
FE3F:  B1 3C     907          LDA   (A1L),Y
FE41:  20 DA FD  908          JSR   PRBYTE
FE44:  A9 A0     909          LDA   #$A0
FE46:  20 ED FD  910          JSR   COUT
```

```
FC10: C6 24      620 BS      DEC  CH          DECREMENT CURSER H INDEX
FC12: 10 E8      621         BPL  RTS3        IF POS, OK. ELSE MOVE UP
FC14: A5 21      622         LDA  WNDWDTH     SET CH TO WNDWDTH-1
FC16: 85 24      623         STA  CH
FC18: C6 24      624         DEC  CH
FC1A: A5 22      625 UP      LDA  WNDTOP      (RIGHTMOST SCREEN POS)
FC1C: C5 25      626         CMP  CV          CURSER V INDEX
FC1E: B0 0B      627         BCS  RTS4
FC20: C6 25      628         DEC  CV          IF TOP LINE THEN RETURN
FC22: A5 25      629 VTAB    LDA  CV          DECR CURSER V-INDEX
FC24: 20 C1 FB   630 VTABZ   JSR  BASCALC     GENERATE BASE ADDR
FC27: 65 20      631         ADC  WNDLFT      ADD WINDOW LEFT INDEX
FC29: 85 28      632         STA  BASL        TO BASL
FC2B: 60         633 RTS4    RTS
FC2C: 49 C0      634 ESC1    EOR  #$C0        ESC?
FC2E: F0 28      635         BEQ  HOME        IF SO, DO HOME AND CLEAR
FC30: 69 FD      636         ADC  #$FD        ESC-A OR B CHECK
FC32: 90 CU      637         BCC  ADVANCE     A, ADVANCE
FC34: F0 DA      638         BEQ  BS          B, BACKSPACE
FC36: 69 FD      639         ADC  #$FD        ESC-C OR D CHECK
FC38: 90 2C      640         BCC  LF          C,DOWN
FC3A: F0 DE      641         BEQ  UP          D, GO UP
FC3C: 69 FD      642         ADC  #$FD        ESC-E OR F CHECK
FC3E: 90 5C      643         BCC  CLREOL      E, CLEAR TO END OF LINE
FC40: D0 E9      644         BNE  RTS4        NOT F, RETURN
FC42: A4 24      645 CLREOP  LDY  CH          CURSOR H TO Y INDEX
FC44: A5 25      646         LDA  CV          CURSOR V TO A-REGISTER
FC46: 48         647 CLEOP1  PHA              SAVE CURRENT LINE ON STK
FC47: 20 24 FC   648         JSR  VTABZ       CALC BASE ADDRESS
FC4A: 20 9E FC   649         JSR  CLEOLZ      CLEAR TO EOL, SET CARRY
FC4D: A0 00      650         LDY  #$00        CLEAR FROM H INDEX+#0 FOR REST
FC4F: 68         651         PLA              INCREMENT CURRENT LINE
FC50: 69 00      652         ADC  #$00        (CARRY IS SET)
FC52: C5 23      653         CMP  WNDBTM      DONE TO BOTTOM OF WINDOW?
FC54: 90 F0      654         BCC  CLEOP1      NO, KEEP CLEARING LINES
FC56: B0 CA      655         BCS  VTAB        YES, TAB TO CURRENT LINE
FC58: A5 22      656 HOME    LDA  WNDTOP      INIT CURSOR V
FC5A: 85 25      657         STA  CV          AND H-INDICES
FC5C: A0 00      658         LDY  #$00
FC5E: 84 24      659         STY  CH          THEN CLEAR TO END OF PAGE
FC60: F0 E4      660         BEQ  CLEOP1
FC62: A9 00      661 CR      LDA  #$00        CURSOR TO LEFT OF INDEX
FC64: 85 24      662         STA  CH          (RET CURSOR H=0)
FC66: E6 25      663 LF      INC  CV          INCR CURSOR V (DOWN 1 LINE)
FC68: A5 25      664         LDA  CV
FC6A: C5 23      665         CMP  WNDBTM      OFF SCREEN?
FC6C: 90 B0      666         BCC  VTABZ       NO, SET BASE ADDR
FC6E: C6 25      667         DEC  CV          DECR CURSOR V(BACK TO BOTTOM)
FC70: A5 22      668 SCROLL  LDA  WNDTOP      START AT TOP OF SCRL WNDW
FC72: 48         669         PHA
FC73: 20 24 FC   670         JSR  VTABZ       GENERATE BASE ADDRESS
FC76: A5 28      671 SCRL1   LDA  BASL        COPY BASL,H
FC78: 85 2A      672         STA  BAS2L       TO BAS2L,H
FC7A: A5 29      673         LDA  BASH
FC7C: 85 2B      674         STA  BAS2H
FC7E: A4 21      675         LDY  WNDWDTH     INIT Y TO RIGHTMOST INDEX
FC80: 88         676         DEY              OF SCROLLING WINDOW
FC81: 68         677         PLA
FC82: A0 01      678         LDY  #$01        INCR LINE NUMBER
FC84: C5 23      679         CMP  WNDBTM      DONE?
FC86: B0 0D      680         BCS  SCRL3       YES, FINISH
FC88: 48         681         PHA
FC89: 20 24 FC   682         JSR  VTABZ       FORM BASL,H (BASE ADDR)
FC8C: B1 28      683 SCRL2   LDA  (BASL),Y    MOVE A CHR UP ON LINE
FC8E: 91 2A      684         STA  (BAS2L),Y
FC90: 88         685         DEY              NEXT CHAR OF LINE
FC91: 10 F9      686         BPL  SCRL2
FC93: 30 E1      687         BMI  SCRL1       NEXT LINE
FC95: A0 00      688         LDY  #$00        CLEAR BOTTOM LINE
FC97: 20 9E FC   689 SCRL3   JSR  CLEOLZ      GET BASE ADDR FOR BOTTOM LINE
FC9A: B0 86      690         BCS  VTAB        CARRY IS SET
FC9C: A4 24      691 CLREOL  LDY  CH          CURSOR H INDEX
FC9E: A9 A0      692 CLEOL2  LDA  #$A0
FCA0: 91 28      693         STA  (BASL),Y
FCA2: C8         694         INY              INCR INDEX
FCA3: C4 21      695         CPY  WNDWDTH     STORE BLANKS FROM 'HERE'
FCA5: 90 F9      696         BCC  CLEOL2      TO END OF LINES (WNDWDTH)
FCA7: 60         697         RTS
FCA8: 38         698 WAIT    SEC              1.0204 USEC
FCA9: 48         699 WAIT2   PHA              (13+2712*A+512*A*A)
FCAA: E9 01      700 WAIT3   SBC  #$01
FCAC: D0 FC      701         BNE  WAIT3
FCAE: 68         702         PLA
FCAF: E9 01      703         SBC  #$01
FCB1: D0 F6      704         BNE  WAIT2
FCB3: 60         705         RTS
FCB4: E0 42      706 NXTA4   INC  A4L         INCR 2-BYTE A4
FCB6: D0 02      707         BNE  NXTA1       AND A1
FCB8: E6 43      708         INC  A4H
FCBA: A5 3C      709 NXTA1   LDA  A1L         INCR 2-BYTE A1.
FCBC: C5 3E      710         CMP  A2L
FCBE: A5 3D      711         LDA  A1H         AND COMPARE TO A2
FCC0: E5 3F      712         SBC  A2H
FCC2: E6 3C      713         INC  A1L         (CARRY SET IF >=)
FCC4: D0 02      714         BNE  RTS4B
FCC6: E6 3D      715         INC  A1H
FCC8: 60         716 RTS4B   RTS
FCC9: A0 4B      717 HEADR   LDY  #$4B        WRITE A*256 'LONG 1'
FCCB: 20 DB FC   718         JSR  ZERDLY      (HALF CYCLES
FCCE: D0 F9      719         BNE  HEADR       (650 USEC EACH )
FCD0: 09 FE      720         ORA  #$FE
FCD2: B0 F5      721         BCS  HEADR       THEN A 'SHORT 0'
FCD4: A0 21      722         LDY  #$21        (400 USEC)
FCD6: 20 DB FC   723 WR8IT   JSR  ZERDLY      WRITE TWO HALF CYCLES
FCD9: C8         724         INY              OF 250 USEC ('0')
FCDA: D0 FB      725         BNE  ZERDLY      OR 500 USEC ('1')
FCDC: 88         726 ZERDLY  DEY
FCDD: F0 03      727         BEQ  WRTAPE
FCDF: 0A         728         ASL              Y IS COUNT FOR
FCE0: B0 F8      729         BCS  ZERDLY      TIMING LOOP
FCE2: 88         730 ONEDLY  DEY
FCE3: D0 FD      731         BNE  ONEDLY
FCE5: AC 20 C0   732 WRTAPE  LDY  TAPEOUT
FCE8: 60         733         RTS
FCE9: A0 32      734         LDY  #$32
FCEB: A9 2C      735 RDBYTE  LDX  #$08        8 BITS TO READ
FCED: 48         736         PHA              READ TWO TRANSITIONS
FCEE: 20 FA FC   737 RDBYT2  JSR  RD2BIT      (FIND EDGE)
FCF1: 68         738         PLA
FCF2: 69         739         ADC  A
FCF3: 2A         740         ROL              NEXT BIT
FCF4: A0 3A      741         LDY  #$3A        COUNT FOR SAMPLES
FCF6: CA         742         DEX
FCF7: D0 F5      743         BNE  RDBYT2
FCF9: 60         744         RTS
FCFA: 20 FD FC   745 RD2BIT  JSR  RDBIT
FCFD: 08         746         PHP              DECR Y UNTIL
FCFE: AC 60 C0   747 RDBIT   LDY  TAPEIN      TAPE TRANSITION
FD01: 45 2F      748         EOR  LASTIN
FD03: 10 F8      749         BPL  RDBIT
FD05: 45 2F      750         EOR  LASTIN
FD07: 05 2F      751         STA  LASTIN
FD09: C0 00      752         CPY  #$00        SET CARRY ON Y-REG.
FD0B: 28         753         PLP
FD0C: A4 24      754 RDKEY   LDY  CH
FD0E: B1 28      755         LDA  (BASL),Y    SET SCREEN TO FLASH
FD10: 48         756         PHA
FD11: 29 3F      757         AND  #$3F
FD13: 09 40      758         ORA  #$40
FD15: 91 28      759         STA  (BASL),Y
FD17: 08         760         PHP
FD18: 0C 38 00   761 KEYIN   JMP  (KSWL)      GO TO USER KEY-IN
FD1B: E6 4E      762         INC  RNDL
FD1D: D0 02      763         BNE  KEYIN2      INCR RND NUMBER
FD1F: E6 4F      764         INC  RNDH
FD21: 2C 00 C0   765 KEYIN2  BIT  KBD         KEY DOWN?
```

```
FE49: A9 A8     911          LDA  #$A8
FE4B: 20 ED FD  912          JSR  COUT
FE4E: B1 42     913          LDA  (A4L),Y
FE50: 20 DA FD  914          JSR  PRBYTE
FE53: A9 A9     915          LDA  #$A9
FE55: 20 ED FD  916          JSR  COUT
FE58: 20 34 FC  917 VFYOK    JSR  NXTA4
FE5B: 90 D9     918          BCC  VFY
FE5D: 60        919          RTS
FE5E: 20 75 FE  920 LIST     JSR  A1PC          MOVE A1 (2 BYTES) TO
FE61: A9 14     921          LDA  #$14            PC IF SPEC'D AND
FE63: 48        922 LIST2    PHA                  DISSEMBLE 20 INSTRS
FE64: 20 D0 F8  923          JSR  INSTDSP
FE67: 20 53 F9  924          JSR  PCADJ         ADJUST PC EACH INSTR
FE6A: 85 3A     925          STA  PCL
FE6C: 84 3B     926          STY  PCH
FE6E: 68        927          PLA
FE6F: 38        928          SEC
FE70: E9 01     929          SBC  #$01          NEXT OF 20 INSTRS
FE72: D0 EF     930          BNE  LIST2
FE74: 60        931          RTS
FE75: 8A        932 A1PC     TXA                IF USER SPEC'D ADR
FE76: F0 07     933          BEQ  A1PCRTS         COPY FROM A1 TO PC
FE78: B5 3C     934 A1PCLP   LDA  A1L,X
FE7A: 95 3A     935          STA  PCL,X
FE7C: CA        936          DEX
FE7D: 10 F9     937          BPL  A1PCLP
FE7F: 60        938 A1PCRTS  RTS
FE80: A0 3F     939 SETINV   LDY  #$3F          SET FOR INVERSE VID
FE82: D0 02     940          BNE  SETIFLG         VIA COUT1
FE84: A0 FF     941 SETNORM  LDY  #$FF          SET FOR NORMAL VID
FE86: 84 32     942 SETIFLG  STY  INVFLG
FE88: 60        943          RTS
FE89: A9 00     944 SETKBD   LDA  #$00          SIMULATE PORT #0 INPUT
FE8B: 85 3E     945 INPORT   STA  A2L               SPECIFIED (KEYIN ROUTINE)
FE8D: A2 38     946 INPRT    LDX  #KSWL
FE8F: A0 1B     947          LDY  #KEYIN
FE91: D0 08     948          BNE  IOPRT
FE93: A9 00     949 SETVID   LDA  #$00          SIMULATE PORT #0 OUTPUT
FE95: 85 3E     950 OUTPORT  STA  A2L               SPECIFIED (COUT1 ROUTINE)
FE97: A2 36     951 OUTPRT   LDX  #CSWL
FE99: A0 F0     952          LDY  #COUT1
FE9B: A5 3E     953 IOPRT    LDA  A2L           SET RAM IN/OUT VECTORS
FE9D: 29 0F     954          AND  #$0F
FE9F: F0 06     955          BEQ  IOPRT1
FEA1: 09 C0     956          ORA  #IOADR/256
FEA3: A0 00     957          LDY  #$00
FEA5: F0 02     958          BEQ  IOPRT2
FEA7: A9 FD     959 IOPRT1   LDA  #COUT1/256
FEA9: 94 00     960 IOPRT2   STY  LOC0,X
FEAB: 95 01     961          STA  LOC1,X
FEAD: 60        962          RTS
FEAE: EA        963          NOP
FEAF: EA        964          NOP
FEB0: 4C 00 E0  965 XBASIC   JMP  BASIC         TO BASIC WITH SCRATCH
FEB3: 4C 03 E0  966 BASCONT  JMP  BASIC2        CONTINUE BASIC
FEB6: 20 75 FE  967 GO       JSR  A1PC          ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEB9: 20 3F FF  968          JSR  RESTORE       RESTORE META REGS
FEBC: 6C 3A 00  969          JMP  (PCL)         GO TO USER SUBR
FEBF: 4C D7 FA  970 REGZ     JMP  REGDSP        TO REG DISPLAY
FEC2: C6 34     971 TRACE    DEC  YSAV
FEC4: 20 75 FE  972 STEPZ    JSR  A1PC          ADR TO PC IF SPEC'D
FEC7: 4C 43 FA  973          JMP  STEP          TAKE ONE STEP
FECA: 4C F8 03  974 USR      JMP  USRADR        TO USR SUBR AT USRADR
FECD: A9 40     975 WRITE    LDA  #$40
FECF: 20 C9 FC  976          JSR  HEADR         WRITE 10-SEC HEADER
FED2: A0 27     977          LDY  #$27
FED4: A2 00     978 WR1      LDX  #$00
FED6: 41 3C     979          EOR  (A1L,X)
FED8: 48        980          PHA
FED9: A1 3C     981          LDA  (A1L,X)
```



```
FEDB: 20 ED FD  982          JSR  WRBYTE
FEDE: 20 BA FC  983          JSR  NXTA1
FEE1: A0 1D     984          LDY  #$1D
FEE3: 68        985          PLA
FEE4: 90 EE     986          BCC  WR1
FEE6: A0 22     987          LDY  #$22
FEE8: 20 ED FE  988          JSR  WRBYTE
FEEB: F0 4D     989          BEQ  BELL
FEED: A2 10     990 WRBYTE   LDX  #$10
FEEF: 0A        991 WRBYT2   ASL  A
FEF0: 20 D6 FC  992          JSR  WRBIT
FEF3: D0 FA     993          BNE  WRBYT2
FEF5: 60        994          RTS
FEF6: 20 00 FE  995 CRMON    JSR  BL1           HANDLE CR AS BLANK
FEF9: 68        996                               THEN POP STACK
FEFA: 68        997          PLA                  AND RTN TO MON
FEFB: D0 6C     998          BNE  MONZ
FEFD: 20 FA FC  999 READ     JSR  RD2BIT        FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF00: A9 16     1000         LDA  #$16
FF02: 20 C9 FC  1001         JSR  HEADR         DELAY 3.5 SECONDS
FF05: 85 2E     1002         STA  CHKSUM        INIT CHKSUM=$FF
FF07: 20 FA FC  1003         JSR  RD2BIT        FIND TAPEIN EDGE
FF0A: A0 24     1004 RD2     LDY  #$24          LOOK FOR SYNC BIT
FF0C: 20 FD FC  1005         JSR  RDBIT           (SHORT 0)
FF0F: B0 F9     1006         BCS  RD2             LOOP UNTIL FOUND
FF11: 20 FD FC  1007         JSR  RDBIT         SKIP SECOND SYNC H-CYCLE
FF14: A0 3B     1008         LDY  #$3B          INDEX FOR 0/1 TEST
FF16: 20 EC FC  1009 RD3     JSR  RDBYTE        READ A BYTE
FF19: 81 3C     1010         STA  (A1L,X)       STORE AT (A1)
FF1B: 45 2E     1011         EOR  CHKSUM
FF1D: 85 2E     1012         STA  CHKSUM        UPDATE RUNNING CHKSUM
FF1F: 20 BA FC  1013         JSR  NXTA1         INCR A1, COMPARE TO A2
FF22: A0 35     1014         LDY  #$35          COMPENSATE 0/1 INDEX
FF24: 90 F0     1015         BCC  RD3           LOOP UNTIL DONE
FF26: 20 EC FC  1016         JSR  RDBYTE        READ CHKSUM BYTE
FF29: C5 2E     1017         CMP  CHKSUM
FF2B: F0 0D     1018         BEQ  BELL          GOOD, SOUND BELL AND RETURN
FF2D: A9 C5     1019 PRERR   LDA  #$C5
FF2F: 20 ED FD  1020         JSR  COUT          PRINT "ERR", THEN BELL
FF32: A9 D2     1021         LDA  #$D2
FF34: 20 ED FD  1022         JSR  COUT
FF37: 20 ED FD  1023         JSR  COUT
FF3A: A9 87     1024 BELL    LDA  #$87          OUTPUT BELL AND RETURN
FF3C: 4C ED FD  1025         JMP  COUT
FF3F: A5 48     1026 RESTORE LDA  STATUS        RESTORE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF41: 48        1027         PHA                  USED BY DEBUG SOFTWARE
FF42: A5 45     1028         LDA  ACC
FF44: A6 46     1029 RESTR1  LDX  XREG
FF46: A4 47     1030         LDY  YREG
FF48: 28        1031         PLP
FF49: 60        1032         RTS
FF4A: 85 45     1033 SAVE    STA  ACC           SAVE 6502 REG CONTENTS
FF4C: 86 46     1034 SAV1    STX  XREG
FF4E: 84 47     1035         STY  YREG
FF50: 08        1036         PHP
FF51: 68        1037         PLA
FF52: 85 48     1038         STA  STATUS
FF54: BA        1039         TSX
FF55: 86 49     1040         STX  SPNT
FF57: D8        1041         CLD
FF58: 60        1042         RTS
FF59: 20 84 FE  1043 RESET   JSR  SETNORM       SET SCREEN MODE
FF5C: 20 2F FB  1044         JSR  INIT            AND INIT KBD/SCREEN
FF5F: 20 93 FE  1045         JSR  SETVID          AS I/O DEV'S
FF62: 20 89 FE  1046         JSR  SETKBD
FF65: D8        1047 MON     CLD                MUST SET HEX MODE!
FF66: 20 3A FF  1048         JSR  BELL
FF69: A9 AA     1049 MONZ    LDA  #$AA          '*' PROMPT FOR MON
FF6B: 85 33     1050         STA  PROMPT
FF6D: 20 67 FD  1051         JSR  GETLNZ        READ A LINE
FF70: 20 C7 FF  1052         JSR  ZMODE         CLEAR MON MODE, SCAN IDX
FF73: 20 A7 FF  1053 NXTITM  JSR  GETNUM        GET ITEM, NON-HEX
FF76: 84 34     1054         STY  YSAV            CHAR IN A-REG
```

FF4C SAV1
FF73 NXTITM
FF98 NXTBAS
FFBE TOSUB

SYMBOL TABLE
(ALPHABETICAL ORDER)

003D A1H
FE7F A1PCRTS
0040 A3L
0044 A5L
FBF4 ADVANCE
002A BAS2L
0029 BASH
FD71 BCKSPC
FE00 BL1
FC10 BS
F9BA CHAR2
0024 CH
C059 CLRAN0
FC9C CLREOL
F83C CLRSC3
FDED COUT
FC62 CR
0025 CV
F8A5 ERR
FB97 ESCOLD
F9A6 FMT2
0026 GBASL
FD6A GETLN
FCC9 HEADR
F819 HLINE
0200 IN
F882 INSDS1
C000 IOADR
03FE IRQLOC
C000 KBD
0038 KSWL
0400 LINE1
0000 LOC0
FE22 LT2
C053 MIXSET
F8C2 MNNDX2
FF69 MONZ
FA81 NEWMON
FD5F NOTCR1
FF98 NXTBAS
FD75 NXTCHAR
FA59 OLDBRK
FE97 OUTPRT
F956 PCADJ3
0095 PICK
F910 PRADR1
F930 PRADR5
FDDA PRBYTE
FDE3 PRHEX
F8DB PRNTBL
0033 PROMPT
03F4 PWREDUP
FF16 RD3
FD35 RDCHAR
FAD7 REGDSP
FF3F RESTORE
004F RNDH
F87F RTMSKZ
F961 RTS2
003C A1L
003F A2H
0043 A4H
0045 ACC
03F5 AMPERV
FBC1 BASCALC
E000 BASIC
FBD9 BELL1
FE04 BLANK
FD62 CANCEL
002E CHKSUM
FCA0 CLEOL2
C05B CLRAN1
FC42 CLREOP
F832 CLRSCR
FDF0 COUT1
FEF6 CRMON
FDB6 DATAOUT
FC2C ESC1
FD2F ESC
002E FORMAT
F856 GBCALC
FFA7 GETNUM
C057 HIRES
FC58 HOME
FB2F INIT
F88C INSDS2
FEA7 IOPRT1
FA40 IRQ
FD1B KEYIN
002F LASTIN
FE5E LIST
0001 LOC1
FE20 LT
F9C0 MNEML
F8C9 MNNDX3
FF65 MON
03FB NMI
FB94 NOWAIT
FF90 NXTBIT
FFAD NXTCHR
FF59 OLDRST
C064 PADDL0
F95C PCADJ4
F80E PLOT1
F914 PRADR2
F94A PRBL2
FB1E PREAD
FDE5 PRHEXZ
F8D4 PRNTOP
FD96 PRYX2
FAA6 PWRUP
FCFD RDBIT
FD0C RDKEY
FEBF REGZ
FF44 RESTR1
004E RNDL
F831 RTS1
FBFC RTS3
FE78 A1PCLP
003E A2L
0042 A4L
FD84 ADDINP
FB60 APPLEII
FBD0 BASCLC2
E003 BASIC2
FBE4 BELL2
FA4C BREAK
FD7E CAPTST
FF7A CHRSRCH
FC9E CLEOLZ
C05D CLRAN2
CFFF CLRROM
F836 CLRTOP
FDF6 COUTZ
0037 CSWH
FF8A DIG
FBA5 ESCNEW
FA9B FIXSEV
F847 GBASCALC
F8A9 GETFMT
FEB6 GO
C055 HISCR
F89B IEVEN
FE8B INPORT
F8D0 INSTDSP
FEA9 IOPRT2
C010 KBDSTRB
FD21 KEYIN2
002F LENGTH
FE63 LIST2
C056 LORES
002E MASK
FA00 MNEMR
FDAD MOD8CHK
FE2C MOVE
FAA3 NOFIX
FCBA NXTA1
FFA2 NXTBS2
F8F5 NXTCOL
FCE2 ONEDLY
F954 PCADJ2
003B PCH
F800 PLOT
F926 PRADR3
F94C PRBL3
FB25 PREAD2
F8F9 PRMN2
F944 PRNTX
C070 PTRIG
FCFA RD2BIT
FCEE RDBYT2
FAE4 RDSP1
F938 RELADR
FADA RGDSP1
FB19 RTBL
FBEF RTS2B
FCC8 RTS4B
FE75 A1PC
0041 A3H
0045 A5H
FDD1 ADD
002B BAS2H
FEB3 BASCONT
0028 BASL
FF3A BELL
03F0 BRKV
F9B4 CHAR1
FFCC CHRTBL
FC46 CLEOP1
C05F CLRAN3
F838 CLRSC2
0030 COLOR
FD8E CROUT
0036 CSWL
FB02 DISKID
FB9B ESCNOW
F962 FMT1
0027 GBASH
FD67 GETLNZ
002C H2
F81C HLINE1
FA6F INITAN
FE8D INPRT
0032 INVFLG
FE9B IOPRT
FB88 KBDWAIT
0039 KSWH
FC66 LF
002C LMNEM
C054 LOWSCR
C052 MIXCLR
F8BE MNNDX1
0031 MODE
07F8 MSLOT
FD3D NOTCR
FCB4 NXTA4
FAC7 NXTBYT
FF73 NXTITM
FE95 OUTPORT
F953 PCADJ
003A PCL
FD92 PRA1
F92A PRADR4
F948 PRBLNK
FF2D PRERR
F941 PRNTAX
F940 PRNTYX
FAFD PWRCON
FF0A RD2
FCEC RDBYTE
FEFD READ
FA62 RESET
002D RMNEM
F80C RTMASK
FB2E RTS2D
FDC5 RTS4C
FE17 RTS5
FC2B RTS4
FC76 SCRL1
F879 SCRN2
C05C SETAN2
FE86 SETIFLG
FE18 SETMODE
FB6F SETPWRC
002F SIGN
0049 SPNT
FE0B STOR
C060 TAPEIN
FEC2 TRACE
FECA USR
FE58 VFYOK
F828 VLINE
FCA8 WAIT
0022 WNDTOP
FEEF WRBYT2
FDA3 XAMB
FB11 XLTBL
0034 YSAV
FC8C SCRL2
FC70 SCROLL
C05E SETAN3
FE80 SETINV
FE84 SETNORM
FB39 SETTXT
FABA SLOOP
0048 STATUS
FBF0 STORADV
C020 TAPEOUT
C050 TXTCLR
03F8 USRADR
FBFD VIDOUT
FC24 VTABZ
FCAA WAIT3
0021 WNDWDTH
FEED WRBYTE
FDC6 XAMPM
0046 XREG
FCDB ZERDLY
FF4C SAV1
FC95 SCRL3
C058 SETAN0
F864 SETCOL
FE89 SETKBD
FAA9 SETPG3
FE93 SETVID
03F2 SOFTEV
FEC4 STEPZ
FFE3 SUBTBL
FB09 TITLE
C051 TXTSET
002D V2
FB78 VIDWAIT
FC22 VTAB
0023 WNDBTM
FED4 WR1

SYMBOL TABLE
(NUMERICAL ORDER)

0000 LOCO
0022 WNDTOP
0026 GBASL
002A BAS2L
002D V2
002E FORMAT
0030 COLOR
0034 YSAV
0038 KSWL
003C A1L
0040 A3L
0044 A5L
0047 YREG
004F RNDH
03F2 SOFTEV
03FB NMI
C000 IOADR
C030 SPKR
C053 MIXSET
C057 HIRES
C05B CLRAN1
C05F CLRAN3
CFFF CLRROM
F80C RTMASK
F826 VLINEZ
F836 CLRTOP
F856 GBCALC
F87F RTMSKZ
F8A5 ERR
F8C9 MNNDX3
F8F5 NXTCOL
F926 PRADR3
F940 PRNTYX
F94A PRBL2
F956 PCADJ3
F9A6 FMT2
FA00 MNEMR
FA62 RESET
FAA3 NOFIX
FABA SLOOP
FAE4 RDSP1
FB11 XLTBL
FB2E RTS2D
FB4B SETWND
FB6F SETPWRC
FB97 ESCOLD
FBD0 BASCLC2
FBF0 STORADV
FC10 BS
FC2B RTS4
FC58 HOME
FC76 SCRL1
FC9E CLEOLZ
FCAA WAIT3
FCC9 HEADR
FCE5 WRTAPE
FCFD RDBIT
FD2F ESC
FD62 CANCEL
0001 LOC1
0023 WNDBTM
0027 GBASH
002B BAS2H
002D RMNEM
002F LASTIN
0031 MODE
0035 YSAV1
0039 KSWH
003D A1H
0041 A3H
0045 A5H
0048 STATUS
0095 PICK
03F4 PWREDUP
03FE IRQLOC
C000 KBD
C050 TXTCLR
C054 LOWSCR
C058 SETANO
C05C SETAN2
C060 TAPEIN
E000 BASIC
F80E PLOT1
F828 VLINE
F838 CLRSC2
F864 SETCOL
F882 INSDS1
F8A9 GETFMT
F8D0 INSTDSP
F8F9 PRMN2
F92A PRADR4
F941 PRNTAX
F94C PRBL3
F95C PCADJ4
F9B4 CHAR1
FA40 IRQ
FA6F INITAN
FAA6 PWRUP
FAC7 NXTBYT
FAFD PWRCON
FB19 RTBL
FB2F INIT
FB5B TABV
FB78 VIDWAIT
FB9B ESCNOW
FBD9 BELL1
FBF4 ADVANCE
FC1A UP
FC2C ESC1
FC62 CR
FC8C SCRL2
FCA0 CLEOL2
FCB4 NXTA4
FCD6 WRBIT
FCEC RDBYTE
FD0C RDKEY
FD35 RDCHAR
FD67 GETLNZ
0020 WNDLFT
0024 CH
0028 BASL
002C H2
002E MASK
002F LENGTH
0032 INVFLG
0036 CSWL
003A PCL
003E A2L
0042 A4L
0045 ACC
0049 SPNT
0200 IN
03F5 AMPERV
0400 LINE1
C010 KBDSTRB
C051 TXTSET
C055 HISCR
C059 CLRAN0
C05D CLRAN2
C064 PADDL0
E003 BASIC2
F819 HLINE
F831 RTS1
F83C CLRSC3
F871 SCRN
F88C INSDS2
F8BE MNNDX1
F8D4 PRNTOP
F910 PRADR1
F930 PRADR5
F944 PRNTX
F953 PCADJ
F961 RTS2
F9BA CHAR2
FA4C BREAK
FA81 NEWMON
FAA9 SETPG3
FAD7 REGDSP
FB02 DISKID
FB1E PREAD
FB39 SETTXT
FB60 APPLEII
FB88 KBDWAIT
FBA5 ESCNEW
FBE4 BELL2
FBFC RTS3
FC22 VTAB
FC42 CLREOP
FC66 LF
FC95 SCRL3
FCA8 WAIT
FCBA NXTA1
FCDB ZERDLY
FCEE RDBYT2
FD1B KEYIN
FD3D NOTCR
FD6A GETLN
0021 WNDWDTH
0025 CV
0029 BASH
002C LMNEM
002E CHKSUM
002F SIGN
0033 PROMPT
0037 CSWH
003B PCH
003F A2H
0043 A4H
0046 XREG
004E RNDL
03F0 BRKV
03F8 USRADR
07F8 MSLOT
C020 TAPEOUT
C052 MIXCLR
C056 LORES
C05A SETAN1
C05E SETAN3
C070 PTRIG
F800 PLOT
F81C HLINE1
F832 CLRSCR
F847 GBASCALC
F879 SCRN2
F89B IEVEN
F8C2 MNNDX2
F8DB PRNTBL
F914 PRADR2
F938 RELADR
F948 PRBLNK
F954 PCADJ2
F962 FMT1
F9C0 MNEML
FA59 OLDBRK
FA9B FIXSEV
FAAB SETPLP
FADA RGDSP1
FB09 TITLE
FB25 PREAD2
FB40 SETGR
FB65 STITLE
FB94 NOWAIT
FBC1 BASCALC
FBEF RTS2B
FBFD VIDOUT
FC24 VTABZ
FC46 CLEOP1
FC70 SCROLL
FC9C CLREOL
FCA9 WAIT2
FCC8 RTS4B
FCE2 ONEDLY
FCFA RD2BIT
FD21 KEYIN2
FD5F NOTCR1
FD71 BCKSPC
FD75 NXTCHAR
FD92 PRA1
FDB3 XAM
FDD1 ADD
FDED COUT
FE04 BLANK
FE1D SETMDZ
FE36 VFY
FE75 A1PC
FE84 SETNORM
FE8D INPRT
FE9B IOPRT
FEB3 BASCONT
FEC4 STEPZ
FEED WRBYTE
FF0A RD2
FF3F RESTORE
FF59 OLDRST
FF7A CHRSRCH
FFA2 NXTDS2
FFC7 ZMODE
FD7E CAPTST
FD96 PRYX2
FDB6 DATAOUT
FDDA PRBYTE
FDF0 COUT1
FE0B STOR
FE20 LT
FE58 VFYOK
FE78 A1PCLP
FE86 SETIFLG
FE93 SETVID
FEA7 IOPRT1
FEB6 GO
FECA USR
FEEF WRBYT2
FF16 RD3
FF44 RESTR1
FF65 MON
FF8A DIG
FFA7 GETNUM
FFCC CHRTBL
FD84 ADDINP
FDA3 XAM8
FDC5 RTS4C
FDE3 PRHEX
FDF6 COUTZ
FE17 RTS5
FE22 LT2
FE5E LIST
FE7F A1PCRTS
FE89 SETKBD
FE95 OUTPORT
FEA9 IOPRT2
FEBF REGZ
FECD WRITE
FEF6 CRMON
FF2D PRERR
FF4A SAVE
FF69 MONZ
FF90 NXTBIT
FFAD NXTCHR
FFE3 SUBTBL
FD8E CROUT
FDAD MOD8CHK
FDC6 XAMPM
FDE5 PRHEXZ
FE00 BL1
FE18 SETMODE
FE2C MOVE
FE63 LIST2
FE80 SETINV
FE8B INPORT
FE97 OUTPRT
FEB0 XBASIC
FEC2 TRACE
FED4 WR1
FEFD READ
FF3A BELL

Distributed under the Creative Commons License on page 4

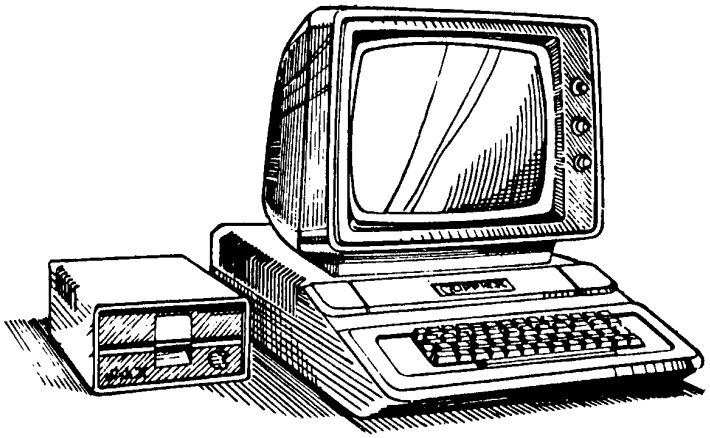
```
FECD WRITE
FDB3 XAM
0047 YREG
FFC7 ZMODE
FF4A SAVE
F871 SCRN
C05A SETAN1
F840 SETGR
FE1D SETMDZ
FAAB SETPLP
F84B SETWND
C030 SPKR
F865 STITLE
F85B TABV
FFBE TOSUB
FC1A UP
FE36 VFY
F826 VLINEZ
FCA9 WAIT2
0020 WNDLFT
FCD6 WRBIT
FCE5 WRTAPE
FEB0 XBASIC
0035 YSAV1

SYMBOL TABLE SIZE
2589   BYTES USED
2531   BYTES REMAINING

SLIST 4A
```

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX B
BILL OF MATERIALS



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 0123P1 SINGLE LEVEL BILLS

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM:
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC:

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION / REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S R C	T Y P	S P R	A B C	P L N	UM	E
000	606-0116D	0	DWG, ASSY A2 STD RFI	EX		*	7		*	*	EA	
003	333-4116	? 2	IC, 16K RAM MRKD "APPLE" (NO BURN)	RL		P	1	P	A	P	EA	
004	101-4016	0	RES 1/4W 5% 1 MEG OHM K13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
005	820-0044	A	PCB, A2 MAIN LOGIC BD RFI	RP		P	1	P	A	P	EA	
006	101-4100	0	RES 1/4W 5% 10 OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
007	101-4101	0	RES 1/4W 5% 100 OHM 4-J13,K14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
008	101-4102	0	RES 1/4W 5% 1K OHM F14,A13,B3,2-D1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
009	101-4123	0	RES 1/4W 5% 12K OHM 5-K13,B3	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
010	101-4151	0	RES 1/4W 5% 150 OHM A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
011	101-4152	0	RES 1/4W 5% 1.5K OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
012	101-4202	0	RES 1/4W 5% 2K OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
013	101-4225	0	RES 1/4W 5% 2.2 MEG OHM A13	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
014	101-4270	0	RES 1/4W 5% 27 OHM B14,K14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
015	101-4272	0	RES 1/4W 5% 2.7K OHM J14	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
016	101-4331	0	RES 1/4W 5% 330 OHM A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
017	101-4335	0	RES 1/4W 5% 3.3 MEG OHM B3	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
018	101-4470	0	RES 1/4W 5% 47 OHM 2-A1	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	
019	101-4472	0	RES 1/4W 5% 4.7K OHM	RP		P	1	P	B	P	EA	

PRINTED 25-JAN-81 02:33

APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381

S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	STSAP RYPBL CPRCN	UM	EXTE QTY PE
			F13					
020	101-4473	0	RES 1/4W 5% 47K OHM	RP	P 1	P B P	EA	1
			J13					
021	109-0001	0	POT, TRIM 200 OHMS 20%	RP	P 1	P B P	EA	1
			J14					
022	111-0001	0	RES ARRAY 7 X 1K OHMS	RP	P 1	P B P	EA	3
			K13,E11,D11					
023	131-5701	0	CAP, 47PF 5% N470 50V	RP	P 1	P B P	EA	1
			H14					
024	136-2401	A	CAP, .022UF 10% X7R 50V	RP	P 1	P B P	EA	4
			4-H13					
025	135-9101	A	CAP,.1UF +80-20% Z5U/Y5V 50V	RP	P 1	P A P	EA	45
026	138-0001	M 0	CAP,VARIABLE CERAMIC TRIMMER 5-50PF	RP	P 1	P B P	EA	1
			F14					
027	151-5501	B	CHOKE, 27UH 10%	RP	P 1	P A P	EA	1
			H14					
029	301-0166	0	IC, 74166	RI	P 1	P B P	EA	1
			A3					
030	301-9334	0	IC, 9334	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	1
			F14					
031	305-0000	0	IC, 74LS00N	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	1
			A2					
032	305-0002	0	IC, 74LS02N	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	4
			B13,B14,A12,A14					
033	305-0004	0	IC, 74LS04	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	1
			C11					
034	305-0008	0	IC, 74LS08	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	2
			B11,H1					
035	305-0011	0	IC, 74LS11	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	1
			B12					
036	305-0020	0	IC, 74LS20	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	1
			D2					
037	305-0032	0	IC, 74LS32	RI	P 1	P A P	EA	1

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 SINGLE LEVEL BILLS OF M

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	E R C	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S R C	T Y P	S P R	A B C	P L N	UM	EXTENDED QTY PER
038	305-0051	0	IC, 74LS51 C14	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
039	305-0074	0	IC, 74LS74 C13	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	3
040	305-0138	0	IC, 74LS138 B10,J13,A11	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
041	305-0139	0	IC, 74LS139 H2,H12,F12,F13	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
042	305-0151	0	IC, 74LS151 F2	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
043	305-0153	0	IC, 74LS153 A9	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
044	305-0161	0	IC, 74LS161 E11,E12,E13,C1	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	4
[illegible]	305-0174	0	IC, 74LS174 D11,D12,D13,D14	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	2
046	305-0194	0	IC, 74LS194 B5,B8	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	3
047	305-0251	0	IC, 74LS251 B4,B9,A10	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
048	305-0257	0	IC, 74LS257 H14	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	5
049	305-0283	0	IC, 74LS283 B6,B7,J1,C12,A8	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
050	307-0086	0	IC, 74S86 E14	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
051	307-0175	0	IC, 74S175 B2	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
052	307-0195	0	IC, 74S195 OR 93S00 B1	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
053	315-8304	0	IC, 8304B 8-BIT TRI-STATE C2	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
054	315-0897	? 0	H10	RI		P	1	P	A	P	EA	3

PRINTED 25-JAN-81 02:33 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	STRC	TYPP	SBRC	APLN	UM	EXTEND QTY PER
			IC, 8T97 H3,H4,H5								
055	329-0555	0	IC, 555 TIMER B3,A13	RI		P	1	P	B	EA	2
056	329-0558	? 0	IC, NE558 H13	RI		P	1	P	B	EA	1
058	337-6502	? 0	IC/MICROPROCESSOR 6502 H7	RL		P	1	P	A	EA	1
063	353-0741	? 0	IC, 741CN-8 PIN MINIDIP K13	RI		P	1	P	B	EA	1
064	371-4148	? 0	DIODE, 1N4148 J13	RP		P	1	P	B	EA	1
065	372-3904	0	TRANSISTOR, 2N3904 J14,A13,F13	RP		P	1	P	B	EA	3
67	372-4258	0	TRANSISTOR, XX4258 2-A1	RP		P	1	P	B	EA	2
068	376-0003	? 0	TRANSISTOR, MPSA13 J14	RP		P	5	P	B	EA	1
069	511-0801	0	SOCKET, IC 8 PIN K13,B3,A13	RP		P	1	P	B	EA	3
070	511-1401	0	SOCKET, IC 14 PIN A2,A11,A12,A14,B2, B10-13,B14,C11,C13, C14,D2,H1,J13	RP		P	1	P	A	EA	16
071	511-1601	0	SOCKET, IC 16 PIN A3,A7-A10,B1, B4-B9,C1-C10,C12, D3-D14,E4-E14,F2, F12-14,H2-5,H12-14, J1,J14	RP		P	1	P	A	EA	59
072	511-2401	0	SOCKET, IC 24 PIN A5,F3,F5,F6,F8, F9,F11	RP		P	1	P	B	EA	7
73	511-4001	0	SOCKET, IC 40 PIN H7	RP		P	1	P	B	EA	1
074	513-5001	0	CONNECTOR 50 PIN	RP		P	1	P	A	EA	8

PRINTED 25-JAN-81 02:34 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: 012381 S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F M

PARENT PART: 606-0148 M UNTESTED A2 STD 48K SYSTEM, RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	ERC	DESCRIPTION / REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	STRYC	STPRP	SABCN	PL UM	EXTENDED QTY PER
075	515-0001	? 0	JACK, PHONO RT ANG (MON) NTT 333-15 K14	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	1
076	515-0002	0	JACK, PHONE 2-K13	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	2
077	515-0054	M A	CONN, STRAIGHT HEADER 4 PIN			P	*	P	* P EA	2
078	515-0053	M A	CONN, STRAIGHT HEADER 2 PIN			P	*	P	* P EA	2
080	519-0001	? 0	CONNECTOR, 6 PIN AMP 9-350258-1 K1	RC		P	1	P	B P EA	1
081	341-0016	? 0	ROM, UTILITY DO	RL		P	1	P	A P EA	1
082	000-0000	0	NOT USED THIS ASSEMBLY			D	*	P	B P EA	0
083	341-0001	? 0	ROM 16K E0	RL		P	1	P	B P EA	1
084	341-0002	? 0	ROM 16K E8	RL		P	1	P	B P EA	1
[illegible]	341-0003	? 0	ROM 16K F0	RL		P	1	P	B P EA	1
086	341-0004	? 0	ROM 16K F8	RL		P	1	P	B P EA	1
087	197-0001	B	CRYSTAL, 14.318630 MHZ	RI		P	1	P	B P EA	1
088	908-0003	1	ADHESIVE, RTV #3145 GRAY	EX		X	1	P	B P EA	0.0100
089	341-0036	0	ROM, SPCL A5	RL	1	P	1	P	B P EA	1
090	156-0005	A	CHOKE, WIDE BAND RFI TYPE 4-J1,K13	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	5
091	511-2001	0	SOCKET, IC 20 PIN H10	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	1
092	132-7101	0	CAP, .001UF 20% Z5R 500VDC K3,K4,K5,K6,K8 K9,2-K11	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	8
093	511-1602	A	SOCKET, IC 16 PIN DIP (KEYED) E3	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	1
094	125-5101	A	CAP, 10UF 16V K1	RP		P	1	P	B P EA	1

apple computer inc.

REV. 0

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
A1 (2)	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C1
A1	330 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4331		R1
A1 (2)	2N4258 Transistor	372-4258		Q1,Q2
A1	Xtal, 14.318630 MHZ	197-0001		
A1 (2)	47 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4470		R2,R4
A1	150 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4151		
A2	Socket 14Pin 143-S3-T	511-1401	A11-12,B2,B10-14,C-11,C13-14 D1-2,E1,F1,H1 J13	
A2	IC 74LS00	305-0000		
A3	Socket 16Pin 163-S3-T	511-1601	A3,A7-10,B1, B4-9,C1-10,C12, D3-14,E2-14,F2, F12-14,H2-5, H10-14,J1,J14	
A3	IC 74166	or 301-0166 305-0166		
A5	Socket 24Pin 246-S4-T	511-2401	A5,F3,F5,F6,F8 F9, F11	
A5	ROM Character Generator	335-2513		
A7	Keyboard Socket	511-1601	B6-7,C12,J1	
A8	IC74LS257	305-0257		
A9	IC 74LS151	305-0151		
A10	IC74LS194	305-0194	B4,B9	
A11	IC74LS74	305-0074	B10,J13	
A12	IC 74LS02	305-0002	B13,B14	
A13	2N3904 Transistor	372-3904	F13,J14	Q5

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: _____ Page 1 of 6

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
A13	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C4
A13	1K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4102	F14	R14
A13	2.2M Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4225	K13	R26
A13	IC NE555	329-0555	B3	
A13	Socket 8Pin 083-S3-T	511-0801	B3,K13	
A14	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C12
B1	IC 74LS175	307-0175		
B2	IC 74S86	307-0086		
B3	IC NE555	329-0555	A13	
B3	12K Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4123	K14	R12
B3	3.3M Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4335		R13
B3	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C15
B4,B9	IC 74LS194	305-0194	A10	
B5,B8	IC 74LS174	305-0174		
B6,B7	IC 74LS257	305-0257		
B10	IC 74LS74	305-0074	A11,J13	
B11	IC 74LS08	305-0008	H1	
B12	IC 74LS11	305-0011		
B13,14	IC 74LS02	305-0002	A12	
B14	27 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4270	K14	R25
B15	Speaker Jack	515-0004		
B15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
C1	IC 74LS152	305-0153	E11-13	
C2	IC 74LS195	307-0195		

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: _____ Page 2 of 6

apple computer inc.

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
C3,C10	RAM 4K or 16K	(4K)333-6604 (16K)333-4116 (16K)333-0416		
C3-C5	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
C7-C9	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
C11	IC 74LS04	305-0004		
C12	IC 74LS257	305-0257	A8,B6-7,J1	
C13	IC 74LS32	305-0032		
C15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
D1	Memory Select Plug	*	E1,F1	
D2	IC 74LS20	305-0020		
D3-D10	RAM 16K or 4K	(4K)333-6604 (16K)333-4116 (16K)333-0416		
D3-D5	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
D7-D9	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
D10½	1K Ohm Resistor Array	111-0001	E10½,K12	RA02
D11-D14	IC 74LS161	305-0161		
D11,D15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E1	Memory Select Block	*	D1,F1	
E2	IC 74LS139	305-0139	F2	
E3-E10	RAM 16K or 4K	(4K)333-6604 (16K)333-4116 (16K)333-0416		
E3-E5	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E7-E9	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E10½	1K Ohm Resistor Array	111-0001	D10½,K12	RA03

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: _____ Page 3 of 6

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
E11	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
E11-E13	IC 74LS153	305-0153		
E14	IC 74LS283	305-0283		
E15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
F1	Memory Select Plug	*	D1,E1	
F2	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
F2	IC 74LS139	305-0139	E2	
F3	ROM F8	341-0004		
F5	ROM F0	341-0003		
F6	ROM E8	341-0002		
F8	ROM E0	341-0001		
F9				
F11	ROM D0 Programmer's Aid #1	341-0016 (Optional)		
F12-F13	IC 74LS138	305-0138	H2,H12	
F13	2N3904 Transistor	372-3904	A13,J14	Q6
F13½	4.7K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4472		R27
F14	9334	301-9334		
F15	1K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4102	A13	R5
F15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
F15	5-50pf Color Trim Cap	138-0001		C3
H1	IC 74LS08	305-0008	B11	
H2	IC 74LS138	305-0138	F12-F13,H12	
H2	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: _____ Page 4 of 6

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
H3-H5	IC 8797	315-0897		
H7	Socket 40Pin 406-S3-7	511-4001		
H7	IC 6502 Microprocessor	337-6502		
H10-H11	IC 8T28	315-0828		
H12	IC 74LS138	305-0138	F12-13,H2	
H13	IC 558	329-0558		
H13 (4)	.22uf Capacitor	133-8401		C5-C7
H13	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C9
H14	IC 74LS251	305-0251		
H15	27uh Choke	151-5501		L1
H15	47pf Capacitor	131-5701		C2
H15	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		
J1	IC 74LS257	305-0257	A8,B6-7,C12	
J13 (4)	100 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4101	K14	R20-R23
J13	IC 74LS74	305-0074	A11,B10	
J13 (2)	12K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4123		R19,R29
J14	MPSA13 Transistor	376-0003		Q4
J14	IN914 Diode	371-0914		CR1
J14	47K Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4473		R23
J14	Game I/O Socket	511-1601		
J14	Single Pin	515-0005		
J14½	200 Ohm Pot	109-0001		R11
J15	2.7K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4272		R6

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: _____ Page 5 of 6

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

BOARD LOCATION	PART DESCRIPTION	APPLE PART #	OTHER LOCATION	SCHEMATIC DESIGNATION
J15	2K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4202		R8
J15	1.5K Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4152		R7
J15	2N3904 Transistor	372-3904	A13,F13	Q3
J15	10 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4100		R9
K1	Power Supply Socket	519-0001		
K12	1K Resistor Array	111-0001	D10½,E10½	
K13	IC 74IC	353-0741		
K13	2.2M Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4225	A13	R15
K13 (2)	12K Ohm 1/4W 5%	101-4123	B3	R16,R30
K13	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C10
K14	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C11
K14	100 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4101	J13	R18
K14	27 Ohm Res 1/4W 5%	101-4270	B14	R25
K14 (2)	.1uf Capacitor	135-9101		C13,C14
K14	Video O/P Plug	515-0003		
O-7	Connector 50 Pin	513-5001		
Jack (7)	Phono Cassette	515-0002		
Jack	Phone RCA	515-0001		

* Memory Select Plug

16K 16K 16K	600-0078
16K 4K 4K	600-0077
4K 4K 4K	600-0076

TITLE: APPLE II MOTHERBOARD P/N: 600-0001 REV: _____ Page 6 of 6

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

INTED 29-Sep-81 10:40 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

IVITY DATE: ALL SINGLE LEVEL BILLS OF MA

AENT PART: 605-6116 CHASSIS A2 STD 16K SYSTEM UM: EA PF
ERC: C SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A PL

#	COMPONENT PART NUMBER		ERC	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	SRC	TYP	SPR	ABC	PLN	UM	EXTENDED QUANTITY PER	EC CH
0	605-6116D		2	CHASSIS A2 STD 16K SYSTEM	EX	A	7		%	U	EA	0	35
1	605-4116		1	ASSY,PCB,TST,MOTHERBD STD 16K A2	2H	A	1	P	A	P	EA	1	41
2	600-0009		B	ASSY, SPEAKER	RM	P	1	P	C	P	EA	1	45
3	699-0027	?	0	POWER SUPPLY,UL APPD ASTEC(AS RECD)	VX	P	1	P	A	P	EA	1	25
4	605-5105	M	B	SUBASSY TST KEYBD AP2 W/ENCODER	VX	A	1	P	A	P	EA	1	65
5	805-0001		8	BASE, CHASSIS APPLEII	RM	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	35
6	805-0010		3	STIFFENER, REAR PANEL	EX	P	1	P	C	P	EA	1	C5
7	805-0011		0	BRACKET, MOUNTING APPLEII KEYBOARD	EX	P	1	P	C	P	EA	2	NO
	[illegible]5-0001		K	HOUSING, PLASTIC APPLE II	RM	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	72
9	815-0002		8	LID, PLASTIC APPLE II	RM	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	35
0	825-0003		0	LABEL, 'VIDEO/CASSETTE IN-OUT'	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	NO
1	825-0001		B	LABEL, NAMEPLATE APPLEII	EX	P	1	P	C	P	EA	1	86
2	825-0067		1	OBSOLETE LABEL,SER&APPLEII STD(UL)	EX	X	7	P	C	P	EA	1	85-
3	830-0002	?	0	FASTENER, HEAD LOCK 3M#SJ-3308R	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	4	NO
4	830-0003		A	FASTENER, PC BOARD STANDOFF	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	6	63
5	400-3606		A	SCREW, 6-32 X 3/8 FLT HD (CAD)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	6	56
6	400-3610		A	SCREW, 6-32 X 5/8 FLT HD (CAD)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	56
7	844-0001	?	0	SCREW, #4-40 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (CD)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	4	NO
8	844-0004	?	0	SCREW, #6-32 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (BK)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	8	NO
9	850-4605	?	0	SCREW, PHILLIPS UNDERCUT #6 X 5/16	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	6	
0	860-0008	?	0	SPACER, HEX #6-32 X 1/4 (ALUM)	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	
1	[illegible]5-0001		0	FEET, RUBBER	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	4	45
2	908-0003		1	ADHESIVE, RTV #3145 GRAY	EX	X	1	P	B	P	EA	0.0400	30
3	[illegible]-0003	?	0	(OBS) REIDENTIFIED SEE 835-0116	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	[illegible]
4	860-0006	?	0	WASHER #6 INTERNAL TOOTH	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1	

PRINTED 29-Sep-81 10:41 APPLE COMPUTER, INC.

EFFECTIVITY DATE: ALL S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O

PARENT PART: 600-6116 CHASSIS A2 STD 16K SYSTEM UM: E
ERC: C SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC:

ITM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	E R C	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	S FR CD	T R C	S Y P	A P R	P B C	L N	UM	EXTENDED QUANTITY PER
025	680-0007	C	O WASHER, PLASTIC; .062 THK	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
026	605-5102		O TESTED KEYBOARD A2 GREEN	VX	A	5	P	A	P	EA	1
027	825-0004	C	O LABEL, SERIAL # A2 STD	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
028	605-5001		O TESTED 110/220V A2 POWER S.	2M	A	1	P	A	P	EA	1
029	907-0002		O ADHESIVE, LOCKTITE #430 SUPERBONDER	EX	X	1	P	A	P	EA	0.0
030	825-0013		O LABEL, WARNING ASTEC UL P/S	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
031	944-0007		O FOAM PAD, SPEAKER	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
033	000-0000		O NOT USED THIS ASSEMBLY		D	*	P	D	P	EA	0
034	030-0096		O OPERATING PROCEDURE, ENCODER BD	EX	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
035	825-0184		C LABEL, CSA CERTIFICATION	EX	X	7	P	C	P	EA	0

NOTES:

ECO 352 ADDED ITEMS 4,33
ECO 352 DELETED ITEM 26,7
ECO 352 CHANGED ITEM 18 QTY FROM 12
ECO 352 CHANGED ITEM 20 QTY FROM 4
ECO 384 ADDED ITEM 12
ECO 384 DELETED ITEM 27
ECO 377 ADDED ITEM 22,30,31,3
ECO 377 DELETED ITEM 28,29
ECO 403 CLOSED ITEM 34
ECO 472 ADDED ITEM 35

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

END OF REPORT

PARENT PART: 606-6548 M CHASSIS A2 PLUS 48K SYSTEM RFI UM: EA
ERC: B SRCE CODE: A TYPE: 1 ABC: A

ITEM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	E R C	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S R C	T Y P	S P R	A B C	P L N	UM	EXTENDED QTY PER
000	606-6116D	A	DWG, CHASSIS ASSY A2 STD SYS RFI	EX		*	7		*	*	EA	0
001	606-4548 M	A	TESTED A2 PLUS 48K MOTHERBOARD, RFI	TS		A	1	P	A	P	EA	1
002	600-0009 M	B	ASSY, SPEAKER	RM		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1
003	699-0048 P	0	POWER SUPPLY, ASTEC (85V - 135V)	VX		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
004	606-5105 M	A	TESTED KEYBOARD, A2 RFI	VX		A	1	P	A	P	EA	1
005	810-0055	A	BASE, CHASSIS A2 RFI PAINTED	RM		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
008	810-0360	A	HOUSING, A2 W/EMI PAINTING DETAIL	RM		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
009	810-0359	A	LID, A2 W/EMI PAINTING DETAIL	RM		P	1	P	A	P	EA	1
010	825-0003	0	LABEL, "VIDEO/CASSETTE IN-OUT"	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	1
011	825-0036	0	NAMEPLATE, APPLEII PLUS	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	1
012	825-0068	1	LABEL, SERIAL # APPLE II PLUS (UL)	EX	1	X	7	P	B	P	EA	1
013	830-0002	? 0	FASTENER, HEAD LOCK 3M#SJ-3308R	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	4
014	830-0003	? 0	FASTENER RICHCO TCB5-4N	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	5
016	844-0012	0	SCREW, #6-32 X 1/2 PAN HD (BLK)	EX		X	7	P	D	P	EA	4
017	844-0001	? 0	SCREW, #4-40 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (CD)	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	4
018	844-0004	? 0	SCREW, #6-32 X 3/8 SEMS PAN HD (BK)	EX		X	1	P	C	P	EA	10
021	865-0001	0	FEET, RUBBER	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	4
022	908-0003	1	ADHESIVE, RTV #3145 GRAY	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	0.0400
030	825-0043	0	LABEL, WARNING ASTEC UL P/S	EX		X	1	P	B	P	EA	1
031	944-0057	0	FOAM PAD, SPEAKER	EX	1	X	1	P	C	P	EA	1
033	805-0058	A	BAR, GROUNDING A2 PCB	RM		P	1	P	C	P	EA	1
035	825-0205	A	LABEL, FCC NON-COMPLIANCE			X	*	P	C	P	EA	1
036	805-0061	A	CLIP, GROUNDING A2 RFI	RM		P	1	P	C	P	EA	2
037	844-0013	0	SCREW, #6-32 X 1/4 SEMS PAN HD (BK)	EX		X	7	P	D	P	EA	5

Palmishere SWP

PRINTED 10-Jul-81 10:43 APPLE COMPUTER, INC. BML

EFFECTIVITY DATE: ALL

S I N G L E L E V E L B I L L S O F M A T E R I A L

DATANETICS

PARENT PART: 605-0117 UNTESTED DC51 DISCRETE KEYBRD UM: EA PROD CODE: UN ECN:
ERC: 0 SRCE CODE: F TYPE: I REC: A PLAN CODE: F DATE:

ITM NO.	COMPONENT PART NUMBER	E R C	DESCRIPTION REMARKS	PR CD	COMM CODE	S C	T P	S R	A C	P N	L UM	EXTENDED QUANTITY PER	ECN CHG	START DATE	S/N
~~000~~	~~650-0026~~	0	~~SCHMTC, APPL ASCII KYBRD~~	~~EX~~		~~D~~	~~7~~	~~P~~	~~*~~	~~U~~	~~EA~~	~~0~~	~~352~~		
001	519-0019	B	CONN, 25 PIN BOTTOM ENTRY	RC		P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	612	13-Feb-80	
002	605-0119	0	ASSY, KEYCAP SET A2 LPM	WS	1	P	1	P	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
~~003~~	~~705-0004~~	0	~~SWITCH DC51-31~~	~~RP~~		~~P~~	~~1~~	~~P~~	~~B~~	~~P~~	~~EA~~	~~50~~	~~352~~	~~13-Feb-80~~	
004	705-0008	0	RST KY, 9 OZ, DC51, APPL	EX		X	1	S	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
005	705-0018	0	SWITCH, 3.5 OZ DC51-35	RP		P	1	P	*	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
~~006~~	~~705-0019~~	0	~~SWTCH, PWR LGHT DC51-90 CLLPSD~~	~~RP~~		~~P~~	~~1~~	~~P~~	~~*~~	~~P~~	~~EA~~	~~1~~	~~352~~	~~13-Feb-80~~	
007	815-0061	0	KEY CAP PWR ON INDICATOR	EX		X	1	S	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	
008	860-0022	0	WSHR, NYLN .050THK .150D 5/16D	EX		X	1	P	*	P	EA	2	352	13-Feb-80	
~~009~~	~~907-0002~~	0	~~ADHSV, LCKTT #430 SPRENDR~~	~~EX~~		~~X~~	~~1~~	~~P~~	~~C~~	~~P~~	~~EA~~	~~0.0050~~	~~352~~	~~13-Feb-80~~	
010	710-0001	0	LAMP 02-1876-01	EX		P	7	P	B	P	EA	1	352	13-Feb-80	

NOTES:

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

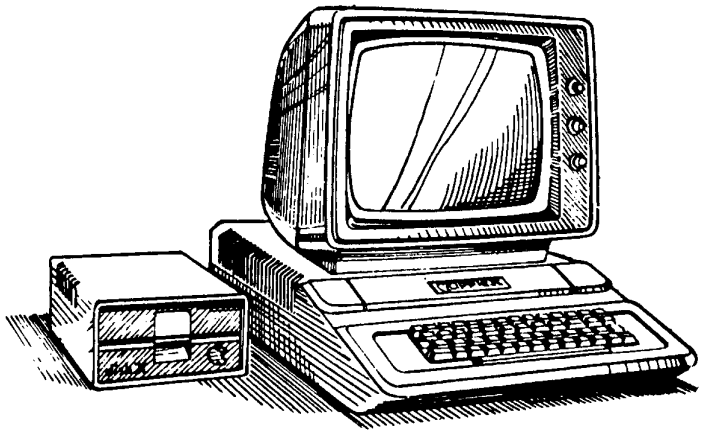
END OF REPORT

Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

APPENDIX C
REMOVAL AND REPLACEMENT PROCEDURES



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)

22 September 1981

To: Level II Service Managers

From: Jess Pack
Service Engineering

Subj: Service Engineering Pre-Release on the Apple II Keyboards.

Enclosed is the pre-release material on the Keyboard Company produced keyboards for the Apple II. Some of the parts have Apple part numbers, these are indicated with an A preceeding the part number. Part numbers preceeded by a K are keyboard company part numbers.

These part numbers will be on the service cashier up-date for October, use the part number indicated in this material for ordering any piece part for the keyboards.

This package should contain piece part breakdowns on the following:

1. Keyboard Encoder REV C
2. Apple II Alps Switchable (Low Profile Key Caps)
3. Apple II Alps Switchable (Sculptured Key Caps)
4. Apple II Contact Array Keyboard (Low Profile Key Caps)
5. Apple II Contact Array Keyboard (Sculptured Key Caps)

Note: Due to manufacturing changes at the keyboard company many parts are not interchangable. Refer to Service RElease SR2-009.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

17 September 1981

Apple II Switchable Keyboard
Sculptured Key Caps

Keyboard Company

Part Number: 606-0650

Figure	Description	Part Number
1	Key Cap Set AII B&M	A605-0113
2	Adapter, 0 Degree	K815-0013
3	Switch, KBB Alps Reset	K705-0004
4	Header, Right Angle 26 Pin	K519-0003
5	Lamp	K710-0001
6	Adapter Power	K815-0010
7	Plate Sub assembly	K626-4001
8	Stabilizer 8 Position	K810-0014
9	Standoff, Sawge	K810-0008
10	Guide 0 Degree	K815-0005
11	Pivot Stablizer	K815-0014
12	Screw 6-32 Pan Head	K842-0002
13	Richco Fastner	A830-0017
14	Switch, KBB ALPS	A705-0015
15	Power Lens Printed	K816-0119

Part Numbers: "K" Indicates Keyboard company
"A" Indicates Apple MIS

Item 13: Richo fastner is not on illustration, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder card to the keyboard.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

17 September 1981

Apple II Switchable Keyboard
B&M Low Profile LKey Caps

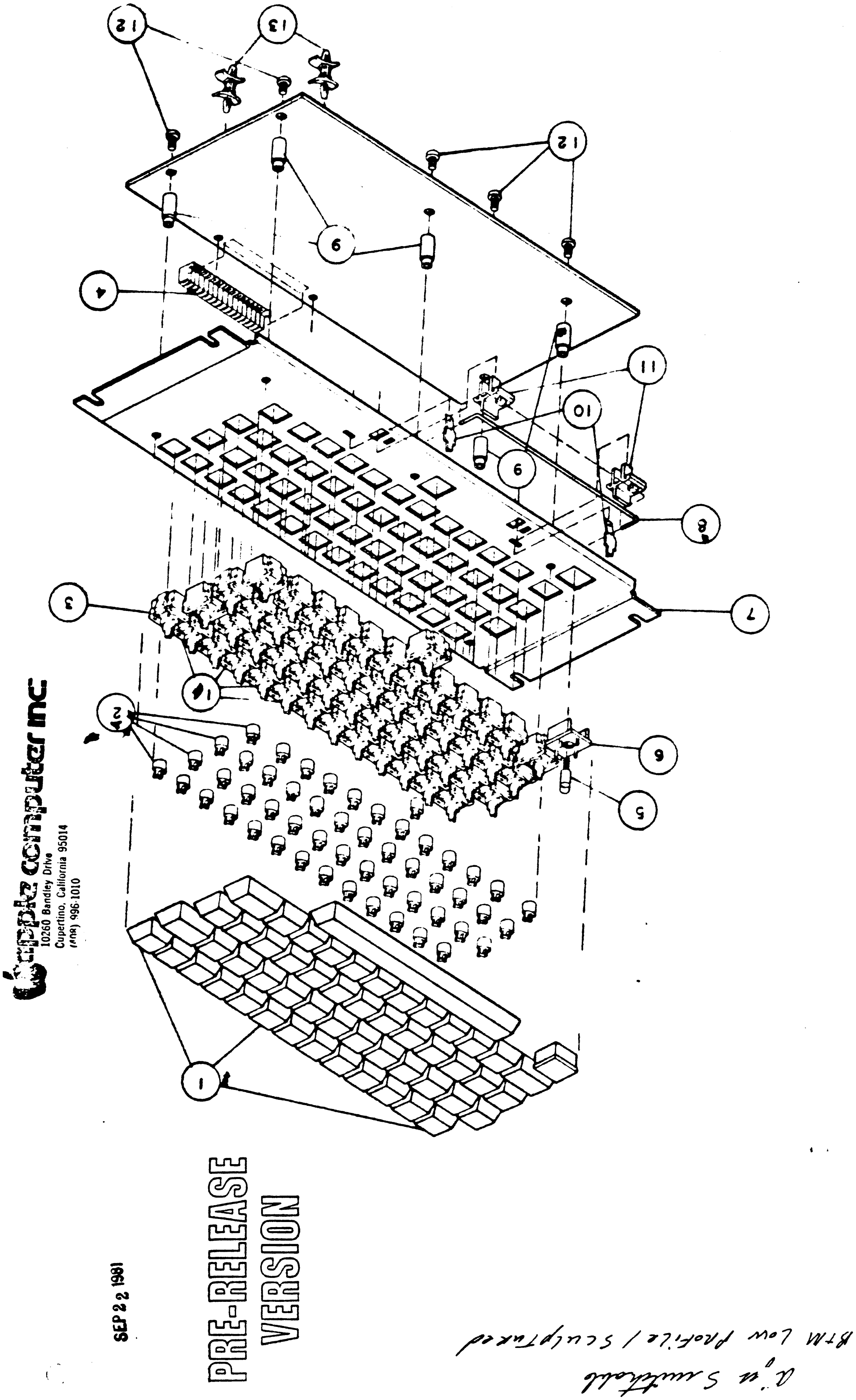
Keyboard Company

Part Number: 605-0118

Figure	Description	Part Number
1	Key Cap Set AII B&M	A605-0119
2	Adapter, 12 Degree	K815-0009
3	Switch, KBB Alps Reset	K705-0004
4	Header, Right Angle 26 Pin	K519-0003
5	Lamp	K710-0001
6	Adapter Power	K815-0010
7	Plate Sub assembly	K626-4001
8	Stabilizer 8 Position	K810-0001
9	Standoff, Sawge	K810-0008
10	Guide 12 Degree	K815-0004
11	Pivot Stablizer	K815-0014
12	Screw 6-32 Pan Head	K842-0002
13	Richco Fastner	A830-0017
14	Switch, KBB ALPS	A705-0015
15	Power Lens Printed	K816-0119

Part Numbers: "K" Indicates Keyboard company
"A" Indicates Apple MIS

Item 13: Richo fastner is not on illustration, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder card to the keyboard.



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

16 Septembe 1981

Contact Array Keyboard
Sculptured Key Caps

Keyboard Company

Part Number: 606-0649

Item	Description	Part Number
1	Sculptured Key Cap Set	A605-0133
2	Lens Power Printed (all keyboards)	K816-0001
3	Sheild 55 Position AII EMI	A810-0089
4	Keystem, Off-Set	K815-0038
5	Spring Reset Key	K870-0006
6	Stabilizer Bar 8 Position	K810-0011
7	Spring Space Bar	K870-0005
8	Guide Off-Set	K815-0037
9	Lamp	K710-0001
10	Connector 25 Pin	K710-0001
11	PC Board 52 Position	K820-0001
12	Richco Fastner (encoder card)	A830-0016

Item 12: Richco Fastner is not on the Illustration, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder to the keyboard.

Note: Service on this board is very limited. The following items are not considered field serviceable and are listed for identification purposes only.

Item	
4	Keystem Off-Set
11	PC Board 52 Position

Item number 3 is the EMI Modification for the Contact Array.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

16 September 1980

Contact Array Keyboard
B&M Low Profied key Caps

Keyboard Company

EMI Untested Contact Array Keyboard Part Number 606-0115
Untested CONTACT Array Keyboard Part Number 605-0115

Figure	Description	Part number
1	Keycap set AII B&M	A605-0119
2	Lens power Printed (all keyboards)	K816-0001
3	Sheild 55 Position AII EMI	A810-0089
4	Keystem 12 Degree	K815-0001
5	Spring Comp, AII Keyboard Reset	A810-0087
6	Space Stabilizer AII Keyboard	A810-0086
7	Spring Comp, AII Keyboard, Space"	A810-0088
8	Guide 12 Deg. AII Array	A815-0381
9	Lamp (AII Array/Switchable)	K710-0001
10	Connector 25 Pin	K519-0002
11	PC Board 52 Pos	K820-0001
12	Richco Fastner (encoder card)	A830-0016

Part Number: "K" Indicates Keyboard Company
"A" Indicates Apple MIS Number

Item 12: Richco Fastner A830-0016 is not on the Illustrstion, it is used to fasten the external keyboard encoder card to the Keyboard.

Note: Service on this board is very limited. The following items are not considered field servicable and are listed for identification purposes only:

Item:

4	Keystem 12 Deg.
11	PC Board 52 Pos.

Item number 3 is the part addition to make the array keyboard EMI.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

16 September 1981

EXTERNAL keyboard Encoder
Apple II

Part Number: 605-0105 REV C (Current Encoder)

location	Description	Apple PT NO.
R8	Resistor 1/4W 5% 510K OHM	101-4514
R5	Resistor 1/4W 5% 1K OHM	101-4102
R4	Resistor 1/4W 5% 220 OHM	101-4221
R7	Resistor 1/4W %5 220K OHM	101-4223
R2,3,6	Resistor 1/4W %5 4.7K OHM	101-4472
R1	Resistor 1/4W 5% 51K OHM	101-4513
R10,5	Resistor 1/4W %5 3K OHM	101-4302
C1	Capacitor 1UF AL ELEC -10%175% 50V	125-4101
C5	Capacitor 47PF 5% N470 50V	131-5701
C2	Capacitor .022UF 20% Y5P 25V	133-2401
C3,4,6,7,8	Capacitor .1UF +80-20% Z5U/Y5V 50V	135-9101
B3,4	IC 74LS00N	305-0000
B5	IC 74LS04	305-0004
B2	IC 555 Timer	329-0555
B6	MB IC KEYBOARD encoder	331-0931
J1	Socket, IC 16 Pin	511-1601
B	Socket, 40 Pin	511-4001
P1	Connector 25 Pin Molex #4030-25AA	519-0022
S1	Switch SLd #M10-0112-045-01-0	705-0013
PCB	PCB Encoder Discrete Keyboard	820-0026

Note:

#1. REV C

Capacitor C8 was added to this version of the Encoder for the Contact Array Keyboard.

#2. REV B / REV A

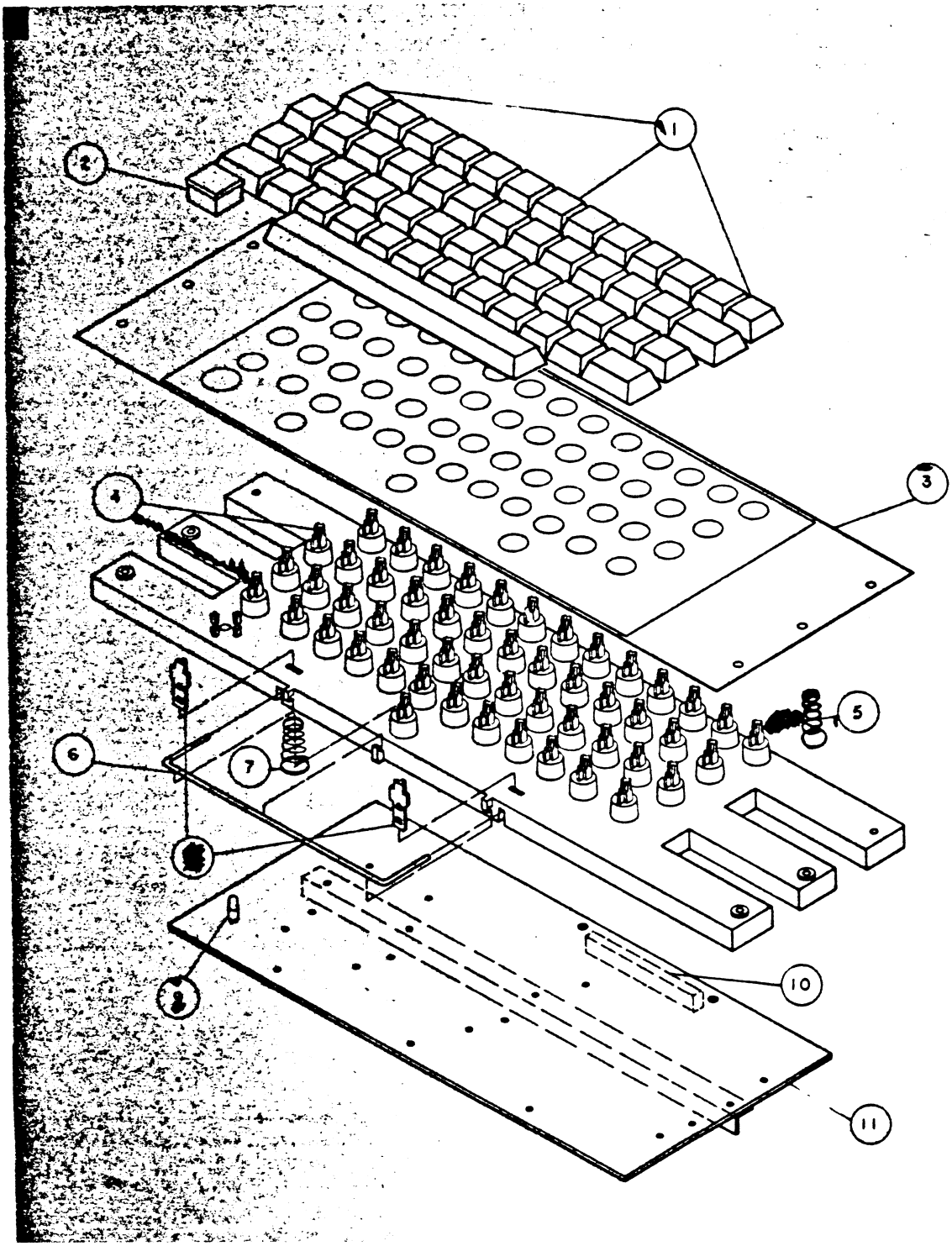
Components are the same as current encoder board, the PCB Traces are different.

CONTACT ARRAY
B+M Low Profile / Sculptured

apple computer inc
10260 Bandley Drive
Cupertino, California 95014
(408) 996-1010

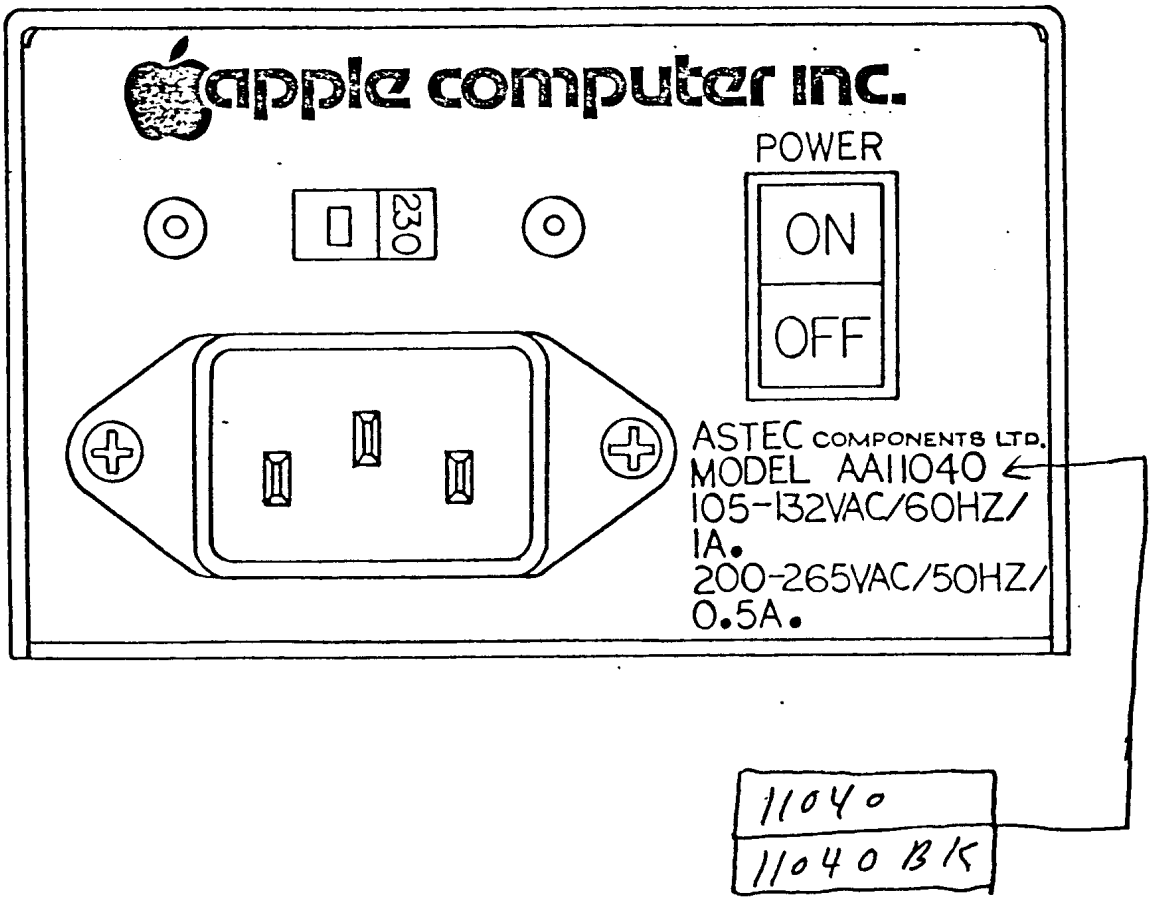
SEP 22 1981

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC POWER SUPPLY



PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC 11040 STANDARD POWER SUPPLY

LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	VENDOR NO.	APPLE P/N
C1	POLYESTER CAPACITOR 0.1 UF 400V	058-10400100	
C2	ELECTROLYTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	
C3	ELECTROYLTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	
C4	ELECTROYLTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	
C5	ELECTROYLTIC CAPACITOR 47 UF 250V	057-47020040	
C6	TANTALUM CAPACITOR 22 UF 16V	072-22600040	
C7	CERAMIC CAPACITOR 1000 PF 3KV	055-10210001	
C8	CERAMIC CAPACITOR 0.01 UF 1KV	055-10367325	
C9	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	
C10	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	
C11	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 330 UF 16V	057-33120080	
C12	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 220 UF 10V	057-22120060	
C13	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	
C14	POLYESTER CAPACITOR 1000 PF 50V	058-10200020	
C15	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 1000 UF 10V	057-10220020	
C16	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 220 UF 10V	057-22120060	
C17	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 680 UF 16V	057-68120010	
C18	ELECTROYLITIC CAPACITOR 330 UF 16V	057-33120080	
D1	RECTIFIER RPG10M	226-10400050	
D2	SILICON DIODE 1N4150	212-10700050	
D3	RECTIFIER RGP10M	226-10400100	
D4	RECTIFIER/HEATSINK ASSEMBLY	853-00200020	
D5	RECTIFIER/HEATSINK ASSEMBLY	853-00200020	
D6	RECTIFIER/HEATSINK ASSEMBLY	853-00200020	
D7	RECTIFIER RGP15B	226-10100040	
D8	RECTIFIER RGP10B	226-10400070	
D9	SILICON DIODE 1N4150	212-10700050	
D10	SILICON DIODE 1N4150	212-10700050	
D11	BLANK		
DB1	BRIDGE RECTIFIER KRP10	226-30500010	
F1	FUSE 2.75 AMP 250 VOLTS	084-00200040	
L1	CONTROL CHOKE COIL	328-00150016	
L2	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100010	
L3	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100050	
L4	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100010	
L5	FILTER CHOKE COIL ASSEMBLY	TF-20100020	
Q1	TRANSISTOR NPN PE8050	209-11700382	
Q2	TRANSISTOR NPN 2SC1358	209-10200020	
Q3	TRANSISTOR NPN PE8050	209-11700382	
Q4	TRANSISTOR PNP PE8550	210-11700322	
R1	THERMISTER 4R @25 DEG.CEN +-10%	258-40970015	
R2	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 2.2M +-5%	240-22506033	

"C" Common Component

R3	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 2.2M +-5%	240-22506033 101-2225
R4	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 82R +-5%	240-82006033 R1-2220
R5	RESISTOR METAL OXIDE FILM 27R	248-27006052 u107-0009
R6	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 4.7R +-5%	240-47906033 101-2547
R7	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 10R +-5%	240-10006022 R01-4275
R8	RESISTOR METAL FILM 0.33R +-5%	247-03386054 u107-0016
R9	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 180R +-5%	240-18106022 101-4181
R10	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 12R +-5%	240-12006022 101-4125
R11	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 470R +-5%	240-47106022 401-4471
R12	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5%	240-10206022 C101-4105
R13	BLANK	
R14	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5%	240-10206022 C101-4105
R15	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 330R +-5%	240-33106022 101-4335
R16	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 5.6K +-5%	240-56206022 C101-4565
R17	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 27R +-5%	240-27006022 401-4275
R18	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 82R +-5%	240-82006033 101-2825
R19	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5%	240-10206022 C101-4105
R20	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 2.7K +-5%	240-27206022 C101-4275
R21	BLANK	
R22	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100R +-5%	240-10106033 101-2101
R23	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100R +-5%	240-10106033
R24	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 390R +-5%	240-39106022 401-4391
SC1	SILICON CONTROL RECTIFIER 2P 05M	227-12500010 u376-0007
T1	POWER TRANSFORMER ASSEMBLY	TF-10200370 u157-0004
T2	CONTROL TRANSFORMER ASSEMBLY	TF-10200200 u157-0005
T3	COMMON MODE TRANSFORMER ASSEMBLY	TF-20200010 u157-0006
Z1	ZENER DIODE 12.2V +-0.2V	222-12295001 u371-0002
Z2	ZENER DIODE 6.8V +-0.2V	222-06895003 u371-0003
VDR1	VARISTOR 260VAC	256-26100014 u377-0007
PCB	PRINTED CIRCUIT BOARD (NO PART'S)	042-02012202 u820-0001
	Switch Rocker	705-0001
CASE	SWITCH (ROCKER TYPE)	278-01200020 705-0023
CASE	AC IMPUT SOCKET (THREE PRONG GROUND)	149-00200010 199-0003
CASE	VOLTAGE SELECTION SWITCH 115/230	283-02200100
(CASE)	BOTTOM PLATE 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100700 805-0007
(CASE)	COVER (TOP) 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100810 805-0001

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ASTEC POWER SUPPLY AA11040B

LOCATION	DESCRIPTION	VENDOR NO.	APPLE P/N
C1	MP CAP 0.1 UF +-20% 250 VAC	068-10400010	U121-0100
C3	CER CAP 2200 PF +-20% 400 VAC	055-22200010 C	U132-0001
C4	CER CAP 2200 PF +-20% 400 VAC	055-22220001 C	
C5	ELEC CAP 47 UF +100-10% 250V	057-47020040 C	U124-0001
C6	ELEC CAP 47 UF +100-10% 250V	057-47020040 C	
C7	ELEC CAP 220 UF +50 -10% 10V	057-22120080	U126-0001
C8	CER CAP 47 PF +-20% 3KV 250	055-47167728	U131-0001
C9	CER CAP 0.01 UF +-20% 1KV 25U	055-10358925 C	U131-0002
C10	CER CAP 0.01 UF +-20% 1KV 25V	055-10358925 C	
C11	POLY CAP 0.22 UF +-10% 100V	058-22400120	U119-0001
C12	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020 C	U124-0003
C13	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020 C	
C14	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020 C	
C15	ELEC CAP 220 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-22120060 C	U124-0004
C16	ELEC CAP 220 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-22120060 C	
C17	POLY CAP 0.022 UF +-20% 100V	058-22300080	U119-0002
C18	POLY CAP 0.22 UF +-10% 100V	058-22400120	U119-0001
C19	ELEC CAP 1000 UF +100 -10% 10V	057-10220020 C	U124-0003
C20	ELEC CAP 580 UF +100 -10% 16V	057-68120010 C	U124-0005
C21	ELEC CAP 330 UF +100 -10% 16V	057-33120080 C	U124-0002
C22	ELEC CAP 330 UF +100 -10% 16V	057-33120080 C	
C23	CER CAP 0.01 UF +-20% 1KV 25U	055-10368925	U132-0002
C24	ELEC CAP 47 UF +100 -10% 250V	057-47020040 C	U124-0001
C25	ELEC CAP 47 UF +10 -10% 250V	057-47020040 C	
D1	RECTIFIER RPG10A	226-10400050 C	U375-0014
D2	RECTIFIER RPG10M	225-10400100 C	U375-0013
D3	RECTIFIER RPG10M	226-10400100 C	
D4	SILICON DIODE 1N4606	212-10700210 C	U371-0001
D5	SILICON DIODE 1N4606	212-10700210 C	
D6	RECTIFIER ASSY	853-00200210 C	U375-0017
D7	RECTIFIER ASSY	853-00200210 C	
D8	RECTIFIER ASSY	853-00200210 C	
D9	RECTIFIER RGP15B	226-10100040 C	U375-0015
D10	RECTIFER RGP10B	226-10400070 C	U375-0016
D11	SILICON DIODE 1N4606	212-10700210	U371-0001
D12	RECTIIER RGP15B	226-10100040 C	U375-0015
DB1	BRIDGE RECTIFIER KBP10	225-30500010	U351-0001
F1	FUSE 2.75A 125V	084-00200040	U-740-0001
IC1	IC TL431CP/TL431CLP	211-10800100	U-327-0001
L1	CHOKE COIL ASSY	852-20100140 C	U-155-0001
L2	CHOKE COIL ASSY	852-20100140 C	
L3	BASE CHOKE 2.2 UH	328-00100030	U-155-0002
L4	CHOKE 1.5 MH (PROPRIETARY)	328-00100010	U-155-0003
L5	CHOKE COIL ASSY	852-10100370	U-155-0004

"C" COMMON COMPONENT

L6	CHOKE COIL ASSY	328-20100010	U155-0005
L7	CHOKE COIL	852-10100490	U155-0006
L8	CHOKE COIL	852-10100490	
Q1	NPN TRANSISTOR 2SD592NC	209-11700400	U376-0001
Q1	NPN TRANSISTOR 2SD467C	209-11700460	(opt)
Q2	NPN TRANSISTOR 2SC1875	209-10200030	U376-0002
Q3	PNP TRANSISTOR 2SB621NC	210 11700330	U376-0003
Q3	PNP TRANSISTOR 2SB561C	210-11700350	(opt)
Q4	PNP TRANSISTOR 2SB621NC	210-11700330	U376-0003
R1	THERMISTOR 4R +-10% OR 5R	258-40970015	U107-0100
R2	RESISTOR METAL FILM 150K +-5% 1/2 W	240-15406033	U107-0001
R3	RESISTOR METAL FILM 150K +-5% 1/2 W	240-15406033	U107-0002
R4	RESISTOR METAL OXY FILM 27R +-5% 2 W	248-27006063 C	101-4102
R5	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1K +-5% 1/2 W	240-10206022 C	101-4270
R6	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 27R +-5% 1/2 W	240-27006022 C	101-4680
R7	RESISTOR CARBON FILM +-5% 1/4W 68R	240-68006022	U107-0003
R8	RESISTOR METAL OXY FILM 120R +-5% 1W	248-12106052	101-4082
R9	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 8.2R +-5% 1/4 W	240-82906022	101-4100
R10	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 10R +-5% 1/4 W	240-10006022 C	U107-0004
R11	RESISTOR METAL FILM 0.56 +-5% 1W	247-05686054	101-4680
R12	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 68R+-5% 1/4W	240-68006022	101-2277
R13	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 270R +-5% 1/2W	240-27106033	101-4082
R14	RESISTOR CARBON FIM D270R +-5% 1/2W	240-27106033	101-4390
R15	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 8.2R +-5% 1/2W	240-39106022	101-4220
R16	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 390R +-5% 1/4W	240-39106022 C	101-4101
R17	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 22R +-5% 1/2W	240-22006022	101-4560
R18	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100R +-5% 1/4W	240-10106022 C	101-4123
R19	RESISTOR CARBON FILM +-5% 1/4W 56R	240-56006022 C	101-4471
R20	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 56R +-5% 1/2W	240-56006022 C	U107-0005
R21	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 12K +-5% 1/4W	240-12306022	101-4104
R22	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 470R +-5% 1/4W	224-27106022	101-4681
R23	RESISTOR METAL FILM 2.7K +-2% 1/4W	247-27015022	101-4182
R24	RESISTOR METAL FILM 2.7K +-2% 1/4W	247-27015022	U107-0006
R25	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 100K +-5% 1/4W	240-10406022	U107-0007
R26	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 680R +-5% 1/4W	240-68106022	U107-0008
R27	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 1.8K +-5% 1/4W	240-18206022	101-4220
R28	RESISTOR METAL FILM +-5% 1W 1R	247-10086-54	
R29	RESISTOR METAL FILM +-5% 1/4W 32R	240-82006033 C	
R30	RESISTOR METAL OXY FILM 220R +-5% 1W	248-22106052	
R31	RESISTOR CARBON FILM 224 +-5% 1/4W	240-22006022	
SCR1	SCR C122U/2N695	227-13000010	U372-0001
T1	COMMON MODE TRANSFORMER ASSY	852-20200950	U157-0001
T2	POWER TRANSFORMER ASSY	852-10200940	U157-0002
T3	POWER TRANSFORMER ASSY (SUB)	852-10200680	U157-0003
Z1	ZENER DIODE 9.8V +-0.2V (2K7)	222-98085002	U371-0002
VDR1	VDR 260 VAC	256-26100014 C	U377-0001
CASE	VOLTAGE SELECTION SWITCH 115/230V	283-02200100 C	705-0003

Switch Rocker

CASE	SWITCH ROCKER	278-01200020	C	705-0001 705-0023
CASE	AC INPUT SOCKET	149-00200010	C	199-0003
CASE	BOTTOM PLATE 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100700	C	805-0077
CASE	COVER (TOP) 1.6 AL SHEET	403-03100810	C	805-0003

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

MOTHERBOARD REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off the Apple and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat portion of Apple base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Grasping both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and set aside.
9. Pinch sides of plug and release power supply plug from location K1 at top of motherboard (See D2).
10. Unplug speaker connector from location B8 on motherboard (See D3).
11. Remove 5/16 inch nut and lockwasher in middle of motherboard (See D4).
12. Push in on flanges with screwdriver or needle-nose pliers to release four stand-offs at corners of board and two stand-offs between I/O connectors 4 and 5. Lift board up and out (See D5).

INSTALLATION

1. Place new motherboard into position over four stand-offs at corners of board and two stand-offs between I/O connectors 4 and 5. Press board down into place (See D5).
2. Install washer and nut in middle of board and tighten just until snug (See D4).
3. Reinstall speaker connector at B8 (See D3).
4. Reinstall power supply plug at K1 (See D2).
5. Place housing over base.
6. Gently lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7. Be sure pin 1 of connector aligns with pin 1 of socket (See D1 and D10).
7. Grasping both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
8. Make sure bent tab at back of base fits into slot in housing; then install lock washers and four round-head screws in front of base (See A2).
9. Install six flat-head screws in **three outside edges** of base (See A1).
10. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
    a. turn Apple right side up
    b. replace Apple lid
    c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

ROM/RAM/741 REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Locate IC to be removed.
   - Motherboard ROMs (See D6).
   - Motherboard RAMs (See D7).
   - 741 IC (See D12).
   - ROM Card (Applesoft) in I/O connector 0 (See D13).
4. With the special IC extractor, lift out the IC. Use extreme caution when handling the IC to prevent all types of damage—including that caused by static (See D8).

INSTALLATION

1. Identify correct placement of IC by holding it above socket so that:
   a. notch in top of IC is toward **front** of Apple and
   b. dot or dot indentation on top of IC (at pin 1) is next to white dot on board (at pin 1 of socket)—See D9 and D10.
2. Making sure that all pins line up with sockets, press IC firmly into place.
3. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. reinstall Apple lid
   b. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

POWER SUPPLY REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off Apple and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. If ROM card is installed in I/O connector 0 next to power supply, remove for easier access.
4. Pinch sides of plug and release power supply plug from location K1 on motherboard (See D2).
5. With the keyboard directly in front of you, turn Apple up onto its left side.
6. Support the power supply unit (See C1) with your left hand and use your right hand to remove the four round-head screws and lock washers on the underside of base (See A3).
7. Turn the Apple back onto its base and lift out power supply unit.

INSTALLATION

1. Place new power supply unit into Apple (See C1).
2. Holding the unit in place and facing the front of the keyboard, turn Apple onto its left side.
3. Support the power supply unit with your left hand and install the four lock washers and round-head screws to hold power unit to base (See A3).
4. Reinstall power supply plug at location K1 (See D2).
5. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. re-insert ROM card in I/O connector 0 (if removed earlier)
   b. reinstall Apple lid
   c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

KEYBOARD REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off the system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple base down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from three outside edges of flat bottom of Apple base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly up off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and turn housing upside down onto protective foam pad.
9. Remove four nuts and lock washers (or screws) holding keyboard to housing (See B1).
10. Turn keyboard right side up. Carefully remove cable from top right corner of keyboard (See C6).

INSTALLATION

1. Install keyboard cable to connector at top right corner of keyboard. Be careful not to bend pins (See C6).
2. To install replacement keyboard, first check to see if there are brackets mounted on inside of housing at sides of keyboard location (See B2).
   - If brackets are pre-installed, go to step 3.
   - If brackets are **not** pre-installed, complete a through c below.
     a) remove four threaded rods (bent screws)
     b) place brackets flat side down on housing
     c) install screws at top and bottom of brackets (See B2).
3. Place new keyboard over bracket stand-offs and install lock washers and screws to hold keyboard to brackets (See B1).
4. Lift housing and place on base.
5. Lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7 (See D1).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
7. Install four lock washers and round-head screws at front of base (See A2).
8. Install six flat-head screws at **three outside edges** of Apple base (See A1).
9. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. turn Apple right side up
   b. reinstall Apple lid
   c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

ENCODER IC REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Power off the system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat portion of Apple base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly up off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and turn housing upside down onto protective foam pad.
9. Remove four nuts and lock washers (or screws) holding keyboard to housing (See B1).
10. Turn keyboard right side up on protective foam.
11. Remove encoder IC (See C5) by pulling up on both ends with your thumb and index finger. Use extreme caution to protect the IC from damage, including that caused by static.

INSTALLATION

1. Install replacement encoder, ensuring that pin 1 of IC lines up with pin 1 of socket (See D9 and D10).
2. With keyboard still resting on foam, attach keyboard cable to location A7 on motherboard (See D1).
3. Power on system and run keyboard test again.
   - If test is good, power system off and go to step 4
   - If test fails, power off system and complete these steps:
     a. gently remove cable from top right corner of keyboard (See C6)
     b. obtain replacement keyboard
4. Unplug keyboard connector from location A7 on motherboard (See D1).
5. Reinstall keyboard according to the following instructions:
   - If the test run in step 3 was good and you are reinstalling the same keyboard, place it onto housing and reinstall lock washers and nuts (or screws) (See B1).
   - If the test run in step 3 fails and you are installing a **replacement** keyboard, complete these steps:
     a. Attach keyboard cable to plug at top right corner of keyboard (See C6). Exercise care not to bend pins and be sure plug aligns properly with socket.

(See next page)

apple computer inc.

ENCODER IC REPLACEMENT, continued

b. Check to see if there are two aluminum brackets mounted on inside of Apple housing where keyboard is to be attached (See B2).
   1. If brackets **are pre-installed**, go to step 3 below.
   2. If the brackets **are not pre-installed**, first remove four threaded rods. Then place brackets flat side down on housing and install screws at top and bottom of each bracket in place of rods.
   3. Place new keyboard over bracket stand-offs and install lock washers and screws to hold keyboard to brackets.

6. Lift housing and place on base.
7. Lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7 (See D1).
8. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
9. Install four lock washers and round-head screws at front of base (See A2).
10. Install six flat-head screws at three outside edges of Apple base (See A1).
11. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
    a. turn Apple right side up
    b. reinstall Apple lid
    c. reconnect power cord to Apple.

apple computer inc.

POWER LIGHT BULB REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

REMOVAL

1. Lift off power light cap at bottom left of keyboard (See C2).
2. Lift off shift key cap directly above power light cap for easier access to bulb (See C3).
3. Gently lift light bulb from sockets (See C4).

REPLACEMENT

1. Insert replacement bulb, making sure both wires go into the small sockets (See C4).
2. Reinstall shift key (See C3).
3. Reinstall power light cap (See C2).

PRE-RELEASE VERSION

apple computer inc.

BRIGHTNESS ADJUSTMENT PROCEDURE

If the Apple is connected directly to a monitor and the image on the screen is too dim or too bright, adjust the composite video pot to get optimum clarity.

1. Power off Apple and remove lid.
2. Unplug game paddles if installed at game I/O connector (See D14).
3. Power on Apple.
4. Locate video pot at location J14 directly in back of game I/O plug (See D11). Using your thumb and index finger, turn pot:
   - clockwise to brighten image, or
   - counterclockwise to dim image.

ELIMINATING SPEAKER RESONANCE

If the speaker is resonating at certain tones, install the supplied foam doughnut in accordance with the following instructions.

1. Power off Apple and remove lid.
2. Cut slit in one side of foam doughnut as shown (See F1).
3. Apply Dow Corning Silicone Rubber Sealant to bottom of doughnut and to inside of circular cut-out.
4. Carefully fit cut-out in foam around base of speaker in position shown (See F2). Press down firmly to ensure good contact between foam and Apple base.
5. Allow glue adequate time to dry before testing speaker.

apple computer inc.

KEY SWITCH REPLACEMENT PROCEDURE

Once you have completed the keyboard diagnostic test and identified the faulty key switch, replace it by following these procedures.

BEFORE YOU BEGIN, MAKE SURE YOU HAVE THE FOLLOWING MATERIALS.

- 60 watt, 700° (F) soldering iron with small, flat tip
- "SOLDAPULLT" solder-sucker, model DS 017
- 60/40 solder for printed circuit boards
- number 1 phillips screw driver

REMOVE KEYBOARD

1. Power off the system and remove power cord—first from power source and then from rear of Apple housing.
2. Remove Apple lid.
3. Turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on protective foam pad.
4. Remove six flat-head screws from **three outside edges** of flat portion of Apple Base (See A1).
5. Remove four round-head screws and lock washers from front of base (See A2).
6. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple right side up.
7. Gently lift front of housing slightly up off base and unplug keyboard connector from location A7 at front of motherboard (See D1).
8. Lift housing off base and turn housing upside down onto protective foam pad.
9. Remove four nuts and lock washers (or screws) holding keyboard to housing (See B1).

REMOVE KEY SWITCH

1. Turn the keyboard upside down onto protective padding. Note that the printed circuit board has numbers for each key. Check Figure A below to identify the number of the key you want to remove. The "H" key, for instance, is number 34.

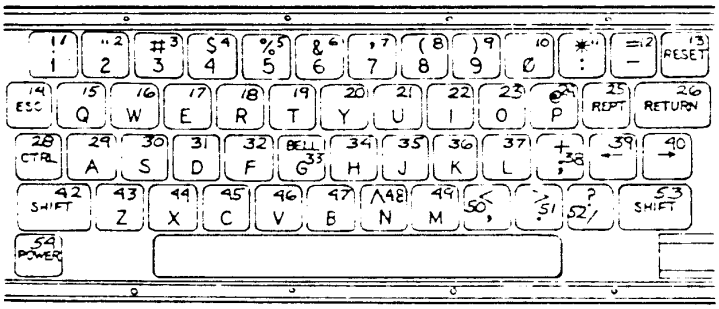


Figure A

apple computer inc.

2. To prepare the solder-sucker, push the plunger down as far as it will go.

3. Heat the soldering iron and make sure it is clean and well-tinned.

4. When the soldering iron is ready, take it in one hand and the solder-sucker in the other as shown in Figure B. Hold the soldering iron at a 45° angle so that one side of the flat tip is firmly in contact with the pin and the other side of the tip is firmly in contact with the pad at the base of the pin. When the solder melts, quickly push the release button or lever of the solder-sucker to pick it up.

CAUTION: DO NOT APPLY THE SOLDERING IRON FOR MORE THAN THREE SECONDS. IT MAY LIFT THE TRACES OFF THE BOARD AND DESTROY

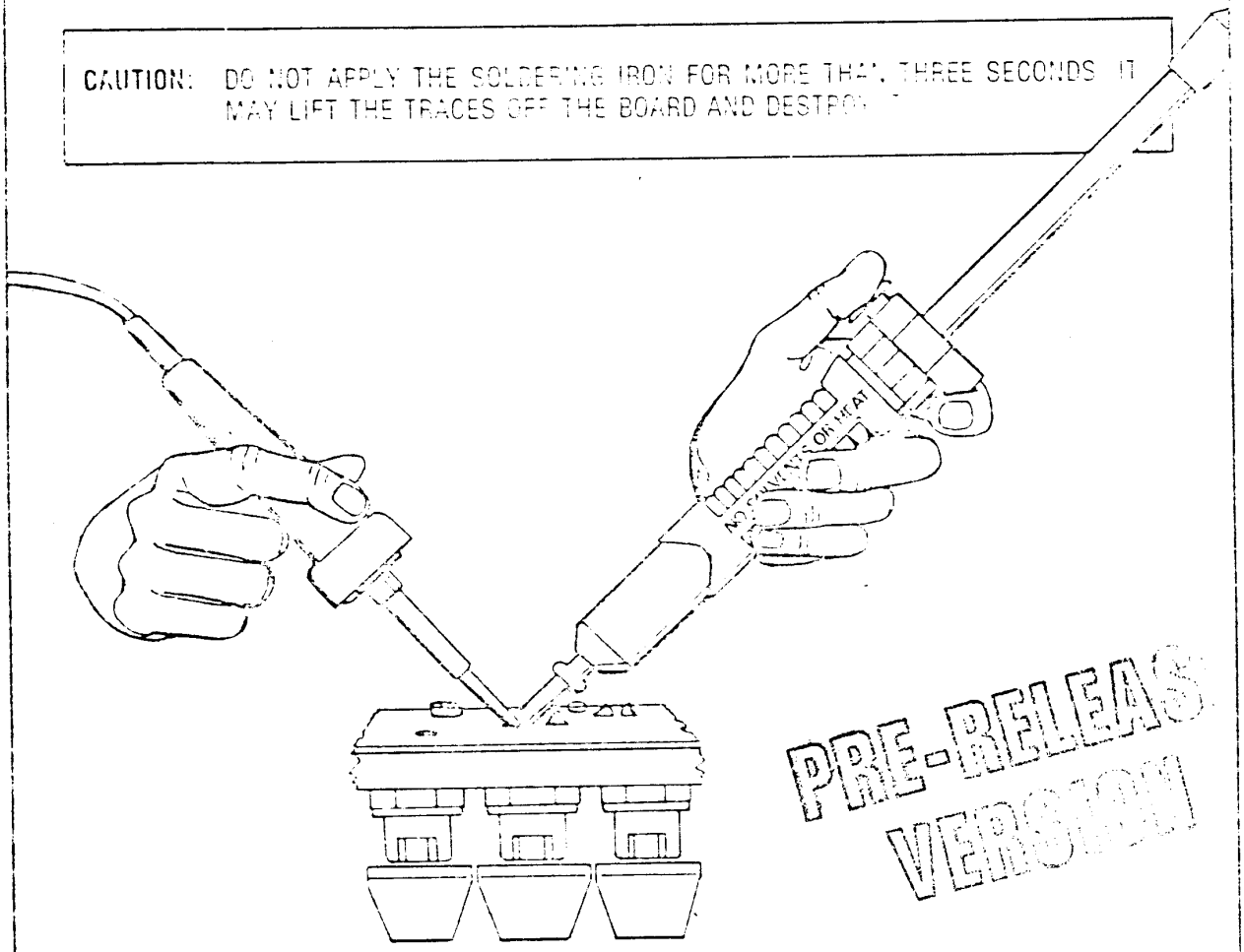


Figure B

5. Repeat this procedure for the second pin, being careful to hold the soldering iron just as before and to observe the 3-second limit.

6. If any solder remains around the base of the pin, or if it was not soldered properly to begin with, apply a little solder to the joint, again placing the flat edges of the iron against both pin and pad. Then repeat step 4 to make sure all solder is removed.

apple computer inc.

7. Using a number 1 phillips screwdriver, remove the screw holding the key switch to the board.
8. Turn the keyboard right-side up and pull up on the key cap to remove the key switch assembly (see Figure C).
9. Pull the key cap straight up off the key switch and discard the *switch*.

INSTALL REPLACEMENT KEY SWITCH

1. To place cap onto the replacement key switch, hold the switch and cap as shown in Figure C so that:
   - the pins on the bottom of the switch are on the side furthest from you
   - the white top of the switch bends to your **left**
   - the letter on the key cap is at the side of the key on your **right**

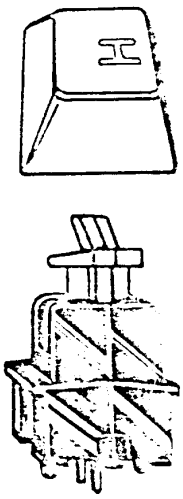


Figure C

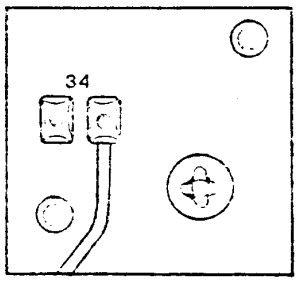


Figure D

2. Insert the key switch into the board so that:
   - the pins go through the feed-through holes
   - the short black plastic placement prongs fit into their holes on the board. (Figure D shows a properly installed switch—from the back side of the board.)
3. Holding the key in place with one hand, turn the keyboard up-side-down onto the pad.
4. Reinstall the screw that holds the key in place.
5. Apply a little solder to the iron. Then, with the flat sides of the iron's tip in contact with both the pin and the pad that surrounds the pin hole, apply the new solder. **Again, be sure that you do not overheat the board!**
6. Check the joint to be sure that the solder has completely filled the hole around the pin and that the solder is built up in a little cone around the pin. If the joint is not filled, apply more solder.

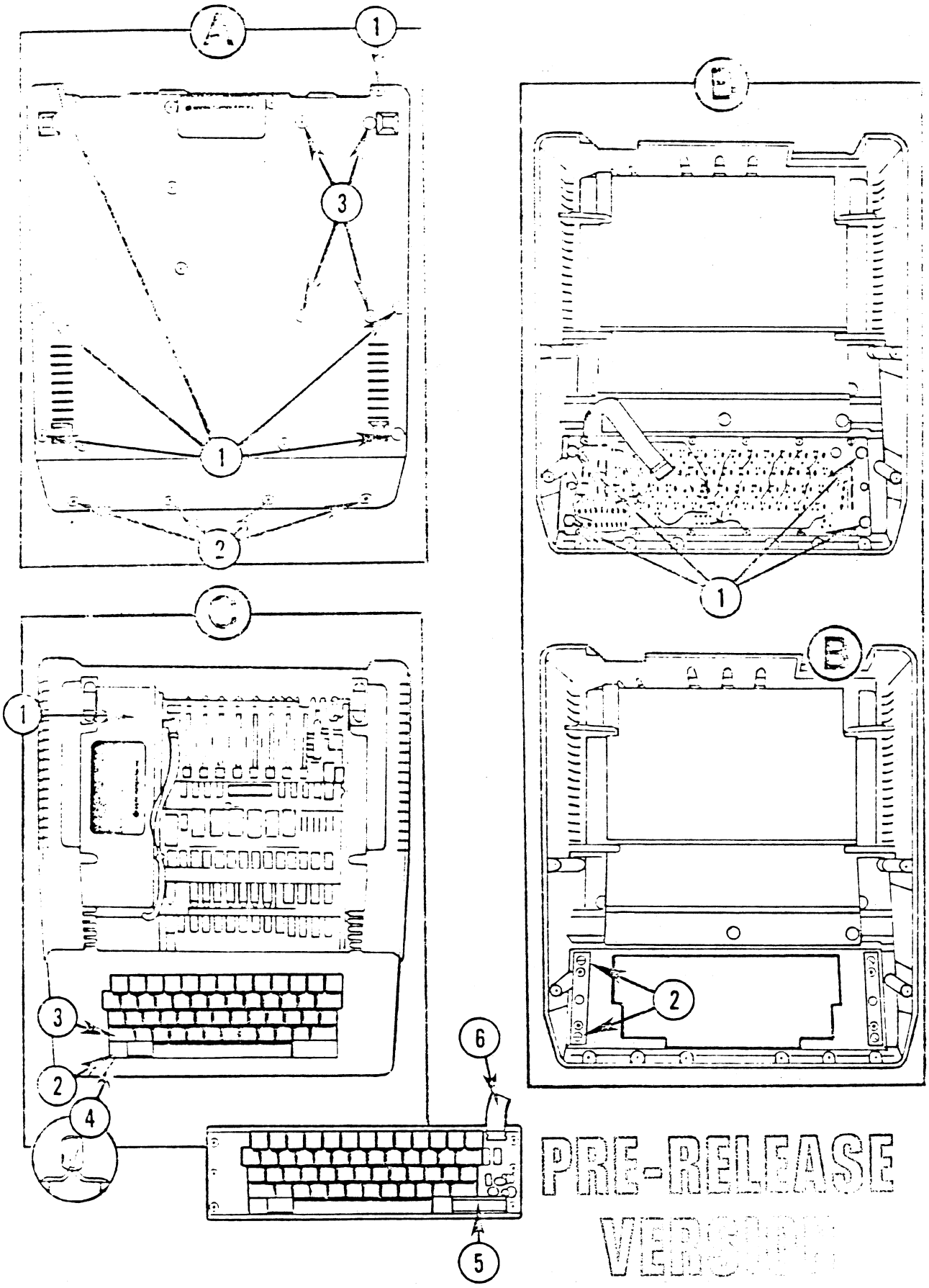
(apple computer inc.

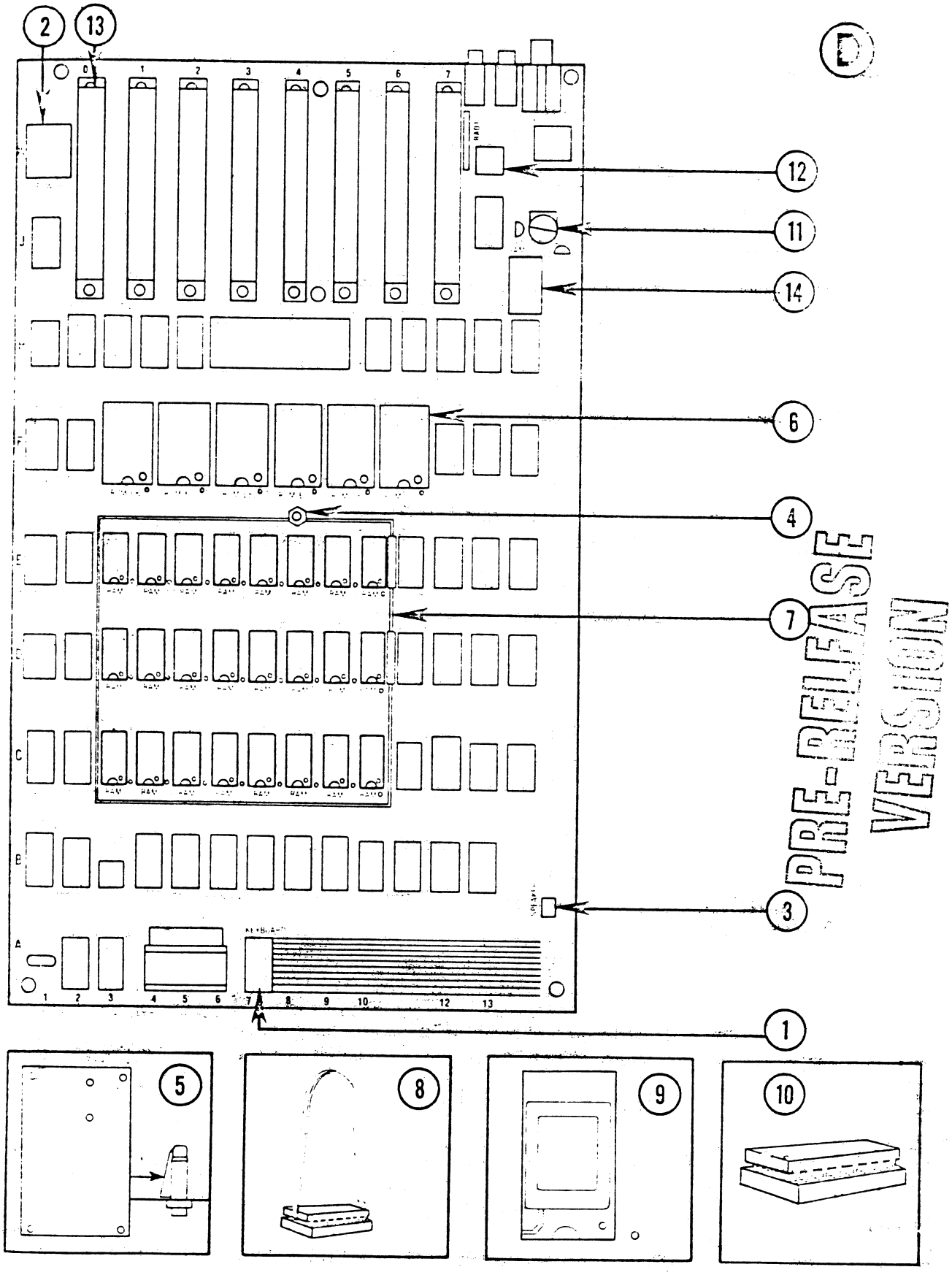
REINSTALL KEYBOARD

1. Reinstall keyboard in housing and tighten nuts with lock washers (or screws).
2. Lift housing and place on base.
3. Lift front of housing slightly off base and reinstall keyboard connector at location A7 (See D1).
4. Holding both base and housing, turn Apple upside down so keyboard rests on foam pad.
5. Install four lock washers and round-head screws at front of base (See A2).
6. Install six flat-head screws at **three outside edges** of Apple base (See A1).
7. To finish the procedure, complete these steps:
   a. Turn Apple right side up.
   b. Reinstall Apple lid.
   c. Reconnect power cord to Apple.

NOTE: SEE SERVICE BULLETIN NUMBER 5 FOR NEW KEYBOARDS.

PRE-RELEASE VERSION



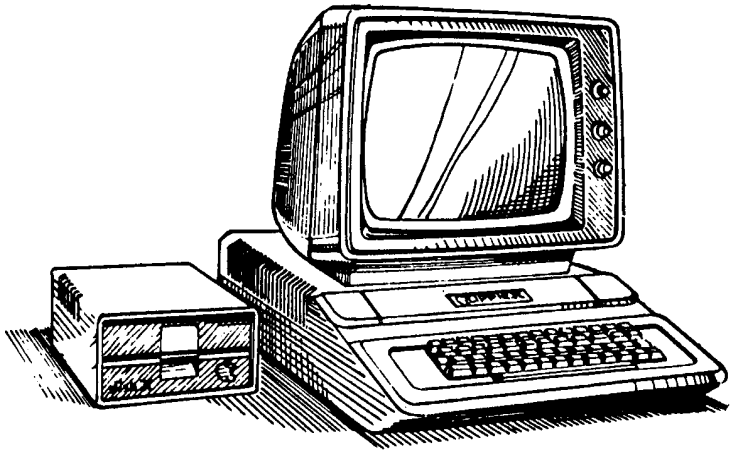


Apple II Computer Technical Information

APPLE II / APPLE II-PLUS LEVEL II SERVICE REFERENCE MANUAL

Pre-Release Version

END OF MANUAL



Written by
Apple Computer, Inc. • Level II Service Center
1981

(This page is not part of the original service manual)